Scottish Hospitals Inquiry

Hearing commencing 24 April 2023

Bundle 1 - Published Guidance

Table of Contents

NHS National Services Scotland

SHTM 00
Best practice guidance for healthcare engineering

Policies and principles

Health Facilities Scotland
Engineering and Environment

February 2013

Contents

A42659819

Preface

About Scottish Health Technical Memoranda

Scottish Health Technical Memoranda (SHTMs) give comprehensive advice and guidance on the design, installation and operation of specialised building and engineering technology used in the delivery of healthcare.

The focus of SHTM guidance remains on healthcare-specific elements of standards, policies and up-to-date established best practice. They are applicable to new and existing sites, and are for use at various stages during the whole building life cycle.

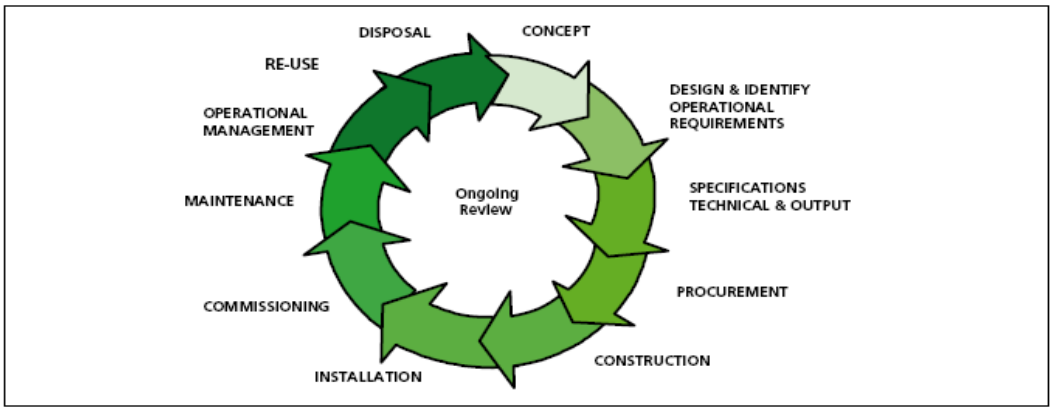


Figure 1: Healthcare building life cycle

Healthcare providers have a duty of care to ensure that appropriate engineering governance arrangements are in place and are managed effectively. The Scottish (Engineering) Health Technical Memoranda (series) provides best practice engineering standards and policy to enable management of this duty of care.

It is not the intention within this series of documents to repeat unnecessarily international or European standards, industry standards or UK Government legislation. Where appropriate, these will be referenced.

Healthcare-specific technical engineering guidance is a vital tool in the safe and efficient operation of healthcare facilities. Scottish Health Technical Memoranda guidance is the main source of specific healthcare-related guidance for estates and facilities professionals.

The core suite of nine subject areas provides access to guidance which:

- is more streamlined and accessible;
- encapsulates the latest standards and best practice in healthcare engineering;
- provides a structured reference for healthcare engineering.

Structure of the Scottish Health Technical Memoranda (Engineering) suite

The series of engineering-specific guidance will ultimately contain a suite of eight core subjects pending a re-assessment of Firecode SHTMs 81-87.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00: Policies and principles (applicable to all Scottish Health Technical Memoranda in this series)

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 01: Decontamination

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 02: Medical gases

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03: Heating and ventilating systems

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04: Water systems

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 05: Reserved for future use

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06: Electrical services

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07: Environment and sustainability

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08: Specialist services

Some subject areas may be further developed into topics shown as -01, -02 etc and further referenced into Parts A, B etc.

For example: Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06-02 Part A will represent: Electrical Services – Electrical safety guidance for low voltage systems, Part A:

In a similar way Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07-02 will simply represent: Environment and Sustainability - EnCO_2de.

All Scottish Health Technical Memoranda are supported by the initial document Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00 which embraces the management and operational policies from previous documents and explores risk management issues.

Some variation in style and structure is reflected by the topic and approach of the different review working groups.

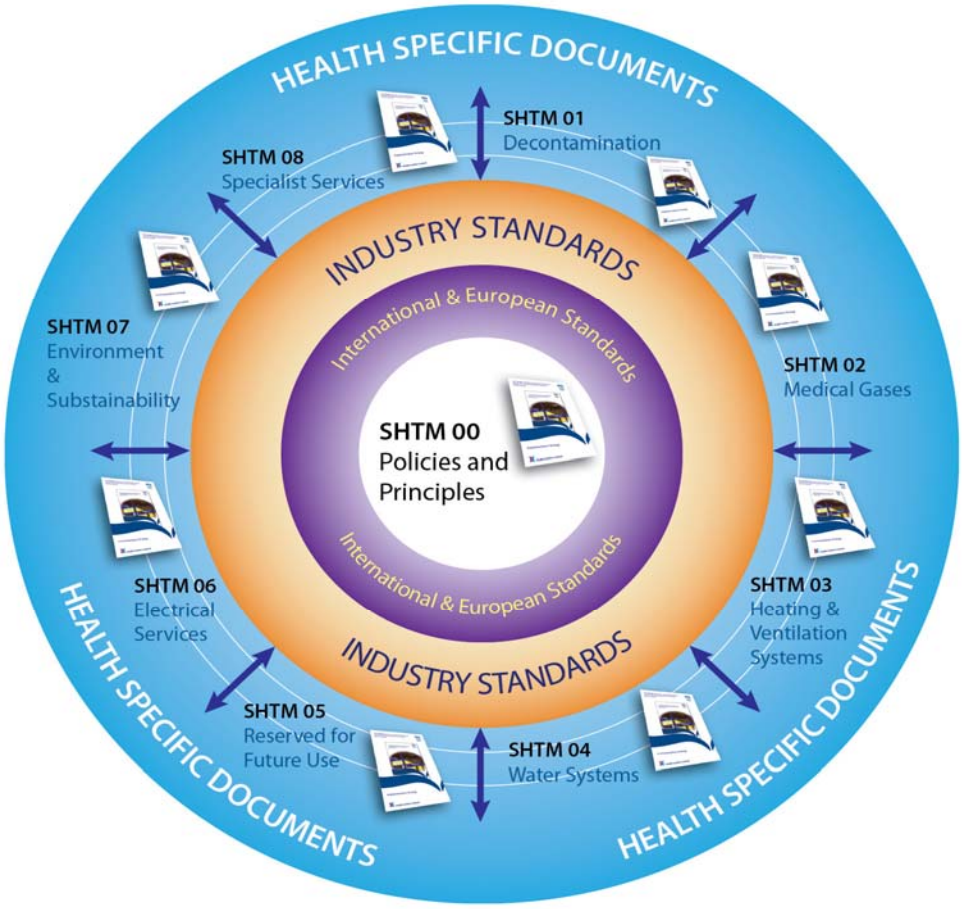


Figure 2: Engineering guidance

A42659819

Executive summary

This document gives best practice advice and provides a generic overview for Health Facilities Scotland's new suite of Scottish Health Technical Memoranda .

It is provided as a comprehensive guide to all issues relating to the management of engineering and technical service provision which can be applied to NHS and other healthcare facilities: that is, wherever NHS patients are treated.

Scope

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00, and the series it supports, provides comprehensive specialist advice and guidance on the design, installation and effective operation of a healthcare facility from an engineering technology perspective. While it is not intended to cover every possible scenario, for example the concept of hospital at home (in a domestic dwelling), the standards and principles it advocates may be appropriate to follow in all locations where healthcare is provided.

Aim of the guidance

The aim of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00 is to ensure that everyone concerned with the management, design, procurement and use of the healthcare facility understands the requirements of the specialist, critical building and engineering technology involved.

Regardless of procurement route, whether by traditional means or through a Public Private Partnership (PPP), it is essential that, as part of the briefing process, those involved in the provision of the facility are advised that all relevant guidance published by Health Facilities Scotland (HFS) is available electronically for purchase from HFS. In selecting technical advisers and preferred bidders, it is strongly recommended that their healthcare experience or credentials are thoroughly verified by the NHS Board. References should be obtained and followed up.

Only by having a knowledge of these requirements can the healthcare organisation's Board and senior managers understand their duty of care to provide safe, efficient, effective and reliable systems which are critical in supporting direct patient care. When this understanding is achieved, it is expected that (in line with integrated governance proposals) appropriate governance arrangements would be put in place, supported by access to suitably qualified staff to provide this 'informed client' role, which reflect these responsibilities.

By locally interpreting and following this guidance, NHS Boards and individual senior managers should be able to demonstrate compliance with their

responsibilities and thereby support a culture of professionalism, which instils public confidence in the capability of the NHS at local level.

Users of the guidance

Those providing NHS healthcare and operating facilities will be the main users of this document. However, other stakeholders will be interested and will expect that this best practice guidance is being followed.

Healthcare commissioners should expect that the facilities to which they refer patients should provide a safe, caring environment which aids a patient's recovery and does not expose them to undue risk. Therefore the resilience of critical engineering services and business continuity, linked to policies for emergency preparedness and the ability to respond to major incidents should be high on a provider organisation's agenda.

Structure

Within this document, each Section deals with a different aspect of engineering and technical management from an overview of commonly applicable statutes and legislation through to the training and development issues to consider when providing the necessary levels of professional and technical expertise.

- Section 2 provides an overview of the context of the Scottish Health Technical Memoranda suite;
- Section 3 (while not intending to be exhaustive) deals with commonly applicable statutory and legislative requirements;
- Section 4 considers appropriate professional and technical support;
- Section 5 looks at development of operational policies and advocates service-user involvement etc;
- Section 6 considers emergency preparedness etc and the ability of the organisation to continue to provide healthcare throughout emergency situations and to recover quickly;
- Section 7 provides guidance on staff training, systems and operation and maintenance procedures;
- Section 8 considers maintaining engineering systems to provide optimum performance and maximise the potential for critical service availability;
- Section 9 looks at design and access availability with regard to engineering services.

Recommendations

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00 recommends that Boards and Chief Executives, as accountable officers, use the guidance and references provided:

- when planning and designing new healthcare facilities or undertaking refurbishments;
- when developing governance systems which take account of risk;
- to establish principles and procedures which:
  - recognise and address both corporate and the individuals' responsibilities;
  - recognise the link between critical engineering systems and emergency preparedness capability;
  - reflect the important role which engineering polices and principles, as implemented by suitably qualified professional and technical staff, can have in support of direct patient care.

Once NHS Boards and Chief Executives have embraced the principles set out within this document and taken the necessary actions, their duty of care responsibilities are more likely to be fulfilled, as will their ability to maintain public confidence in the NHS at local level.

1. Introduction

Scope

1.1 Healthcare premises are dependent on the safe and secure function of critical engineering services, the application of sound environmental measures, and the support of key services. There are some common principles which apply across the full range of engineering guidance and support the wider interface of all healthcare-related equipment and its environment.

1.2 The concept of providing and maintaining safe and secure critical services carries a high priority and applies across the widest range of applications. It must apply to patients, staff and the general public: that is, *all users* of the healthcare environment.

1.3 In a similar way, the duty of care in operational performance can contribute to the overall efficiency and safety of a healthcare organisation. Accessibility to suitably qualified and competent staff is a key factor when considering governance arrangements.

1.4 Evidence suggests that a comfortable healthcare environment can have a strong influence on the healing cycle. This needs to be achieved in a sensitive way, with design having regard to the function and purpose of the specific and adjoining areas.

1.5 Staff and services must be resilient to ensure continuity of business and the safety of patients and staff, and be capable of providing a suitable response to maintain a level of healthcare in all circumstances.

Engineering governance

1.6 Responsibility and, more specifically, the duty of care within a healthcare organisation are vested in the board of management and its supporting structure.

1.7 Engineering governance is concerned with how an organisation directs, manages and monitors its engineering activities to ensure compliance with statutory and legislative requirements.

1.8 Systems and processes need to be in place, and supported by adequate resources and suitably qualified and trained staff.

1.9 Healthcare organisations should ensure that sound internal controls, safe processes, working practices and risk management strategies are in place to safeguard all their stakeholders and assets to prevent and reduce harm or loss.

Reviews

1.10 Management should conduct regular reviews of the effectiveness of the healthcare organisation's engineering structure and systems. The review should cover all controls, including strategic, operational, safety and engineering risk management.

Guidance

1.11 Scottish Health Technical Memoranda guidance provides a best-practice framework which aims to raise awareness and provide the confidence for strong management.

1.12 This document addresses the general principles, key policies and factors common to all engineering services within a healthcare organisation.

1.13 Key issues include:

- general health and safety;
- professional support;
- operational and training requirements;
- emergency preparedness;
- workforce planning and capability;
- maintenance.

1.14 To determine the right level of approach, which will often require an assessment of the risk and an evaluation of the factors that remain when reasonable and practical measures have been taken to minimise the elements giving rise for concern.

2. Overview of engineering services guidance

2.1 Within the overall Scottish Health Technical Memoranda guidance structure, there are eight specialist subjects supported by this core document. The specialist subject areas are detailed below.

Note: The sequence of numbering within each subject area does not necessarily indicate the order in which the SHTM will be published. However, the overall structure/number format will be maintained as described.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 01: Decontamination (replaces SHTM 2010, 2030 and 2031)

SHTM 01 - 01: The decontamination of reusable medical devices, Part A - Management and environment

2.2 The purpose of this guidance is to provide an overview and comprehensive advice, covering the general and regulatory environment for decontamination of reusable medical devices. It considers the key environment and management issues in this area including design, and operational management considerations. It outlines the 'best practice' for the philosophy of decontamination systems for the safety of patients and staff.

SHTM 01 - 01: Decontamination of reusable medical devices, Part B - Equipment

2.3 This document sets out the necessary arrangements for procuring and managing decontamination systems across the healthcare environment. The guidance is best practice and may encompass compliance of other industry legislation and standards.

2.4 It covers the design and pre-purchase considerations, validation and verification, and operational management of test equipment, washer-disinfectors and sterilisers.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 02: Medical gases (replaces Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2022)

SHTM 02 - 01: Medical gas pipeline systems, Part A - Design, installation, validation and verification

2.5 The purpose of this guidance is to provide comprehensive, but not all-inclusive, advice on design considerations applicable to healthcare premises. It outlines the 'best practice' philosophy for systems where patient safety and well-being are of prime importance.

2.6 Guidance in this part covers piped medical gases, medical and surgical air, and medical vacuum installations. It applies to all medical gas pipeline systems installed in healthcare premises and anaesthetic gas scavenging disposal systems. Specifically, it deals with the issues involved in the design, installation, and validation and verification (testing and commissioning) of a medical gas pipeline system.

SHTM - 02: Medical gas pipeline systems, Part B - Operational management

2.7 The safe operation of a medical gas pipeline system relies on skilled staff who understand the system and who can liaise with clinical users to ensure continuing patient safety.

2.8 This document lists key personnel involved in the operation, maintenance and use of the system. This will include nominated medical and nursing staff, risk managers/fire safety officers, pharmacy staff and the quality controller for the site, and competent personnel (who may be in-house staff or contractors). The document also includes relevant drawings and schedules of plant, terminal units, area valve service units (AVSUs), alarms etc.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 03: Heating and Ventilating systems (replaces Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2025)

SHTM 03 - 01 Heating and ventilating systems, Part A - (replaces SHTM 2025) Ventilation, design, installation, testing and validation

2.9 This document provides best practice guidance on the design and installation of ventilation systems and the close-control (mechanical cooling or air-conditioning) of general and ‘specialised’ healthcare environments.

SHTM 03:01 Ventilating systems Part B - (replaces SHTM 2025) Operational management and verification

2.10 This document sets out the necessary arrangements for managing healthcare ventilating and mechanical cooling systems across the majority of premises.

2.11 The sophistication of ventilating and mechanical cooling systems in healthcare premises is ever-increasing. Patients, staff and visitors have a right to expect that these systems will be designed, installed, operated and maintained to standards which will enable it to fulfil its desired functions reliably and safely. To this end, current legislation requires all parties involved to be aware of their individual and collective responsibilities.

Notwithstanding the above, it needs to be remembered that the provision of cooling outwith prescribed areas must be seen as a last resort after all other options have been examined, particularly where challenging energy target figures are to be imposed.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 04-01: Water systems (replaces SHTM 2027 and 2040)

SHTM 04 - 01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems, Part A - Design, installation and testing

2.12 Interruptions in water supply can disrupt healthcare activities. The design of systems must ensure that sufficient reserve water storage is available to minimise the consequence of disruption, while at the same time ensuring an adequate turnover of water to prevent stagnation in storage vessels and distribution systems.

To assist in assessing the implications of curtailment of water storage, a risk assessment should be carried out through liaison with the water supplier to verify robustness and condition of infrastructure from which supplies are to be derived, and records should be checked to assess frequency, duration and history of interruptions.

2.13 This document gives advice and guidance to healthcare management, design engineers, estates managers and operational managers on the legal requirements, design applications, maintenance and operation of hot and cold water supply, storage and distribution systems in all types of healthcare premises. It is equally applicable to both new and existing sites.

SHTM 04 - 01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems, Part B - Operational management

2.14 This document sets out the necessary arrangements for managing healthcare water systems across the majority of premises. Current legislation requires all parties involved to be aware of their individual and collective responsibilities for the provision of wholesome, safe hot and cold water supplies, storage and distribution in healthcare premises.

2.15 The temperature control regime is the preferred strategy for reducing the risk from *Legionella* and other waterborne organisms in water systems. This requires monitoring on a regular basis. Recommended test frequencies are listed in the document.

2.16 For other water applications, such as hydrotherapy pools and provision to laundries etc (although briefly described in this publication); reference should be made to specific documentation.

SHTM 04 - 01: Water safety for healthcare premises, Part C – TVC testing

2.17 Although not strictly necessary, but favoured by many Heads of Estates, periodic TVC testing provides indication of trends and a change can give early warning of problems to come. This guidance sets out the procedures and protocols for testing to ensure consistency.

SHTM 04 - 01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems, Part D – Water disinfection

2.18 Various forms of water disinfection are available. Some are only suitable for limited applications. This guidance sets out the benefits and draw-backs for those in common use.

SHTM 04 - 01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems, Part E – Alternative materials and filtration

2.19 This guidance replaces Scottish Hospital Technical Note (SHTN) 2 which was originally published when copper tube corrosion first became manifest. It lists the various alternative materials approved for use in NHS Scotland premises and provides advise related to on-site filtration.

SHTM 04 - 01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems, Part F – Chloraminated water supplies

2.20 The use of chloramination for water treatment is being pursued by the water authorities in place of chlorination. This has benefits for both the supplier and NHS Boards although there are implications for the likes of dialysis equipment. This guidance sets out the benefits and impacts.

SHTM 04 - 01: Water safety for healthcare premises, Part G – Written scheme exemplar

2.21 The Health & Safety Executive require the provision of Written Scheme for water services installations. This guidance sets out the procedures to be implemented and offers the framework for NHS Boards to adopt as templates for their production.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 05: Reserved for future use

2.22 Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 05 was to have been allocated to the replacement for the current series of Firecode guidance documents but the SHTM number is being held in reserve as Firecode SHTMs 81-87 have been updated and remain in use.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 06: Electrical services (replaces SHTM 2011, 2014, 2020 and 2021)

SHTM 06 - 01: Electrical services supply and distribution Part A – Design considerations (replaces SHTM 2007: Electrical Services supply and distribution, SHTM 2011: Emergency electrical services and absorbs SHTM 2014: Abatement of Electrical Interference).

2.23 The document is suitable for use with all forms of electrical maintenance work ranging from testing of plant, such as generators, to the periodic testing and inspection of the electrical network and final circuits.

2.24 Part A provides guidance for all work on the fixed wiring and integral electrical equipment used for electrical services within healthcare premises. The document should be used for all forms of electrical design work ranging from a new greenfield site to modifying an existing final sub-circuit. This document provides guidance to managers of healthcare premises on how European and British Standards relating to electrical safety such as the IEE Wiring Regulations BS 7671, the Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004 (and subsequent amendments) and the Electricity at Work Regulations 1989 can be used to fulfil their duty of care in relation to the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974.

SHTM 06: 01 Electrical services supply and distribution, Part B - Operational management (replaces SHTM 2007: Electrical services supply and distribution, SHTM 2011: Emergency electrical services and absorbs SHTM 2014: Abatement of electrical interference)

2.25 Part B provides guidance for all works on the fixed wiring and integral electrical equipment used for electrical services within healthcare premises. The document is suitable for use with all forms of electrical maintenance work ranging from testing of plant, such as generators, to the periodic testing and inspection of the electrical network and final circuits.

The document provides healthcare premises managers with guidance on the European and British Standards for Electrical Safety, such as the IEE Regulations BS 7671, the Building Regulations, and the Electricity at Work Regulations. Healthcare premises managers may be able to fulfil their duty of care in relation to the Health and Safety at Work etc Act by adopting the recommendations of this document. This SHTM recommends that designers and stakeholders review this part of SHTM 06-01 during the design process such that they are more aware of the maintenance activities required.

SHTM 06 - 02: Electrical safety guidance for low voltage systems

2.26 This Scottish Health Technical Memorandum gives operational guidance on electrical safety requirements for low voltage systems (up to 1 kV) in healthcare premises including management, professional and operational structure, safety procedures, testing, equipment and records.

2.27 Guidance is intended to assist in meeting the requirements of the Electricity at Work Regulations 1989, which detail the precautions to be taken against risk of death or personal injury from electricity in work activities.

SHTM 06 - 03: Electrical safety guidance for high voltage systems

2.28 This Scottish Health Technical Memorandum gives operational guidance on electrical safety requirements for high voltage systems (up to 11 kV) in

healthcare premises including management, professional and operational structure, safety procedures, testing, equipment and records.

2.29 Guidance is intended to assist in meeting the requirements of the Electricity at Work Regulations 1989, which detail the precautions to be taken against risk of death or personal injury from electricity in work activities.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 07: Environment and sustainability (replaces Health Facilities Note 21 and HTM 2065 and 2075)

(Scottish Health Technical Note (SHTN 3): NHS Scotland Waste Management Guidance)

2.30 This document consists of four parts:

- Part A: Best practice overview outlining NHS bodies' waste management responsibilities and best practice.

  A "practical" guidance document;
- Part B: Waste policy template providing example waste policy for all Health Boards to adopt and adapt as required;
- Part C: Waste management procedures template providing example waste procedures for all Health Boards to adopt and adapt as required;
- Part D: (forthcoming) comprising a compendium of regulatory requirements. and provides an overview of regulatory waste management requirements in Scotland.

  A "reference" document.

Note: This document incorporates aspects of HTM 07-01

SHTM 07 - 02: EnCO$_2$de - making energy work in healthcare (published April 2006)

2.31 This document replaces Encode guidance Parts I and II.

2.32 The purpose is to provide a primary source of guidance on managing energy use and carbon emissions in the healthcare sector. It aims to ensure that everyone involved in managing, procuring and using buildings and equipment gives due consideration to the implications of energy use and carbon emissions. It draws together best practice with the intention of putting energy at the heart of the health service.

SHTM 07 - 03: Transport management and car parking: best practice guidance for Boards

2.33 The purpose is to consider what measures NHS Boards can adopt when developing travel plans and managing transport and car parking, drawing on best practice to assist the NHS in a practical way. It aims to identify best practice in developing travel plans, give links to other assessment tools, provide a matrix from which to estimate a base level of car parking provision, point to external funding opportunities, and consider environmentally-friendly transport options.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 08: series of guidance which relates to building services systems or system components of a 'specialised' nature.

Purpose

2.34 Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08 is the series of guidance, which relates to building services systems or system components of a 'specialised' nature.

2.35 A 'specialised' system can be either a specific stand-alone system utilised by the occupants for a specified task (for example pneumatic air tube systems or lifts), or systems interfaced or directly connected to engineering systems themselves (building & energy management control systems (BEMS).

2.36 The 'specialised' components are utilised in or in conjunction with the engineering systems to enable suitable operation (such as, sound or bed-head services).

SHTM 08 - 01: Acoustics (Replaces SHTM 2045)

2.37 This document outlines the principles and considerations associated with the control of noise generated by not only the various activities undertaken within healthcare premises but also the services which are required for these activities to be undertaken. The document is concerned with reducing both the interior noise environment affecting the exterior noise environment and vice-versa.

2.38 Noise from a certain activity within the premises should not appreciably intrude on activities taking place in adjacent areas. This may be avoided by either careful consideration of the positioning of rooms during design conception, or by provision of sufficient sound insulation.

2.39 This document provides not only the considerations for use at the design stage, but also outlines the routine maintenance of noise control hardware or acoustic treatment and the monitoring and recording of noise levels. The responsibilities of all parties involved are defined, either by brief explanation or by use of reference to specific legislation, standards and/or codes of practice.

SHTM 08 - 02: Lifts: (Replaces SHTM 2024)

2.40 This guidance sets out design and performance requirements together with safety and emergency procedures associated with traction, hydraulic and machine room-less lift installations. There is also a short section on escalators.

SHTM 08 - 03: Bedhead services: (Replaces SHTM 2015)

2.41 To be read in conjunction with SHTM 06-01 etc, this sets out design and performance requirements for bedhead services including power supplies, lighting, nurse call systems, patient monitoring, patient entertainment and medical gases pipeline systems.

SHTM 08 - 04: Pneumatic tube systems: (Replaces SHTM 2009)

2.42 This guidance sets out the design and performance parameters for pneumatic tube installations updated to reflect the latest technology and practice.

SHTM 08 - 05: Automatic controls: (Replaces SHTM 2005)

2.43 Published in four parts (A-D) this guidance sets out design and performance requirements for automatic controls installations and building management systems including innovations such as wireless technology.

SHTM 08 - 06: Pathology laboratory gas installations:

2.44 A new SHTM comprising a companion volume to SHTM 02-01 specifically concentrating on gases for laboratories.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum (SHTM) 04-02: Water systems: Emerging technologies. Subdivided as follows:

SHTM 04-02: Part A Solar water heating

SHTM 04-02: Part B Rainwater harvesting

SHTM 04-02: Part C Grey water recovery

2.45 This guidance advises caution in the application of these technologies in the light of minimising healthcare associated infection but gives advice on practical issues.

3. Statutory and legislative requirements

Health and safety in the UK

3.1 Current health and safety philosophy was developed following the Report of the Robens Committee 1972 which resulted in the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974.

3.2 The standards of health and safety in the UK are delivered through a flexible enabling system introduced in 1974 by the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 and are typified by the Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999.

3.3 The Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 leaves employers freedom to decide how to control the risks which they identify, that is, to look at what the risks are and to take sensible measures to tackle them. The Act is part of criminal law, and enforcement is by the Health and Safety Executive and Local Authority. Successful prosecution can result in fines or imprisonment.

Regulations are law, approved by Parliament. These are usually made under the Health and Safety at Work etc Act following proposals from the Health & Safety Commission. Regulations identify certain risks and set out specific actions which must be taken.

Approved Codes of Practice give advice on how to comply with the law by offering practical examples of best practice. If employers follow the advice, they will be doing enough to comply with the law.

Approved Codes of Practice have a special legal status. If employers are prosecuted for a breach of health and safety law, and it is proved that they did not follow the relevant provisions of an Approved Code of Practice, they will need to show that they have complied with the law in some other way, or a court will find them at fault.

Standards (British or European), institutional guides and industry best practice play a large part in how things should be done. They have no direct legal status (unless specified by Regulations). However, should there be an accident; the applied safety practices at the place of work would be examined against existing British or European Standards. It would be difficult to argue in favour of an organisation where safety was not to the described level.

Guidance is issued in some cases to indicate the best way to comply with Regulations, but the guidance has no legal enforcement status.

Some statutory and legislative requirements in the UK

3.4 There are numerous statutory and legal duties to which owners and occupiers of premises must adhere. These are continually changing in the light of new evidence and experience. Reference should be made to these documents at the time of application.

3.5 The following are some of the commonly cited legislation in the UK and current at the time of publication. The list is not exhaustive but is intended to demonstrate the range of issues which should be considered. All references to guidance legislation standards should be compared to those current at the time of application. Latest published guidance always takes precedence.

3.6 Only the primary Acts and main Regulations are cited here. Most of these Acts and Regulations have been subjected to amendment subsequent to the date of first becoming law. These amending Acts or Regulations are not included in this list.

- Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974;
- Factories Act 1961 (as amended);
- The NHS and Community Care Act 1990;
- Consumer Protection Act 1987;
- Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (DDA);
- The Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999;
- Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992;
- Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998;
- Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992;
- Personal Protective Equipment at Work Regulations 1992;
- Health and Safety (Display Screen Equipment) Regulations 1992;
- Confined Spaces Regulations 1997;
- The Reporting of Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations 1995 (RIDDOR 95);
- The Working Time (Amendment) Regulations 2002;
- Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (COSHH) 2002;
- Health and Safety (First-Aid) Regulations 1981 and Miscellaneous Amendments 2002;
- Health and Safety (Consultation with Employees) Regulations 1996;
- Health and Safety Information for Employees Regulations 1989;
- Health and Safety (Safety Signs and Signals) Regulations 1996;
- Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Regulations 1998 and (Amendment) Regulations 2004;

- The Health and Safety (Training for Employment) Regulations 1990;
- Safety Representatives and Safety Committees Regulations 1977;
- Control of Asbestos at Work Regulations 2006.

Electrical

- Electricity Act 1989;
- Electricity Safety, Quality and Continuity Regulations 2002;
- Electricity at Work Regulations 1989;
- BS 7671:2008 (IEE Wiring Regulations, 17th Edition);
- The Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 1994;
- The Plugs and Sockets etc (Safety) Regulations 1994;
- The Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Regulations 2000 and Amendment 2003;
- Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2005.

Mechanical

- Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 1992 and Supply of Machinery (Safety) (Amendment) Regulations 1994;
- Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER);
- Gas Appliances (Safety) Regulations 1995;
- Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations 1998;
- The Lifts Regulations 1997;
- Noise at Work Regulations 2005;
- The Pressure Systems Safety Regulations 2000;
- The Pressure Equipment Regulations 1999 and (Amendment) Regulations 2002;
- Simple Pressure Vessels (Safety) Regulations 1991;
- The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations 2007;
- The Construction (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1996;
- The Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004.

Environment

- The Environmental Protection Act 1990;
- The Control of Pollution (Amendment) Act 1989;
- The Waste Management Licensing Regulations 1994 (as amended);
- Environmental Protection (Duty of Care) Regulations 1991;

- The Controlled Waste (Registration of Carriers and Seizure of Vehicles) Regulations 1991;
- Special Waste Amendment (Scotland) Regulations 2004;
- Pollution Prevention and Control (Scotland) Regulations 2000;
- The Special Waste Regulations 1996;
- Clean Air Act 1993;
- Environmental Protection (Prescribed Processes) Regulations 1991;
- Trade Effluent (Prescribed Processes and Substances) Regulation 1989 Amended 1990, 1992;
- Controlled Waste Regulations 1992 Amendment 1993;
- Environment Act 1995;
- Packaging (Essential Requirements) Regulations 2003;
- Control of Pollution (Oil Storage) (Scotland) Regulations 2003;
- The Landfill Tax Regulations 1996 and Landfill Tax (Qualifying Material) Order 1996;
- Chemicals (Hazard Information and Packaging for Supply) Regulations 2002;
- The Planning etc. (Scotland) Act 2006;
- The Control of Pollution Act 1974 and (Amendment) Act 1989;
- Producer Responsibility Obligations (Packaging Waste) Regulations 2007;
- Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Directive 2002;
- The Water Environment and Water Services (Scotland) Act 2003;
- The Water Byelaws (Scotland) 2000;
- Control of Lead at Work Regulations 2002;
- Control of Pesticides Regulations 1986;
- Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993.

Radiation

- Ionising Radiations Regulations 2004 (IRR99);
- The Radioactive Substances Act 1993 (RSA93);
- Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2000;
- Radioactive Materials (Road Transport) Regulations 2002;
- Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) (Amendment) Regulations 2006.

Fire

- The Fire (Scotland) Act 2005 as Amended;
- The Furniture and Furnishings (Fire) (Safety) Regulations 1988;
- Dangerous Substances and Explosive Atmosphere Regulations (DSEAR) 2002.

Food

- The Food Safety Act 1990;
- The Food Safety (General Food Hygiene) Regulations 1995;
- The Food Safety (Temperature Control) Regulations 1995.

Public Health

- Public Health (Infectious Diseases) Regulations 1988;
- Medicines Act 1961.

3.7 This list demonstrates the complex services which exist within a healthcare organisation. A further brief description of each piece of legislation is given in Appendix 1 of this document.

Risk and/or priority assessment

3.8 In carrying out design, operational and management evaluation, a consistent method of assessment should be engaged to ensure adequate information, consultation and appraisal is undertaken across the whole range of influences.

3.9 Although some elements of a particular assessment may be complex (for example whole-life costing, net present value, patient criticality, resilience etc), it is important to keep the collective assessment as simple as possible.

3.10 One method is to establish an evaluation matrix which allows information across two scales to be represented in an easily understood way which helps users come to a particular decision.

3.11 Both scales are graded from lowest to highest such that a combination of the assessments can be represented.

3.12 For example, an event analysis may appear as below: mapping the likelihood of an event happening and the severity of the effect.

3.13 In a similar way, a cost/benefit matrix may be constructed or a risk/design measure assessment made.

3.14 A more detailed example of applied risk assessment may be found in the Department of Health's (2005) 'A risk-based methodology for establishing and managing backlog'.

The Matrix shown below has been adopted for use in SCART, Statutory Compliance Audit and Risk Tool.

Likelihood / Severity	Negligible (1)	Minor (2)	Moderate (3)	Major (4)	Extreme (5)
Rare (1)	Low (1x1)	Low (1x2)	Low (1x3)	Low (1x4)	Medium (1x5)
Unlikely (2)	Low (2x1)	Low (2x2)	Medium (2x3)	Medium (2x4)	High (2x5)
Possible (3)	Low (3x1)	Medium (3x2)	Medium (3x3)	High (3x4)	High (3x5)
Likely (4)	Low (4x1)	Medium (4x2)	High (4x3)	High (4x4)	Very High (4x5)
Almost Certain (5)	Medium (5x1)	High (5x2)	High (5x3)	Very High (5x4)	Very High (5x5)

Adapted from the AS/NZ 4360 Standard Risk Matrix and NHS QIS Risk Matrix

4. Professional support

4.1 Managers of healthcare property and services need technical and professional support across a range of specialist services. This support should be embedded into the structure and responsibility framework of the organisation to ensure an adequate approach for each of the areas covered by the healthcare-specific technical engineering guidance.

4.2 Within the Scottish Health Technical Memoranda, a range of measures are discussed to meet the needs of each service. This Section considers the principles, standards and common features which will be applicable as a core approach.

Management and responsibility

4.3 Healthcare organisations have a duty of care to patients, their workforce and the general public. This is to ensure a safe and appropriate environment for healthcare. This requirement is identified in a wide range of legislation.

4.4 At the most senior level within an organisation, the appointed person should have access to a robust structure which delivers governance, assurance and compliance through a formal reporting mechanism.

Scottish Health Technical Memoranda guidance structure

4.5 Following the SHTM guidance review, seven specialist topics have been initially identified while that on Fire Safety remains to be tackled:

- decontamination;
- medical gases;
- heating and ventilation;
- water;
- electrical services;
- environment and sustainability;
- Specialist services.

4.6 Within each topic, specific duties and responsibilities are defined. See Figure 2 in the Preface for structure and relationships.

Management structure

4.7 To engage and deliver the duties required, a healthcare organisation may consider the structure shown in Figure 3. In following this structure, healthcare

organisations may consider that the necessary professional and technical resilience is available to provide a robust service.

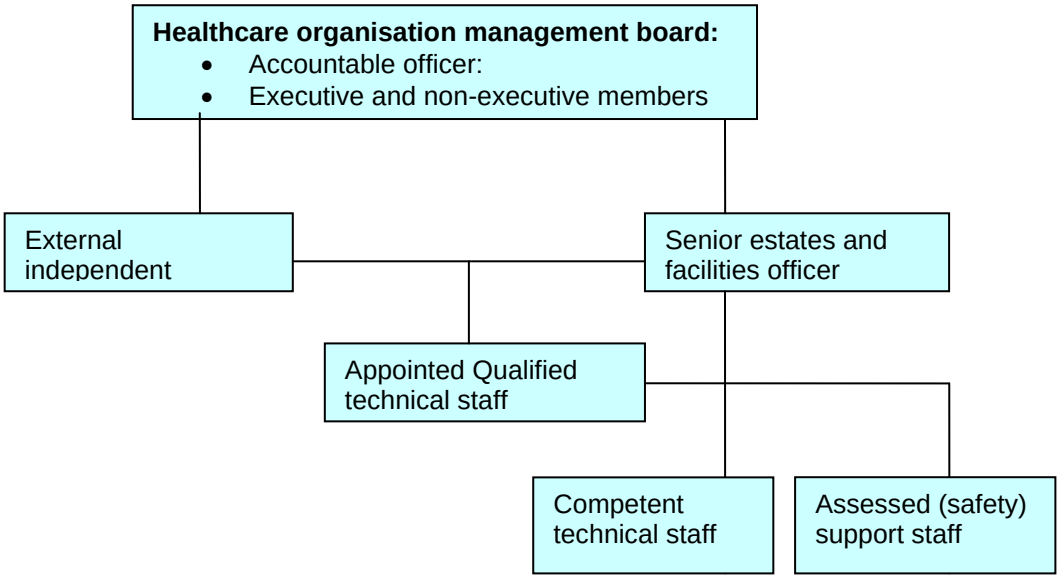


Figure 3: Management structure

Professional structure

4.8 While a Chief Executive and the NHS Board carry ultimate responsibility for a safe and secure healthcare environment, it can be assigned or delegated to other senior executives.

4.9 It may not be generally possible to maintain a senior executive with specialist knowledge for all professional services. External support may therefore be required.

4.10 An independent adviser for audit purposes, assessment and operational advice may also be required.

4.11 The structure shown in Figure 4 represents a professional approach to delivery of a specialist service.

4.12 Within a specific service, other support staff for safety, quality and process purposes may be required.

4.13 Within certain healthcare organisations, some elements of specialist services are not present (high voltage electrical, decontamination, medical gas pipelines etc). In this case, an appropriate level of external professional support should be considered.

4.14 It is possible for several organisations to share the same professional staff either individually or collectively; however, it is usual for the Authorising Engineer role to remain independent of the organisation, with particular regard to the critical audit process.

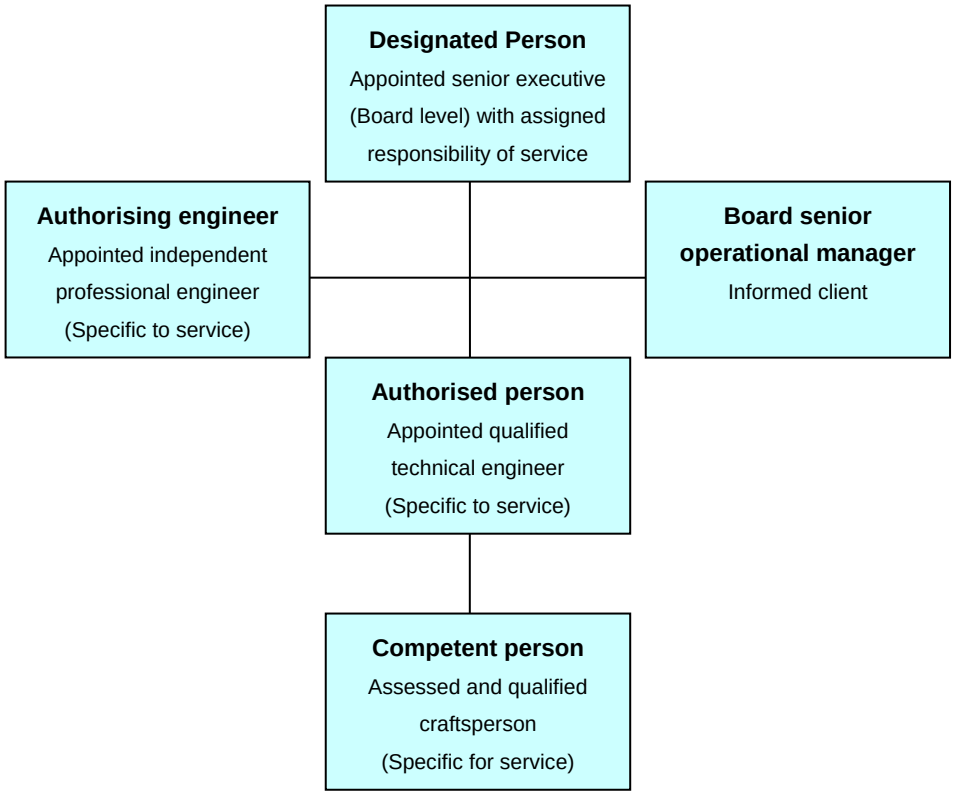


Figure 4: Professional structure

Roles and responsibilities

Designated Person (DP)

4.15 This person provides the essential senior management link between the organisation and professional support, which also provides independence of the audit-reporting process. The DP will also provide an informed position at NHS Board level.

4.16 The DP will work closely with the Senior Operational Manager to ensure that provision is made to adequately support the specialist service.

NHS Board Senior Operational Manager (SOM)

4.17 The SOM may have operational and professional responsibility for a wide range of specialist services. It is important that the SOM has access to robust, service-specific professional support, which can promote and maintain the role of the 'informed client' within the healthcare organisation. This will embrace both the maintenance and development of service-specific improvements, support the provision of the intelligent customer role and give assurance of service quality.

Authorising Engineer (AE)

4.18 The AE will act as an independent professional adviser to the healthcare organisation. The AE should be appointed by the organisation with a brief to provide services in accordance with Scottish Health Technical Memoranda guidance. This may vary in accordance with the specialist service being supported.

4.19 The AE will act as assessor and make recommendations for the appointment of Authorised Persons, monitor the performance of the service, and provide an annual audit to the DP. To carry out this role effectively, particularly with regard to audit, it is preferable that the AE remains independent of the operational structure of the NHS Board.

Authorised Person (AP)

4.20 The Authorised Person has the key operational responsibility for the specialist service. The person will be qualified and sufficiently experienced and skilled to fully operate the specialist service. He/she will be nominated by the AE and be able to demonstrate:

- his/her application through familiarization with the system and attendance at an appropriate professional course;
- a level of experience;
- evidence of knowledge and skills.

4.21 An important element of this role is the maintenance of records, quality of service and maintenance of system safety (integrity).

4.22 The AP will also be responsible for establishing and maintaining the roles and validation of Competent Persons, who may be employees of the organisation or appointed contractors.

4.23 Larger sites may need more than one AP for a particular service. Administrative duties such as record-keeping should be assigned to specific APs and recorded in the operational policies.

Competent Person (CP)

4.24 This person provides skilled installation and/or maintenance of the specialist service. The CP will be appointed, or authorised to work (if a contractor), by the AP. He/she will demonstrate a sound trade background and specific skill in the specialist service. He/she will work under the direction of the AP and in accordance with operating procedures, policies and standards of the service.

Variation by service

4.25 The particular detailed roles and responsibilities will vary between specialist services, and the guidance given in the appropriate SHTM should be followed to

ensure that the necessary safe systems of working are established and maintained.

5. Operational policy

General

5.1 The healthcare organisation's management board is responsible for setting overall operational policy, and it is the Designated Person, as the senior executive, who has responsibility for implementation.

5.2 The Scottish Health Technical Memoranda series should enable an organisation to be aware of the issues relative to a particular service and support any operational policy which has to be prepared.

5.3 It is acknowledged that some organisations have separate procedures which are referenced within the operational policy under the control of other specific departments.

5.4 Where the operation of engineering services is vital to the continued functioning of the healthcare premises, operation and maintenance may require special consideration; therefore, improving resilience within the critical engineering systems should be considered. When preparing briefing for new or refurbishment projects, consideration will require to be given to the options of having backup provision as an integral part of purchased equipment or whether designers have to make specific allowance for this.

Operational considerations

5.5 The operational policy should ensure that users are aware of the capacity of the specific system and any particular limitations.

5.6 A maintenance policy which pursues and expects the good upkeep of plant and equipment by regular inspection and maintenance is evidence of best practice.

5.7 All safety aspects of operation associated with particular plant or equipment should be clearly understood by operational staff.

5.8 Nursing, medical and other staff should be aware of the purpose of any alarm systems and of the course of action to be taken in the event of an emergency occurring.

5.9 Staff responsible for engineering plant operation should be aware of the activities necessary to ensure the continued safe operation of the system and what action to be taken in an emergency.

5.10 The Authorised Person responsible for engineering services should take a lead in explaining to users the function of the system, and organise adequate information and training about the system.

5.11 Maintenance and safety are two closely related subjects. General safety is largely dependent on good standards of maintenance being attained and staff safety disciplines being exercised.

Records/drawings

5.12 The organisation should have accurate and up-to-date records and/or drawings. These should be readily available on site, in an appropriate format, either electronically or in hard copy for use by any Authorised Person responsible for engineering services. They form part of Written Schemes as required by the Health & Safety Executive and set out in their Approved Code of Practice L8. In a PPP situation where maintenance is undertaken by consortia FM Provider, all such information should be provided for NHS Board access on a 'read-only' basis.

5.13 A unique reference number should identify the equipment. This should correspond to that shown on the records/drawings.

5.14 The records/drawings should indicate the type and make of the equipment.

5.15 Database systems could be used to link plant reference numbers to locations on drawings and detailed records of the plant and its maintenance.

5.16 A schematic diagram of the installation should also be available and displayed in each plant room or service area, scheduling key components.

5.17 When additions or alterations are to be made to existing installations, the Authorised Person responsible for engineering services should ensure that the current as-fitted information is available in an acceptable format. On completion of the work, the records/drawings should be updated and the service alterations noted and dated.

Security

5.18 All means of service isolation, regulation and control (except those in plant rooms) should be secured in such a way that they can be fixed in the 'normal' position.

5.19 In the case of those components which may have to be operated in an emergency, the fixing method should be capable of being overridden.

5.20 All plant rooms should be kept locked, suitably signed and under access control.

5.21 A procedure in the operational policy for controlling access, including in the event of an emergency, should be established.

5.22 Adequate means of engineering plant isolation and safe working areas should be provided for all operational and maintenance contingencies to allow temporary plant where required and safe working around equipment.

Monitoring of the operational policy

5.23 The Designated Person is responsible for monitoring the operational policy to ensure that it is being properly implemented. This should be carried out on a regular basis, and the procedure for such monitoring should be set out in the operational policy.

5.24 The responsibility for monitoring specific aspects may be delegated to appropriate key personnel. For example, the responsibility for monitoring the implementation of the permit-to-work procedure would normally be delegated to the Authorised Person. The details of such delegation shall be set out in the operational policy.

Contractors

5.25 All contractors should comply with the organisation's safety procedures. This should be clearly stated in the operational policy.

5.26 Work should only be carried out by suitably qualified contractors within the range of design, installation, commissioning or maintenance of services as appropriate. Evidence of current registration should be by sight of the appropriate certificate of registration.

5.27 The operational policy should set out the responsibilities for monitoring the work of contractors. The Authorised Person responsible for the specific engineering services would normally co-ordinate this. The 'call-out' procedures for a contractor, particularly in the event of a fault or an emergency, should be set out in the operational policy.

Medical equipment purchase

5.28 The Authorised Person responsible for engineering services must be consulted during initial discussions on the purchase of any significant piece of medical equipment which will be connected to the engineering services. This will be in terms of high electrical running or start-up loads, requirement for clean electrical supplies, and provision of uninterruptible power supplies (UPS), high heat gains or needs for process cooing water. This is to ensure that the systems have sufficient capacity and can continue to deliver the required service.

5.29 The policy should state the procedures to be followed and the personnel who need to be consulted before a new item of medical equipment is connected to an engineering service.

6. Emergency preparedness and contingency planning

Introduction

6.1 Under the Civil Contingencies Act 2004, certain NHS organisations (as category 1 responders) e.g. Scottish Ambulance Service, geographical NHS Boards in Scotland, Health Protection Agency (but not Health Protection Scotland) are required to assess the risk of an emergency occurring and the impact on business continuity.

6.2 The organisation should sustain plans for the purpose of minimising the impact from such emergencies, maintaining services and protecting patients and staff.

6.3 Healthcare organisations should contribute and receive information through their local strategic co-ordinating group (SCG), which exchanges views and knowledge across a wide range of services within a local community.

Note: In all aspects of emergency and operational planning, Health Boards should ensure engagement with the emergency planning officer and local security management lead.

Wider specific NHS guidance on the management of non-clinical business continuity in healthcare facilities can be found in 'The National Health Service in Scotland Manual of Guidance: responding to emergencies'.

6.4 Healthcare organisations may encounter such scenarios as:

- unplanned interruption to a utility supply (gas, water, electricity etc);
- unexpected equipment and service distribution failures (telephones, water pipework, medical gases etc);
- a civil incident (act of terrorism, civil disturbance etc);
- an environmental incident (floods, transport incident, storm damage etc).

6.5 Such failures or incidents, when they occur, can have an impact on all aspects of healthcare services, including patient care, staff comfort, and health and safety.

6.6 Failures in essential support systems may lead to patient evacuation and the temporary closure of wards, which could have a major impact on the public's confidence in a healthcare organisation.

6.7 Additionally, dependent on the scale or nature of the incident, the ability of the organisation to continue an acceptable level of healthcare services may itself be compromised.

6.8 It is the responsibility of the healthcare organisation's management to ensure that their premises comply with all legislation. (See Appendix 1 for a summary of commonly cited health and safety guidance documents.) Additionally, when considering the implications of, for example, an incident associated with terrorism, reference should also be made to 'The National Health Service in Scotland Manual of Guidance: responding to emergencies'.

6.9 Planning for such emergencies can help to reduce the impact. By developing an emergency plan, healthcare organisations should be able to restore systems to normal as quickly as possible after an emergency, using safe working methods and making the best use of available resources.

6.10 Plans need to be regularly tested and updated to meet changing circumstances.

6.11 Emergency and contingency planning cannot be carried out in isolation.

6.12 All arrangements should be agreed through consultation and dialogue.

6.13 Individual services or departments should be encouraged to accept responsibility for contingency arrangements. This is particularly important for services provided through associated contracts (via PPP partners, commercial business, service level agreements etc).

6.14 Essential-service contingency plans should not be confused with major incident plans (although the two should be consistent):

- major incident plans generally are outward looking and deal with the healthcare organisation's response to a public incident for which an immediate high level of healthcare is required;
- contingency planning is generally inward looking and deals with actions needed to maintain a healthcare facility in a safe and operational status under adverse conditions.

6.15 It is possible that some features from both plans may be needed for a complex incident, but lines of responsibility should be clearly defined and understood at all times.

Creating an emergency plan

6.16 All plans should be documented and supported by as much information as possible. This should be kept up-to-date and under constant review.

6.17 It is important to define the area to which the plan will apply. This will usually be by site rather than individual buildings to avoid repetition of procedures and to embrace the wider service issues.

6.18 From an understanding of the area and the healthcare activity that takes place, all the estates services and facilities which exist in the range of buildings on-site should be considered.

6.19 Table 1 gives a broad list of suggested topics for consideration. It is not a comprehensive list and may not be applicable to all sites, but it should act as a prompt to establish the ‘services list’.

Systems
Main electricity supply
Standby generators
UPS and other batteries
Mains water
Hot water
Treated water
Heating and ventilation
Steam
Critical cooling
Pneumatics
Building Management System
Drainage
Surface/foul/waste
Fuel supplies
Gas/oil/other
Communications
Telephones (fixed)
Mobile
Paging
Electronic
IT and Patient information system
Lifts
Sterilization and decontamination
Medical gases
Fire alarms

Services
Catering – patients and staff
Key clinical departments (A&E, theatres, critical care etc)
Estates and facilities management (including engineering, APs, CPs etc)
Transport
Portering
Administration support
Patient information
Cleaning
Waste disposal
Laundry
Medical supplies
Fuel supplies
Water drainage
Security

External Influence
Mains water contamination
Air pollution
Flooding
Mains sewage treatment failure
Transport routes and infrastructure
Infestation
Civil disturbance
Explosion
Evacuation
Terrorism incidents
Communications

Table 1: Suggested systems and services for consideration when creating an emergency plan

System resilience, planning and design

6.20 Resilience of the various systems and services (for example water and fuel) is ideally provided at the design stage of a healthcare facility. This could include:

- priority allocation of the site by local utility suppliers which provide alternative routes, for site supply, should parts of the external infrastructure be damaged or contaminated;
- resilient internal infrastructure systems which provide flexibility in services supplies to buildings;
- provision of alternative fuel sources, with appropriate storage capacity on-site (for example, fuel oil as back-up to natural gas, for boiler plant);

- enhanced levels of on-site standby capacity for electricity supplies by the use of CHP systems, the sizing of standby generator plant, and flexible electrical distribution systems;
- appropriate monitoring and storage capacity for, for example, water supplies.

6.21 Planning and designing for resilience whenever the opportunity arises, that is, when new sites/buildings or departments are being considered and when major refurbishments are taking place, is a key responsibility of the Health Board.

6.22 This will require a clear understanding of the critical operational service requirements and the type and level of ongoing service needs in the event of an emergency/incident.

6.23 Prerequisite information should be provided at the planning and design stage to enable an appropriate level of resilience to be built in. For this purpose, close liaison should take place between the organisation's emergency planning lead and the estates and facilities professionals at the earliest possible stages.

6.24 Of particular importance in times of emergency are all forms of communication systems. Email, mobile phones, advanced telephone/telemedicine and patient data systems may all require a detailed analysis of the effect of failure or loss.

6.25 Proposed changes to any communication system should ensure that consideration is given to the requirements of emergency plans and communication-service resilience before decisions are taken.

6.26 These considerations should also include home/mobile communication systems for key staff who will be required in the event of an emergency or adverse incident.

Services and priorities

6.27 Maintaining services is an essential function of business continuity and must be a priority within a contingency plan. Alternative sources of catering, laundry, waste disposal, transport etc need to be confirmed, and all lines of communication and supply chains regularly tested.

6.28 It is also necessary to discuss and establish the priorities of clinical services within the plan. These will move from life-critical functions (operating theatres, critical care areas, neonatal intensive care units, emergency care) through diagnostic services (imaging, laboratories) and on to clinical support (blood, sterile services, pharmaceutical supplies, medical gases etc).

6.29 Prioritised but flexible, estates and facilities services which underpin clinical priorities will provide a good platform for the organisation to cope with the impact of emergencies and speed up recovery to provide normal business continuity.

External impact

6.30 External influences are perhaps the most difficult element of contingency planning due to the wide range of scenarios that could be presented. Consequently, scenario planning for every eventuality is very unlikely.

6.31 However, some of the most likely scenarios and the key issues arising should be examined, evaluated and, where possible, tested to ensure that some form of response is in place for that eventuality, for example loss of major utility, external communication links etc.

Security

6.32 Areas of clinical concern, for example radiology, pathology, may require enhanced access control, and staff and contractor screening, in accordance with the 'Security Management Framework for NHS Boards in Scotland'.

6.33 Adverse incidents may present exceptional requirements to control security, access, patient and staff safety etc. Planning should ensure that measures are available and understood which may include additional staff resources (drawn from non-critical roles) for entry/exit control, increased awareness and communications, defined management responsibility etc.

Responsibility

6.34 If the issue or incident remains predominantly an estates or facilities issue, action should be coordinated through the estates and facilities management (EFM) structure. However, if the cause and/or effect escalates into a more major event, and a major incident is declared, the lines of responsibility should revert to the major incident plan structure.

6.35 Accountability must be maintained within the healthcare organisation's structure. The Chief Executive and NHS Board members must be aware of the proposed contingency plans, although it is likely that operational managers will implement the actions.

6.36 The structure of different organisations will mean that staff with varying levels of experience and expertise could be called upon to deal with estates and facilities emergencies.

6.37 Written emergency operational procedures should therefore be easily understood by those people expected to use them. For example, if the management structure is such that emergencies associated with engineering services will always be handled by a qualified and experienced engineer, the emergency operational procedure may be highly technical.

6.38 In many cases, however, standby staff who may be the first to attend an emergency will not have the technical knowledge to make appropriate decisions. If this is the case, emergency operational procedures should be detailed and specific, and should include instruction on where and how to seek

assistance from a more experienced colleague at any stage. This instruction should normally include more than one route and more than one level of management (that is, it should have some communication resilience).

Staff functions

6.39 Whether employed directly by NHS Boards or by PPP consortia FM Providers, individuals who are responsible for different parts of the emergency process should be identified, notified and trained accordingly. Key personnel will include:

- communications manager;
- incident manager;
- resource manager;
- emergency procedure manual owner.

Communications manager

6.40 This is a vital responsibility which should be assigned to someone who has a wide range of knowledge about the site and the infrastructure. It may also be necessary to co-ordinate between departments, media, public, emergency services, and other healthcare managers and providers.

Incident manager

6.41 This will probably be the most senior Operational Manager available.

Resource manager

6.42 This role is necessary for emergency procurement, contact with external support, and maintaining a record of staff on site. It is important to ensure that staff welfare requirements are also considered and included in the plans.

Emergency procedure manual owner

6.43 For each key role identified, there should be a specific copy of the manual, and individual departments should have a copy assigned to a named individual whose role it is to maintain and review the details to ensure they remain valid.

Testing the plan

6.44 Small elements of the plan should be exercised in order to familiarise staff and to test procedures.

6.45 Larger and more wide-ranging exercises should be carefully planned to ensure that control is maintained and that reversion to status quo is easily achieved. An alternative is to carry out a ‘table-top’ exercise where a scenario approach is tested and staff are challenged to deal with the issues that arise.

6.46 These approaches should engage all staff involved in contingency and emergency planning for the healthcare organisation so that all lessons learned can be shared across all services and used to update the plans.

7. Training, information and communications

General

7.1 All personnel employed in the operation and maintenance of critical engineering services, including maintenance personnel and operators, should receive adequate, documented training. Personnel should not commence their duties until this training has been completed and detailed operating instructions have been provided.

7.2 As a minimum, training should include:

- the prime function for the operation and maintenance of the critical engineering service;
- operational policies;
- safety provisions;
- first-aid (as appropriate);
- emergency procedures;
- use of respiratory equipment (as appropriate);
- duties to be performed;
- actions in the event of a fire;
- problems and hazards that can arise from failing to follow the agreed operating, monitoring and maintenance procedures;
- the permit-to-work system and safety procedures in use (when appropriate);
- the danger of making unauthorized modifications, alterations or additions to the critical engineering service, as well as the possible legal consequences;
- the procedure to be followed if it is suspected that the system is no longer operating correctly.

Building occupiers

7.3 The engineering services and their functions and operation should be explained to the building occupiers. This will assist in understanding the safe operation and capability of the particular system when changes are being considered.

Service and maintenance staff

7.4 Training of all staff involved with the operation or maintenance of the engineering services is essential to realise the optimum use of facilities and the safety of staff, patients and the public.

The required workforce (as defined by service and operational needs)

7.5 All staff involved, irrespective of employer, need to be adequately trained and competent to undertake the work expected of them. This is especially pertinent to work on critical engineering systems and services where errors may have significant implications.

7.6 Consequently, a process needs to be developed which regularly checks that the workforce is competent and suitably trained to cover all aspects of the work required. The following issues may require consideration:

- analysis of maintenance profile (review of existing practice);
- assessment of emergency repair experience (to inform staff profile);
- planned and first-line maintenance of equipment (to determine essential skills);
- recruitment and retention experience (to understand the likely labour pool available);
- skills gap (determined by an analysis);
- potential/ideal staff profile (as if setting up a new structure);
- possible training (to meet the above if not available from in-house arrangements).

7.7 From this type of assessment, it should be possible to determine the service shortfalls relative to loss of staff for which a natural replacement is not readily available, and the skill shortages of existing staff and the skill shortage for equipment or systems installed etc.

7.8 The resulting analysis may give rise to either a training need for existing staff or a need for a staff/structure review with possible training implications. It may also identify a service, which may be more cost-effectively provided by an outsourced contract.

7.9 While it is important to address the staff profile by trade or service, it may be useful for an organisation to link the outcome with other service profiles. This may indicate some common issues, economies of scale for training needs, useful feeder groups and a better general overview of the service, which can be used to inform a priority assessment.

Improving the workforce profile

7.10 Many of the traditional training routes no longer provide the level of opportunity relevant to the healthcare sector; at the same time, skills and competences needed are becoming more and more specific to the healthcare sector.

7.11 One challenge is to encourage more young people to enter the services sector of healthcare organisations under specific programmes such as the modern

apprenticeship scheme where skills can be delivered to meet a specific need. Another is to develop a multi-skilled approach to service delivery. In each case, training and development will be an important factor in the solution.

7.12 With an understanding of the existing workforce profile, a training plan may be established to meet the short, medium and long-term requirements that are needed to satisfy the organisation's requirements.

7.13 The cost of training and the cost of apprenticeships can be difficult to secure. When presented as part of an overall assessment with, at least, a medium-term plan, it can deliver cost-efficient provision of services meeting the future need of the organisation.

7.14 Training and the quality of service are inter-linked. Taking full advantage of multi-skilling and flexible working practices will begin to deliver the cost and performance efficiencies required from the services.

Criteria for operation

7.15 Maintenance staff should be trained in all relevant maintenance procedures.

7.16 The depth of training will depend on the level of required maintenance, but it should at least draw attention to any risks and safety hazards arising due to maintenance activities.

7.17 Other personnel who monitor plant or who carry out routine plant maintenance should be trained in:

- understanding the visual displays;
- acknowledging and canceling alarms;
- taking required actions following alarm messages;
- obtaining the best use of the system.

7.18 Training (including refresher training) will need to be repeated periodically in order to cater for changes in staff or the systems.

7.19 Records of the training provided should be kept up-to-date.

7.20 On completion of training, employees should be assessed by an Authorised Person to ensure that the training programme has been understood and that they are competent to undertake the work required.

8. Maintenance

General

8.1 Healthcare organisations should make available to maintenance personnel originals of commissioning data, as-fitted drawings, manuals etc, and records of any changes implemented since commissioning.

8.2 Schedules of routine maintenance activities, suggested spares lists, and operational information should be readily available. This should be achieved by the use of computer-based systems to maintain plant databases, maintenance requirements and records.

8.3 Monitoring of data from the critical engineering services enables faults to be rectified at an early date.

8.4 The actual frequency of any particular maintenance activity and the need for planned preventive maintenance of the critical engineering services should be determined and continually assessed throughout its operation. This is to avoid unnecessary routine maintenance while ensuring the services remain safe and available.

8.5 The initial frequency of maintenance will depend on the manufacturer's recommendations and the circumstances of application.

8.6 Record sheets should be completed for all maintenance actions.

Maintenance contractors

8.7 Organisations may arrange for the appointment of a contractor to provide a maintenance service and emergency breakdown support should directly-employed staff not be suitably qualified or available.

8.8 Initial maintenance of equipment is particularly important to establish validation of warranties. Responsibility for this can be focused effectively by including the first 12 months maintenance in the supply contract. If maintenance is to be provided by the supplier/installer, it will be advantageous to detail the costs in the initial tender invitations.

8.9 The maintenance contractor may not be the equipment provider, services manufacturer or the installation contractor. Clear understanding needs to be established as to who is responsible for what, and what maintenance service will be provided.

8.10 Management should be satisfied that the contractor responsible for the regular maintenance of the engineering services employs staff who:

- understand the extent and nature of the healthcare to which the service relates;
- are competent to do the work and have had the necessary training;
- have a knowledge of the installed system;
- maintain a current awareness of the manufacturers' equipment, including computer hardware and software;
- have access to modern diagnostic equipment;
- have good technical support;
- are supported by an adequate supply of spares.

8.11 Records of service reports and attendance dates (both scheduled and achieved) should always be available.

Maintenance policy

8.12 A maintenance policy that pursues and expects the good upkeep of equipment by regular inspection and overhaul is a sign of good management. An appreciation of safety, at all times, by operational staff should be encouraged.

Tools

8.13 Special tools to carry out the necessary basic level of breakdown, maintenance or overhaul should be held in stock.

8.14 Instrumentation and tools which are classified as safety tools should always be available on site, and their position known to those who may need to use them.

Instructions

8.15 It is essential that practical training is given to all operational and maintenance staff to ensure that work routines, operational procedures, and correct application of the safety procedures and rules are implemented.

8.16 Initial and, where appropriate, ongoing training should be given by the manufacturer to all technical staff as part of the contract requirement, and should be based on the operating and maintenance manuals, which themselves should be supplied as part of the contract.

Maintenance frequency

8.17 The frequency of maintenance will be influenced by several operating factors, such as information supplied by manufacturers. This information should be used to maintain the operational integrity of an item of plant or equipment.

8.18 Planned preventive maintenance (or maintenance at fixed intervals irrespective of a service need) should be balanced against the application of breakdown maintenance. The best approach may be a mix of both, depending upon local factors and circumstances.

Maintenance planning

8.19 Irrespective of the scale of operation, maintenance programmes are essential to ensure that all the critical engineering service equipment is checked, inspected, tested, repaired or replaced at the appropriate time. This makes sound economic sense, as it enhances the operational life span of the equipment and maximises the potential for its availability for use.

8.20 To ensure that an organised maintenance programme is carried out economically, it should be supported by a reporting system of 'defect and failure'. Classifications of urgency would allow for those defects requiring extensive plant isolation and shutdown to be slotted into the overall planned maintenance programme to minimise disruption.

Original commissioning tests

8.21 It is strongly recommended that the original tests are checked and/or witnessed by suitably qualified staff on behalf of the client and signed off by both client and contractor.

8.22 These tests generate the contractually agreed records of the original commissioning procedures related to particular items of equipment or plant. They must be accurate, retained and kept in a safe place. Reference to these documents should be made from copies, as they represent the history of the equipment or plant. The originals should not be handled for reference purposes in confirming tests or in discussion, the exception being as legal documents.

Original and amended drawings

8.23 As with test records, these drawings have contractual significance, being the original as-built form.

8.24 They are legal documents showing the assembly and construction of a system, and healthcare organisations should ensure that complete and accurate drawings are handed over to them prior to acceptance of the work.

8.25 These drawings, with dated amendments made during the construction phase up to final acceptance, should not be amended. Where subsequent changes are made, these should be entered on separate amended drawings and noted to indicate the date and reference as appropriate.

Functional tests

8.26 Functional tests are a practical demonstration of the operation of an item of equipment or plant. The commissioning functional test record sheet should be

preserved for future reference. It will be the comparative reference for all future maintenance tests throughout the life of the item of equipment or plant.

8.27 The frequency of such routine tests can depend on the use of the equipment as represented by the running hours or operations. Experience may well dictate this requirement on the basis of routine and specific time-checks.

Inspections prior to re-commissioning

8.28 Before any engineering service equipment or plant is put back into service following a period of maintenance, a thorough inspection of all operational controls, protection settings, alarms and indications should be carried out. This would normally be the responsibility of the person undertaking the work, the Competent Person, or the Authorised Person.

Planned maintenance programme

General

8.29 The planned maintenance programme should be designed according to the following principles:

- where the correct functioning of important components is not necessarily verified by the periodic tests prescribed for the critical engineering service, those components should be regularly tested, and reference to testing them should be included in the schedules of maintenance tasks. This applies, for example, to door interlocks that may only be required to perform their safety function when presented with an abnormal condition;
- the maintenance programme should include, at appropriate intervals, those tasks such as lubrication and occasional dismantling of particular components (such as pumps), the need for which is indicated by normal industry best practice, manufacturer's advice and experience. Apart from those tasks, the maintenance programme should concentrate on verifying the condition of the critical engineering service and its components by means of testing and examination without dismantling. Parts that are working correctly should not be disturbed unnecessarily;
- maintenance should be carried out under a quality system such as BS EN ISO 9000. Spares fitted to critical engineering services constructed under a quality system should be sourced from the manufacturer or a similarly approved quality system.

Design of a planned maintenance programme

8.30 The planned maintenance (PM) programme supplied by the manufacturer should be used where it is available. If no manufacturer's programme can be obtained, a programme should be drawn up in consultation with the Authorised Person and the maintenance person.

8.31 Although the manufacturer may carry out certain inspection and maintenance procedures under the terms of his guarantee, these may not constitute a full PM programme. The user or their representative should therefore ensure that the complete PM programme is carried out by the maintenance person during the guarantee period.

8.32 The user or their representative should also implement any reasonable instructions given by the manufacturer during this period. Failure to carry out maintenance tasks and periodic tests could affect safety.

8.33 A set of procedures should be developed for each critical engineering service, containing full instructions for each maintenance task.

8.34 It is important that maintenance is planned so that any plant or equipment is out of service for as little time as possible.

8.35 Where practicable, maintenance should be scheduled immediately to precede any periodic tests.

Review of the planned maintenance programme

8.36 The PM programme, procedures and records should be reviewed at least once a year by the user and the maintenance person in association with the Authorised Person. To do this, it is necessary to keep systematic records of all work done, so that judgement can be made in consultation with the manufacturer on what changes, if any, to the PM programme would be best.

8.37 The review should aim to identify:

- any emerging defects;
- any changes required to the maintenance programme;
- any changes to any maintenance procedure;
- any additional training required by personnel concerned with maintenance;
- whether records have been completed satisfactorily, signed and dated.

9. Engineering services

Management of access to engineering services

9.1 Healthcare organisations have the responsibility to ensure that all service installations are specified, designed, installed, commissioned and maintained (including future upgrade) with consideration for services modifications and dismantling during the life of the building. This responsibility is not diminished in PPP projects.

9.2 To satisfy these requirements, it is recommended that organisations:

- designate a person responsible to co-ordinate or oversee all engineering services to ensure that the services do not have any adverse effects on each other, the structure and personnel safety;
- ensure that a project file is available for all new projects, alterations or extensions, regardless of the size of the project. The file should contain specifications, drawings, and maintenance information including access and safe disposal at the end of its useful life;
- ensure that adequate space is provided for installation and maintenance staff and appropriate access to services;
- adequately brief the designers on the current and future maintenance policies;
- ensure that any new work, alterations or modifications do not restrict existing access to plant and equipment.

9.3 Details of any asbestos survey must be made available to the design team and any contractors prior to carrying out any work.

9.4 The Control of Asbestos at Work Regulations 2006 includes duties to protect those who come into contact with asbestos unknowingly or accidentally. The survey report should include details of any asbestos-containing materials, their condition and location, and when they were last inspected.

9.5 A zoning policy allocating particular zones for specific services should be agreed early in the design stage. The policy should also allocate crossover zones, minimum separation distances and shielding requirements in the event of it not being possible to meet these requirements.

9.6 Before putting any engineering systems into service, the installation should be inspected, and it should be verified that access is available for commissioning, maintenance, and future upgrading.

9.7 It should also be verified that there are adequate provisions made for additional services and dismantling during the life of the system.

Development planning

9.8 It is essential to ensure that both the engineering and architectural aspects are developed in harmony from project inception. This should ensure that systems are safely integrated in terms of location, distribution and future developments, and that service resilience is planned from the start.

9.9 The architectural design must permit sufficient space for services. Provision of extra space to allow for future development is considered as best practice.

9.10 Accurate and detailed drawings are essential for providing space requirements. However, these may not be available at the early design stage. An estimate of space requirements may have to be made on preliminary drawings in order to avoid costly revisions.

Distribution requirements

9.11 An assessment of the distribution requirements should be considered, taking into account communication, area, plant and distribution. This must be related to the specific size and shape of the building etc.

9.12 Accommodation of vertical services will be decided at an early design stage. The information may be in the form of total area requirements to be divided later as design progresses.

9.13 Resilience and flexibility of services distribution should be included at an early stage.

9.14 Departments that require heavily-loaded services should be grouped together and located near to the distribution centre if possible. This avoids large runs and therefore distribution losses. Dependent on the building design, it may be advantageous for services to follow the main communication routes.

9.15 The Energy Centre is usually the first plant room whose location is determined on site. This allows the main service routes to be determined. The next step would be to determine areas required for other plant rooms including, for example, those at rooftop level.

9.16 Consideration should be given to maximising the flexibility of engineering services to allow the maximum possible changes in the use of hospital departments.

9.17 In multi-storey buildings:

- restricted flexibility is achieved when there is a small number of large vertical ducts with provision for horizontal space above ceiling level and below structural members; the number of vertical service ducts will be a function of the limitation of void spaces to accommodate horizontal distribution of ventilation ductwork and other electrical and piped services. Each vertical duct should contain service space for future additional ducting

but, in briefing this, designers should be given a suggested percentage or rationale behind this requirement.

- generally, more flexibility is achieved by a large number of smaller vertical ducts with ceiling spaces for horizontal distribution as necessary;
- the omission of space above ceilings produces the least flexible arrangement.

9.18 Convenient access should be provided to all service spaces.

9.19 In single-storey buildings:

- sufficient headroom should be allowed for installation and maintenance purposes;
- if a service trench is provided, where practicable, removable covers should be provided over the complete length of the trench.

Access

9.20 Access to services should be considered at every stage of both the architectural and engineering design process.

9.21 The frequency of access required should be the main factor considered.

Frequent access:

- immediate access is required for plant, valves, switches and other controls requiring frequent attention for safe operation and maintenance;
- if enclosed, the access should be by door or panel;
- adequate clearance should be provided for ease of working.

Intermittent access:

- items that require access at intervals (for example monthly) can be provided by means of floor traps, removable panels in walls, false ceilings and so on. It is recommended that access panels be fitted by means of retained quick-release mechanisms rather than screws and cups.

Renewal or modification of service:

- most, if not all, services may require modification or renewal during the useful life of the building. Accommodation should be planned for this to occur, taking into account weight, size and configuration of the item. During non-emergency renewals, it may be possible to remove doorframes, windows, partitions and other non-structural items. The renewal or modification of minor items does not usually create problems except where piping or cable lengths are restrictive;

- the destruction of finishes to open up a trench or vertical duct or existing access could be more economic than the provision of expensive but rarely-used permanent access. Costs versus savings must be considered with regard to the cost of inconvenience/disruption to functions incurred at the time of replacement.

Working in confined spaces

9.22 A confined-space permit-to-work system should be established, and personnel trained in the use of the system.

9.23 The system should address the following points:

- assessment of the task to be undertaken;
- identification of the potential risks/hazards;
- ventilation;
- air quality testing, prior to entry and continuously during access requirements;
- provision for special tools and lighting;
- working methods;
- implementation of the working methods;
- monitoring of compliance of the system;
- actions in case of emergency;
- communication;
- First-aid.

Appendix 1: Summary of key legislation

The following paragraphs give a wider explanation of the itemised legislation listed in paragraph 3.6. They are not a definitive summary, but are intended to explain more fully the broad content. Reference should be made to the current full documents if consideration of the legislation is thought appropriate.

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974

1. This is the prime piece of UK general safety legislation, and gives Government ministers the legal powers to enact Regulations.

All employers, including healthcare organisations, have a general duty under the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, the health, safety and welfare of their patients, employees and visitors and members of the public who may be affected by workplace activities.

These duties are legally enforceable, and the Health and Safety Executive has successfully prosecuted employers including health authorities and trusts for breaches of this statute. It falls upon owners and occupiers of premises to ensure that there is a management regime for the proper design, installation and maintenance of plant, equipment and systems. It is important to note that failure to have a proper system of work and adequate control measures can also constitute an offence even though an incident has not occurred.

Key requirements are:

The duties of employer to:

- issue each employee with a safety policy statement;
- provide a safe system of work;
- give adequate training and supervision;
- provide for the health, safety and welfare of all (employees, contractors and public) those affected by their business.

The duties of employees to:

- use equipment provided correctly;
- work in accordance with the organisation's policies;
- be responsible for their own acts and omissions;
- co-operate with their employer.

Factories Act 1961

2. The Factories Act 1961 and the Offices, Shops and Railway Premises (Hoists and Lifts) Regulations 1968 require that every power-driven lift should be of

good mechanical construction, sound material and adequate strength etc. The act refers to maintenance and thorough examination by an Authorised Person (Lifts) every six months, and states that a report of the result of every such examination should be prepared.

The NHS and Community Care Act 1990

3. Section 60 of the NHS and Community Care Act 1990 removed Crown immunity from the NHS and specified Health Service bodies from 1 April 1991 with only a few exemptions. This Act brings the local authority and the Health and Safety Executive into play and puts the NHS into a comparable position to any other organisation.

Consumer Protection Act 1987

4. The aim of the Consumer Protection Act 1987 is to help to safeguard the consumer from products that do not reach a reasonable level of safety. The main areas dealt with can be described as product liability and consumer safety.

The Act allows injured persons to sue producers, importers and 'own-branders' for death, personal injury or losses on private property, and the injured party must be able to show that on the balance of probabilities, the defect in the product caused the damage.

Defective products are defined as being those where the safety of the product is not such as persons generally are entitled to expect. On the other hand, a product will not be considered defective simply because it is of poor quality or because a safer version is subsequently put on the market.

Disability Discrimination Act 2005

5. The Disability Discrimination Act (DDA) was first enacted in 1995 to end the discrimination that people with disabilities face. The provisions introduced by the 2005 Act have been enforceable since December 2006. It extended the scope of part 3 of the 1995 Act to include the functions of public authorities. It created new duties for providers of premises and transport services. It protects people with disabilities in:

- employment;
- access to goods, facilities and services;
- the management, buying or renting of land or property;
- education.

Public authority functions:

Since December 2006, Part 3 of the 1995 Act has applied to the functions carried out by a public authority. The original DDA did not apply to the exercise of certain functions by public authorities (such as arrests by the police) as these do not constitute the provision of a service to the public. The provisions relating

to 'public authority functions' only apply where other parts of the 1995 Act do not already apply (section 21B (7)).

The Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999

6. Employer's duties include:

- making assessments of risk to the health and safety of their employees and acting upon risks they identify, so as to eliminate or reduce them;
- appointing competent persons to oversee workplace health and safety;
- providing employees with information and training on occupational health and safety;
- operating a written health and safety policy.

Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992

7. The main provisions require employers to provide:

- adequate lighting, heating, ventilation and workspace, to be kept in a clean condition;
- staff facilities: toilets, washing and refreshment;
- safe passageways (for example preventing slipping and tripping hazards).

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998

8. The main provisions require employers to:

- ensure the safety and suitability of work equipment for the purpose for which it is provided;
- properly maintain the equipment, irrespective of its age;
- provide information, instruction and training on the use of equipment;
- protect employees from dangerous parts of machinery.

Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992

9. The main provisions require employers to:

- so far as is reasonably practicable, avoid the need for employees to undertake any manual handling involving risk of injury;
- make assessments of manual handling risks, and try to reduce the risk of injury (the assessment should consider the task, the load, and the individual's capability);
- provide workers with information on the weight of each load.

Personal Protective Equipment at Work Regulations 1992

10. The main provisions require employers to:

- ensure that suitable personal protective equipment (PPE) is provided "*wherever there are risks to health and safety that cannot be adequately controlled in other ways".* The PPE must be 'suitable' for the risk in question, and include protective facemasks and goggles, safety helmets, gloves, air filters, ear defenders, overalls and protective footwear";
- provide information, training and instruction on the use of this equipment.

Health and Safety (Display Screen Equipment) Regulations 1992

11. The main provisions apply to display screen equipment (DSE) 'users' (defined as workers who 'habitually' use a computer as a significant part of their normal work). This includes people who are regular users of DSE equipment, or rely on it as part of their job. This covers their use DSE for an hour or more continuously, and/or you are making daily use of DSE.

Employers are required to:

- make a risk assessment of workstation use by DSE users, and reduce the risks identified;
- ensure DSE users take 'adequate breaks';
- provide regular eyesight tests;
- provide health and safety information;
- provide adjustable furniture (desk, chair etc);
- demonstrate that they have adequate procedures designed to reduce risks associated with DSE work.

Confined Spaces Regulations 1997

12. The Confined Spaces Regulations 1997 require employers firstly to avoid the need to enter a confined space. Where this is not possible, they must:

- carry out an assessment of the risks associated with entering a confined space and draw up a safe system of work;
- limit entry to the confined space to employees who are competent for confined space work and who have received suitable training;
- verify, prior to entry, that the atmosphere in the confined space is safe to breathe;
- provide any necessary ventilation;
- make sure that suitable rescue arrangements are in place before anyone goes into the confined space. These rescue arrangements should not involve risks to the safety of the people intended to carry out the rescue.

The Reporting of Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations 1995 (RIDDOR 95)

13. These Regulations set out the responsibilities for employers, the self-employed or those in control of work premises to report certain injuries, diseases and dangerous occurrences.

The following events must be reported by the quickest possible route (normally telephone).

If there is an accident connected with work and:

- any person is killed;
- member of the public is taken to hospital;
- a specified major injury or work-related disease (certified by a doctor) occurs to a person at work;
- any specified type of dangerous occurrence occurs, whether or not injury results.

Report the following events within ten days:

- if a person injured at work is absent from work or unable to do their normal work for more than three consecutive days (including non-work days);
- If a doctor notifies you that your employee suffers from a work-related disease.

Prosecution may follow for failing to notify the relevant authority of any of the above.

Examples of major injuries:

- fracture other than to fingers, thumbs or toes;
- amputation;
- dislocation of the shoulder, hip, knee or spine;
- loss of sight (temporary or permanent);
- loss of consciousness.

Examples of dangerous occurrences:

- failure of load-bearing parts of lifts and lifting equipment;
- explosion, collapse or bursting of any pressure vessel or associated pipework;
- electrical short-circuit or overload causing fire or explosion.

The Working Time (Amendment) Regulations 2002

14 The Regulations implement two European Union (EU) Directives on the organisation of working time and the employment of young workers (under 18 years of age). The Regulations cover the right to annual leave, to have rest breaks, and they limit the length of the working week.

Key protections include:

- a 48-hour maximum working week. Employers have a contractual obligation not to require a worker to work more than an average 48-hour week;
- four weeks paid holiday;
- minimum daily rest periods of 11 hours, unless shift-working arrangements have been made that comply with the Regulations;
- 20-minute daily rest breaks after six hours work, with young workers entitled to 45 minutes if more than 4½ hours are worked;
- a weekly rest period of 24 hours every seven days.

Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (COSHH) 2002

15. The COSHH legislation puts specific responsibilities on the employer as follows:

- they must assess the possible risks to health that may occur due to exposure to the substance before it is used;
- they must ensure prevention or practical control to exposure;
- they have a duty to ensure that the control measures are used, adequately maintained, and that they are examined and tested;
- they should monitor exposure and carry out health surveillance;
- they should ensure that their employees are informed of the hazards, instructed, and that they are given adequate training;
- the employer should review the risk assessment on a regular basis.

Too often, the first control measure that the employer adopts is the use of PPE (personal protective equipment). That is not to say that PPE cannot be used in tandem with the other control measures, should the risk assessment find it necessary. **PPE does not remove the hazard**. The hierarchal ladder of control measures as follows:

Prevent exposure by:

- eliminating the substance;
- substitution with a substance less hazardous to health.

Control exposure by:

- total enclosure of the process, therefore removing exposure;

- limiting the area of contamination;
- the use of LEV (local exhaust ventilation);
- dilution ventilation;
- reducing the period of exposure;
- providing suitable PPE.

The COSHH Regulations relate to any substance irrespective of its form including, gas, solid, dust, liquid, vapour, aerosol or micro organisms. Furthermore, substances not deemed to be detrimental to health can cause problems if not used correctly.

Health and Safety (First-Aid) Regulations 1981 and Miscellaneous Amendments 2002

16. These Regulations require an employer to provide adequate and appropriate equipment facilities and first-aid to be given to their employees if they are injured or become ill at work.

The Health and Safety Executive guidance states there is no mandatory list of items that must be included in a first-aid kit - the contents will depend on the employer's overall assessment of need.

The minimum requirements for first-aid for any workplace are:

- a suitably stocked first-aid kit/container;
- a person appointed to take charge of first-aid arrangements;
- information for all employees on first-aid arrangements.

Health and Safety (Consultation with Employees) Regulations 1996

17. Under these Regulations, all employees must now be consulted by their employers on health and safety matters. Employers can consult employees individually or through representatives elected by groups of employees in their place of work.

In general, the consultation should cover such aspects as:

- changes at work which may substantially affect the health and safety of people at work, such as changes in systems of work, procedures or equipment;
- the employer's compliance with the requirement to appoint competent persons to assist in meeting health and safety legislation;
- information resulting from risk assessments on likely risks and dangers, measures to control or eliminate such dangers, and what employees own actions should be if confronted by risk or danger;

- the consequences for health and safety standards of the introduction of new technology.

Health and Safety Information for Employees Regulations 1989

18. These Regulations require employers to provide their employees with certain basic information concerning their health, safety and welfare at work. This information is contained in both a poster and a leaflet approved by the Health and Safety Executive. Employers can comply with their duty by either displaying the poster or providing employees with a copy of the leaflet.

Some of the more recent changes to the poster are:

- removal of references to repealed duties under the Factories Act 1961 and the Offices, Shops and Railway Premises Act 1963;
- reference to the main duties under some of the more recent legislation;
- drawing attention to the duty to consult employees or their representatives on health and safety;
- The inclusion on the poster of two further information boxes which the employer is encouraged to complete as appropriate in order to personalize the information. These give details of the names and locations of employee, health and safety representatives, and the names of competent persons appointed by the employer together with their health and safety responsibilities.

Health and Safety (Safety Signs and Signals) Regulations 1996

19. These Regulations specify minimum requirements for safety signs at work. They implement a European Directive aimed at encouraging the standardisation of safety signs throughout Europe.

Safety signs are not a substitute for other methods of controlling risks, such as engineering controls and safe systems of work.

Fire safety signs are also covered in these Regulations.

Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Regulations 1998 and (Amendment) Regulations 2004

20. All employers need liability insurance unless they are exempt under the Employers Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act. The following employers are exempt:

- most public organisations including government departments and agencies, local authorities, police authorities and nationalized industries;
- health service bodies, including NHS trusts, health authorities, primary care trusts and Scottish Health Boards;

- some other organisations which are financed through public funds, such as passenger transport executives and magistrates courts committees;
- family businesses. However, this exemption does not apply to family businesses which are incorporated as limited companies.

Further exemptions from the need to have employers' liability insurance are listed at section 3(1) (a) and section 3(1) (b) of the Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act 1969, and Schedule 2 to the 1998 Regulations.

Employers must insure against liability for injury or disease sustained by an employee in the course of their employment. The sum to be insured is not less than £5 million. The certificate of insurance must be displayed in an appropriate location.

Health and Safety (Training for Employment) Regulations 1990

21. These Regulations extend the health and safety legislation to all those receiving 'relevant training' as defined by the Regulations. This includes government training schemes and students and pupils on work experience.

These Regulations extend 'work' in the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 to include 'relevant training'. Those in training will be treated as employees of the immediate training provider.

For health and safety purposes, training for employment means that participants in many of the government's schemes will be employees, unless the training is provided by an educational establishment as defined by the Regulations.

Recent reforms in the Health Service mean that teaching institutions are now separate establishments from hospitals. However, the trainees spend much time in the associated hospital on educational visits. If these visits are purely for observation, it is unlikely they are 'relevant training' but if the trainees help with the work of the hospital, assisting doctors at clinics or in caring for patients, this might be 'relevant training', and the hospital, as the immediate provider, would have duties under section 2 of the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974.

Safety Representatives and Safety Committees Regulations 1977

22. If an employer recognizes a trade union and that trade union has appointed, or is about to appoint, safety representatives under the Safety Representatives and Safety Committee Regulations 1977, the employer must consult those safety representatives on matters affecting the group or groups of employees they represent. Members of these groups of employees may include people who are not members of that trade union.

Control of Asbestos at Work Regulations 2006

23. The Control of Asbestos at Work Regulations deals with the management of risk from asbestos in non-domestic buildings and requires duty holders (landlords, lessees, owners) to:

- take reasonable steps to find materials in premises likely to contain asbestos, and to check their condition;
- presume that materials contain asbestos unless there is strong evidence to suppose they do not;
- make a written record of the location and condition of asbestos and presumed asbestos-containing materials, and keep the record up-to-date;
- assess the risk of the likelihood of anyone being exposed to these materials;
- prepare a plan to manage that risk and put it into effect to ensure that:
  - any material known or presumed to contain asbestos is kept in a good state of repair;
  - any material that contains or is presumed to contain asbestos is, because of the risks associated with its location or condition, repaired or, if necessary, removed;
  - Information on the location and condition of the material is given to anyone potentially at risk.

Electrical

Electricity Act 1989

24. The primary legislation governing the electricity supply industry in Great Britain is the Electricity Act 1989 and the Utilities Act 2000. The 2000 Act established the Gas and Electricity Markets Authority – the office of which is known as Ofgem, the principal duties of which include:

- protect the interests of consumers by, wherever possible, promoting effective competition in generation, transmission, distribution or supply;
- secure reasonable demand for electricity is met;
- have regard to the interests of the disabled and sick, the elderly, those on low incomes and those in rural areas.

Electricity Safety, Quality and Continuity Regulations 2002

25. These Regulations revoke the Electricity Supply Regulations 1988 and all subsequent amendments. The requirements are separated into broad equipment categories and include:

- protection and earthing;
- substations;
- underground cables and equipment;
- overhead lines;
- generation;

- supplies to installations and other networks.

They impose requirements regarding the installation and use of electric lines and apparatus of suppliers of electricity, including provisions for connections with earth. These Regulations are administered by the Engineering Inspectorate of the Electricity Division of the Department of Energy, and may impose requirements which are in addition to those of the Electricity at Work Regulations.

Electricity at Work Regulations 1989

26. These Regulations apply to all workplaces and the electrical equipment used in them. They require precautions to be taken against the risk of death or personal injury from the use of electricity in work activities and commercial premises.

They impose duties in respect of:

- systems, electrical equipment and conductors;
- competence of persons working on or near electrical equipment.

The employers and self-employed people must make sure that everything that uses or carries electricity in the workplace is safe, that employees do not interfere with or abuse anything electrical that has been supplied for their use, or bring into the workplace anything electrical that is unsafe.

Employees must be instructed to report any damaged electrical equipment to their supervisors immediately and to not carry out any electrical work themselves, unless competent and authorised by the employer.

One of the most important elements of electrical safety is the need for routine visual inspections of electrical equipment. The visual checking of electrical leads to appliances, for example, should be made a part of every employee's work habits.

To achieve compliance with the Regulations, organisations need to make arrangements to make sure that all portable electrical appliances are safe to use. The items may already be high-risk, for example electrical drills, or the danger may be increased by using them in a high-risk environment such as wet conditions. These items particularly must be inspected by a competent person on a regular basis.

It is recommended that a record of all maintenance, including test results, is kept for each appliance.

BS 7671:2008 (IEE Wiring Regulations, 17th Edition)

27. The IEE Wiring Regulations (now called BS 7671 'Requirements for electrical installations') are an all-encompassing set of documents that give both technical and practical guidance on the installation and maintenance of electrical services.

While not being encompassed in an Act of Parliament, the Regulations do have sufficient recognition to make it unthinkable to install electrical services that do not comply with the Regulations. Their primary purpose is to ensure that all electrical installations are safe.

The Regulations are in seven parts, supported by various amendments, as follows:

- Part 1 'Scope, objects and fundamental requirements for safety';
- Part 2 'Definitions';
- Part 3 'Assessment of general characteristics';
- Part 4 'Protection for safety';
- Part 5 'Selection and erection of equipment';
- Part 6 'Special installations or locations – particular requirements';
- Part 7 'Inspection and testing'.

In addition, the 17th Edition has a number of publications called 'guides' which include much material previously to be found in appendices. These guides must be considered to form part of the Regulations.

Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 1994

28. These Regulations replace the Low Voltage Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 1989 and impose additional requirements on manufacturers. The rules cover electrical equipment designed or adapted for use between 50 and 1000 Volts ac or 75 and 1500 Volts dc. Electrical equipment manufacturers whose equipment falls within the scope of the Regulations must:

- CE marks the equipment, or the packaging, instruction sheet, or guarantee that accompanies the equipment. Components that are themselves 'electrical equipment' must also carry CE marking;
- issue a Declaration of Conformity that confirms in writing that the product complies with the requirements of the Regulations;
- compile technical documentation, which must be kept for ten years.

Plugs and Sockets etc (Safety) Regulations 1994

29 These Regulations require domestic plugs in the UK to be independently certificated as complying with BS 1363. Domestic socket-outlets, adaptors, fuse-links etc are required to meet the relevant British Standard. Additionally, the Regulations require most domestic electrical appliances to be pre-fitted with a compliant standard plug.

Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Regulations 2000 and Amendment 2003

30. This applies to radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment, ensuring that relevant products meet certain minimum essential requirements concerning health and safety, electromagnetic interference, and radio spectrum requirements.

Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2005

31. These Regulations apply to almost all electrical and electronic appliances, and regulate radio interference from electrical equipment. For the purposes of being able to test whether or not equipment complies with the Regulations, tests are divided into five classes:

- radiated emissions - checks to ensure that the product does not emit unwanted radio signals;
- conducted emissions - checks to ensure the product does not send out unwanted signals along its supply connections and connections to any other apparatus;
- radiated susceptibility - checks that the product can withstand a typical level of electromagnetic pollution;
- conducted susceptibility - checks that the product can withstand a typical level of noise on the power and other connections;
- electrostatic discharge - checks that the product is immune to a reasonable amount of static electricity.

Mechanical

Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 1992 and Supply of Machinery (Safety) (Amendment) Regulations 1994

32. These Regulations place duties on those who supply machinery and safety components, including manufacturers, importers and others in the supply chain. They set out the essential requirements which must be met before machinery or safety components may be supplied in the UK.

There are basically three steps to dealing with the requirements:

- the responsible person should ensure that machinery and safety components satisfy the relevant essential health and safety requirements of the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations and that, where appropriate, relevant conformity assessment procedures have been carried out;
- the responsible person must issue a declaration of conformity (or a declaration of incorporation) which is issued with the finished product so that it is available to the user. This will contain various details such as the manufacturer's address, the machinery type and serial number, and the harmonized European or other standards used in design;

- when the first two steps have been satisfactorily completed, the responsible person or person supplying or assembling the final product should affix the CE marking if they are satisfied it is safe.

Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER)

33. In general, these Regulations require that any lifting equipment used at work for lifting or lowering loads is:

- strong and stable enough for particular use and marked to indicate safe working loads;
- positioned and installed to minimize any risks;
- used safely: that is, the work is planned, organised and performed by competent people;
- subject to ongoing thorough examination and, where appropriate, inspection by competent people.

Gas Appliances (Safety) Regulations 1995

34. These Regulations apply to domestic and commercial gas appliances used for cooking, heating, hot water production, refrigeration, lighting or washing (with no limit on power), excluding appliances which have a normal operating temperature above 105°C. Appliances for use in industrial processes on industrial premises are specifically excluded.

Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations 1998

35. These Regulations cover safe installation, maintenance and use of gas systems and appliances in domestic and commercial premises.

Lifts Regulations 1997

36. These Regulations apply to lifts permanently serving buildings and constructions, and specified safety components. All lifts and safety components placed on the market from 1 July 1999 in the UK, including imports, will have to:

- be safe (in the case of a safety component, enable the lift in which it is installed to be safe);
- meet the relevant essential health and safety requirements in their design, construction and installation;
- satisfy the appropriate conformity assessment procedure set out in the Regulations;
- carry CE marking;
- be accompanied by an EU declaration of conformity.

Additional duties include:

- liaise between installers of lifts and those responsible for work on the building or construction;
- keep lift shafts free of extraneous piping, wiring and other fittings;
- keep the supply of relevant information to those who are entitled to it.

Noise at Work Regulations 2005

37. These Regulations impose a duty on employers to reduce risk of damage to hearing of employees from exposure to noise. They require employers to assess the noise to which employees may be exposed.

Usually the important factors are:

- the noise level given in decibels (dBA);
- exposure – how long employees are exposed to the noise (not only daily but over a number of years).

If in doubt, it is important to have the noise exposure to workers assessed by a competent person, tell the workers of the findings, reduce the noise as far as reasonably practicable, and implement ear protection measures that are required. Routine monitoring of the situation should follow.

Pressure Systems Safety Regulations 2000

38. These Regulations revoke and replace the Pressure Systems and Transportable Gas Containers Regulations 1989. These Regulations apply to all plant/systems which contain a relevant fluid (steam, gas under pressure and liquids under pressure which become gases upon release to the atmosphere) at a pressure greater than 0.5 bar above atmospheric. Certain small vessels, where the combination of the internal volume and pressure of the vessel is less than 250 bar litres, are exempt from some parts of the Regulations.

The Regulations require users to:

- establish the safe operating limits of the plant;
- have a suitable written scheme drawn up or certified by a competent person for the examination at appropriate intervals of:
  - most pressure vessels,
  - all safety devices,
  - any pipework which is potentially dangerous;
- arrange to have examinations carried out by a competent person at the intervals set out in the scheme;
- provide adequate operating instructions (including emergency instructions) to any person operating it (for example operating manual supplemented by on-the-job training and supervision for new staff);
- ensure the pressure system is maintained in good repair;

- keep adequate records of the most recent examination and any manufacturer's records supplied with the new plant;
- distinguish between installed or mobile systems and whether owner or user is responsible.

The Pressure Equipment Regulations 1999 and (Amendment) Regulations 2002

39. These Regulations apply to the design and construction aspects of pressure equipment intended to contain a gas or liquid at 0.5 bar gauge or above. Assemblies of such equipment (that is, a pressure system) are also covered.

Simple Pressure Vessels (Safety) Regulations 1991

40. The legislation harmonises national laws of member states across the European Union regarding the design, manufacture and initial conformity of simple pressure vessels which are intended to contain air or nitrogen at a gauge pressure between 0.5 and 30 bar gauge.

Simple pressure vessels cannot be placed on the European market unless they meet the requirements of this legislation.

Before being placed on the market, vessels must bear the CE conformity marking.

The vessel or data plate must bear, in addition to the CE marking, at least one of the seven additional inscriptions described in the Regulations.

The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations 2007

41. These Regulations are intended to improve management of safety during construction work. They establish high standards in the management and control of construction activity from concept to commissioning, rather than imposing detailed engineering requirements. In particular, they emphasise the need to take account of health and safety aspects during initial planning to ensure that these considerations are built into the scheme.

The health and safety requirements identified at the design and planning stage must be set down in a safety plan. This must be further developed during the construction phase. When the project is complete, a safety file must be provided which contains the detailed information about the structure and equipment within it, so the end-user can manage health and safety properly during subsequent use, construction and maintenance activity.

The Regulations apply to construction work on structures, but both the definitions are extremely broad:

- **Construction**: these include alteration, installation, commissioning, assembly, conversion, repair, renovation, maintenance, demolition, exploration etc. It should be noted particularly that the term can apply to

work on mechanical, electrical and telecommunications installations fixed within or to a structure;

- **Structure**: these include any building, railway, shaft, bridge, pipe, sewer, gasholder, road, cable, pylon etc.

The Regulations apply if more than four persons will be involved in the construction work at any one time. The project requires notification to the Health and Safety Executive if it will exceed 30 days or involve more than 500 person-days of work.

One of the requirements of the legislation is a safety plan. This is a statement of the arrangements made in order to achieve satisfactory standards of health and safety during construction. It should be prepared at the pre-tender stage and be part of the documentation used in the tender process which results in the selection of the Principal Contractor. The purpose is to identify known hazards associated with the project and to invite prospective contractors to say what arrangements they will make to deal with them.

Another requirement of the legislation is to have a health and safety file. This file is a record of information for the end-user, focusing on health and safety. It should identify significant health and safety risks associated with the structure and the equipment it contains. It should contain 'as built' drawings and plans.

The legislation imposes a duty on various participants, including:

- client;
- planning supervisor;
- designer;
- principal contractor.

Several or all of these roles can be performed by the same person and can be performed in-house. The essential fact is that each of the roles must be performed by competent persons.

Construction (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1996

42. These Regulations consolidate, modernise and simplify three sets of Regulations.

Most of the duties are already found in existing Regulations, but they have been updated and adapted to take account of modern working practices. Examples of the duties covered are:

- requirements to ensure a safe place of work and safe means of access to and from a place of work;
- preventing people falling from a height;
- preventing accidental collapse of new or existing structures;
- preventing accidental collapse of the ground both in and above excavations;

- identifying and preventing risk from underground cables and other services.

Training for work which could cause injury.

The new provisions applying to construction sites are:

- providing safe traffic routes;
- preventing and controlling emergencies such as fire and explosion.

Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004 and subsequent Amendments

43. Building Regulations are legal requirements aimed at achieving adequate standards for the construction of domestic, commercial and industrial buildings. They are laid down by Parliament and are supported by separate documents containing practical and technical guidance on compliance, which are known as Approved Documents. These are produced in different parts.

Building Regulations have three purposes:

- to ensure the health and safety of people in and around buildings;
- the conservation of energy;
- Access and facilities for people with disabilities.

Environment

Environmental Protection Act 1990

44. To prevent the pollution from emissions to air, land or water from scheduled processes, the concept of integrated pollution control has been introduced. Authorisation to operate the relevant processes must be obtained from the enforcing authority which, for the more heavily polluting industries, is HM Inspectorate of Pollution. Control of pollution to air from the less heavily polluting processes is through the local authority. Regulations also place a duty of care on all those involved in the management of waste, be it collecting, disposing or treating controlled waste which is subject to licensing.

Control of Pollution (Amendment) Act 1989

45. This Act covers the registration of waste carriers and controls fly-tipping. Waste carriers are obliged to register with the Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA).

Waste Management Licensing Regulations 1994 (as amended)

46. These Regulations sit under the 1990 Environmental Protection Act. They make it an offence to treat, keep or dispose of controlled waste except under and in accordance with a waste management licence. Certain activities are exempt from the requirement for licensing, but these exemptions require to be

registered with the waste regulation authority – The Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA).

The Waste Management Licensing (Amendment) Regulations 1995 and the Waste Management Licensing (Amendment No 2) Regulations 1995 provide exemptions for carrying out certain activities relating to scrap metal and waste motor vehicles, and other transitional exemptions.

The Waste Management Regulations 1996 relate to transitional provisions for certificates of technical competence in the management of waste treatment plants and also add exemptions relating to the storage of certain materials.

Environmental Protection (Duty of Care) Regulations 1991

47. These Regulations impose requirements on those who import, produce, carry, keep, treat or dispose of controlled waste, or act as a broker, and as such have a duty of care under the Environmental Protection Act 1990. The Regulations require that the transferor and the transferee of the waste should complete and sign a transfer note as the waste is transferred, and make and retain copies. The transfer note must identify and describe the waste in question and state its quantity, how it is stored, the time and place of transfer, and the name and address of the transferor and the transferee. Breach of the duty of care or of these Regulations is a criminal offence.

Controlled Waste (Registration of Carriers and Seizure of Vehicles) Regulations 1991

48. These Regulations cover the registrations required for certain waste carriers, brokers and dealers by the local environmental regulator. These controls, together with the Duty of Care, are designed to prevent fly-tipping (illegal waste disposal). Organisations or individuals that want to transport, deal in and/or arrange the disposal or recovery of controlled waste, whether in liquid or solid form, are required to register with their environmental regulator. The carriage of an organisation's own wastes does not usually require registration, unless it is construction or demolition waste. Waste carriers who operate in Scotland must register with the Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA).

The Special Waste Amendment (Scotland) Regulations 2004 (updated 2005) to the Special Waste Regulations 1996

49. Regulations 2, 2A and 2B of the Special Waste Amendment (Scotland) Regulations provide full definitions of 'special waste'. The Regulations define and regulate the movement of hazardous waste in Scotland from the point of production to the point of disposal or recovery. These Regulations, among other things, require the producers of hazardous waste to notify by means of consignment notes the Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA) and to provide unique codes to be applies to the consignment notes that accompany the waste when transported. See SHTN 3: 'NHS Scotland Waste management guidance".

The Waste Management Licensing Amendment (Scotland) Regulations 2006

50. The List of Wastes Regulations combined with the Hazardous Waste Regulations (above), implement the requirements of the Hazardous Waste Directive and the European Waste Catalogue Codes.

The List of Wastes effects the regulation of waste and hazardous waste and in particular for the purposes of:

- the determination of whether a material or substance is a waste or a hazardous waste, as the case may be;
- the classification and coding of waste or hazardous waste. The different types of waste in the List of Wastes Regulations are fully defined by the six-digit code for the waste and the respective two-digit and four-digit chapter headings.

Pollution, Prevention and Control (Scotland) Regulations 2000

51. These Regulations apply to installations or mobile plant that complies with set criteria or limits, for the purpose of achieving a high level of protection of the environment taken as a whole by, in particular, preventing or, where that is not practicable, reducing emissions into the air, water and land. This will require that some businesses need a permit from the Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA) before they can operate. Such situations in healthcare may include provision of an 'energy centre' or the operation of an on-site incinerator.

Clean Air Act 1993

52. This Act deals with the emission of smoke from agriculture, industrial burning, industrial furnaces, railway engines and ships. The best practicable means must be used to reduce emissions, and furnaces are required to be fitted with plant for arresting grit and dust. Chimney heights are also specified.

The Act is enforced by local authorities, who can prosecute organisations or their employees.

The Act also specifies maximum concentrations of lead and sulphur in motor fuel.

Environmental Protection (Prescribed Processes) Regulations 1991

53. This legislation defines the substances that must be controlled when released to a particular environmental medium.

Trade Effluent (Prescribed Processes and Substances) Regulation 1989. Amended 1990, 1992

54. These Regulations prescribe the substances and processes which are treated as 'special category effluent'. Stringent controls apply to such effluents.

Prescribed processes include those processes discharging chlorinated effluents.

Controlled Waste Regulations 1992. Amendment 1993

55. These Regulations cover the wastes which are to be treated as controlled waste under the categories of household, industrial and commercial wastes.

Most wastes from industry and commerce are controlled wastes – one notable exception being radioactive waste.

Environment Act 1995

56. The Environment Act 1995 creates a system whereby local authorities must identify, and if necessary arrange for the remediation of, contaminated sites in their areas.

Each local authority must inspect its area from time to time in order to identify contaminated land, and must keep a register of such land.

Packaging (Essential Requirements) Regulations 2003

57. These Regulations implement Directive 94/62/EC on packaging and packaging waste, which relates to the essential requirements to be satisfied by packaging. The Regulations apply to all packaging placed on the market in the UK, and are enforced by trading standards officers of local authorities.

The Regulations place a responsibility on any company that introduces packaging onto the marketplace to ensure that it is minimal, safe, and is either reusable, or recoverable, or recyclable.

Water Environment (Oil Storage) (Scotland) Regulations 2006

58. These Regulations are more stringent than the Control of Pollution (Oil Storage) (England) Regulations 2001. They require persons having custody or control of oil, or who store oil, to carry out certain works and take precautions and other steps for preventing pollution of any controlled waters. It is a criminal offence to fail to comply with these Regulations but there are exemptions including single private dwellings where less than 2500 litres is stored and buried tanks outwith buildings.

Landfill Tax Regulations 1996 and Landfill Tax (Qualifying Material) Order 1996

59. These Regulations apply to all waste going to landfill. Tax is chargeable by weight on all types of waste. Two rates are applied: inert wastes are those which do not give off methane or other gases and do not have the potential to pollute underground water.

Lists of wastes are found in Annex A of the Landfill Tax (Qualifying Material) Order 1996. Those liable for tax are the licence holders for the landfill site.

Chemicals (Hazard Information and Packaging for Supply). Regulations 2002

60. These Regulations describe the requirements for the labelling of substances to indicate risks to health, safety and the environment. Preparations classified as dangerous for the environment should be assigned the symbol N. Some substances that pose no particular human health and safety problem nevertheless require to be labelled dangerous for the environment.

The Planning etc. (Scotland) Act 2006

61. This Act requires a local authority to assess the environmental effects of certain development projects, and to consult the Scottish Environment Protection Agency before granting planning permission.

Control of Pollution Act 1974 and (Amendment) Act 1989

62. The Control of Pollution Act 1974 (CPA) gives powers to local authorities to set noise criteria within the local environment. The local authority therefore has the power to serve notices on those responsible for causing noise amounting to a nuisance.

Producer Responsibility Obligations (Packaging Waste) Regulations 2005

63. A company involved in the production and sale of packaging or packaging materials has an obligation as a producer under the Regulations where thresholds are exceeded. A producer can be a manufacturer, converter, packer/filler, seller or importer of packaging or packaging material. The obligations can be discharged individually or by joining a registered scheme.

Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Directive 2002

64. The Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) Directive was agreed in 2003, together with the related Directive on Restrictions on the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment (RoHS).

The WEEE Directive applies to a huge range of products. It aims to minimise the impact of electrical and electronic equipment on the environment during their lifetimes and when they become waste. It focuses on collecting, treating, recycling and recovering waste electrical and electronic equipment.

From July 2006, the RoHS Directive will ban the placing on the EU market of new electrical and electronic equipment containing more than agreed levels of certain prescribed substances. Manufacturers will need to make sure that their products and their components comply in order to be able to offer their products for sale.

The Water Environment and Water Services (Scotland) Act 2003

65. The Water Environment and Water Services (Scotland) Act 2003 will enable Scottish Ministers to implement the EC Water Framework Directive in Scotland.

The Bill was introduced into the Scottish Parliament on 18 June 2002 and received Royal Assent on 5 March 2003.

For the first time the Act establishes a planning system for the water environment with SEPA as the lead authority working alongside the public, private and voluntary sectors.

The Act ensures that all human activities that can have a harmful effect on the water environment can be controlled by establishing a framework for co-ordinated controls on water abstraction and impoundment engineering works near watercourses, and all forms of pollution to water.

For further information:
http://www.opsi.gov.uk/legislation/Scotland/acts2003/20030003.htm

The Scottish Water Byelaws 2004

66. The Scottish Water Byelaws 2004 were made to prevent the waste, misuse, undue consumption, contamination or erroneous measurement of drinking water. The Regulations set requirements for the design, installation and maintenance of plumbing systems and water fittings. They are enforced by Scottish Water.

Control of Lead at Work Regulations 2002

67. The primary aim of the Control of Lead at Work Regulations 1998 is to control risks to health caused by exposure to lead (in the form of lead dust or fumes or lead alloys) where that lead is liable to be inhaled, ingested or absorbed through the skin.

Control of Pesticides Regulations 1986

68. The Control of Pesticides Regulations 1986 and the Control of Pesticides (Amendment) Regulations 1997 regulate the sale of pesticides. The Regulations are supported by an approved code of practice that includes guidelines for the safe storage of pesticides and details of training and certification requirements.

The sale or supply of pesticides must be under the control of someone that holds a ‘nominated storekeeper’ certificate from the British Agrochemical Standards Inspection Scheme, which also maintains a register of suppliers.

Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993

69. The Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993 is not directly relevant to healthcare premises, but will be to associated activities. It covers nuisances arising from vehicle and building alarms, loudspeakers and other noise in public areas.

Radiation

Ionising Radiations Regulations 2004 (IRR99)

70 These Regulations place duties and responsibilities for radiation safety and the setting up of local rules and procedures. They identify the role of a radiation protection adviser (RPA) and a radiation protection supervisor (RPS). They classify different types of personnel and restrict the exposure through design and safe systems of work. They specify various dose limits, equipment, notification of incidents, and routine inspection and testing of equipment.

Radioactive Substances Act 1993

71. This Act consolidates earlier legislation including the Radioactive Substances Act 1960. It requires those keeping and using radioactive materials to register with the Environment Agency, and those disposing of radioactive wastes or accumulating them for subsequent disposal to be authorised.

Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2000

72. These Regulations revoke the 1988 version and are concerned with exposure of patients and research activities. They lay down basic measures for the health and protection of individuals against dangers of ionising radiation in relation to medical exposure.

The Regulations impose duties on those responsible for administering radiation to protect persons undergoing medical exposure, whether as part of their own medical diagnosis or treatment or as part of occupational health surveillance, health screening, voluntary participation in research or medico-legal procedures.

Radioactive Materials (Road Transport) Regulations 2002

73. These Regulations detail the requirements of transporting radioactive substances. The Regulations are concerned with the following:

- package design should be such that the risk of any radioactive contamination or external radiation hazard should be kept to a minimum;
- all shipments should be traceable to the sender;
- good quality assurance should produce public reassurance.

Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) (Amendment) Regulations 2006

74. These Regulations relate to nuclear medicine. Certificate holders are only authorised to administer these medicines. They cover nuclear medicine scanning, nuclear medicine therapy, some pathology tests and Brach therapy.

Fire

Fire (Scotland) Act 2005 as amended

75. The Fire (Scotland) Act 2005 received Royal Assent on 1 April 2005. Parts 1, 2, 4 and 5 of the Act commenced in August 2005. Part 3 introduces a new fire safety regime for non-domestic premises and is due to come into force on 1 October 2006 and will replace the Fire Precautions Act 1971 and the Fire Precautions (Workplace) Regulations 1997, as amended. (http://www.Scotland.gov.uk/Topics/Justice/Fire/19077/FireAct)

Fire certificates will no longer be required after 1 October 2006 and the new fire safety regime will be based on the principle of risk assessment similar to the Fire Precautions (Workplace) Regulations.

Furniture and Furnishings (Fire) (Safety) Regulations 1988

76. This legislation relates to the supply of furniture and furnishings. It is intended to ensure that furniture and furnishings are fire-resistant and will not produce harmful, noxious smoke in the event of a fire.

All furniture or furnishings supplied must be marked with a label to show that they comply with the Regulations. Any furniture manufactured in the UK since March 1989 must comply. The following items are covered by the Regulations:

- furniture for private use in a dwelling, including children's furniture;
- sofas and chairs;
- beds, headboards and mattresses;
- sofa-beds and futons;
- nursery furniture;
- garden furniture which is also suitable for use inside;
- scatter cushions and seat pads;
- pillows;
- loose and stretch covers for furniture.

The following items are exempt:

- bed linen (including duvets and pillowcases);

- loose covers for mattresses;
- curtains;
- carpets.

Dangerous Substances and Explosive Atmospheres Regulations (DSEAR) 2002

77. These Regulations set minimum standards for the protection of workers and others from the risk of fire or explosions related to dangerous substances. Petrol and LPG are amongst those substances deemed to be dangerous.

The Regulations require that risks arising from those dangerous substances are comprehensively risk-assessed and recorded.

Food

Food Safety Act 1990

78. The Food Safety Act 1990 aims to protect consumers by preventing illness from the consumption of food and by preventing them from being misled as to the nature of the food they are purchasing. The Act has similarities to the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974, which deals with the concept of hazards and risk.

Food Safety (General Food Hygiene) Regulations 1995

79. These Regulations cover:

- general requirements for food businesses, for example cleanliness, structural requirements, facilities such as water supply, ventilation, drainage etc;
- further requirements such as personal hygiene and staff training;
- obligations on proprietors, that is, a risk assessment.

Food Safety (Temperature Control) Regulations 1995

80. These Regulations cover all types of food businesses, ranging from a mobile food caterer to a 500-bedroom hotel. This includes food that is sold publicly or privately, for profit or fund-raising.

There are a number of stages in the food production chain which are subject to the Regulations:

- preparation;
- handling;
- processing;

- packaging;
- manufacturing;
- storage;
- transporting;
- selling;
- distribution;
- supplying.

Public Health

Public Health (Infectious Diseases) Regulations 1988

81. The Public Health (Infectious Diseases) Regulations 1988 require that a properly appointed officer shall inform the Chief Medical Officer for Scotland, as the case may be, of any serious outbreak of any disease which to his knowledge has occurred in his/her district.

Medicines Act 1961

82. Medical gases are classified as medicinal products under the Medicines Act and are therefore subject to the same procurement and quality procedures as all other medicinal products.

Appendix 2: Exemplar procedures

Introduction

1 The following procedures have been prepared by HFS Board Estates and Facilities Management (EFM) personnel to meet the needs of their own organisations.

2 They are not intended to be appropriate or definitive for all sites, but they provide examples of the types of format which may be used, and the different levels of technical content which may be appropriate on different sites.

3 These procedures cover:

- electricity supply failure;
- water contamination;
- piped medical gas failure.

4 Further procedures will be required within a healthcare organisation and a regular review is important to ensure that directives, staff and equipment remain current.

Procedure for electricity supply failure

Operational procedure reference no: ……..

Hospital location: ……..

Healthcare description (A&E, CCU, Ward 6 etc): ……..

Key areas of equipment likely to be

Lighting, medical equipment, fixed and/or mobile computers and associated equipment, other non-medical equipment (catering, waste disposal etc), communication systems (telephones, nurse call etc), heating and ventilation.

Risk assessment

This procedure is linked to the overall hospital site procedure for failure of electricity supply and departmental risk assessment register. This document should be reviewed on a regular basis and especially if any alterations to equipment function, staff and responsibility take place.

Aims

This emergency procedure is intended to highlight the key issues that may arise at departmental level in the event of electrical power failure. It is appreciated that this may be the result of a full site power failure, but it may also be the result of a local failure for which notification will be necessary. The main aim is to provide a structured approach to the safety of patients and staff and to minimise the risk associated with an electrical failure.

Identification of failure

This may be indicated by the failure of key observable elements, for example lighting and computer displays, but may also be indicated by alarm signals from monitored supply panels on medical equipment, services and systems.

Major supply failure

In the event of an obvious full electrical failure, do not wait for the restoration of supplies by generator, but immediately take action.

Staff should safely complete or suspend any procedure being undertaken and prioritise their attention on the most critical equipment and/or patients. Local standby supplies and equipment-based systems should be checked. Where necessary, manual intervention should be started to ensure the safety of patients.

When supply is restored by generator, staff should ensure that all essential equipment is functioning correctly and, where necessary, transfer equipment or patients on to essential supplies.

On restoration of the normal supply, staff should check that all systems and equipment have reset to normal.

Continued supply failure

If full supply loss should continue for several minutes, immediately contact the hospital duty manager via the switchboard. The switchboard will also contact the duty engineer for attention.

Within the department, prioritise duties to ensure safety of patients and take preventative measures, where possible, to minimise the workload.

In the event that it is identified as a local failure, contact the duty manager to gain further staff support from other adjacent unaffected areas, or arrange to move the most critical patients to other departments.

Partial supply failure

If only part of the department's electrical system fails, it is unlikely that standby systems will restore supplies in the immediate term. First, minimise the risk to patients and identify the extent of the failure. Contact the switchboard, who will alert the duty engineer and duty manager. Continue to monitor the situation and move critical equipment and/or patients to fully supported areas where possible.

Awareness and training

Electrical supply failure is one of the most wide-ranging impacts on the normal running of a department. It is likely that staff will be engaged in the regular testing of the standby systems, but further local awareness should be engaged to ensure that all staff is aware of the departmental issues and the effects of a longer-term and full failure. Where possible, this should be carried out at the workplace, but with minimum impact on patients. Senior managers should liaise with the estates engineer to arrange simulation and practical support.

Emergency procedures should be an essential part of new staff induction to the department to ensure all local issues are fully understood.

Review procedure

From incident experience and training evaluation, this procedure and any supporting information should be reviewed and amended as necessary to ensure the document remains up-to-date and definitive for the department.

This document was first issued on: …….. (Date)

Amendments (Brief details and date) ……

……

Plan approved and accepted by: ……..

Senior manager ……

Head of department: ……

Procedure for water contamination

Operational procedure reference no: .....

Other relevant procedures: Engineering scheme to provide piped fresh water supplies

Scope

The following procedure is designed to instruct and advise on the operational requirements for dealing with contamination of the water supply. It is not considered a definitive guide as the particular circumstances of the incident will ultimately determine the course of action taken. It will attempt to highlight the responsibilities of estates staff, clinical staff and on-call administrators.

Causes

Water may become contaminated in a number of ways, including:

- contamination of the incoming water supply to the hospital site;
- contamination due to substances inadvertently or maliciously added to the water storage systems;
- contamination caused by the corrosion or decay of materials in contact with the water supply, for example rusting metal and dead animals;
- cross-contamination of water supply due to the effect of a process carried out on site by staff or contractors where the safety devices are inadequate or non-existent, for example cross-contamination due to siphon age from drains and stagnant water;
- misoperation/failure of water treatment plant;
- migration between domestic hot and cold water services.

Effects

The possible effects of contamination are varied, and will depend on the severity and degree of the contamination. However, further investigation should be carried out if:

- staff complain about the taste of the drinking water;
- the water is discoloured;
- the water has a distinctive smell (this could be the result of chemicals (for example chlorine), acid, sewage or decaying matter);
- the water appears normal but people using it have become sick.

Investigation and response

The size of the affected area must first be ascertained. This will give some indication of the extent of the problem and may help to identify the source of the contamination.

The following actions may or may not require to be taken, depending on whether part of or the whole water system has been contaminated:

- inform the senior staff of affected departments to cease using the water;
- contact the local water authority. The contamination may have originated from the main water incoming supplies; there is likely to be an obligation not to contaminate the public water network;
- take samples as necessary to determine the nature of the contamination;
- once the extent has been determined, an assessment should be undertaken as to the nature of the contamination. The use of microbiology staff is recommended;
- isolate the affected area from the main supply to prevent further contamination;
- take samples at various points within the affected area(s) for future analysis;
- contact on-call or emergency administrative staff and advise them to arrange a supply of fresh water for areas requiring it;
- dependent on the nature of contamination, the cause may be obvious or easily located. If this is not possible, carry out a systematic investigation of water supply systems;
- if the cause of the contamination is located, isolate the contamination and carry out necessary works to resolve the situation;
- inform medical staff of the nature of the contamination and await advice on the clinical effect before restoring the water supply to the area;
- thoroughly flush all pipework (run taps, flush toilets, bidets etc) until further analysis shows no trace of contamination;
- when the water quality is restored and confirmed by medical or microbiology staff, allow normal use to continue.

Further work

- study how the contamination has occurred and carry out preventative work if possible to avoid recurrence;
- review the operational procedure for the incident and modify as necessary;
- note the date and time of the incident, action taken and by whom, for future reference.

Relevant drawing nos: .....

Additional information

……

……

……

……

……

Plan approved and accepted by:

Board member: .....

Risk assessment

This document is linked to risk assessment no..... It should incorporate existing controls contained in the risk assessment and should be modified if any changes to the risk assessment are made.

Procedure for piped medical gas failure

Operational procedure reference no: .....

Hospital location: .....

Plant or system description: .....

Systems in use:

Oxygen ref ..... Nitrous oxide ref .....

Nitrous oxide/oxygen ref..... Medical air ref.....

Aims

The aim of this emergency procedure is to provide guidance and a structured approach to the management response in the case of a major failure in supply of piped medical gases, and to safeguard patients at risk from any such failure.

Identification of the source and nature of failure

This will normally be indicated by an alarm actuation at one of the following locations:

- telephone exchange;
- porter's lodge;
- boiler room;
- main corridor;
- ward 1;
- ward 2;
- ward 3.

On actuation of the alarm, the hospital switchboard must be contacted with a description of the alarm legend. The switchboard operator will immediately contact the Duty Engineer or Duty Authorised Person (responsibility allocated in the medical gas pipeline system (MGPS) operational policy) for the initial response and investigation of the fault, and will follow switchboard procedures.

The situation will be assessed by the Duty Engineer and categorised accordingly as a minor or major failure of the system.

Minor failure, not life-threatening

The Duty Engineer will contact the Authorised Person to have repairs carried out in accordance with Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 02-01, and inform the Duty Senior Manager of the cause and outcome of the situation. Permits-to-work will be issued in accordance with Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 02-01 as above.

Major failure of supply

If a major failure of supply has occurred, the following procedure is to be followed by the Duty Engineer, who will carry out the initial assessment and arrange for the following personnel to be contacted:

Authorised Person, Senior Manager, Senior Pharmacist, Senior Nurse, Senior Medical Officer/Surgeon

The situation will be re-assessed by the Senior Manager and a decision taken as to whether the major incident plan is also implemented and brought into operation, together with the procedures outlined in this document.

Damage control

The cause and result of the damage to the system should be investigated by the Duty Engineer/Authorised Person.

Drawings and schematics should be readily available.

Steps should be taken to limit the amount of disruption, and a temporary supply should be secured by either valving or capping of damaged areas to enable emergency supply banks to cope during repairs. Failing this, sufficient portable cylinders should be provided at the point of use.

Following damage limitation, valve-off the damaged section where possible and ensure back-up supply banks are functioning.

Team members' attendance should be confirmed. They should assemble at a predetermined location where control will be handed from the Duty Engineer/Duty Estates Manager to the responsible Senior Manager.

The areas of responsibility for the various team members are outlined, but this list is by no means exhaustive and should be further developed in the light of knowledge as the incident develops.

Areas of responsibility

Telephonist

- first-line communications;
- initial co-ordination of response;
- assists with all communications and logs calls and responses.

Senior Manager

- coordination of all team members;
- recovery strategy and repair coordination;
- documentation.

Senior Pharmacist

- ordering and procurement of gases;
- purity checks on reinstatement of supply.

Senior Medical Officer, Surgeon/Senior Nurse

- clinical prioritisation of supply requirements;
- liaison with doctors and nursing staff;
- movement of patients where necessary;
- advice to other team members on clinical criteria.

Duty Engineer/Authorised Person

- initial response and co-ordination;
- damage limitation and securing supply;
- diagnosis and repair of failure;
- provision of temporary supplies (pipeline);
- testing and verification on reinstatement;
- recommissioning and documentation.

Designated Manager, Hotel Services

- provision of portering staff for moving and changing cylinders;
- liaison with other team members for manpower requirements;
- organisation of patient transport where needed;
- organisation of transport for support services;
- liaison with outside agencies and press.
- communications.

Debriefing

Following return to normality, a team debriefing should be held to review the emergency procedure and update or correct any apparent weaknesses.

Review procedure

This procedure will be reviewed following any change in personnel, equipment, materials and environment or following any change. It will be reviewed at regular intervals not exceeding 12 months.

Training and information

All staff involved will receive adequate training and instruction to enable them to carry out these procedures with confidence during an emergency. This training will be recorded in the log attached, and updated on a regular basis.

Amendments.....(brief details and date)

Plan approved and accepted by:

Board member: .....

Risk assessment.....

This document is linked to risk assessment no ..... It should incorporate existing controls contained in the risk assessment and should be modified if any changes to the risk assessment are made.

Operational Checklist	Define ownership of the problem?	Will patient/public/staff safety/care be affected?	Risk of fire outbreak, or reduced fire-fighting ability?	Consider impact on electricity supply?	Consider impact on gas supply?	Consider Impact on water supply?	Consider impact on drainage?	Consider impact on other services?	Increased risk of *Legionella*?	Consider impact on site security? Impact on fire alarms?	Will medical gases be affected?	Is there an impact on clinical waste?	Agree responsibility boundaries	Clinical department procedures?	Control of Infection Team involvement?	Do public relations need to be addresses?	Consider Service Level Agreements with purchasers?	Involve commercial services?	Record Board personnel contact details?	Locate supply of specialist equipment?	Locate approved subcontractors?	Record specialist contractor contact details?	Keep records of actions taken?
Air conditioning																							
Air pollution																							
Asbestos																							
Building management system																							
Boilers																							
Clinical waste																							
Domestic hot Water																							
Drainage																							
Electricity Supply failure																							
Explosions																							
Extreme Weather																							

Operational Checklist	Define ownership of the problem?	Will patient/public/staff safety/care be affected?	Risk of fire outbreak, or reduced fire-fighting ability?	Consider impact on electricity supply?	Consider impact on gas supply?	Consider Impact on water supply?	Consider impact on drainage?	Consider impact on other services?	Increased risk of *Legionella*?	Consider impact on site security? Impact on fire alarms?	Will medical gases be affected?	Is there an impact on clinical waste?	Agree responsibility boundaries	Clinical department procedures?	Control of Infection Team involvement?	Do public relations need to be addresses?	Consider Service Level Agreements with purchasers?	Involve commercial services?	Record Board personnel contact details?	Locate supply of specialist equipment?	Locate approved subcontractors?	Record specialist contractor contact details?	Keep records of actions taken?
Fire																							
Flooding																							
Gas																							
Heating																							
Incinerators																							
Infestations																							
Kitchens																							
Laboratory failures																							
Lifts																							
Medical engineering equipment																							
Operating theatres																							
Piped medical gases																							

Operational Checklist	Define ownership of the problem?	Will patient/public/staff safety/care be affected?	Risk of fire outbreak, or reduced fire-fighting ability?	Consider impact on electricity supply?	Consider impact on gas supply?	Consider Impact on water supply?	Consider impact on drainage?	Consider impact on other services?	Increased risk of *Legionella*?	Consider impact on site security? Impact on fire alarms?	Will medical gases be affected?	Is there an impact on clinical waste?	Agree responsibility boundaries	Clinical department procedures?	Control of Infection Team involvement?	Do public relations need to be addresses?	Consider Service Level Agreements with purchasers?	Involve commercial services?	Record Board personnel contact details?	Locate supply of specialist equipment?	Locate approved subcontractors?	Record specialist contractor contact details?	Keep records of actions taken?
Paging																							
Refrigerators																							
Sewage plant																							
Sterilization																							
Telephones																							
Transport incidents																							
Water contamination																							
Water supply																							
Water Treatment																							

Sample procedure Matrix

References

Acts and Regulations

NB: Access to information related to the following Acts and Regulations can be gained via www.legislation.gov.uk.

BS 7671:2008 (IEE Wiring Regulations, 17th Edition). British Standards Institution, 2008.

Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004 and (Amendment) Regulations 2006, 2007

Chemicals (Hazard Information and Packaging for Supply) Regulations 2002. SI 2002 No 1689. TSO, 2002.

Civil Contingencies Act 2004. **SSI 2005 No 494**. TSO, 2005.

Clean Air Act 1993. TSO, 1993.

Confined Spaces Regulations 1997. SI 1997 No 1713. TSO, 1997.

Construction (Design and Management) Regulations 2007. SI 2007 No 320. TSO, 2007.

Construction (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1996. SI 1996 No 1592. TSO, 1996. .

Consumer Protection Act 1987. TSO, 1987.

Control of Asbestos Regulations 2006. SI 2006 No 2739. TSO, 2006.

Control of Lead at Work Regulations 2002. SI 2002 No 2676. TSO, 2002.

Control of Pesticides Regulations 1986. SI 1986 No 1510. TSO, 1986.

The Control of Pesticides (Amendment) Regulations 1997. SI 1997 No 188, TSO, 1997.

Water Environment (Oil Storage) (Scotland) Regulations 2006, SI 2006 No133 Stationery Office

Control of Pollution Act 1974. TSO, 1974.

Control of Pollution (Amendment) Act 1989. TSO, 1989.

Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (COSHH) 2002. SI 2002 No 2677. TSO, 2002.

Controlled Waste (Registration of Carriers and Seizure of Vehicles) Regulations 1991. SI 1991 No 1624. TSO, 1991.

Controlled Waste Regulations 1992. SI 1992 No 588. TSO, 1992. .

Dangerous Substances and Explosive Atmospheres Regulations (DSEAR) 2002. SI 2002 No 2776. TSO, 2002.

Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (DDA). TSO, 1995.

Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 1994.SI 1994 No 3260. TSO, 1994. .

Electricity Act 1989. TSO, 1989.

Electricity at Work Regulations 1989. SI 1989 No 635. TSO, 1989. .

Electricity Safety, Quality and Continuity Regulations 2002. SI 2002 No 2665. TSO, 2002.

Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2005. SI 2005 No 281. TSO, 2005**.**

Employers Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Regulations 1998 and (Amendment) Regulations 2004. SI 1998 No 2573. TSO, 1998.

Environment Act 1995. TSO, 1995**.**

Environmental Protection (Duty of Care) Regulations 1991. SI 1991 No 2839. TSO, 1991**.** .

Environmental Protection (Prescribed Processes) Regulations 1991. SI 1991 No 1749. TSO, 1991**.**

Environmental Protection Act 1990. TSO, 1990**.**

Factories Act 1961 (as amended). TSO, 1961**.**

Food Safety (General Food Hygiene) Regulations 1995. SI 1995 No 1763. TSO, 1995**.**

Food Safety (Temperature Control) Regulations 1995. SI 1995 No 2200. TSO, 1995**.**

The Food Safety Act 1990 (Amendment) Regulations 2004. SI 2004 No 2990. TSO, 2004.

Furniture and Furnishings (Fire) (Safety) Regulations 1988. SI 1998 No 1324. TSO, 1988.

Gas Appliances (Safety) Regulations 1995. SI 1995 No 1629. TSO, 1995.

Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations 1998. SI 1998 No 2451. TSO, 1994.

The Special Waste Amendment (Scotland) Regulations 2004, SSI 2004, No 112. TSO, 2004.

Health and Safety (Consultation with Employees) Regulations 1996. SI 1996 No 1513. TSO, 1996.

Health and Safety (Display Screen Equipment) Regulations 1992. TSO, 1992**.**

Health and Safety (First-Aid) Regulations 1981. SI 1981 No 917. TSO, 1981**.**

The Health and Safety (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2002 SI 2002 No 2174. TSO, 2002.

Health and Safety (Safety Signs and Signals) Regulations 1996. SI 1996 No 341. TSO, 1996**.**

Health and Safety (Training For Employment) Regulations 1990. SI 1990 No 1380. TSO, 1990**.**

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974. TSO, 1974**.**

Health and Safety Information for Employees Regulations 1989. SI 1989 No 682. TSO, 1989**.**

Highly Flammable Liquid and Liquid Petroleum Gas Regulations 1972. SI 1972 No 917. TSO, 1972**.**

Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations 2000. SI 2000 No 1059. TSO, 2000**.**

Ionising Radiations Regulations 1999. SI 1999 No 3232. TSO, 1999**.**

Landfill Tax Regulations 1996. SI 1996 No 1527. TSO, 1996.

Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998. SI 1998 No 2307. TSO, 1998.

Lifts Regulations 1997. SI 1997 No 831. TSO, 1997.

The Waste Management Licensing Amendment (Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment) (Scotland) Regulations 2007, SSI 2007 No 172, TSO, 2007.

Low Voltage Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations. SI 1989 No 728, TSO, 1997.

Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999. SI 1999 No 3242. TSO, 1999**.**

Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992.SI 1992 No 2793. TSO, 1992.

Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) Regulations 1978. SI 1978 No 1006. TSO, 1978**.**

The **Medicines (Administration of Radioactive Substances) Amendment Regulations 2006 Statutory Instrument 2006 No. 2806.** TSO, 2006.

Health and Medicines Act 1988. TSO, 1988**.**

National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990. TSO, 1990**.**

Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993. TSO, 1993**.**

The Control of Noise at Work Regulations 2005. SI 2005 No 1643. TSO, 2005**.**

Packaging (Essential Requirements) Regulations 2003. SI 2003 No 1941. TSO, 2003**.**

Personal Protective Equipment at Work Regulations 1992. SI 1992 No 2966. TSO, 1992

Plugs and Sockets etc (Safety) Regulations 1994.SI 1994 No 1768. TSO, 1994**.**

Pollution Prevention and Control (Scotland) Regulations 2000. SSI 2000 No 323. The Stationery Office

Pressure Equipment Regulations 1999. SI 1999 No 2001 and (Amendment) Regulations 2002. TSO, 1999.

Pressure Systems Safety Regulations 2000. SI 2000 No 128. TSO, 2000.

Producer Responsibility Obligations (Packaging Waste) Regulations 2005. SI 2005 No 3468. TSO, 2005**.**

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998. SI 1998 No 2306. TSO, 1998**.**

Public Health (Infectious Diseases) Regulations 1988. SI 1988 No 1546. TSO, 1988**.**

Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Regulations 2000 and Amendment 2003. SI 2000 No 1903. TSO, 2000**.**

Radioactive Materials (Road Transport) Regulations 2002. SI 2002 No 1093. TSO, 2002**.**

Radioactive Substances Act 1993. TSO, 1993.

Reporting of Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations 1995 (RIDDOR 95).SI 1995 No 3163. **TSO, 1995**.

(The) Regulatory Reform (Fire Safety) Order 2005. SI 2005 No 1541. TSO, 2005.

Safety Representatives and Safety Committees Regulations 1977. SI 1977 No 500. TSO, 1977.

Simple Pressure Vessels (Safety) Regulations 1991. SI 1991 No 2749. TSO, 1991**.**

Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 1992.SI 1992 No 3073. TSO, 1992**.**

The Planning etc. (Scotland) Act 2006. TSO, 2006**.**

Trade Effluent (Prescribed Processes and Substances) Regulations 1989. SI 1989 No 1156. TSO, 1989**.**

Waste Management Licensing Regulations 1994.SI 1994 No 1056.

Water Environment and Water Services (Scotland) Act 2003. TSO, 1991**.**

The Water Industry (Scotland) Act 2002 (Consequential Modifications) Order 2004 SI 2004 No. 1822. TSO, 2004.

Working Time (Amendment) Regulations 2002. SI 2002 No 3128. TSO, 2002

Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992. SI 1992 No 3004. TSO, 1992.

European legislation

Council Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 January 2003 on waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE) (2002/96/EC). Official Journal L 37, 13.02.2003, pp 24–38.

British Standards

BS EN ISO 9000:2005. Quality management systems. Fundamentals and vocabulary. British Standards Institution, 2005. 58

Scottish Government and NHSScotland Publications.

Security Management Framework for NHS Boards in Scotland Health Facilities Scotland

The National Health Service in Scotland Manual of Guidance: Responding to emergencies.
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/emergencyplanning/guidance.htm

A42659819

NHS National Services Scotland

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01:

Ventilation for healthcare premises
Part B: Operational management and performance verification

Health Facilities Scotland
Engineering and Environment

October 2011

Contents

A42659819

Disclaimer

The contents of this document are provided by way of general guidance only at the time of its publication. Any party making any use thereof or placing any reliance thereon shall do so only upon exercise of that party's own judgement as to the adequacy of the contents in the particular circumstances of its use and application. No warranty is given as to the accuracy, relevance or completeness of the contents of this document and Health Facilities Scotland, a Division of NHS National Services Scotland, shall have no responsibility for any errors in or omissions therefrom, or any use made of, or reliance placed upon, any of the contents of this document.

Acknowledgements

Health Facilities Scotland would like to thank the principal contributors and the Steering Group led by the Department of Health for their efforts in producing the HTM 03-01 Part B document.

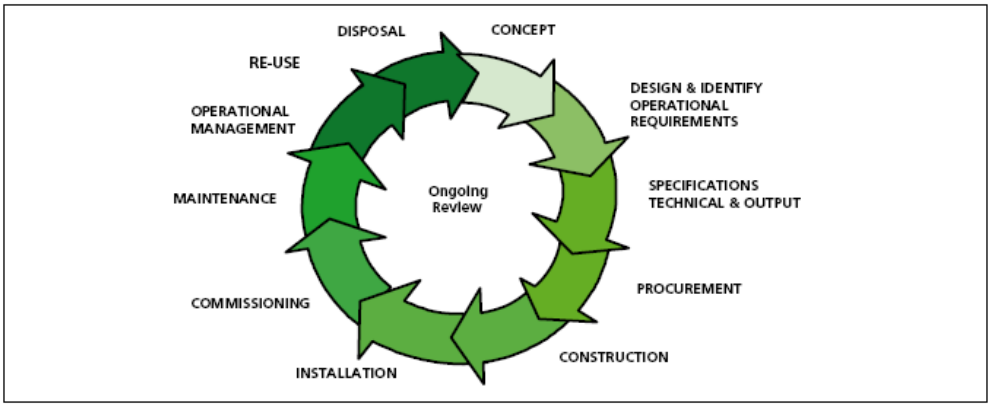
HTM 03-01 Part B has been updated and amended by Health Facilities Scotland for use in NHSScotland as SHTM 03-01 Part B. The contribution made by the National Heating & Ventilation Advisory Group is gratefully acknowledged.

Preface

About Scottish Health Technical Memoranda

Scottish Engineering Health Technical Memoranda (SHTMs) give comprehensive advice and guidance on the design, installation and operation of specialised building and engineering technology used in the delivery of healthcare.

The focus of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum guidance remains on healthcare-specific elements of standards, policies and up-to-date established best practice. They are applicable to new and existing sites, and are for use at various stages during the whole building lifecycle.



Healthcare building life-cycle

Healthcare providers have a duty of care to ensure that appropriate engineering governance arrangements are in place and are managed effectively. The Scottish Engineering Health Technical Memorandum series provides best practice engineering standards and policy to enable management of this duty of care.

It is not the intention within this suite of documents to repeat unnecessarily international or European standards, industry standards or UK Government legislation. Where appropriate, these will be referenced.

Healthcare-specific technical engineering guidance is a vital tool in the safe and efficient operation of healthcare facilities. Scottish Health Technical Memorandum guidance is the main source of specific healthcare-related guidance for estates and facilities professionals.

The core suite of eight subject areas provides access to guidance which:

- is more streamlined and accessible;

- encapsulates the latest standards and best practice in healthcare engineering;
- provides a structured reference for healthcare engineering.

Structure of the Scottish Health Technical Memorandum suite

The series of engineering-specific guidance will ultimately contain a suite of eight core subjects pending a re-assessment of Firecode SHTMs 81-86.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00: Policies and principles (applicable to all Health Technical Memoranda in this series)

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 01: Decontamination

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 02: Medical gases

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03: Heating and ventilation systems

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04: Water systems

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 05: Reserved for future use.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06: Electrical services

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07: Environment and sustainability

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08: Specialist services

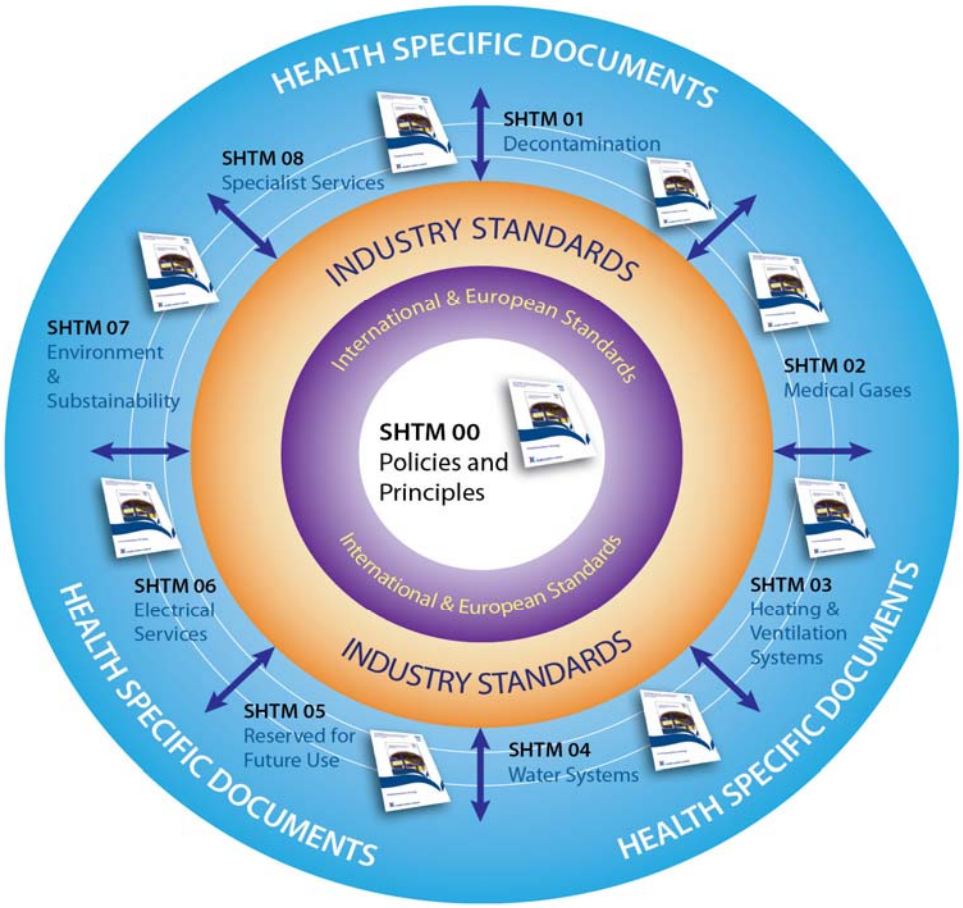
Some subject areas may be further developed into topics shown as -01, -02 etc and further referenced into Parts A, B etc.

Example: Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06-02 Part A will represent Electrical Services – Electrical safety guidance for low voltage systems.

In a similar way Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07-02 will simply represent Environment and Sustainability - EnCO_2de.

All Scottish Health Technical Memoranda are supported by the initial document Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00 which embraces the management and operational policies from previous documents and explores risk management issues.

Some variation in style and structure is reflected by the topic and approach of the different review working groups.



Engineering guidance

Executive summary

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01: 'Ventilation in healthcare premises' is published in two parts. Part A deals with the design and installation of ventilation systems; Part B covers operational management.

The document gives comprehensive advice and guidance on the legal requirements, design implications, maintenance and operation of specialised ventilation in all types of healthcare premises.

The guidance contained in this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum applies to new installations and major refurbishments of existing installations.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01 supersedes all previous versions of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2025: 'Ventilation in healthcare premises'.

Who should use this guidance?

This document is aimed at healthcare management, estates managers and operations managers.

Main recommendations

- all ventilation plant should meet a minimum requirement in terms of the control of *Legionella* and safe access for inspection and maintenance;
- all ventilation plant should be inspected annually;
- the performance of all critical ventilation systems (such as those servicing operating suites) should be verified annually.

1. Introduction

1.1 Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01: 'Ventilation in healthcare premises' is published in two parts. Part A deals with design and validation of general and specialised ventilation; Part B covers operational management.

1.2 The document gives comprehensive advice and guidance to healthcare management, design engineers, estates managers and operations managers on the legal requirements, design implications, maintenance and operation of specialised ventilation in all types of healthcare premises.

1.3 The guidance contained in this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum applies to new installations and major refurbishments of existing installations.

1.4 Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01 supersedes all previous versions of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2025: 'Ventilation in healthcare premises'.

Ventilation in healthcare premises

1.5 Ventilation is used extensively in all types of healthcare premises to provide a safe and comfortable environment for patients and staff. More specialised ventilation is provided in areas such as operating departments, critical care areas and isolation facilities for primary patient treatment.

1.6 It is also installed:

- to ensure compliance with the quality assurance requirements of items processed in pharmacies and sterile services departments;
- to protect staff from harmful organisms and toxic substances (for example in laboratories).

Statutory requirements

1.7 Increased health risks to patients will occur if ventilation systems do not achieve and maintain the required standards. The link between surgical site infection and theatre air quality has been well established.

If the ventilation plant has been installed to dilute or contain harmful substances, its failure may expose people to unacceptable levels of contamination. Proven breaches of the statutory requirements can result in prosecution and may also give rise to a civil suit against the operators.

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974

1.8 The Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 is the core legislation that applies to ventilation installations. As these installations are intended to prevent

contamination, control closely the environment, dilute contaminants or contain hazards, their very presence indicates that potential risks to health have been identified.

COSHH

1.9 The Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) Regulations 2002 place upon management an obligation to ensure that suitable measures are in place to protect their staff and others affected by the work activity. These methods may include both safe systems of work and the provision of a specialised ventilation system. In laboratories the requirements are often met by the provision of fume cupboards and microbiological safety cabinets.

1.10 Where specialised ventilation plant is provided as part of the protection measures, there is a statutory requirement that it be correctly designed, installed, commissioned, operated and maintained. The local exhaust ventilation (LEV) section of COSHH requires that the system be examined and tested at least every 14 months by a competent person and that management maintain comprehensive records of its performance, repair and maintenance.

1.11 Certain substances have workplace exposure limits (WELs) set out in the Health and Safety Executive's Guidance Note EH40 – 'Workplace exposure limits: containing the list of workplace exposure limits for use with the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations 2002 (as amended)'. If specialised ventilation systems are provided in order to achieve these standards, they will be subject to the COSHH Regulations as above.

Fire regulations

1.12 The Fire Regulations require that if ventilation ductwork penetrates the fabric of a building, it should be designed and installed so as to contain the spread of fire (see Firecode: SHTM 81: 'Fire Precautions in New Hospitals, Version 3' and the requirements of the Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non-Domestic, Section 2: Fire, published by the Scottish Building Standards Agency).

1.13 It is management's responsibility to ensure that the standards applied during the design and installation are not reduced during the subsequent operation and maintenance of the equipment.

Plants installed in units manufacturing medicinal products

1.14 Plants installed in units manufacturing medicinal products to the standards set out in the current European guide to good manufacturing practice (http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/pharmaceuticals/ eudralex/homev4.htm) may also be subject to particular legislation with regard to their operation and maintenance.

1.15 There are specific requirements under the Medicines Act 1968 to maintain accurate records of plant performance, room conditions and maintenance

events. Such records would need to be preserved for up to 35 years as part of a quality assurance audit trail.

Plants installed in laboratories

1.16 Specialised ventilation plants installed in laboratories dealing with research, development or testing, whether involving drugs, animals or genetically modified organisms, may be subject to particular legislation with regard to their operation in addition to that mentioned above.

Codes of practice and guidance

1.17 All ventilation systems should conform to the principles set out in the Health and Safety Commission's Approved Code of Practice and guidance document 'Legionnaires' disease: the control of *Legionella* bacteria in water systems' (commonly known as L8), and Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04-01: 'The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems'.

1.18 Scottish Health Facilities Note 30: 'Infection Control in the Built Environment, Design and planning' guides and stimulates thinking on the planning of and execution of new construction and refurbishment works in all types of healthcare facilities. Ventilation systems (covered in this guidance) play an important role in reducing the risk of Healthcare Associated Infection.

Management responsibilities – general

1.19 It is a management responsibility to ensure that inspection, service and maintenance activities are carried out safely without hazard to staff, patients or members of the public.

1.20 Those required to monitor and/or maintain ventilation equipment will need to show that they are competent to do so (see Section 2).

1.21 Maintenance procedures should be reviewed periodically to ensure that they remain appropriate.

System information

1.22 When new ventilation systems are accepted for use, full information as to their designed mode of operation together with recommended maintenance procedures should be provided as part of the handover procedure.

1.23 In many existing systems, original design and commissioning information will not be available. It will therefore be necessary to determine a suitable level of system performance based on the function, purpose and age of the installation.

1.24 Part A of this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum gives design parameters for new installations.

1.25 Section 3 of this document sets out the minimum standards for all air-handling units (AHUs) and their air distribution systems.

1.26 Ventilation system records and logbooks should be kept of the commissioning information, operational management routine, monitoring and maintenance. The Health and Safety Executive and other interested bodies have a statutory right to inspect them at any time. All records should be kept for at least five years.

Note 1: In the event of a reportable incident connected with ventilation equipment or the area that it serves; all records and plant logbooks will need to be collected as evidence.

1.27 A set of specimen maintenance checklists is given in Appendix 1.

Frequency of inspections and verifications

1.28 All ventilation systems should be subject to, at least, a simple visual inspection annually.

1.29 Ventilation systems serving critical care areas should be inspected quarterly and their performance measured and verified annually. The quarterly inspection should be a simple visual check; the annual verification will be a more detailed inspection of the system together with the measurement of its actual performance.

1.30 The LEV section of the COSHH Regulations contains a statutory requirement that systems installed to contain or control hazardous substances be examined and tested at least every 14 months by a competent person.

1.31 Regular tests, at intervals agreed with the local fire prevention officer, will need to be carried out in order to demonstrate the continuing efficiency of the fire detection and containment systems. These may be in addition to the inspections detailed above. Records of these tests should be kept.

Implications of PPP/PFI Procurement

1.32 While the ultimate responsibilities as set out in this SHTM in terms of overall management remain with NHS Boards, when a new or recent hospital has been procured via the Public-Private Partnership (PPP) or Private Finance Initiative (PFI) routes, there are changes in the chain of responsibilities.

1.33 More often than not, the operator of the facility will subcontract or enter into partnership with a Facilities Management (FM) Provider who will maintain and operate mechanical and electrical installations, including ventilation systems. It is not unknown for the FM provider to be the NHS Board's own estates staff. Whichever organisation carries out the functions set out in this SHTM, it will be

necessary for the same practice and procedures to be carried out, records maintained and reports prepared to maintain an audit trail. These have to be submitted to the NHS Board for which the hospital has been established. The NHS Board will retain in-house estates staff and/or technical advisers to monitor these records and reports, having the right to comment where performance standards are not being achieved, inspect installations, and seek to ensure that remedial measures are put in hand and monitored as to their effect.

In the event that a civil suit is served on a NHS Board, they would seek redress from the operator of the Hospital, where appropriate.

1.34 Issues related to control of infection where mechanical ventilation systems are implicated will be the remit of the NHS Board's control of infection teams set up for the purpose and representation should be arranged for estates staff or the FM Provider so that any remedial action agreed can be can be set in motion without delay.

2. Functional responsibilities

Management responsibilities

2.1 Clear lines of managerial responsibility should be in place so that no doubt exists as to who is responsible for the safe operation and maintenance of the equipment.

2.2 A periodic review of management systems should take place in order to ensure that the agreed standards are being maintained.

2.3 Those required to inspect, verify or maintain ventilation equipment will need to show that they are competent to do so. As a minimum they should have sufficient knowledge of its correct operation to be able to recognise faults.

2.4 It is anticipated that training in the validation and verification of specialised healthcare ventilation systems for Authorised Persons and Competent Persons will become available during the life of this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum.

Designated staff functions

2.5 A person intending to fulfil any of the staff functions specified below should be able to prove that they possess sufficient skills, knowledge and experience to be able to perform safely the designated tasks.

Management

2.6 Management is defined as the owner, occupier, employer, general manager, chief executive or other person who is ultimately accountable for the safe operation of premises.

Designated Person

2.7 This person provides the essential senior management link between the organisation and professional support. The Designated Person should also provide an informed position at board level.

Authorising Engineer (Ventilation) (AE(V))

2.8 The AE(V) is defined as a person designated by Management to provide independent auditing and advice on ventilation systems and to review and witness documentation on validation.

Authorised Person (Ventilation) (AP(V))

2.9 The AP(V) will be an individual possessing adequate technical knowledge and having received appropriate training, appointed in writing by the Designated Person (in conjunction with the advice provided by the AE(V)), who is responsible for the practical implementation and operation of Management's safety policy and procedures relating to the engineering aspects of ventilation systems.

Competent Person (Ventilation) (CP(V))

2.10 The CP(V) is defined as a person designated by Management to carry out maintenance, validation and periodic testing of ventilation systems.

Infection Control Officer

2.11 The Infection Control Officer (or consultant microbiologist if not the same person) is the person nominated by management to advise on monitoring the infection control policy and microbiological performance of the systems.

2.12 Major policy decisions should be made through an infection control committee. The infection control committee should include representatives of the user department and estates and facilities or their nominated representative (that is, the Authorised Person).

Plant Operator

2.13 The Plant Operator is any person who operates a ventilation installation.

User

2.14 The User is the person responsible for the management of the unit in which the ventilation system is installed (for example head of department, operating theatre manager, head of laboratory, production pharmacist, head of research or other responsible person).

Contractor

2.15 The Contractor is the person or organisation responsible for the supply of the ventilation equipment, its installation, commissioning or validation. This person may be a representative of a specialist ventilation organisation or a member of the general manager/chief executive's staff.

Records

2.16 A record should be kept of those appointed to carry out the functions listed above. The record should clearly state the extent of the postholder's duties and responsibilities, and to whom they are to report.

2.17 Substitute or replacement staff should be designated in order to cover for sickness, holidays and staff transfers.

Training

2.18 Routine inspection and maintenance procedures can cause risks to the health of staff carrying out the work and those receiving air from the plant. All those involved should be made aware of the risks, and safe systems of work should be agreed. Suitable safety equipment should be provided as necessary, and training in its use should be given.

2.19 Any training given should be recorded, together with the date of delivery and topics covered.

2.20 Training in the use of safety equipment and a safe system of work will need to be repeated periodically in order to cater for changes in staff.

Specific health and safety aspects

2.21 Staff engaged in the service and maintenance of extract ventilation systems from pathology departments, mortuaries, laboratories, source-protective isolation facilities and other areas containing a chemical, biological or radiation hazard may be particularly at risk. In these cases, the risk should be identified and assessed.

2.22 The means by which the system can be rendered safe to work on should be determined, and a permit-to-work on the system implemented.

2.23 Training in the exact procedures should be given to all staff involved.

2.24 Some healthcare facilities may contain specialised units that are subject to access restrictions (for example pharmacy aseptic suites). Estates or contract staff requiring access may need additional training or to be accompanied when entering the unit.

Note 2: See also the following guidance published by the Health and Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee:

- 'Safe working and the prevention of infection in clinical laboratories and similar facilities';
- 'The management, design and operation of microbiological containment laboratories';
- 'Safe working and prevention of infection in the mortuary and post-mortem room'.

3. Ventilation systems – minimum requirements

General requirements

3.1 All ventilation systems should be inspected annually to ensure conformity with minimum requirements, which are designed to:

- ensure safe access when carrying out routine service and maintenance activities;
- prevent or control risks associated with *Legionella* and other potential hazardous organisms;
- check that the system remains fit for purpose;
- maintain records of outcomes.

3.2 Every effort should be made to ensure that all AHUs achieve the minimum requirement set out below.

Location and access

3.3 AHUs should be secured from unauthorised access.

3.4 Units located on roofs must have a safe and permanent means of access. Suitable precautions must be in place to prevent personnel or equipment from falling during maintenance activities.

3.5 Units located outside at ground level should be secured within a compound to prevent unauthorised access. Vehicles should be excluded from the vicinity to ensure that exhaust fumes will not be drawn into intakes.

3.6 All parts of the AHU should be easily and safely accessible for routine inspection and service.

3.7 The area around an AHU within a building should be tanked to prevent water penetration to adjacent areas, and should be adequately drained.

3.8 Fire precautions should be in accordance with Firecode.

3.9 Combustion equipment must not be located in a fire compartment that houses air-handling equipment.

3.10 Plantrooms that house AHUs must not be used for general storage. Care should be taken to ensure that combustible material is not kept in the plantroom.

Basic requirements

3.11 The plant must not contain any material or substance that could support the growth of microorganisms.

3.12 The plant must not contain any material or substance that could cause or support combustion.

3.13 Access to items that require routine service, such as filters, coils and chiller batteries, should be via hinged doors.

3.14 Items requiring infrequent access such as attenuators may be via clipped or bolted-on lift-off panels.

3.15 All doors and panels should be close-fitting and without leaks.

3.16 Every effort should be made to ensure that access is via fixed ladders and platforms or pulpit-style movable steps.

3.17 Electrical and mechanical services should not restrict or impede access to those parts of the AHU that require inspection.

3.18 Viewing ports and internal illumination should be fitted in order to inspect filters and drainage trays.

3.19 Internal illumination should be provided by fittings to at least IP55 rating. Fittings should be positioned so that they provide both illumination for inspection and task lighting.

3.20 A single switch should operate all of the lights in a unit.

AHU intakes and discharges

3.21 Intake and discharge points should not be situated where they will cause vitiated air to be drawn into a system (see paragraphs 3.61-3.71) in Part A, which give detailed information). In existing systems, it may be necessary to extend the intake or discharge point to a suitable position.

3.22 Each intake and discharge point should be fitted with corrosion-resistant weatherproof louvres or cowls to protect the system from driving rain. The inside of the louvres should be fitted with a mesh of not less than 6mm and not more than 12mm to prevent infestation by vermin and prevent leaves being drawn in.

3.23 The duct behind a louvre should be self-draining. If this is not practicable, it should be tanked and provided with a drainage system. Cleaning access must be provided either from the outside via hinged louvres or by access doors in the plenum behind the louvre. Where a common plenum is provided, cleaning access should be via a walk-in door.

AHU drainage system

3.24 All items of plant that could produce moisture must be provided with a drainage system. The system will comprise a drip-tray, glass trap, air break and associated drainage pipework.

3.25 Some existing units may not have been mounted far enough above the floor to permit the correct installation of a drainage system. If the AHU cannot be raised to an adequate height, an alternative arrangement (such as a pump-out system) must be provided.

3.26 The drip-tray should be constructed of a corrosion-resistant material (stainless steel is preferred) and be so arranged that it will completely drain. To prevent 'pooling', it is essential that the drain connection should not have an upstand and that a slope of approximately 1 in 20 in all directions should be incorporated to the drain outlet position. The tray must be completely accessible or, for smaller units, easily removable for inspection and cleaning.

3.27 Each drip-tray should be provided with its own drain trap. The drain trap should be of the clear (borosilicate) glass type. This permits the colour of the water seal to be observed, thus giving an early indication of corrosion, biological activity or contamination within the duct (Part A, Section 4, paragraphs 4.20-4.25 refer and paragraph 3.29 of this Part B).

3.28 The trap should have a means for filling and should incorporate couplings to facilitate removal for cleaning. It should be located in an easily visible position where it will not be subject to casual knocks. The pipework connecting it to the drainage tray should have a continuous fall of not less than 1 in 20.

3.29 Traps fitted to plant located outside or in unheated plantrooms may need to be trace-heated in winter. The trace heating should be checked for operation and must not raise the temperature of water in the trap above 5°C.

3.30 Water from each trap must discharge via a clear air gap of at least 15mm above the unrestricted spill-over level of either an open tundish connected to a drainage stack via a second trap, or a floor gully (or channel). A support should be provided to ensure that the air gap cannot be reduced. More than one drain trap may discharge into the tundish, providing each has its own air break.

3.31 Drainage pipework may be thermoplastic, copper or stainless steel. Glass should not be used. The pipework should be a minimum diameter of 22mm and have a fall of at least 1 in 60 in the direction of flow. It should be well supported, and located so as not to inhibit access to the AHU.

Dampers

3.32 AHUs serving critical areas and those areas that are shut down out of hours should be fitted with motorised low-leak shut-off dampers located immediately behind the intake and discharge of each supply and extract system.

Fan drives

3.33 Fan-drive trains, whether supply or extract, should be easily visible without the need to remove access covers. Protecting the drive train with a mesh guard is the preferred option. For weatherproof units designed to be located outside, the fan drive should be enclosed. It should be easily visible through a viewing port with internal illumination and be accessed via a lockable, hinged door.

3.34 The motor windings of induction-drive 'plug' motor arrangements and in-line axial fans having a pod motor within the air stream must be protected from over-temperature by a thermistor and lockout relay.

3.35 It is necessary to ensure that – should the computer control system or its software develop a fault – the fan can be switched to a direct start with fixed speed and manual operation. This is particularly important for critical care systems serving operating suites, high dependency care units of any type, isolation facilities, laboratories and pharmaceutical production suites.

Heater & Frost batteries

3.36 Access for cleaning must be provided to both sides of frost batteries and heater-batteries.

3.37 Where auxiliary wet heater-batteries are located in false ceilings, they should be fitted with a catch tray and leak alarm. The catch tray should be installed under both the battery and the control valve assembly to protect the ceiling from leaks. A moisture sensor and alarm should be fitted in the tray. Placing wet heater batteries in ceiling voids should be avoided if at all possible.

Cooling coils

3.38 Each cooling coil – whether within the AHU or within a branch duct – must be fitted with its own independent drainage system as specified above. A baffle or similar device must be provided in the drip-tray to prevent air bypassing the coil, and the tray should be large enough to capture the moisture from the eliminator, bends and headers.

3.39 The cooling-coil control valve should close upon selection of low speed, system shutdown, low air-flow or fan failure.

3.40 Where auxiliary wet-cooling coils are located in false ceilings, they should be fitted with a catch tray and leak alarm. The catch tray should be installed under both the battery and the control valve assembly to protect the ceiling from leaks. A moisture sensor and alarm should be fitted in the tray.

Humidifiers

3.41 Humidifiers are not generally required. Where they are fitted, but have been out of use for a significant period of time, they should be removed. All associated pipework should also be removed back to its junction with the running main.

3.42 Where humidifiers are fitted and their use is still required, they should fully conform to the installation standard set out in Section 4 of Part A.

3.43 The section of ductwork containing the humidifier may need to be periodically decontaminated. Hinged access doors with viewing ports and internal illumination should be provided.

3.44 All humidifiers must be fitted with their own independent drainage system as detailed above.

3.45 Only steam-injection humidifiers, whether mains fed or locally generated, are suitable for use in air-conditioning systems within healthcare facilities. Water humidifiers, if fitted, should be removed.

3.46 Self- and locally-generated steam humidifiers must be supplied with potable water. The installation should be capable of being isolated, drained and cleaned. Section 4 in Part A of this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum gives further details.

3.47 Some steam generators are of a type that requires regular cleaning and descaling. The installation should enable them to be physically isolated from the air duct in order to prevent contamination of the air supply by cleaning agents.

3.48 The humidifier control system should fully conform to the standard set out in Sections 4 and 6 of Part A.

Filtration

3.49 Filters must be securely housed and sealed in well-fitting frames that minimise air bypass. Air bypass significantly reduces filter efficiency: the higher the filter grade, the greater the effect. Mounting frames should be designed so that the air flow pushes the filter into its housing to help minimise air bypass.

3.50 All filters should be of the dry type. Panel filters are generally used as pre-filters and should be positioned on the inlet side of the supply fan, downstream of the frost battery. Where required, secondary filters (these will be bags or pleated paper) should be on the positive-pressure side of the fan.

3.51 The filter installation should provide easy access to filter media for cleaning, removal or replacement; therefore, a hinged access door should be provided. The upstream side of the filter should be visible for inspection through a viewing port with internal illumination.

3.52 All filters should be provided with a means of checking the differential pressure across them. Direct-reading dial-type gauges marked with clean and dirty sectors are preferred.

High-efficiency filters – HEPA and ULPA

3.53 Where fitted, HEPA filters should be of the replaceable-panel type with leak-proof seals. Their installation should permit the validation of the filter and its housing.

3.54 HEPA filters are sometimes used in extract systems for the containment of hazardous substances or organisms. They may be fitted with pre-filters to extend their service life.

3.55 When used for the containment of hazardous substances, the installation should incorporate design provision for the subsequent safe removal and handling of contaminated filters by maintenance staff.

Energy recovery

3.56 Energy recovery, where fitted, will require cleaning access to both sides of the device.

3.57 Whichever type of energy recovery device is fitted, the extract side should be protected by a G3 filter and provided with a drainage system to remove condensate.

3.58 The heat-recovery device should be controlled in sequence with the main heater-battery, and may need to incorporate a control to prevent the transfer of unwanted heat when the air-on condition rises above the plant's required set point.

Attenuation

3.59 Cleaning access should be provided at both ends of any attenuator unit.

Identification and labelling

3.60 All supply and extract ventilation systems should be clearly labelled. The label should identify both the AHU and the area that it serves. The lettering should be at least 50mm high and be mounted in an easily visible place near the fan of the unit. Any sub-systems and the principal branch ducts should be similarly labelled.

3.61 The direction of air-flow should be clearly marked on all main and branch ducts.

3.62 All air-flow test-points should be clearly identified and the size of the duct given.

Pressure stabilisers

3.63 Pressure stabilisers should be unobstructed and silent in operation.

4. Annual inspection and verification requirements

Ventilation systems inspection

4.1 All ventilation systems should be subject to at least a simple visual inspection annually.

4.2 The purpose of the inspection is to establish that:

- the system is still required;
- the AHU conforms to the minimum standard (see Section 3);
- the fire containment has not been breached;
- the general condition of the system is adequate for purpose;
- the system overall is operating in a satisfactory manner.

4.3 It is recommended that a simple check sheet be used to record the result of the inspection. Examples are given in Appendices 1 and 2.

Critical ventilation systems

4.4 All critical ventilation systems should be inspected quarterly and verified at least annually. In some circumstances the verification may need to be carried out more frequently.

4.5 The quarterly inspection should be as detailed in paragraphs 4.1 – 4.3.

4.6 The purpose of the annual verification will be to ensure additionally that the system:

- achieves minimum standards specific to the application;
- is operating to an acceptable performance level;
- remains fit for purpose.

Definition of a critical system

4.7 Ventilation systems serving the following are considered critical:

- operating theatres of any type, including rooms used for investigations (for example catheter laboratories);
- patient isolation facility of any type;
- critical care, intensive treatment or high-dependency unit;
- neonatal unit;

- Category 3 or 4 laboratory or room;
- pharmacy aseptic suite;
- inspection and packing room in a sterile services department;
- MRI, CAT and other types of emerging imaging technologies that require particularly stable environmental conditions to remain within calibration;
- any system classified as an LEV system under the COSHH Regulations;
- any other system that clearly meets the definition.

4.8 The loss of service from such a system would seriously degrade the ability of the premises to deliver optimal healthcare.

Annual verification

4.9 The annual verification is intended to establish that:

- the system is still required;
- the AHU conforms to the minimum standard (see Section 3);
- the fire containment has not been breached;
- the general condition of the ventilation system is adequate;
- the fabric of the area served is satisfactory;
- the system performance is adequate with respect to the functional requirement – this will require:
  - a full measure of the supply and extract air-flow rates;
  - the calculation of room air-change rates if applicable;
  - the measurement of room differential pressures if applicable;
  - the measurement of room noise levels;
  - air-quality checks if appropriate;
  - a check on the control functions.

4.10 An assessment should then be made as to whether the system overall is fit for purpose and operating in a satisfactory manner.

Fabric of the area served

4.11 The building elements in the room or rooms served by a critical ventilation system should also be suitable for the function. As an example, in a suite of rooms comprising an operating theatre complex, the following elements should be checked:

- the ceiling should be complete and, if tiled, all tiles should be clipped down and sealed;

- the walls and floors should be free from significant construction and finish defects;
- windows and their trickle vents should be sealed and locked shut;
- the doors should close completely and the door closers should be correctly adjusted to hold them against the room pressure;
- all service penetrations and access panels should be sealed to prevent uncontrolled air flow between rooms and service voids;
- steps should have been taken (if necessary) to prevent portable equipment and stock items from obstructing low-level supply, transfer or extract airflow paths.

4.12 Failure to achieve a suitable standard will render even the most sophisticated ventilation system ineffective.

4.13 All fire dampers should be tested as part of the annual verification.

4.14 LEV systems will be subject to an examination and test by a competent person at least every 14 months.

4.15 Table 1 overleaf provides a model for the verification of critical ventilation systems.

Critical ventilation systems – verification standards

4.16 Unless otherwise specified below, the ventilation system should achieve not less than 75% of the design air-change rate given in Appendix 1 of Part A, or its original design parameters.

4.17 The pressure regime should achieve not less than 75% of the design value given in Appendix 1 of Part A, or its original design parameters; and the pressure gradient relationships with regards to surrounding areas must be maintained.

4.18 The sound levels given in Table 2 overleaf are maximum permissible levels and should not be exceeded. Measurements should be made using at least a Type 2 sound meter fitted with a muff. Its accuracy should be checked using a calibration sound source before use.

Step	Question	Information/standard required	Comment
1	Is the system still required?	Why was it installed?	Is that function still required?
2	Does the AHU achieve the minimum standard?	Health and safety aspects Intake/discharge positions Inspection access *Legionella* control and drainage Fire and electrical safety Leaks, cleanliness and insulation Filtration	Inspect to ascertain compliance with minimum standards set out in Section 3 Part B of this SHTM
3	Is the air distribution system satisfactory?	Access Fire dampers Cleanliness Insulation Identification Room terminals Pressure stabilisers	Inspect to ascertain continued fitness for purpose
4	Does the measured system performance still accord with the design intent and achieve a minimum acceptable standard?	Design air velocities Design air-flow rates Room air-change rates Pressure differentials Noise levels Air quality	Establish the design values Measure the system output to verify its performance
5	Does the control system function correctly?	Desired environmental conditions Control sequence logic Run; set back, off philosophy	Establish the design requirement Inspect/test to verify performance
6	Having regard to the foregoing, is the system 'fit for purpose' and will it only require routine maintenance in order to remain so until the next scheduled verification?		Yes or No
7	What routine service and maintenance will be required for the system to remain fit for purpose and function correctly until the next scheduled verification?	Filter changes System cleaning Performance indication Performance monitoring Performance measurement	Decide inspection frequency and maintenance schedule

Table 1: Operational management and routine verification process model

Location	Design sound level (NR)	Measured sound level (dB (A))
Ultra-clean operating room	50	55
Conventional operating room	40	45
All other non-specified rooms	40	45
Corridors	40	45
Recovery room	35	40
Ward areas, sleeping areas	30	35

Table 2: Maximum sound levels (service noise only)

Vertical ultra-clean operating theatres

4.19 The following additional measurements should be taken:

- the average air velocity at the 2m level under the canopy: it should achieve a minimum average of 0.38 m/s for a partial wall system and 0.3 m/s for a full wall system;
- the air velocity within the inner zone at the 1m level: every reading should achieve a minimum velocity of 0.2 m/s.

4.20 The air velocity measurements are to be taken using the equipment, test grid and method set out in Section 8 of Part A.

Note 3: There is no requirement to carry out filter scanning or entrainment tests at the annual verification unless the HEPA filters or recirculating air fans are changed, or the system is in some other significant way disturbed or altered. Changing the filters in the AHU or recirculating air filters does not constitute a significant disturbance to the ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) unit.

4.21 Should the UCV terminal fail to achieve a suitable standard, resulting in the need to disturb or replace the HEPA filters or recirculating air fans, the unit should be revalidated using the procedure given in Section 8 of Part A.

Note 4: Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01 (2011) gives detailed guidance on acoustics and the measurement of sound.

Horizontal ultra-clean operating theatres

4.22 The following additional measurements should be taken:

- the discharge velocity test at 1m, 1.5m and 2m in front of the terminal: the average velocity should be not less than 0.4 m/s.

4.23 The measurements are to be taken using the equipment, test grid and method set out in Section 8 of Part A.

4.24 Should the UCV terminal fail to achieve a suitable standard, resulting in the need to disturb or replace the HEPA filters or recirculating air fans, the unit should be revalidated using the procedure given in Section 8 of Part A.

Category 3 and 4 laboratories and rooms

4.25 These areas should conform to the requirements of current information published by the Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens and the Health and Safety Executive:

- 'The management, design and operation of microbiological containment laboratories';
- 'Biological agents: managing the risks in laboratories and healthcare premises'; and
- 'Biological agents: the principles, design and operation of Containment Level 4 facilities'.

Pharmacy aseptic suites

4.26 Pharmacy aseptic suites should conform to the requirements of the European guide to good manufacturing practice (http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/pharmaceuticals/eudralex/homev4.htm) and the requirements of the Medicine Inspectorate if a licensed manufacturing unit.

Sterile services department – inspection and packing rooms

4.27 Inspection and packing rooms should conform to the requirements of BS EN ISO 14644 and any additional requirements for the processing of medical devices, if applicable (see also Scottish Health Planning Note 13: 'Sterile services department').

LEV systems

4.28 LEV systems should conform to the Health and Safety Executive's 'The maintenance, examination and testing of local exhaust ventilation'.

Critical system verification failure

4.29 Should a critical system be unable to achieve the standard set out above, it should be taken out of service. If healthcare provision needs prevent the system being taken out of service, the senior manager of the user department should be informed in writing that the system performance is suboptimal. A copy of the notice should be sent to the infection control committee.

4.30 If a critical system is refurbished in order to bring it to a suitable standard, it should be subject to the full validation procedure set out in Section 8 of Part A or other application-specific guidance as appropriate.

5. Inspection and maintenance

General

5.1 Inspection and maintenance activities should be assessed to ensure that they do not create a hazard for those who undertake the work or for those who could be affected by it.

5.2 The degree and frequency of maintenance should relate to the function of the system, its location, its general condition and the consequence of failure.

5.3 Specimen inspection and maintenance checklists are given in Appendices 1 and 2.

Inspection and maintenance of critical systems

5.4 The loss of service of these systems would seriously degrade the ability of the premises to deliver optimal healthcare. In order to ensure reliable service provision, it is essential to inspect, verify and maintain these systems at appropriate intervals.

5.5 For many of these systems a permit-to-work will need to be completed to ensure that taking the ventilation system out of service does not compromise the activities of the user department. In any event, it will be necessary to liaise with the user department when switching the system off to carry out routine inspection and maintenance.

AHU drainage

5.6 AHU drainage systems comprise a drainage tray, glass trap, connecting pipework and an air break. The system should be inspected to ensure that it is clean and operating correctly. The cleanliness of the drainage tray and colour of the water in the trap will give an indication of a fault condition (see Table 3 overleaf).

Colour of water	Probable cause and comment
Normal	Satisfactory.
Green	Copper corrosion of pipework Possible leak in battery tubing.
White	Aluminium corrosion of battery fins.
Black	General dirt Filter faulty allowing air bypass System is overdue for a thorough clean Urgent action required.
Brown/red	Iron corrosion (rust) within the duct May indicate a specific *Legionella* hazard Immediate action required.
Bubbly/slimy	Microbiological activity within the duct May indicate a specific *Legionella* hazard Immediate action required.

Table 3: Colour of water in glass trap

Filter changing

5.7 Dirty supply air filters may pose a general dust hazard when being changed.

5.8 Dirty extract- and return-air filters may pose an increased level of hazard. This will relate to the particular contamination within the air that they have filtered. Filters handling extract air from general areas are unlikely to present a significantly greater hazard than that posed by dirty supply air filters.

5.9 Care should be taken to protect staff from inhaling the dust. If there is a need to enter the duct when changing filters, a dust mask should be worn.

5.10 Dirty filters should be carefully removed and placed in the box that contained the replacement filters or in a plastic bag. On completion of the work, the dirty filters should be removed from the plantroom and disposed of appropriately.

5.11 The duct in the area of the filter housing should be carefully vacuumed before fitting the replacement filters. This will prevent particles (that is, those that are shed when the dirty filters are disturbed) being blown into the system downstream.

5.12 It is important to ensure that replacement filters are fitted the right way round. Most panel filters are manufactured with a membrane or wire support mesh on their downstream side. Alternatively they may be colour-coded. The manufacturer's instructions regarding fitting should be followed.

5.13 Bag filters should be fitted with the pockets vertical. Care should be taken to remove any transit tapes and to ensure that the individual pockets are separate and free to inflate.

Changing extract filters containing hazardous substances

5.14 Filters handling extract air from an LEV system will obviously present a hazard and should be subject to a safe system of work.

5.15 Filters used in an extract system for the containment of hazardous substances or organisms should incorporate design provision for their safe removal when so contaminated. This may be achieved by:

- sealing the hazardous substance into the filter before it is removed;
- a system to fumigate the filter to kill any organisms;
- housing it in a 'safe change' unit that permits the filter to be ejected into a bag and sealed without staff having to come into direct contact with it.

5.16 The method chosen should reflect the nature of the hazard.

5.17 Filters fitted to remove hazardous substances from extract air are classed as hazardous waste and should be handled and disposed of accordingly.

Ventilation system cleaning

5.18 The intake section of a ventilation system should be vacuumed-out as necessary to remove visible particles.

5.19 AHUs should be vacuumed-out and/or washed down internally as necessary to remove obvious dust and dirt.

5.20 Chiller batteries, humidifier units, energy-recovery batteries or plates and their drainage systems should be washed down with hot water annually to remove visible contamination.

5.21 Supply air distribution ductwork conveys air that has been filtered. It will require internal cleaning only when it becomes contaminated with visible dirt. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the age of the system and grade of the AHU final filter but will typically be in excess of ten years. There is no requirement to clean ductwork annually. A rapid build-up of visible dirt within a supply duct is an indication of a failure of the filtration or its housing.

5.22 Extract air systems handle unfiltered air. They should be cleaned as frequently as necessary in order to maintain their operating efficiency. Room extract terminals, particularly those sited at low level in critical care areas, will need regular cleaning.

5.23 On completion of cleaning, the ductwork should not be 'fogged' with chemicals. This treatment has no lasting biocidal effect and is responsible for initiating the breakdown of the galvanised coating of ductwork. This will result in accelerated corrosion of the inside of the duct, with the products of corrosion being shed into the air stream. It will also significantly shorten service life.

5.24 Following duct cleaning, all service hatches should be checked to ensure that they have been correctly replaced and do not leak.

5.25 Duct-cleaning equipment that uses rotating brushes or a vacuum unit can easily damage flexible sections of ductwork. On completion of cleaning, all flexible duct sections should be checked for rips and tears. The straps that secure them to rigid duct sections and air terminals should also be checked to ensure that there is no air leakage.

Chilled beams

5.26 The efficiency of these units will rapidly decline if they become blocked with fluff/lint. They should be inspected every six months and cleaned as appropriate.

Split and cassette cooling units

5.27 These units incorporate internal recirculation air filters and a drainage system to remove condensate from the cooling coil. The systems should be inspected and cleaned every three months.

Portable room cooling units

5.28 Portable units are sometimes kept in store or hired-in to cope with temporary local situations giving rise to excessive temperatures. They typically incorporate internal recirculation air filters and a drainage system to remove condensate from the cooling coil. Units employing an internal water reservoir and wick to promote evaporative cooling must not be used in healthcare premises.

5.29 The infection control team must be consulted before these types of unit are deployed.

5.30 The units should be inspected and thoroughly cleaned before being taken into use. Units that are to be used in areas containing immunocompromised patients will, unless new, need to be fumigated before use.

5.31 All portable units should be inspected and cleaned every week that they remain in use.

Self-contained mobile filter and/or ultraviolet (UV) light units

5.32 The efficacy of these units is directly related to their cleanliness. In this respect, the manufacturer's instructions regarding service/maintenance and lamp and filter replacement should be closely followed.

5.33 Units that have been used in isolation rooms or areas containing infective patients will need to be fumigated before being used in other locations, or returned to store or to the hirer.

5.34 Filters fitted to remove hazardous substances from the recirculated room air are classed as hazardous waste and should be handled and disposed of accordingly (see also Scottish Health Technical Note 3: NHS Scotland Waste Management Guidance Parts A-D).

Inspection and maintenance records

5.35 Records of inspection and maintenance activities should be kept for at least five years.

Appendix 1: Annual inspection of critical ventilation systems – AHU and plantroom equipment

Definition of terms used on survey form

General condition

End of useful life
This should be clear from the condition of the AHU and its associated services and plant. The main indicators will be: • extensive internal and/or external corrosion of the AHU casing; • failure of filter housings to prevent air bypass; • general corrosion of heater and cooling battery fins, attenuator surfaces etc; • significant failure to meet minimum standards; • associated plant services and control elements in a poor condition or not able to fulfil their purpose; • AHU aged 20 years or more.
Action: **Urgent replacement indicated.**

Poor
Should be fairly apparent but should include an assessment of the degree of corrosion; • cleanliness of coils and batteries; • quality of filter mountings and their ability to prevent air bypass; • fan and drive train condition; • the control system elements' ability to fulfil their function; • condition of the access doors and inspection covers. The age of the AHU is generally less important.
Action: **Extensive refurbishment or prolonged replacement indicated**.

Average
Some faults but generally free of significant corrosion, clean internally and conforming to minimum standards.
Action: Faults capable of correction at next maintenance period.

Good
Conforming to the minimum standards, obviously cared for and subject to routine maintenance.
Action: Routine maintenance will preserve standard of equipment.

Compliance with minimum standards (questions 2 to 23, 32 and 33)

Poor
More than three answers are negative.
Action: Management action require by estates/facilities department.

Average
No more than 3 answers are negative.
Action: **Maintenance action required**.

Good
No answers are negative, full compliance.
Action: None.

Maintenance quality (questions 5, 12, 26 to 31 and 34 to 40)

Poor
More than three answers are negative.
Action: Management action required by estates/facilities department.

Average
No more than three answers are negative.
Action: Maintenance action required.

Good
No answers are negative.
Action: None.

Annual inspection of critical ventilation systems – AHU and plantroom equipment

Hospital ☐

Plantroom ☐

Air-handling unit ☐ **Age of unit** ☐

Area served by unit ☐

Date of survey ☐ **Name** ☐

General condition: End useful life ☐ **Poor** ☐ **Average** ☐ **Good** ☐

Compliance with minimum standards Poor ☐ **Average** ☐ **Good** ☐

(Questions 2 to 23; 32 and 33)

Maintenance quality **Poor** ☐ **Average** ☐ **Good** ☐

(Questions 5, 12, 26 to 31, 34 to 40)

No	Survey question	Yes	No	Comments
1	Plant running?			
2	Are the unit and its associate plant secure from unauthorised access?			
3	Is the unit safely accessible for inspection and maintenance?			
4	Is the air intake positioned to avoid short-circuiting with extract or foul air from other sources such as gas scavenging outlets?			
5	Are all inspection lights operating?			
6	Are motorised dampers fitted to the intake and discharge?			
7	Are the fan motor(s) outside of the air stream?			

No	Survey question	Yes	No	Comments
8	Is the fan drive train visible without removing covers?			
9	Is the cooling coil located on the discharge side of the fan?			
10	Is an energy-recovery system fitted (state type)?			
11	Are condensate drainage systems fitted to all energy recovery systems, cooling coils and humidifiers in accordance of Section 3 of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01, Part B?			
12	Are drainage traps clean and filled with water? (see Table 3 in SHTM 03-01, Part B)			
13	Is the drain trap air break at least 15mm?			
14	If a humidifier is fitted, state the type			
15	Is the humidifier capable of operation?			
16	Is there space to safely change the filters safely?			
17	Are there test holes in the principal ducts?			
18	Are the test holes capped?			
19	What is the general condition of the exterior of the AHU?			
20	Are the principal ducts lagged?			
21	What is the general condition of the associated control valves and pipework?			
22	Is the pipework adequately lagged?			
23	Is the system clearly labelled?			
24	Record prefilter differential pressure.			
25	Record main filter differential pressure.			

Switch plant off. Fit padlock to isolator.

No	Survey question	Yes	No	Comments
26	Did the motorised dampers close on plant shutdown?			
27	Is the vermin/insect screen clean?			
28	Is the intake section including the fog coil clean?			
29	Are the pre-filters correctly fitted with no air by-pass?			
30	Are all drive belts correctly aligned and tensioned?			
31	Is the cooling-coil matrix cleaned?			
32	Are all drip trays fully accessible or capable of being removed for cleaning and have a fall to drain?			
33	Are the drainage trays stainless?			
34	Are the drainage trays clean?			
35	Are the drainage traps free of water?			
36	Is the matrix clean for each heater-battery?			
37	Have the main filters been correctly fitted with no air by-pass?			
38	Are AHU and its associated main ductwork clean internally?			
Remove padlock and Re-start plant.				
39	Did unit restart satisfactorily?			
Test automatic fan-motor change-over, if fitted				
40	Did automatic changeover operate satisfactorily?			

Additional comments
(For example: air leaks from access doors; control valves leaking or passing; general cleanliness of the area around the unit; or any other items of concern.)

Competent person/Authorised person……

Appendix 2: Operating suite annual verification

Definition of terms used on survey form

Assessment of compliance with Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01 (all questions relevant to the type of theatre)

Poor
• air volumes and hence air-change rates is less than 75% of the design; • room pressure differentials do not ensure a flow from clean to less clean areas; • supply or extract air diffusers are not clean; • pressure stabilisers not clean and/or not operating correctly; • significant faults or failures of indicators on surgeon's panel; • visible faults in the fabric of the suite; • doors unable to close completely; • general air of neglect.
Action: Urgent management action required

Average
• air pressure and room pressure differentials approximate to the original design values; • supply air diffusers clean but extracts visibly fouled; • most pressure stabilisers clean and operating correctly; • some of the indicators on the surgeon's panel not working; • minor faults in the fabric and décor of the suite.
Action: Maintenance action required

Good
Better than average
Action: None

Maintenance quality (all questions relevant to the type of theatre)

Poor
More than three answers are negative
Action: Management action required by estates/facilities department

Average
No more than three answers are negative
Action: Maintenance action required

Good
No answers are negative
Action: None

Annual verification of theatre ventilation systems - Theatre suite information

Hospital _____

Theatre name/no. _____ **Type of Theatre** _____

Date of survey _____ **AHU location & ID** _____

Name _____

Compliance with SHPN & SHTM **Poor** ☐ **Average** ☐ **Good** ☐

Maintenance quality **Poor** ☐ **Average** ☐ **Good** ☐

No	Survey question	Yes	No	Comments
1	Has the annual verification of the AHU been carried out?			
2	Are windows hermetically sealed?			
3	Is the theatre /are the theatre and prep room complete and sealed?			
4	Are there any significant faults in the fabric of the rooms in the suite?			
5	Are room light fittings correctly sealed?			
6	Do all doors close completely and hold against the room pressure?			
7	Are the pressure stabilisers operating correctly and silently?			
8	Are the supply and extract air terminals and pressure stabilisers visibly clean?			
9	Measure and record the operating room temperature			
10	Does this accord with that displayed on the surgeon's panel?			

No	Survey question	Yes	No	Comments
11	Measure and record the operating room relative humidity.			
12	Does this accord with that displayed on the surgeon's panel?			
13	Measure and record the supply and extract airflow in the principal ducts.			
14	Measure and record the airflow at all supply and extract terminals.			
15	Does the derived air-change rate achieve at least 75% of the design?			
16	For UCV units, also measure and record the air velocities within the canopy using the method set out in Section 8 of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01 (Part A)			
17	Do the air velocities achieve the standard appropriate for the type of canopy?			
18	Measure and record the room differential pressures			
19	Do the room differential pressures ensure a flow of air from the clean to the less clean areas?			
20	Measure and record the noise levels in the principal rooms of the suite.			
21	Do the noise levels fall below the limits set out in Table 2 of SHTM 03-01 Part B			
22	Check the operation of all ventilation control functions represented on the surgeon's panel.			
23	Do the indicators accurately represent the operational state of the ventilation system(s)?			

No	Survey question	Yes	No	Comments
24	For UCV systems: are the UCV and AHU interlocked to ensure that the AHU runs at full speed when the UCV is at operating speed or at set-back? (see Table 7 in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01, Part A)			
25	With the UCV running at setback, does the system maintain the standard of a conventional operating room?			
26	For all theatres: with the system running at set-back, does it maintain a flow of air from the clean to the less clean areas?			

Additional comments
(For example: the general décor; are the suite and its ventilation systems suitable for their designated functions?)

Competent person/Authorised person……

References

Acts and regulations

Scottish Technical Handbooks Non Domestic. Scottish Building Standards Agency, 2007. http://sbsa.gov.uk

Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non Domestic, Section 2: Fire. Scottish Building Standards Agency. 2007 http://sbsa.gov.uk

Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non Domestic Section 6: Energy. Scottish Building Standards Agency 2007. http://sbsa.gov.uk

Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (COSHH) 2002. SI 2002 No 2677. TSO, 2002. www.opsi.gov.uk/si/si2002/20022677.htm

Health Act 2006. TSO, 2006. www.opsi.gov.uk/ACTS/acts2006/20060028.htm

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974. HMSO, 1974.

Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999. SI 1999 No 3242. TSO, 1999. www.opsi.gov.uk/SI/si1999/19993242.htm

Medicines Act 1968. TSO, 1968.

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998. SI 1998 No 2306. HMSO, 1998. www.opsi.gov.uk/SI/si1998/19982306.htm

Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992. SI 1992 No 3004. HMSO, 1992. www.opsi.gov.uk/si/si1992/Uksi_19923004_en_1.htm

British Standards

BS EN ISO 14644-1: 1999. Clean rooms and associated controlled environments. Classification of air cleanliness.

Health Facilities Scotland Publications

Scottish Health Planning Note 13: Sterile services department**.** Health Facilities Scotland forthcoming.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04-01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems. Health facilities Scotland, 2011.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 81: Fire Prevention in New Hospitals, 2003. Health Facilities Scotland.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01: Acoustics**.** Health Facilities Scotland, 2011.

Scottish Health Facilities Note 30: Infection Control in The Built Environment: Design and planning. Health Facilities Scotland, 2007.

Other publications

Health & Safety Commission (2000). Approved Code of Practice, Legionnaires' disease: the control of legionella bacteria in water systems (L8). Health and Safety Executive, 2000.

Health & Safety Executive (1998). The maintenance, examination and testing of local exhaust ventilation. HSE Books, 1998.

Health & Safety Executive (2005). Workplace exposure limits: containing the list of workplace exposure limits for use with the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations, 2002 (as amended). HSE Books, 2005.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2005). Biological agents: managing the risks in laboratories and healthcare premises. HSE Books, 2005.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2005). Biological agents: the principles, design and operation of Containment Level 4 facilities. HSE Books, 2005.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2001). (The) Management, design and operation of microbiological containment laboratories. HSE Books, 2001.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2003). Safe working and the prevention of infection in clinical laboratories and similar facilities. HSE Books, 2003.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2003). Safe working and the prevention of infection in the mortuary and post-mortem room. HSE Books, 2003.

A42659819

NHS National Services Scotland

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01

Ventilation for healthcare premises
Part A – Design and validation

Health Facilities Scotland
Engineering and Environment

February 2014

Contents

A42659819

Acknowledgements

Health Facilities Scotland would like to thank the principal contributors and the Steering Group led by the Department of Health for their efforts in producing the HTM 03-01 Part A document.

HTM 03-01 Part A has been updated and amended by Health Facilities Scotland for use in NHSScotland as SHTM 03-01 Part A and the contribution from the National Heating & Ventilation Advisory Group is gratefully acknowledged.

Preface

About Scottish Health Technical Memoranda

Engineering Scottish Health Technical Memoranda (SHTMs) give comprehensive advice and guidance on the design, installation and operation of specialised building and engineering technology used in the delivery of healthcare.

The focus of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum guidance remains on healthcare-specific elements of standards, policies and up-to-date established best practice. They are applicable to new and existing sites, and are for use at various stages during the whole building lifecycle.

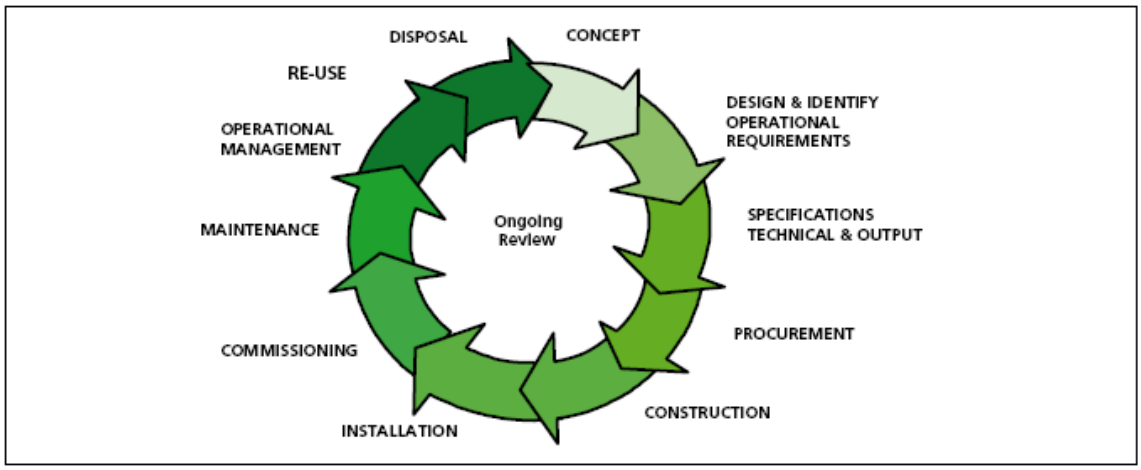
Healthcare providers have a duty of care to ensure that appropriate engineering governance arrangements are in place and are managed effectively. The Engineering Scottish Health Technical Memorandum series provides best practice engineering standards and policy to enable management of this duty of care.

It is not the intention within this suite of documents to repeat unnecessarily international or European standards, industry standards or UK Government legislation. Where appropriate, these will be referenced.

Healthcare-specific technical engineering guidance is a vital tool in the safe and efficient operation of healthcare facilities. Scottish Health Technical Memorandum guidance is the main source of specific healthcare-related guidance for estates and facilities professionals.

The core suite of eight subject areas provides access to guidance which:

- is more streamlined and accessible;
- encapsulates the latest standards and best practice in healthcare engineering;
- provides a structured reference for healthcare engineering.



Healthcare building lifecycle

Structure of the Scottish Health Technical Memorandum suite

The series of engineering-specific guidance contains a suite of eight core subjects:

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00: Policies and principles (applicable to all Scottish Health Technical Memoranda in this series).

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 01: Decontamination.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 02: Medical gases.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03: Heating and ventilation systems.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04: Water systems.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 05: Reserved for future use.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06: Electrical services.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07: Environment and sustainability.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08: Specialist services.

Some subject areas may be further developed into topics shown as -01, -02 etc and further referenced into Parts A, B etc.

Example: Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06-02 Part A will represent: Electrical Services – Electrical safety guidance for low voltage systems.

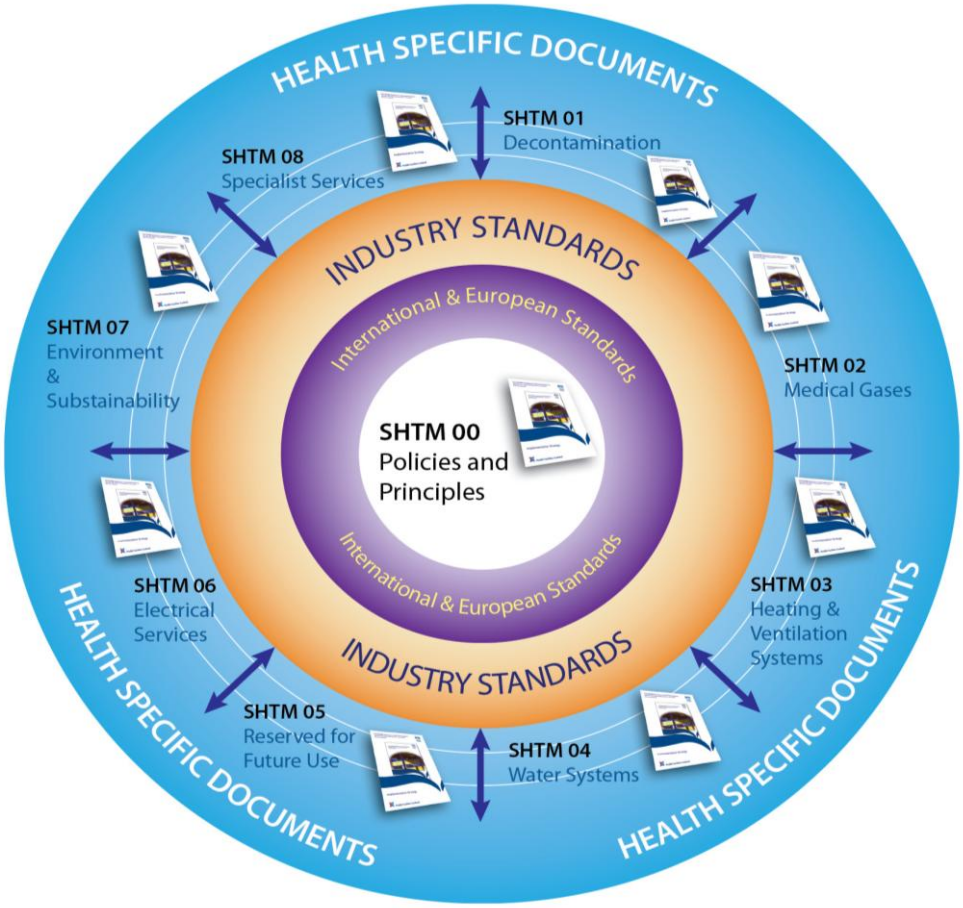
In a similar way Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07-02 will simply represent:

Environment and Sustainability – EnCO_2de.

All Scottish Health Technical Memoranda are supported by the initial document Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00 which embraces the management

and operational policies from previous documents and explores risk management issues.

Some variation in style and structure is reflected by the topic and approach of the different review working groups.



Engineering guidance

1. Introduction

1.1 Ventilation is used extensively in healthcare premises or primary patient treatment in operating departments, high dependency units and isolation facilities. It is also installed to ensure compliance with quality assurance of processed items in pharmacy and sterile supply departments and to protect staff from harmful organisms and toxic substances, for example, in laboratories.

1.2 This edition of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03 'Ventilation in healthcare premises' is published in two sections. It is equally applicable to both new and existing sites. It gives comprehensive advice and guidance to healthcare management, design engineers, estate managers and operations managers on the legal requirements, design implications, maintenance and operation of general and specialised ventilation in all types of healthcare premises.

1.3 Current statutory legislation requires both 'management' and 'staff' to be aware of their collective responsibility.

1.4 'Ventilation' is also provided in healthcare premises for the comfort of the occupants of buildings. More specialised ventilation will also provide comfort but its prime function will be to control closely the environment and air movement of the space that it serves in order to contain, control and reduce hazards to patients and staff from airborne contaminants, dust and harmful micro-organisms.

1.5 Ventilation systems in themselves present little danger to patients or staff. However, they do possess the ability to transmit hazards arising from other sources to large numbers of people. The danger may not become apparent until many patients and staff have been affected.

1.6 The sophistication of ventilation systems in healthcare premises is increasing. Patients and staff have a right to expect that it will be designed, installed, operated and maintained to standards that will enable it to fulfil its desired functions reliably and safely.

1.7 The Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 (HSW Act 1974) is the core legislation that applies to ventilation installations and these installations are intended to prevent contamination, control closely the environment, dilute contaminants or contain hazards. Their very presence indicates that risks to health have been identified.

Statutory requirements

1.8 The Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) regulations place upon management an obligation to ensure that suitable measures are in place to protect their staff and others affected by the work activity. These methods may include both safe systems of work and the provision of a specialised

ventilation system. In laboratories the requirements are often met by the provision of fume cupboards and safety cabinets.

1.9 The existing requirements to provide ventilation, implicit under HSW Act 1974 and COSHH, have been made explicit by the Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999, the Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992 and the Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998, all issued as a result of European Directives.

1.10 Where specialised ventilation plant is provided as part of the protection measures there is a statutory requirement that it be correctly designed, installed, commissioned, operated and maintained. The local exhaust ventilation (LEV) section of the COSHH regulations requires that the plant be inspected and tested at least every 14 months by an independent organisation and that management maintain comprehensive records of its performance, repair and maintenance.

1.11 Certain substances have Occupational Exposure Limits (OEL) set out in Guidance Note EH 40 published annually by the Health and Safety Executive. If special ventilation systems are provided in order to achieve these standards they will be subject to the COSHH regulations as above.

1.12 All ventilation systems should conform to the principles set out in the Approved Code of Practice and guidance document entitled “Legionnaires’ disease: the control of *Legionella* bacteria in water systems” (commonly known as ‘L8’) published by the Health and Safety Executive and Scottish Health Technical Memorandum SHTM 04-01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, “safe” hot water, cold water and drinking water systems.

1.13 Special ventilation plants installed in laboratories dealing with research, development or testing, whether involving drugs, animals or genetically modified organisms, may be subject to particular legislation with regard to their operation in addition to that mentioned above. Further information is given by the Health and Safety Executive Health Services Advisory Committee in:

- safe working and prevention of infection in clinical laboratories;
- safe working and prevention of infection in clinical laboratories: model rules for staff and visitors;
- safe working and prevention of infection in clinical laboratories in the mortuary and post-mortem room.

1.14 Plants installed in units manufacturing medicinal products to the standards set out in the current European Guide to Good Manufacturing Practice may also be subject to particular legislation with regard to their operation in addition to that mentioned above.

1.15 Records should be kept of equipment design and commissioning information. The Health and Safety Executive, Medicines Inspectorate and other interested bodies have a statutory right to inspect them at any time. All records should be kept for at least five years.

1.16 The fire regulations require that if ventilation ductwork penetrates the fabric of a building it should be designed and installed so as to contain the spread of fire. (for further information refer to Firecode Series SHTMs 81, 83 and 85)

1.17 Increased health risks to patients will occur if the more specialised ventilation systems installed to supply high quality air to operating departments do not achieve and maintain the required standards. The link between post-operative infection and theatre air quality has been well established. Plants serving conventional operating departments, for instance, will be required to ensure the separation of areas within the suite by maintaining a specific direction of air flow between rooms, even when doors are opened. They will also maintain the selected operating department environmental conditions regardless of changes in the outside air conditions or activities within the space. In addition ultra-clean operating ventilation systems that are designed to provide an effectively particle-free zone around the patient while the operation is in progress, have been shown to reduce significantly post-operative infection in patients undergoing deep wound surgery. Their use for other forms of surgery may well be required.

1.18 Ventilation systems that can be shown to be inappropriate, inadequate or ineffective and that give rise to proven failures can result in a civil suit by the patient against the operators.

1.19 If the plant has been installed to dilute, extract or contain harmful substances (the definition of which now includes microorganisms) its failure may expose people to unacceptable levels of hazard. Proven failures can give rise to a civil suit against the designers and operators by the individuals who have been affected. This would be in addition to the actions brought as a result of breaching the statutory requirements.

1.20 There is a statutory requirement to provide ventilation in all enclosed workspaces. It may be provided by either natural or mechanical means. The following are some of the factors that determine the ventilation requirements of a workspace:

- human habitation (minimum fresh air requirement);
- the activities of the department, that is, extraction of odours, aerosols, gases, vapours, fumes and dust – some of which may be toxic, infectious, corrosive, flammable, or otherwise hazardous (see Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) regulations;
- dilution and control of airborne pathogenic material;
- thermal comfort;
- the removal of heat generated by equipment (e.g. catering, wash-up, sterilising areas, electrical switch rooms, uninterruptible power supply (UPS) cupboards and some laboratory areas);
- the reduction of the effects of solar heat gains where other forms of reducing the solar effect is not available or practical, i.e. solar blinds;
- the reduction of excessive moisture levels to prevent condensation (for

example Hydrotherapy pools);

- combustion requirements for fuel burning appliances (see BS5376, BS5410 and BS5440);
- 'make-up' supply air where local exhaust ventilation (LEV) etc., is installed.

Mechanical ventilation systems are expensive in terms of capital and running costs, and planning solutions should be sought which take advantage of natural ventilation either where the use of the area in question is not critical to airflow patterns or pressures, or where backup systems are available when natural ventilation cannot be achieved.

1.21 When new ventilation systems are accepted for use, full information as to their designed mode of operation together with recommended maintenance procedures should be provided as part of the handover procedure.

Requirement	Reason	Application
Statutory	Health and Safety at Work etc Act	Operating department Laboratories Pharmacy
	COSHH regulations	Areas containing identified biological or chemical hazards Areas containing oxygen displacing gases
	Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV)	Enclosed work-spaces Workshops
Functional	Comfort	Situations where the quality of the environment for staff and patients is critical to their general performance and well-being
Clinical	Post-operative infection reduction	Operating suites used for general surgery, casualty, obstetrics/gynaecological and maternity procedures
	Reduction of deep wound sepsis	Ultra-clean operating suites for transplant, deep wound surgery, hip replacement, bone grafting and bone marrow transplant procedures
	Isolation from contact with bio hazards	Isolation units for patients who present a biological, chemical or radiation hazard to others. Isolation units for patients with a reduced immune system

Table 1: Reasons for providing ventilation

Functional overview – Terms in use

1.22 The terms 'ventilation' and 'air-conditioning' are often incorrectly used to describe the same equipment. A general explanation of the terms is given below.

Ventilation

1.23 Ventilation is a means of removing and replacing the air in a space. In its simplest form this may be achieved by opening windows and doors. Mechanical ventilation systems provide a more controllable method. Basic systems consist of a fan and either collection, (extraction) or distribution (supply) ductwork. More complex systems may include the ability to heat and filter the air passing through them. Ventilating equipment may be required in order to remove smells, dilute contaminants and ensure that a supply of 'fresh' air enters a space.

Air-conditioning and mechanical cooling

1.24 Air-conditioning is the ability to heat, cool, dehumidify and filter air. For full air-conditioning, humidification may also be provided. This means that the climate within a space being supplied by an air-conditioning plant can be maintained at a specific level regardless of changes in the outside air conditions or the activities within the space. Mechanical cooling may be provided where close control of 'comfort conditions' within a space is required but humidity control is not needed.

Special ventilation

1.25 In healthcare premises, certain activities will necessitate the provision of ventilation equipment with additional special features in order to achieve and maintain specific conditions. These may be needed in order to assist with the treatment of patients or maintain the health and safety of staff. The precise reason for providing special ventilation will depend upon the intended application. The list below indicates some of the more typical reasons:

- to remove, contain or dilute specific contaminants and fumes;
- to ensure the isolation of one space from another;
- to preserve a desired air flow path from a 'clean' to a 'less clean' area;
- to provide control of the cleanliness of a space;
- to provide 'close' control of temperature;
- to provide 'close' control of humidity.

1.26 The following departments will usually have specialised ventilation requirements, either for a single room or throughout a suite of rooms:

- operating department;
- laser surgery unit;
- intensive treatment unit;
- infectious diseases isolation unit;
- manufacturing pharmacy;
- specialised imaging, X-ray and scanning unit;

- pathology containment laboratories;
- mortuary and dissection suite;
- research laboratory;
- sterilising and disinfecting unit (SDU);
- endoscopy unit;
- renal dialysis suite;
- ultrasound facilities;
- audiology room.

1.27 Ventilation may be provided in a wide variety of ways. These will include:

- extensive purpose-built air-conditioning units housed in their own plant rooms;
- proprietary 'packaged' systems often sited outside on a roof or;
- wall-mounted electric fans located at the point of use.

1.28 A fixed volume of air may be supplied, often expressed in terms of the resulting number of air changes per hour (ac/h) within the space being ventilated. It may also be expressed in terms of litres/second/person. Alternatively the volume of air supplied may be varied in order to maintain a specific pressure relationship between the area supplied and other surrounding areas. In some situations a combination of both methods may be adopted.

1.29 Modern plants are fitted with the means to recover energy from the extract air where this can be justified without causing contamination of the incoming supply air.

1.30 Ultra-clean systems use the same basic plant and equipment as standard air-conditioning but are in addition fitted with a terminal device that supplies the air in a unidirectional manner to the working area. Their standard of filtration will be capable of delivering air with a very low particle count to the space that they serve.

Local exhaust ventilation

1.31 Local exhaust ventilation (LEV) is a term used to describe systems installed to prevent hazardous substances from entering the general atmosphere of the room in which they are being used. Their primary function is to protect staff from the effects of their work activity.

1.32 Simple LEV systems comprise a capture hood, extract ductwork and fan. These are used to contain industrial types of hazard such as fumes from welding processes, gas discharges from standby battery banks and dust from woodworking machinery. The vapour given off when large quantities of chemicals are decanted into ready-use containers and fumes from X-ray film processing units are further examples of chemical hazards often controlled by LEV systems.

1.33 In laboratories, pharmaceutical manufacturing facilities and operating suites, LEV systems usually take the form of semi-open fronted cabinets within which the hazardous substance is manipulated. These cabinets either have their own filtered air supply or are fed with air from the room. The air extracted from the cabinet is passed through a high-efficiency filter before being discharged either to the atmosphere or back into the room. Microbiological safety cabinets, laboratory fume cupboards, cytotoxic drug cabinets and fixed or mobile disinfection enclosures are all examples of this type of facility.

1.34 Mortuaries and dissection suites may have LEV systems incorporated within the dissection table, specimen bench and bone saw.

Management action

1.35 The guidance contained in this SHTM should be applied in full to new installations and major refurbishments of existing installations.

1.36 Ventilation will need to be provided:

- as a requirement for patient care;
- in order to fulfil a statutory duty.

1.37 In assessing the need for more specialised ventilation and the standards desired for patient care, managers will need to be guided by their medical colleagues and by information published by Health Facilities Scotland.

1.38 The statutory need for ventilation falls into two categories:

- in the first, the need for specialised ventilation and the standards to be adopted are clearly set out in specific pieces of legislation. An excellent example of this is the current legislation surrounding the manufacture of medicinal products in the European Community. The managers of the departments affected by this type of legislative requirement should be aware of their needs and be able to advise on the standards to be achieved;
- the second type of statutory requirement arises due to the interpretation of both the Health and Safety at Work etc Act and the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) regulations. The person tasked with conducting COSHH assessments will be able to advise as to the need for, and standard of, ventilation in each particular case.

Design and validation process

1.39 It is essential when undertaking the design of a specialised ventilation system that the project be considered as a whole. The process model set out below should ensure that all relevant factors are considered.

Step	Question	Design statement and information required	Comment
1	Why is the system required?	Healthcare applications Statutory elements Non-healthcare applications	
2	What is the required system performance?	Room air flow pattern Air change rate Differential pressures Air quality Room air condition Noise limits	
3	What are the constraints on the distribution system?	Location, Size, Materials Dampers, Access, Insulation Fire considerations Room terminals	
4	What are the minimum requirements for the AHU(s)?	Intake / Discharge positions *Legionella*, Health and Safety Access, Fire, Electrical safety Leaks, Insulation, Cleanliness Filtration, Drainage	
5	What control functions are required?	User control requirements Estates control functions Energy management Environmental conditions Control sequence logic Run, Set back, Off philosophy	
6	How will the system performance be validated?	Validation methodology Instruments used Design information required [*Design air flow rates* *Design air velocities* *Pressure differentials* *Noise levels* *Air quality* *Installation standard*]	
7	The system will only be acceptable to the client if at the time of validation it is considered fit for purpose and will only require routine maintenance in order to remain so for its projected life.		
8	Handover to client	Basic design information Commissioning results Validation report	

Table 2: Design and Validation process model

Use and function of typical equipment used in ventilation plant

1.40 Typical equipment used in ventilation systems is listed below together with a brief description of both function and use.

General

1.41 The equipment built into the ventilation system and its ductwork should be of a type that will neither cause nor sustain combustion. No materials that could sustain biological activity should be used in the construction or assembly of the system.

Air Intake

1.42 An uncontaminated air supply to the system is essential. In order to achieve this, the air intake will be positioned so that air discharged from extract systems or other dubious sources cannot be drawn in. Exhaust fumes from vehicles can present particular problems. The area surrounding the intake will need to be kept clean and free of vegetation and waste material in order to reduce the possibility of biohazards or fire. The intake itself will be protected by a louvre and mesh screen to prevent rainwater, vermin and insects etc from entering the system.

Damper

1.43 Several types may be fitted:

- automatic dampers fitted immediately behind the air intake and extract louvres. They will automatically close when the system is shut down in order to prevent an uncontrolled circulation of air;
- balancing dampers are fitted into each branch of the air distribution ductwork system so that the design air flow rate can be set during the commissioning process;
- where ductwork passes through a fire compartment wall, ceiling or floor a fire and/or smoke damper may be required;
- plant isolating dampers are fitted so that the main plant can be isolated from its air distribution duct system. They are manually operated and enable cleaning and maintenance of the air-conditioning equipment to be carried out.

Ducting

1.44 The means by which air is conveyed from the intake to its point of use. Ducting is usually constructed of galvanised steel and will normally be insulated to reduce noise and conserve energy. Ducts can also be formed in concrete, brickwork, stainless steel or plastic and may be rigid or flexible.

Fan

1.45 A series of rotating blades that move the air in the direction required. Fans are usually powered by electric motors either directly connected to them or driven through belts and pulleys. A fan may be arranged either to force air into or draw air from a ductwork system.

Attenuator / silencer

1.46 A device that will contain and absorb the noise emitted by a fan. They may be required to reduce disturbance caused by noise breaking out through the air intake and also noise transmitted along the ductwork to the conditioned space.

Filter

1.47 A filter consists of a labyrinth of fibrous material contained in a frame. It is designed to capture and hold particles being carried in the airstream. Because of the size range and number of particles that exist in air no filter can remove them all. The purpose of filtration is to reduce their number and size range to an acceptable level. Filters of progressively higher grades are fitted through the ventilation system:

- primary filters (coarse) are designed to collect the larger particles and are intended to keep the air-conditioning plant clean;
- secondary filters (fine) will remove the staining particles from air and keep the conditioned space visibly clean;
- high efficiency particulate air filters (HEPA/absolute) will remove virtually all particles from air. These may be required in order to reduce contamination in the working area either biologically or in terms of particle count.

Filters may be fitted to extract systems to protect energy recovery devices. They may also be fitted to remove biological, radiation or chemical hazards and if so, are often contained in a 'safe change' facility in order to protect those carrying out maintenance.

Activated carbon filters will reduce odours in extracted or recirculated air.

Heater battery / heater coils

1.48 A series of heater batteries or heating coils with or without fins through which steam or hot water is circulated. Heat is given up to the air passing over the battery thus increasing its temperature. Heating is usually carried out in stages, the final battery being controlled by the end user. Small batteries may be electric.

Humidifier

1.49 A device for increasing the humidity of air by adding moisture. For ventilation in healthcare premises this is normally achieved by releasing 'clean' steam into an air supply duct. The steam will be completely absorbed into the air, increasing its humidity. The level of humidity may be preset or controlled by the end user.

Cooler battery / cooling coil

1.50 A series of finned coils mounted in the air supply duct. Either chilled water or refrigerant is circulated through the coils causing heat to be removed from the air. This will reduce its temperature and may also condense moisture out of the

air. As free moisture in a duct can be a source of contamination the coil will be fitted with an eliminator and drainage system.

Eliminator

1.51 A device for catching and removing water droplets from an air stream. It may form part of a cooling coil or be a separate device.

Drainage system

1.52 A means of removing water from ductwork and disposing of it safely. Typically it will consist of a tray mounted in the duct to catch moisture, a glass water seal trap, continuously falling drainage pipework and an air break in the drain run to prevent waste water returning and contaminating the duct.

Access doors and observation ports

1.53 Doors and removable panels providing access for routine maintenance and cleaning. The doors should be fitted with glazed ports and suitable lighting provided so that the correct operation of devices such as cooling coils, humidifiers and filters can be easily observed without needing to switch off the plant.

Energy recovery

1.54 Many plants are fitted with the means to recover energy from the extract air without causing contamination of the incoming supply air. These devices will be fitted with a drainage system and may incorporate an eliminator. Several types of energy recovery systems are available.

1.55 Precise definitions of ventilation and air-conditioning terms are given in the Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers (CIBSE) Guide B.

Typical plant

1.56 The layout of a typical plant that conforms to the requirements for healthcare applications is shown in Figure 1 overleaf. It contains most of the equipment described above.

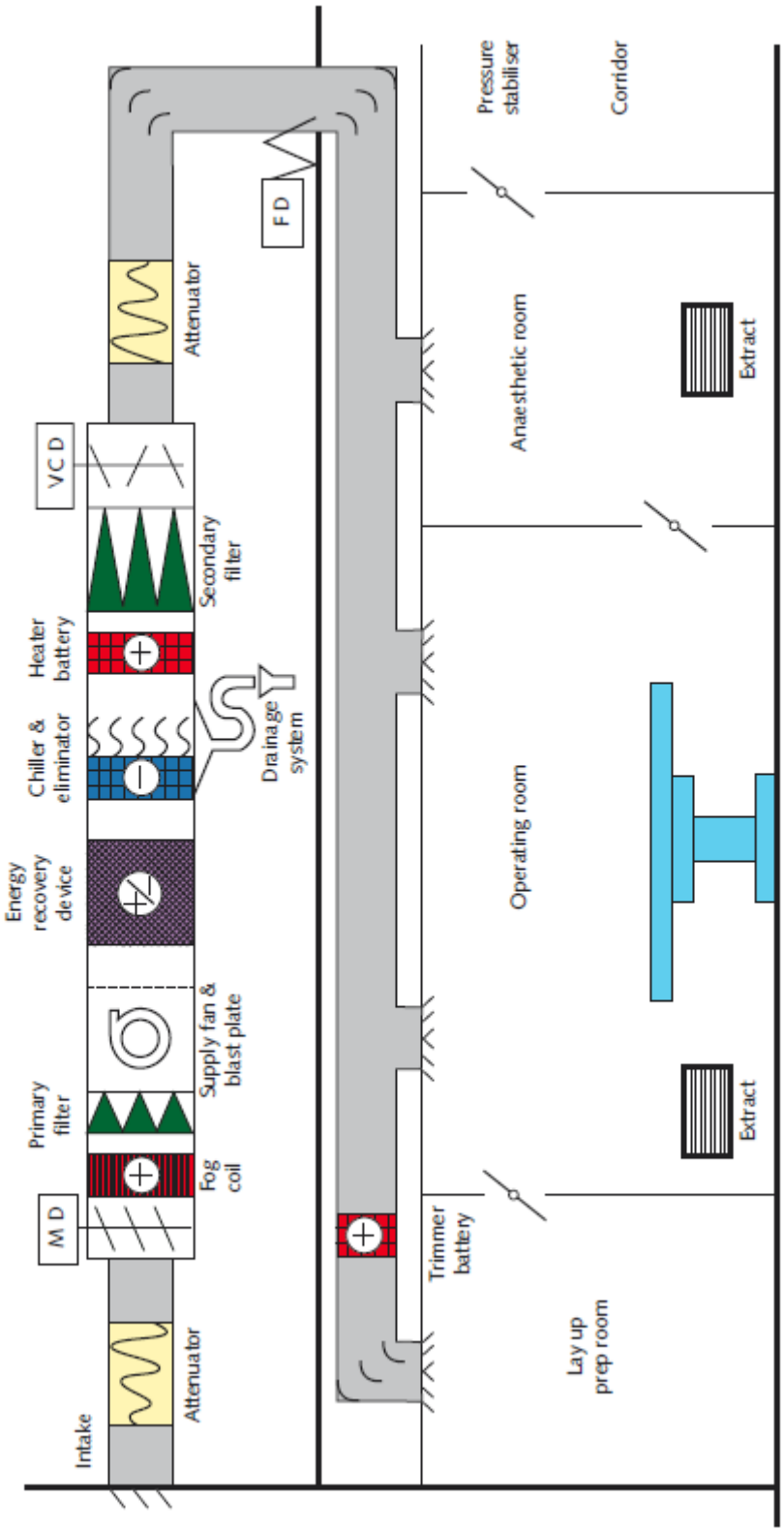


Figure 1: Design and Validation process model

A42659819

2. Provision of ventilation in healthcare buildings

2.1 It is acknowledged that planning constraints imposed by the building shape and/or functional relationships of specific areas will invariably result in some measure of deep planning thus reducing the opportunity for natural ventilation. However, ventilation costs can be minimised by ensuring that where practicable, core areas are reserved for rooms that have a functional requirement for mechanical ventilation. Examples are sanitary facilities, dirty utilities and those rooms where clinical or functional requirements have specific environmental needs; and where for reasons of privacy, absence of solar gain etc., windowless accommodation is acceptable. Other spaces appropriate to core areas are those that have only transient occupation and therefore require little or no mechanical ventilation, for example circulation and storage areas.

Natural ventilation

2.2 Natural ventilation is usually created by the effects of wind pressure. It will also occur if there is a temperature difference between the inside and the outside of the building. The thermo-convective effect frequently predominates when the wind speed is low and will be enhanced if there is a difference in height between inlet and outlet openings. Ventilation induced by wind pressures can induce high air change rates through a building provided air is allowed to move freely within the space from the windward to the leeward side.

2.3 As the motivating influences of natural ventilation are variable, it is almost impossible to maintain consistent flow rates and ensure that minimum ventilation rates will be achieved at all times. This variability is normally acceptable for general areas including office accommodation, general wards, staff areas, libraries rooms, dining rooms and similar areas which should, where possible, be provided with opening windows of a design that facilitates natural ventilation.

2.4 Current guidance restricts the amount windows can be opened for safety reasons and as many designs are top-hung, their ability to permit natural ventilation is limited. It may therefore be necessary to provide dedicated ventilation openings in the fabric of the building to allow a sufficient natural flow of air into and out of the space. Paragraph 2.20 also refers.

2.5 In all cases, excessive heat gain, indoor air quality requirements or external noise may limit or preclude the use of natural ventilation.

Extract ventilation systems

2.6 Separate extract ventilation will be required for sanitary facilities, lavage areas, dirty utilities and in rooms where odorous, but non-toxic fumes are likely, in order to ensure air movement into the space. 10 air changes per hour have been found necessary, particularly in geriatric and psychogeriatric accommodation. This will assist with infection control procedures. A single

fan/motor unit can be suitable for individual rooms, but multi-room systems should be provided with duty and standby fans or motors to meet this need.

2.7 Toilets should have an extract ventilation rate as set out in the building regulations. Where WC's are located in shower and bathroom spaces, the ventilation required for the WC will normally be adequate for the whole space.

Supply only ventilation

2.8 Mechanical supply ventilation will be required in areas where it is important to maintain a positive pressure in order to prevent the ingress of less clean air, e.g. in pharmacy aseptic suites, sterile supply packing rooms, operating theatres and their preparation rooms (air change rates are given in Table A1).

Supply and extract ventilation

2.9 Mechanical supply and extract ventilation should be provided in rooms where there is a need to control room pressure in relation to adjacent spaces. Intensive Care Units, (ICU), isolation suites and treatment areas are typical applications.

Mechanical or comfort cooling

2.10 Cooling is very expensive in terms of energy costs and should be provided only where necessary to maintain a comfortable environment for staff and patient, or to ensure satisfactory operation of equipment. The imaging department in particular may require cooling to offset the equipment load.

2.11 Calculations and thermal modelling should be undertaken to ensure that during the summertime, internal temperatures in patient areas do not exceed 28ºC (dry bulb) for more than 50 hours per year taking into account the level of design risk for the application.

2.12 Certain non-patient areas may also require cooling and will typically include some laboratories, central wash-up and other areas that are subject to high equipment heat gains.

2.13 Where deep planning of other continuously occupied spaces, for example offices, is unavoidable, there will also be occasions when acceptable levels of comfort can only be maintained by cooling. Planning solutions of this type however will be exceptional.

2.14 Refrigeration plant should be of sufficient capacity to offset heat gains and maintain areas at a temperature that does not exceed the external design shade temperatures by more than about 3ºC taking into account the level of design risk for the application.

Air-conditioning

2.15 Full air-conditioning is only required in a very small number of areas within healthcare buildings and due to the capital and running cost its inclusion should be kept to a minimum. Paragraphs 3.14 - 3.15 and 4.91 - 4.93 also refer.

2.16 Areas whose functions may warrant the installation of air-conditioning include operating departments, intensive therapy units, manufacturing pharmacies and areas with particularly sensitive equipment.

Specialised ventilation

2.17 Due to the nature and extent of activities carried out in healthcare buildings, there will be a need for a wide range of specialised ventilation systems. The types of system which are generally required in individual departments and typical arrangements are given in Section 7.

2.18 The activities within some departments will require the provision of local exhaust ventilation (LEV). This is a statutory requirement under COSHH wherever the escape of chemicals, toxic fumes, biological material or quantities of dust into the general area would present a hazard to the occupants.

Ventilation for general areas

2.19 Table A1 provides recommended air change rates, temperatures and pressures for general areas that require mechanical ventilation in healthcare buildings.

Use of natural ventilation

2.20 The air tightness of new buildings has improved to the point that infiltration through building leakage can no longer be relied upon to provide sufficient air-flow. Attention must therefore be given to the provision of purpose-made ventilation openings to achieve the necessary flow rates. The air entering the openings may need to be controlled by motorised dampers linked to temperature and / or occupancy sensors in the ventilated space.

2.21 Internal partitions, fire compartment walls and closed doorways can often impede the flow path, and when this happens, the process will be more dependent on single-sided ventilation. Nevertheless, even with this degree of compartmentation, acceptable ventilation may still be achieved without window openings that would prejudice safety, security or comfort.

2.22 Some types of window, for example, vertical sliding, can enhance single sided air change by temperature difference, and these will improve the overall rate of natural ventilation in protected or sheltered areas where the effect of wind pressure is likely to be minimal.

2.23 It is generally considered that natural cross-flow ventilation is able to give reasonable air distribution for a distance of up to 6 metres inwards from the external façade, provided that reasonably clear air paths are maintained. Beyond this distance in areas where clear air paths cannot be maintained and in areas where high minimum air change rates are specified, mechanical ventilation should be provided.

2.24 Further information can be found in SHTM 55 ‘Windows’, BS5925 ‘Code of practice for ventilation principles and designing for natural ventilation’ and

CIBSE Applications Manual AM10: 'Natural ventilation in non-domestic buildings'.

Mixed mode ventilation

2.25 This comprises an assisted form of natural ventilation. Fans are fitted in the purpose made damper-controlled ventilation openings. Alternatively a separate ventilation unit may be installed. In both cases the dampers and fans are controlled under the dictates of temperature and occupancy sensors to ensure a minimum air flow rate while taking advantage of natural ventilation effects when present.

2.26 Where natural or mixed mode ventilation is adopted with complex air paths, the designer should produce an air flow diagram in order to ensure correct provision of air transfer devices. CIBSE Applications Manual AM13: 'Mixed mode ventilation in non-domestic buildings' gives guidance.

Mechanical extract ventilation

2.27 General extract systems can vary in complexity from a single wall-mounted fan to a ducted air system with dual extract fans.

2.28 Replacement air is generally provided by a central supply system (as described below). Unless special precautions are taken, the latter may result in an unacceptable level of draughts occurring in winter, and possible risk of unacceptable levels of noise transmission.

2.29 If individual systems are used, the ventilation can be operated intermittently, provided it continues to run for at least 15 minutes after the room is vacated, as with light switch-operated fans in individual toilets.

2.30 If general exhaust systems are used; it is recommended that filtered and tempered replacement air is provided via a central supply plant to adjoining lobbies or corridors, to prevent the risk of discomfort caused by the ingress of cold air. Fire compartmentation requirements must be maintained.

2.31 Information on specialised extract systems is given in Section 7.

Mechanical supply systems

2.32 Where mechanical supply systems are required, the fresh air should be tempered and filtered before being delivered to the space, to avoid discomfort.

2.33 The air should be heated using a constant or variable temperature source, but generally only to the space air temperature. In most instances, the low-pressure hot water heating (LPHW) should offset any fabric loss, so that setback room temperatures can be maintained during unoccupied periods without the need for the ventilation system to operate.

Balanced ventilation

2.34 Balanced ventilation systems are merely a combination of a supply and extract systems of equal volume; and either a single space or a whole building may be considered to be balanced. A balanced system is necessary in instances where it is essential to maintain consistent air movement within an area, for example, treatment rooms.

Cascade ventilation

2.35 In operating departments it is normal practice to supply air to the operating room, and allow it to pass through less clean areas – corridors, utility rooms etc. (from where it is eventually extracted).

Recirculation systems

2.36 Due to the nature of the use of mechanical ventilation systems within healthcare buildings, there are few opportunities for the application of recirculation air systems. They are however normally used for HEPA filtered clean room applications where the extract air is significantly cleaner than the outside supply. Recirculation is also routinely used in the canopy section of Ultra Clean Operating theatre ventilation systems.

2.37 Where the designer is considering the installation of a recirculation air system, due account must be taken of:

- minimum fresh air supply volume required by the Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004 (currently 20%);
- prevention of contamination of supply air from vitiated air in extract systems;
- prevention of stratification occurring within plenum chambers and mixing boxes which may result in freezing of downstream coils;
- ensuring sufficient velocities through control dampers (ideally 5-6m/s) to provide suitable authority; and good shut-off;
- modulating control of mixing to provide optimum on-plant conditions;
- use of ‘free cooling’ by cycling the dampers to minimum fresh air when the enthalpy of the outside air is above that of the extract air under conditions when cooling is required.

Chilled beams

2.38 The use of chilled beams for the provision of heating, cooling and ventilation is increasingly common in healthcare premises. The use of Active Chilled Beams providing tempered filtered air to a heating / cooling device within the room can provide effective local control of environmental conditions.

2.39 Care should be taken in positioning chilled beams to ensure the avoidance of cold draughts particularly when used in the cooling mode. The control settings should ensure that the external elements of the beam are always above dewpoint.

2.40 Consideration should be given to the ease with which specific types of chilled beam units can be accessed for cleaning having regard to the need to control the infection risk. The impact of maintenance requirements on room availability should also be considered.

Split comfort air-conditioners

2.41 Split comfort air-conditioners, room conditioners or cassette units are used increasingly where there is a small local requirement for cooling for operational purposes. They can provide an effective economic solution to cooling needs, where a central refrigeration system is not practicable.

2.42 The units re-circulate room air so provision for a fresh air make up, either by natural or mechanical means, to the standard required by the Building (Scotland) Regulations must be provided.

2.43 The recirculation of room air presents problems with indoor air quality (IAQ) and may increase the risk of healthcare associated infection (HAI). Split units should not therefore be used in critical patient areas.

2.44 Split units may be used for single room applications or as multiple linked units that can independently provide either heating or cooling, all served by a single outdoor unit. These systems enable good temperature control of a number of rooms with maximum energy efficiency.

2.45 Whether single or multiple systems are used, it is essential that the designer gives due consideration to the source of electrical supply, location of the heat rejection unit, environmental effects to the refrigerant used and drainage provision for the cooling coil condensate.

2.46 The units will require routine maintenance for filter change and cleaning; they should therefore be installed in an accessible position.

Dilution ventilation and clean air flow paths

2.47 Dilution ventilation has in the past been used to control levels of hazardous substances in a space. This approach is no longer considered acceptable. The COSHH Regulations require that known hazardous substances should be substituted by safe alternatives. If this is not possible then they should be controlled at source by the use of closed systems such as anaesthetic gas scavenging units or exhaust protective enclosures such as fume cupboards.

2.48 The exposure of staff to casual spillages of substances such as medical gases in anaesthetic rooms should in the first instance be dealt with by establishing a clean airflow path. Air should be supplied at high level and extracted at low level directly behind the anaesthetic equipment position. The philosophy of establishing a clean air-flow path from the supply point; to the staff; on to the patient and out via a low level extract would also apply in recovery rooms and maternity delivery rooms including labour, delivery, recovery & post partum (LDRP) Rooms. A suitable air change rate will provide dilution ventilation as an additional safeguard; see Table A1, Table A2 and Note c.

2.49 In operating theatres the patient will be on a closed breathing circuit in a room with a high air change rate. Under these circumstances the dilution effect would be considered sufficient to control any casual exposure to anaesthetic gases.

Mechanical ventilation systems

System selection

2.50 Natural ventilation is always the preferred solution for a space, provided that the quantity and quality of air required, and the consistency of control of ventilation to suit the requirements of the space, are achievable with this method. If this is not the case, a mechanical ventilation system will be required.

Choice of central/local plant

2.51 Mechanical ventilation is expensive to operate, and as such, should be controlled to operate when the space being served requires to be ventilated. In addition, loads on refrigeration plant are rarely constant owing to changes in solar gain, occupancy and use of heat-generating equipment and lights, therefore control of temperature is critical.

2.53 If the ventilation loads throughout a department or building are in phase, or are not significant, a central plant with single zone control can be adopted. However, this is rarely the case, and elsewhere, the condition or quantity of supply air to different areas or zones of the building must be varied accordingly. This can be done by providing either individual plants to each zone, or separate zone terminal control. Where there is a high density of rooms with similar ventilation requirements in an area of a building or department, it is usually economical to combine them into a central system.

2.54 In large buildings, a choice between a single distribution system and multiple smaller systems may arise. Large distribution systems and their plant can have the advantage of lower operating costs, but require more space for vertical shafts and horizontal distribution. In general, very long runs of ducting should be avoided to prevent undue heat losses or gains, excessive leakage, and difficulties in balancing during commissioning. As the pressure losses in the long runs will be greater and a higher initial static pressure will be required, this will lead to a more expensive class of ductwork. Multiple smaller distribution systems may be more expensive in capital and operating costs but they avoid long runs, large ducts and vertical shafts, and this may reduce overall building costs. They also provide a more robust service as the failure of an individual system does not prevent the use of the rest of the building.

Zoning of the building

2.55 The efficiency and effectiveness of any ventilation or air-conditioning installation depends largely on the zoning and control of the installation. The factors to consider when determining the zoning of a ventilation system for a building or department are:

- periods of occupancy;

- fresh air/ventilation requirements;
- smoke control.

2.56 Where the ventilation system is not merely tempering the air, but also providing the heating and/or cooling requirements, the following additional factors will need to be considered:

- internal or peripheral location;
- orientation of windows;
- variation in internal loads;
- level of control required.

2.57 For single zone plant in staff areas, local control (with a run-on timer if required) is recommended, as this can be turned off when the space is not in use, thus saving both thermal and electrical energy. Most supply and extract systems, conversely, are required to operate continuously while the department is occupied, thus some form of time or use control is necessary.

2.58 The control of individual plant items is covered in Section 4, with examples of typical control strategies in Section 6. For control of particular specialised ventilation and air-conditioning systems refer to Section 7 of this document.

2.59 On very rare occasions a duplicate standby air handling plant may be justified. If installed it must be provided with a gas-tight damper at its junction with the supply distribution duct, so that no back-flow can occur. Standby plants can become sources of contamination if warm moist air is allowed to dwell within them. Their design and control system must ensure that this cannot happen.

Specific requirements for hospital departments

2.60 Specific requirements for individual spaces and departments are included in the Health Building Notes (HBNs) and Activity Database (ADB) A-Sheets, or Scottish Health Planning Notes (SHPNs).

3. Assessment of service requirement

Selection of design criteria

External design conditions

3.1 The most accurate data that is available for the summer and winter conditions at the site should be used. The Metrological office can supply data for the United Kingdom.

3.2 Healthcare mechanical ventilation systems will normally be 'full fresh air'.

3.3 Local adjustments such as for height above sea level, exposure factor, or other climate peculiarities, should be made as appropriate.

Internal design conditions

3.4 The design conditions selected within patient areas must strike a balance between the comfort requirements of staff and patients, who often have very different levels of clothing and activity.

3.5 Recommendations for the dry resultant temperature and humidity of individual spaces are shown on Activity Database (ADB) A-Sheets. Table A1 gives a summary.

Minimum fresh air requirements

3.6 For most applications involving human occupancy, the dilution of body odours is the critical factor in determining ventilation requirements. Where natural ventilation or mechanical full fresh-air systems are used, all ventilation air will be fresh.

3.7 Where odour dilution is the overriding factor, it is recommended that 10 litres/second/person should be taken as the minimum ventilation rate.

3.8 Smoking is not permitted in healthcare premises. If permitted for example in residential care, it will be confined to designated areas. It therefore follows that these areas will contain a high percentage of smokers so the ventilation rate would be at least 36 litres/second/person for these applications (CIBSE Guide A; Table 1.10 refers).

3.9 In non-standard applications such as laboratories, aseptic suites, operating departments, etc., the particular requirements for each area should be considered independently in order to determine the overriding minimum requirement for ventilation.

Limiting supply air conditions

3.10 For most applications in healthcare buildings, it is the temperature differential between the supply and room air, rather than the actual temperature of the

supply air which is the critical factor. The maximum recommended supply-to-room air temperature differential is:

summer cooling: - 7K

winter heating: + 10K

3.11 It is also necessary to keep supply air humidity below 70% during winter in order to minimise risks associated with condensation.

Air purity

3.12 In healthcare premises, the standard of filtration will depend on the activities within the occupied spaces. With the exception of special areas, (for example manufacturing pharmacies), the requirement for aerobiological needs is not stringent and filtration is only required to:

- maintain hygienic conditions for the health and welfare of occupants, or for processes such as food preparation;
- protect finishes, fabrics and furnishings; to reduce redecoration costs;
- protect equipment either within the supply air system; that is, to prevent blocking of coils, or in the space itself to prevent dust collection.

3.13 Given that almost all viable particles will originate from the occupants of a space and not from the incoming air, dilution is the more important factor aerobiologically. Therefore, for general areas a G4 filter will be suitable. More critical areas will require a F7 filter. HEPA filters will only be required in Ultra Clean systems.

Humidity control requirements

3.14 Providing humidification is expensive in terms of plant, running costs and maintenance, and therefore its use should be restricted to where it is necessary for physiological or operational reasons.

3.15 Humidification was originally required for some healthcare applications, e.g. operating theatres, in order to control the risk associated with the use of flammable anaesthetic gases. The use of such gases has now ceased. Humidification is therefore no longer required unless there is a very specific application requirement.

Maximum noise levels

3.16 Noise will be generated in an air distribution system by the fan, ductwork fittings, dampers and grilles. The specified maximum noise level will depend on the activities within the occupied spaces.

3.17 The overall noise levels should not exceed the values given in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01: ‘Acoustics’, although general requirements are given in Table 3.

3.18 Attenuation should be incorporated into the ductwork system or plant arrangement as necessary to reduce noise from fans and plant items in order to achieve the acceptable limits within the rooms at the design air flows.

3.19 Plant noise should not be greater than 80dB(A) within the plant room from the fans, coolers, heaters, humidifiers etc. when starting up or running, and should be reduced to lower noise levels where the plant is near to departments sensitive to noise.

3.20 Attention must be given to the reduction of tonal components. High tonal components from air diffusers etc. can seriously disturb concentration over longer periods even when the overall noise level is low. Broadband noise causes less annoyance. Reference should be made to SHTM 08-01: 'Acoustics'.

3.21 The designer requires knowledge of the total hospital layout and operational policies, to assign acceptance magnitudes to all the possible noise sources, in order to arrive at the correct rating.

Room	Overall noise level - NR	Ventilation plant commissioning - NR	Ventilation plant design - NR
Operating department	50 (55)	45	40
Ward areas	33	30	30
Sanitary facilities	45	40	35
Industrial areas	50	45	40
Circulation areas	50	45	40

Table 3: Interior noise level

3.22 In Table 3, above, the overall noise level takes account of all internal and external noise sources. The commissioning noise level is the level measured with a sound level meter in the unoccupied room, taking account of the external noise together with the noise generated by the ventilation system. When occupied and in use, this commissioning level will constitute a continuous background noise which will allow the overall noise level to be achieved. The ventilation plant design noise level is that generated by the plant alone with no other noise source being considered. The levels suggested make recognised allowance for the ingress of environmental noise that must be considered in the overall design, that is, in specifying the attenuation of walls, partitions, ceilings, etc.

3.23 The recommended criterion is measured as the "A" weighted sound pressure level expressed in decibels, which should not be exceeded for more than 10% of the time.

3.24 The designer must also consider noise escaping to the external environment and this must not be unacceptable to occupants of adjacent buildings.

Calculation of building loads

Air infiltration

3.25 Air infiltration occurs due to a complex combination of wind pressure, thermal effects, location relative to other features and the construction standard of the building. The infiltration rate is governed by the size and number of openings in the building envelope and the complexity of internal air paths.

3.26 CIBSE Guide A (2006) Section 4 provides information and formulae for the calculation of air infiltration and natural ventilation of buildings. In all cases the requirements of the appropriate section of the Building (Scotland) Regulations must be met.

Summertime temperatures

3.27 The calculation method for determining the summertime temperature is described CIBSE Guide A (2006) Section 5. However, it is very important to select the time of day and time of year of peak loadings for the calculations. These will be dependent on the orientation and proportion of solar to total heat gain. In establishing outside design values, the design risk having regard to the function and occupancy of the building should be considered.

3.28 Where calculations indicate that internal temperatures will frequently exceed the selected design external shade temperature by more than 3K for a period that exceeds the building design risk, methods of reducing temperature rise should be implemented. Options include: - reducing solar and casual gains, the use of chilled beams or ceilings, increasing ventilation rates or providing mechanical cooling. In some situations it may be possible to alter the thermal mass of the structure to 'move' the peak temperature event time so that it occurs outside of the occupancy period. Calculations and thermal modelling should be undertaken to ensure that during the summertime internal temperatures in patient areas do not exceed 28°C dry bulb for more than 50 hours per year. It has been found that there is a relationship between preferred indoor temperatures and mean outside temperature. Fig A2 in CIBSE Guide A indicates this relationship.

Peak heating load

3.29 Peak heating local calculations are necessary on all mechanical supply systems to establish the size of heater batteries and subsequently the central plant.

3.30 Where ventilation systems provide tempered air to spaces that have supplementary LPHW to offset the building fabric losses, the plant heating load should be calculated based on the external winter design temperature, the design internal air temperature, and the calculated total air volume (including a suitable allowance for leakage).

3.31 Where the ventilation system is the only means of heating a space, an increase in load equivalent to the calculated fabric heat losses from the space should be added to the ventilation load. A check of supply temperature difference should

be made. If it exceeds 10K the ventilation supply volume should be increased to suit.

Condensation risk

3.32 A check should be made to ensure that the selected air condition will not lead to surface condensation on low-temperature elements of the ventilated space.

3.33 Where there are local sources of moisture that would require excessive levels of ventilation to avoid condensation, the designer should consider the capture and removal of moisture at the source of the evaporation via an exhaust hood or similar device.

3.34 In intermittently heated buildings, it is necessary to consider the condensation risk at night setback conditions as well as during normal operation. Calculation methods for this assessment are given in CIBSE Guide A.

Peak cooling load

3.35 In addition to the base data of airflow rates and temperatures, when calculating cooling loads, the designer must take into account:

- solar cooling loads;
- surface conduction cooling loads;
- internal gain cooling loads;
- cooling loads due to high-level humidity control;
- method of control of internal conditions;
- fluctuations in internal temperatures.

3.36 When the peak internal loads have been assessed and a suitable allowance made for non-coincidence, the supply temperature can be calculated.

3.37 Once the lowest required supply temperature of the air handling unit has been established, and an allowance made for temperature rise through the fan and ductwork (usually 1K for low pressure systems), the off-plant enthalpy can be established from a psychrometric chart or table.

3.38 The cooling loads for all plants on the chilled water system should be calculated at each of the individual peak times in order to establish accurately the required (diversified) capacity of the chiller.

Annual energy consumption

3.39 Annual energy consumptions of heating-only ventilation systems are simple to calculate based on supply-to-external air temperature rise, and frequency of occurrence of external temperatures as given in CIBSE Guide A.

3.40 Minimum air volumes are usually fixed by the room loads or fresh air requirements. However, the designer may increase airflow to some rooms or

zones in order to balance loads, as detailed in the following paragraphs on "Calculation of plant requirements."

3.41 The method of zoning and control can significantly influence energy consumption.

3.42 The nature of air-conditioning operation, comprising cooling and reheating for humidity or zonal temperature control, makes prediction of energy consumption very complex. It is imperative that these calculations are performed to ensure optimum energy efficiency.

3.43 The concept of load and plant operation charts is outlined in the CIBSE Guide A. The method requires the designer to establish the minimum and maximum loads on all zones across the range of external temperatures between winter and summer design conditions. Once the load chart is complete, the plant chart converts the loads to supply temperatures, which are then superimposed on external air temperatures.

3.44 When all temperatures for all zones are plotted on the plant operation chart, set points and resetting schedules can be established. From this information, the outputs of individual heaters, coolers and humidifiers can be established at any given external temperature. When those loads are computed against annual frequency of occurrence of external temperatures as given in CIBSE Guide A, the annual energy consumption of individual elements, and thus the air-conditioning system, can be established.

3.45 In order to prevent surface condensation occurring, it is necessary to provide sufficient ventilation to maintain the maximum and ambient dew-point temperature below the lowest surface temperature, the coldest usually being the glazing. Paragraphs 3.33 and 3.34 also refer.

Calculation of plant requirements

Air supply volumes

3.46 The minimum air supply volume for a room is determined by the greatest of these three criteria:

- the minimum fresh-air requirement;
- the minimum supply volume for the room load as determined by the maximum heating or cooling supply temperature differential;
- the desired/required air change rate.

Plant sizing

3.47 Once the design airflow has been established the cross-sectional area of the air-handling unit can be calculated based on a maximum coil face velocity of 2.0 m/s.

3.48 In order to establish the length of the air-handling unit, it will be necessary to refer to manufacturers' literature, ensuring all necessary access panels and components are included as detailed in Section 4.

3.49 The fan duty should be calculated by adding the resistances of all elements that contribute to the pressure drop of the index circuit.

3.50 The main elements that must be considered are:

- inlet or discharge louvres;
- plant entry and discharge;
- attenuators;
- components within the air-handling unit;
- duct-mounted heaters and filters (including a dust allowance);
- ductwork distribution;
- ductwork fittings, including: fire dampers, volume control dampers, bends and sets, tees, changes of section;
- air terminal device;
- discharge velocity.

3.51 Where packaged air-handling units are installed, the fan pressure drop is usually quoted as external plant resistance, and thus the designer does not need to calculate the resistances of individual plant items. The designer should, however, ensure that an allowance has been made for filter clogging; and confirm whether the fan pressure quoted is fan total or static pressure.

3.52 Resistances of ductwork and fittings may be obtained from the CIBSE Guide A. However, the designer should exercise some care when using tabulated pressure loss information for fittings that are relatively close together.

3.53 Upon completion of the resistance calculation exercise, the designer should make allowances for calculation and construction tolerances as indicated in Table 4.

Criteria	Low pressure systems	Medium/high pressure systems
Volume flow rate margin for leaking and balancing requirements	+5%	+5%
Total pressure loss margin A. for increase in volume flow rate (above)	+5%	+5%
B. for uncertainties in calculation	+5%	+10%
Combined total pressure loss margin	+10%	+15%

Table 4: Typical fan volume and pressure margins

Plantroom size and location

3.54 The ventilation plant and associated equipment should be positioned to give maximum reduction of noise and vibration transmitted to sensitive departments; while at the same time, achieve an economic solution for the distribution of services.

3.55 It is not recommended that noise and vibration generating plant be housed either directly above or below sensitive areas (for example, operating or anaesthetic rooms) unless there is no alternative, in which case, additional care and attention must be given to the control measures.

3.56 The plant must also be located so that it is remote from possible sources of contamination, heat gains and adverse weather conditions. The design should ensure that wind speed and direction have a minimal effect on plant throughput.

3.57 Safe access to and around plant is essential to facilitate inspection, routine maintenance, repair and plant replacement.

Provision of primary services

3.58 Where more than one air-handling plant requires cooling, remote central cooling plants with piped chilled water are preferred. In the case of a single plant, a multi-stage direct-expansion cooling coil with refrigerant piped from an adjacent compressor/condensing plant could be considered. If this option is selected, a refrigerant gas detector mounted in the base of the duct and an alarm system audible to the end-user will also need to be provided (as dictated by COSHH Regulations).

3.59 Clean dry steam is preferred for humidification, provided that the boiler water treatment does not render the steam unusable for direct humidification.

3.60 If a suitable supply of steam cannot be obtained from the steam main, a steam generator should be provided locally, or a self-generating humidifier installed. Electric humidifiers require considerable electrical loads and if a gas supply can be derived, this would be preferable. The location of a local steam generator is critical if condensate is to drain back into it.

Inlet and discharge sizing and location

3.61 Air intakes and discharge points should preferably be located at high level, to minimise the risks of noise nuisance to surrounding buildings, contamination and vandalism.

3.62 Intakes and discharges should be designed and located so that wind speed and direction have a minimal effect on the plant throughput.

3.63 Helicopter landing pads in the vicinity of ventilation intakes and discharges can result in large short-term pressure changes. This can cause pressure surges in supply systems and reverse airflows in extracts. Exhaust fumes from the helicopter may also be drawn into intakes. For general information, refer to Health Building Note (HBN) 15-03 – Hospital helipads.

3.64 Intake points should also be situated away from cooling towers, boiler flues, vents from oil storage tanks, fume cupboards and other discharges of contaminated air, vapours and gases, and places where vehicle exhaust gases may be drawn in.

3.65 Where intakes have necessarily to be sited at or near ground level, the area around them should be paved or concreted to prevent soil or vegetation being drawn in. They should also be caged or located within a compound to prevent rubbish being left in the vicinity. The likely proximity of vehicle exhausts should also be taken into account when determining the protected area around the intake.

3.66 The discharge from an extract system must be located so that vitiated air cannot be drawn back into the supply air intake or any other fresh-air inlet. Ideally, the extract discharge will be located on a different face of the building from the supply intake(s). In any event, there must be a minimum separation of 4 metres between them, with the discharge mounted at a higher level than the intake.

3.67 Discharges from LEV systems should preferably be vertical and usually not less than 3m above roof level. They should not be fitted with a cowl that could cause the discharge to be deflected downwards.

3.68 Each intake and discharge point should be fitted with corrosion-resistant weatherproof louvres or cowls to protect the system from driving rain. Louvres should be sized based on a maximum face velocity of 2 m/s in order to prevent excessive noise generation and pressure loss.

3.69 The inside of the louvres should be fitted with a mesh of not less than 6mm and not more than 12mm to prevent leaves being drawn in and infestation by vermin.

3.70 The duct behind louvres should be self-draining. If this is not practicable, it should be tanked and provided with a drainage system.

3.71 Cleaning access must be provided either from the outside via hinged louvres or by access doors in the plenum behind the louvre. Where a common plenum is provided, cleaning access should be via a walk-in door.

Heat rejection devices

3.72 The design conditions given in Section 2 make no allowance for the elevated temperatures that can occur on the roof of buildings. Refrigeration condensers should, if practicable, be shaded from direct solar radiation, or the design adjusted to take account of the gain.

3.73 Air-cooled condensers must always be the first choice for heat rejection from any refrigeration plant. Evaporative cooling systems must not be used in healthcare premises.

3.74 Reference should be made to Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04-01: 'The Control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'Safe' hot water, cold water and drinking

water systems, Part A: Design, Installation and Testing, and Part B: Operational Management, published by Health Facilities Scotland, 2011.

A42659819

4. Air handling unit design and specification guidance

General requirements

Location and access

4.1 Air-handling units should be located in an accessible area secured from unauthorised entry. Siting units in ceiling voids above occupied spaces is not appropriate.

4.2 Units located on roofs must have a safe means of access together with suitable precautions to prevent personnel or equipment falling or being blown off during maintenance activities.

4.3 Units located at ground level should be secured within a locked compound to prevent unauthorised access. Measures should be taken to exclude vehicles from the vicinity to ensure that exhaust fumes will not be drawn into intakes.

4.4 Units may have a working life of approximately 20 years. It can be anticipated that over this period there will be a need to access every element within the unit for deep cleaning. It is also quite possible that the main fan and individual heater and chiller batteries will need replacement. Suitably positioned service connection joints and adequate spacing should permit these items to be withdrawn without the need to dismantle other installed plant or equipment. Batteries significantly wider than 1 metre should be split to permit withdrawal from both sides.

4.5 It is essential that air-handling units are positioned so that all parts are easily and safely accessible for routine inspection and service. If a unit is located against a wall or backs onto another unit then access to all parts must be available from the front. Units greater than 1 metre wide should preferably have access from both sides or access doors large enough to permit the full and safe entry of maintenance personnel.

4.6 Water may be used during routine cleaning or spilt when maintenance is being undertaken. The area around the unit should be tanked to prevent water penetration to adjacent areas and adequately drained.

4.7 Fire precautions should be incorporated in accordance with Firecode. Guidance is available in BS5588: Part 9 and Sections 5 and 6 of this document.

4.8 Combustion equipment must not be located in a fire compartment that houses air-handling equipment.

Technical requirements

4.9 The basic technical requirements of the whole of the ventilation system should meet the relevant clauses of the Model Engineering Specification. It should be noted that the Specification contains a menu of clauses that cover a wide range

of applications, so it is important to select only those that are relevant to the specific application.

Note 1: At the time of writing, Model Engineering Specification C04 was listed for revision in order to bring it into line with the revised standards as set out in this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum. Where conflicts in specification arise, the Scottish Health Technical Memorandum takes precedence.

4.10 It is essential that the main plant/ductwork is located far enough above the floor to permit the correct installation of drainage systems for cooling coils, humidifiers and heat recovery systems. Easy access for maintenance of drainage systems and their associated pipework must be provided.

4.11 Organic materials or substances that can support the growth of microorganisms must not be used in the construction of the plant or its distribution system. The water fittings and materials directory lists suitable materials for sealants and gaskets.

4.12 The plant and its distribution system must not contain any material or substance that could cause or support combustion.

4.13 Plants should have a high standard of air-tightness. The double-skin method of construction with insulation sandwiched between two metal faces is recommended. The panels may be available in a variety of colours at no additional cost. This can aid identification by colour coding of units in a plant room (for example green for general ventilation; blue for theatres; red for laboratories and isolation facilities; grey for extract etc).

4.14 The inside of the plant should be as smooth as possible. Channels, rolled angles or formed sections that could trap or hold moisture should be kept to a minimum. If stiffeners are required, they should be fitted externally. If internal bracing has to be fitted it must be of a design that will not trap or hold moisture.

4.15 Airflow across air treatment components such as filters, heat exchangers and humidifiers will be influenced by the pattern of the approaching airstream. If unsatisfactory conditions are created, the performance of the component will be reduced.

4.16 Access to items that require routine service such as filters, frost batteries and chiller batteries should be via hinged doors. The doors should be large enough (for example 500mm minimum) to allow easy access. Items requiring infrequent access such as attenuators may be via bolted-on, lift-off panels. All doors and panels should be close-fitting and without leaks.

4.17 Care should be taken during installation to ensure that electrical and mechanical services are not installed in positions that will reduce or impede access.

4.18 It can be difficult to turn off AHUs in order to inspect filters and drainage trays. Viewing ports and internal illumination will therefore facilitate routine inspection of such items. Viewing ports should be at a convenient height so that temporary ladders are not required. Internal illumination should be provided by

fittings to at least IP55 rating. Fittings should be positioned so that they provide both illumination for inspection and task lighting. All of the lights in a unit should be operated by a single switch.

4.19 Access to AHUs and items in the distribution system such as filters or heater / chiller batteries should be via fixed ladders and platforms or pulpit-style moveable steps. The installation of distribution ductwork and other electrical or mechanical services should provide sufficient clearance to allow the pulpit steps to be easily wheeled into position.

AHU drainage system

4.20 All items of plant that could produce moisture must be provided with a drainage system. The system will comprise a drip tray, glass trap, air break and associated drainage pipework.

4.21 The drip-tray should be constructed of a corrosion-resistant material (stainless steel is preferred) and be so arranged that it will completely drain. To prevent 'pooling', it is essential that the drain connection should not have an upstand; and that a slope of approximately 1 in 20 in all directions should be incorporated to the drain outlet position. The tray must be completely accessible or, for smaller units, easily removable for inspection and cleaning.

4.22 Each drip tray should be provided with its own drain trap. The drain trap should be of the clear (borosilicate) glass type. This permits the colour of the water seal to be observed thus giving an early indication of corrosion, biological activity or contamination within the duct. The trap should have a means for filling and incorporate couplings to facilitate removal for cleaning. It should be located in an easily visible position where it will not be subject to casual knocks. The pipework connecting it to the drainage tray should have a continuous fall of not less that 1 in 20.

4.23 Traps fitted to plant located outside or in unheated plant rooms may need to be trace-heated in winter. The trace-heating must not raise the temperature of water in the trap above 5°C.

4.24 Water from each trap must discharge via a clear air gap of at least 15mm above the unrestricted spill-over level of either an open tundish connected to a foul drainage stack via a second trap, or a floor gully (or channel). A support should be provided to ensure that the air gap cannot be reduced. More than one drain trap may discharge into the tundish providing each has its own air break.

4.25 Drainage pipework may be thermoplastic, copper or stainless steel. Glass should not be used. The pipework should be a minimum diameter of 22mm and a fall of at least 1 in 60 in the direction of flow. It should be well supported and located so as not to inhibit access to the AHU.

Layout of air handling unit

4.26 The AHU should be arranged so that the majority of items are under positive pressure. Any item of plant requiring a drain should be on the positive pressure side of the fan. A recommended layout is given in schematic from in Figure 3.

4.27 A separate extract unit will generally be required for the area served by each supply unit.

4.28 An energy recovery system will normally be fitted between the supply and extract units.

Provision of dampers

4.29 Fire- or smoke-actuated dampers shall be provided at the locations required by Firecode. (See Paragraphs 5.17 - 5.21).

4.30 Motorised low-leakage shut-off dampers should be located immediately behind the intake and discharge of each supply and extract system respectively. They should be of the opposed-blade type, opening through a full 90° and must close automatically in the event of power failure or plant shutdown to prevent any reversal of the system airflow.

4.31 The quality of motorised dampers is critical. They should be rigid, with square connections fitted with end and edge seals of a flexible material and with minimal play in linkages. The leakage on shut-off should be less than 2%.

4.32 A manually operated isolating damper should be installed between the main AHU and its distribution system to enable the unit to be isolated when cleaning is in progress.

4.33 Good practice will require the fitting of a main volume control damper so that the design airflow rate can be set at commissioning. The damper should be lockable in any position. If it will also be used for plant isolation, it should be capable of being reset to give the design airflow without the need for re-measurement.

4.34 Internal plant isolating dampers or provision for the fitting of shut-off plates between items within a unit are not required.

Vibration

4.35 Vibration from a remote plantroom can be transmitted by the structure of the building, may be regenerated and may sometimes be magnified many times. Units should be selected to have the minimum vibration generation and installed on suitable anti-vibration mounts. Pipe and ductwork should incorporate anti-vibration couplings, preferably in two planes at right angles, as close to the vibration source as possible. Consideration should be given to the use of anti-vibration pipe hangers and supports.

Sequence of components

4.36 The following arrangement of plant components is typical although in many instances not all elements will be required:

- fresh air intake;
- motorised isolation damper;

- frost / fog coil;
- pre-filter;
- energy-recovery device;
- attenuator;
- fan;
- blast plate;
- attenuator;
- chiller battery;
- eliminator;
- heater battery;
- humidifier;
- final filter;
- isolation / volume control damper.

Note 2: Attenuators may be located in the intake and discharge duct if they are of a suitable type (See Paragraphs 4.159 - 4.162)

There may be instances where the above arrangement is not appropriate and the plant arrangement should be planned accordingly.

Fans

General requirements

4.37 The fan should be selected for good efficiency and minimum noise level, but the overriding factor should be the selection of a fan characteristic such that the air quantity is not greatly affected by system pressure changes due to filters becoming dirty or external wind effects.

Acceptable types

4.38 Fans can be of the axial, centrifugal, cross-flow, mixed-flow or propeller type, depending upon the requirements of the system.

4.39 Where used, centrifugal fans should preferably be of the backward-blade type. Alternatively, where noise levels are more critical and pressure requirements are lower, forward-curved blade fans are acceptable. For high-power applications, aerofoil-blade fans may be appropriate.

Selection

4.40 Generally, large ventilation systems will use centrifugal fans due to their efficiency, non-overloading characteristics, and developed pressures.

4.41 Forward curved centrifugal fans can overload if allowed to handle more air than they are designed for.

4.42 Alternatively, it may be appropriate to use mixed flow fans in high-pressure systems.

4.43 Axial flow or propeller fans are generally only used in local through-the-wall systems, or systems with very low pressure requirements.

4.44 Cross-flow fans have very low operating efficiencies, and thus their use is restricted to applications such as fan coil units.

Location and connection

4.45 Fans are normally positioned to 'blow through' the central plant so that the cooling coil and humidifier drains will be under positive pressure.

4.46 The fan performance figures given by manufacturers in their catalogue data are based on tests carried out under ideal conditions, which include long uniform ducts on the fan inlet/outlet. These standard test connections are unlikely to occur in practice, the designer should therefore ensure as far as is practical that the fan performance will not be significantly de-rated by the system. This objective can be approached by ensuring that the fan inlet flow conditions comprise uniform axial flow velocities with low levels of turbulence.

4.47 Where the outlet duct is larger than the fan discharge connections, there should be a gradual transition, with a following section of straight duct, having a length equivalent to three duct diameters.

4.48 The design of the fan intake connection must be carefully considered to avoid swirl in the airstream. When the air spins in the same direction as the impeller, the performance and power consumption of the fan are reduced. When the air spins in the opposite direction to the impeller the power consumption and noise will increase with hardly any pressure increase. Airstream swirl is usually induced by large variations across the fan intake caused by the air passing round a tight bend immediately before the intake.

4.49 Where a centrifugal fan is located with an open intake, the clear distance between the suction opening and the nearest wall should be not less than half the diameter of the inlet. If two fans with free inlets are positioned within the same chamber, their adjacent suction openings should be at least 1 diameter apart.

4.50 Airtight flexible joints should be provided at fan inlet and outlet connections. They should be equal in cross-section to the points of connection and be neither longer than 200mm nor shorter than 100mm.

4.51 For centrifugal fans, a diffuser screen / blast plate should be fitted immediately downstream of their discharge.

Supply fan drive arrangements

4.52 Where the fan drive is via a motor-driven belt and pulley, it should be external to the air stream. This arrangement has the following advantages:

- the fire risk is reduced;
- the drive is visible so it is simple to check that the belt is still there;
- particles shed from the drive belt are outside of the air stream;
- if the belt slips, the "burning rubber smell" is not transmitted down into occupied areas of the premises;
- noise generated by the motor and drive will not be transmitted along the ductwork;
- waste heat is excluded from the system;
- the drive may be through a vee or toothed belt and pulley. The latter have the advantage of eliminating belt squeal on start up and have a longer service life. They are particularly suitable where the fan drive motor is fitted with a soft start and should be located external to the air stream.

4.53 The drive train should be easily visible without the need to remove access covers. Protecting the drive train with a mesh guard is the preferred option. For weatherproof units designed to be located outside, the fan drive will be external to the duct but enclosed. It should be easily visible through a viewing port with internal illumination and access via a lockable hinged door.

4.54 For direct-coupled fan and motor units, the motor should be out of the air stream.

4.55 For induction drive 'plug' motor arrangements (where the motor is fitted within the fan and is integral to it) and in line axial fans with a pod motor; the fan / motor combination may be within the air stream provided the motor windings are protected from over temperature by a thermister and lockout relay.

Extract fan drive arrangements

4.56 The preferred method where the fan drive is via a motor driven belt and pulley arrangement will be to locate it external to the air stream.

4.57 The fan drive and motor may be located inside the duct within the air stream provided the motor windings are protected from over-temperature by a thermister and lockout. The drive train should be easily visible through a viewing port, have internal illumination and access via a lockable hinged door.

4.58 Where the system air is explosive, aggressive or has high moisture content, the extract fan motor must be located outside the air stream. This is generally achieved with axial fans by using a bifurcated unit.

Control

4.59 Fans in healthcare applications are normally either single or two-speed. Where there is a requirement for two-speed operation, this is generally via a local user control (for example, in a hood extract system to provide a boost facility) or via a time schedule for energy saving during unoccupied periods.

4.60 Normally only a single motor is required with a standby motor available for fitting as necessary or fitted but not belted. Twin, run and standby motors - with the standby being jockeyed around - are not required.

4.61 Where there is a specified requirement for standby fans, the system should incorporate an automatic changeover facility activated via an airflow sensor. Fault indication should be provided.

4.62 The control of fans in terms of start-up and run is increasingly being vested in computer software. Inverter-drive, variable-speed, soft-start systems are becoming a standard approach. It should be remembered that most healthcare applications require known amounts of air to be delivered while the system is in use. Constant volume systems that deliver specified air-change rates are therefore the norm. Duct- or room-pressure-controlled, variable-speed systems have a very limited application in healthcare.

4.63 It is necessary to ensure that - should the computer control system or its software develop a fault - then the fan can be switched to a direct-start, fixed-speed, manual operation. This is particularly important for critical care systems serving operating suites, high-dependency care units of any type, patient isolation facilities, laboratories and pharmaceutical production suites. Off-site software support is no substitute for the ability of on site staff to override the automatic control and keep the system operating in an emergency. Under these circumstances actions that may shorten the life of the plant are considered of secondary importance to that of preserving the health and safety of patients and staff.

Heater batteries / heater coils

General requirements

4.64 Frost batteries are installed to protect the downstream filters from low-temperature, high-humidity intake air conditions. As they handle unfiltered air they should be constructed of plain tubing without fins and be as near to the outside as possible to minimise condensation during cold weather. Access for cleaning will need to be provided to both sides of the coil.

4.65 Where steam coils are used for a frost battery, they may be constructed using spiral-finned copper tube. As they will be prone to fouling the tube layout and spacing should permit easy access for regular cleaning.

4.66 Main and branch heater-batteries should be constructed of solid-drawn copper-tube coils with copper fins, generally connected in parallel.

4.67 Where there is a wet heating system in the areas served, the main heater-battery should be sized for the ventilation requirements only, and not for the fabric loss.

4.68 Access for cleaning must be provided to both sides of all frost batteries and heater-batteries.

Acceptable types

4.69 Electric, water or steam heater-batteries may be considered. However, electric heater-batteries are expensive to operate and where there are alternatives, their use should be restricted to low-power use (for example trimming control).

4.70 Where steam-supplied heater-batteries are used, their control, venting and trapping systems should be designed so that a vacuum cannot occur within the coil. The condensate drainage arrangements should not allow pressure to build in the main resulting in a back-up of condensate in the coil.

Location

4.71 Where possible, wet-trimmer heater-batteries should be located in plant areas.

4.72 Where it is necessary to locate heater-batteries in false ceilings etc, consideration should be given to the use of electric heaters. If this is not practicable, drip-trays should be installed under both the battery and the control valve assembly to protect the ceiling. A moisture sensor and alarm should be fitted in the tray. In any event, to facilitate maintenance access, they should be located above corridors or other non-critical areas and never above patient occupied spaces.

4.73 Auxiliary fan coil units should not be installed in the ceiling above an occupied space. They should be accessible for routine maintenance and cleaning without the need to cause significant disruption to the operation of the department that they serve.

Control

4.74 LPHW frost coils should be controlled by an off-coil temperature sensor operating a motorised valve to provide a minimum plant “on temperature” of between 2°C and 5°C. The off-coil temperature of the frost coil is generally sensed by a serpentine thermostat downstream of the coil or upstream of the next plant item. This thermostat will shut the fan down if any part of the air stream is below the minimum set-point.

4.75 Steam-supplied frost coils should be fitted with an on/off control operated by a temperature sensor mounted upstream of the battery. These are normally set to open the control valve fully when the outside temperature drops to +1°C. This will ensure that there is no standing condensate in the base of the coil.

4.76 The main heater-battery should be controlled in the same manner under the dictates of either an off-coil temperature sensor, or a room temperature sensor, depending on the plant configuration and method of control. Trimmer heater-

batteries are generally controlled by one or more averaging temperature sensors within the room or rooms in the zone.

4.77 Heater-battery control valves should drive to a closed position on system shutdown or fan failure. The control system should then automatically set to provide frost protection.

Cooling coils

General requirements

4.78 Cooling coils will need to be decontaminated periodically. They must have good access both up and downstream. Hinged access doors with viewing ports and illumination inside the duct should be provided both sides of the coil.

4.79 An eliminator will be required downstream of all cooling coils. The eliminator may take the form of an extension of the coil fins or be a separate device. If a separate device it should be removable as a unit to permit cleaning of the coil face.

4.81 4.80 All cooling coils must be fitted with their own independent drainage system as specified above. A baffle or similar device must be provided in the drip tray to prevent air bypassing the coil. The tray should be large enough to capture the moisture from the eliminator, bends and headers. Where coils are greater than 1m high, intermediate drip-trays will be required.

4.82 Condensate traps manufactured from Borosilicate Glass will allow easy visual inspection and incorporate a self-cleaning smooth non-porous internal surface, complying with ISO 3585 and BS2589 Part 1.

Selection

4.83 Cooling coils supplied with chilled water are the preferred option. For small loads or where chilled water is not available, direct expansion coils may be used.

4.84 Care must be taken in selection to minimise electrolytic action resulting from condensation on the airside. Coils constructed from copper tubes with copper fins extended on the downstream side in the form of an eliminator and electro-tinned after manufacture are preferred. Aluminium fins should only be used if vinyl-coated.

4.85 All parts of the coil and its associated ductwork in contact with moisture must be manufactured from corrosion-resistant materials. Pressed steel coil headers, even if treated, have been shown to be prone to corrosion over time and should not be used. Steel mounting frames and casings present similar problems hence stainless steel is preferred.

Location

4.86 Microorganisms that multiply in moisture cannot be avoided when the coil is dehumidifying. However, locating the final filter downstream of the coils will reduce the risk of infection.

4.87 Cooling coils in AHUs should be located upstream of the final filter.

4.88 Where any cooling coil has to be located above a ceiling, drip-trays should be installed under both the coil and the control valve assembly to protect the ceiling. A moisture sensor and alarm should be fitted in the tray. To facilitate maintenance access, they should be located above corridors or other non-critical areas and never above patient occupied spaces.

Control

4.89 There are two basic methods of control for cooling coils:

- off-coil control – used in multi-zone systems or single-zone systems where close humidity control is required, to provide a constant maximum off-plant condition which satisfies the temperature and high humidity requirements of the zone with the highest load;
- sequential control – used in single-zone systems, or multi-zone systems with averaging sensors where close control is not required. A room or duct temperature sensor controls the cooling coil and heater battery in sequence to maintain constant room conditions.

4.90 The advantage of off-coil control is that accurate humidity control can be provided without relying on humidity sensors, which are prone to inaccuracy and drift. Off-coil control is however, expensive to operate in terms of energy consumption, due to the fact that there is no feedback of room loads, and thus at low loads and in systems where there are large zonal variations, significant over-cooling and reheating will occur.

4.91 On systems with two-speed operating, it is usual to isolate the cooling coil upon selection of low speed. In addition, on system shutdown, low airflow or fan failure, the cooling coil must be isolated.

Humidifiers

Design need

4.92 Humidification was originally required for some healthcare applications in order to control the risk associated with the use of flammable anaesthetic gases. The use of such gases has now ceased. Humidification is therefore no longer required unless there is a very specific application requirement.

4.93 Operating-theatre AHUs do not generally require humidifiers but provision for their retrofitting in terms of space provision and a capped drainage system should be provided.

4.94 Where humidification is required, it will be subject to the specific requirements set out below. These are intended to ensure that the unit will operate safely and not become a source of contamination.

General requirements

4.95 The most important requirement for a humidifier is to create complete mixing of the steam with the air. The manufacturers' instructions should be followed regarding minimum distances which should be allowed before bends or other components. This is particularly important with respect to a filter mounted downstream. If it becomes saturated by the humidifier, organisms can grow through the filter and be released into the duct. These may then be carried on the airstream into an occupied space.

4.96 The section of ductwork containing the humidifier may need to be periodically decontaminated. Hinged access doors with viewing ports and internal illumination should be provided. A label warning that the device emits live steam and should be isolated prior to opening should be affixed to the access door.

4.97 All parts of the humidifier and its associated ductwork in contact with moisture must be manufactured from corrosion-resistant materials. Stainless steel is preferred.

4.98 The electrodes of self-generating electrode-boiler type humidifiers should be stainless steel.

4.99 All humidifiers must be fitted with their own independent drainage systems as detailed in Paragraphs 4.20 - 4.25 or 4.72 and 4.87.

4.100 For self- and locally-generated steam humidifiers, the cleanliness of the water supply is essential for their safe operation. Provision should be made for draining down supply pipework and break tanks for periodic disinfection and cleaning during periods when they are not required in service.

4.101 The addition of treatment chemicals for continuous control of water quality for humidifier/air handling units should be avoided. Consideration could be given to installing a UV system to control microbiological growth. Given the limitations of UV systems, however, this will require filtration to high quality to ensure the effectiveness of exposure of organisms to the UV irradiation. As with all water treatment systems the unit should be of proven efficacy and incorporate UV monitors so that any loss of transmission can be detected.

Acceptable types

4.102 Only steam-injection manifold-type humidifiers are considered suitable for use in health building air-conditioning systems. Water humidifiers of any type should not be used.

4.103 Steam may be derived from the central steam supply provided that it does not contain any treatment carry-over, or generated locally either within or adjacent to the humidifier.

4.104 The introduction of steam should be by an appliance specially designed to discharge dry steam into the air-conditioning system without objectionable noise or carry-over of moisture.

4.105 During the design stage, consideration should be given to the proposed methods for the regular cleansing of the humidifier(s) and their components.

Selection

4.106 The number and length of steam-injection manifolds to be used is dependent on various factors such as duct cross-sectional area, air velocity, dry-bulb temperature and manifold design. Guidance from the manufacturer should be followed closely.

4.107 A mains steam humidifier can be noisy and will be difficult to control if it is operated at an excessive steam pressure. It should be sized for an operating pressure of approximately 1 bar. The pipework supplying it should be provided with a dirt pocket, pressure reducing valve and steam trap installed as close as practicable to the humidifier, so that the steam condition at entry is as dry as possible. A temperature switch on the condensate line (or equivalent design provision by the humidifier manufacturer) should be incorporated to prevent 'spitting' on start-up.

4.108 Most operational problems with mains steam humidifiers arise because of back-pressure in the condensate discharge line which will result in flooding into the duct. Unless the condensate from the device can be discharged and collected at atmospheric pressure, it should be discharged directly to drain.

4.109 A local steam generator, where used, must be fed with potable quality water. Additional water treatment to the standard set out above may be required. If the humidifier is unused for a period exceeding 48 hours, it must automatically drain its water content, including that contained in the supply pipework, right back to the running main and leave itself empty.

4.110 Some steam generators are of a type that requires regular cleaning and descaling. The design must allow for them to be installed such that they can be physically isolated from the air duct in order to prevent contamination of the supply by cleaning agents while this is taking place.

Location

4.111 Careful siting of the humidifier injection manifold is required to prevent the steam impinging onto the side(s) of the duct, condensing and generating excess moisture.

Control

4.112 Accurate humidity control can only be provided on single-zone systems, or multi-zone systems with zonal humidifiers. In the above systems, humidity sensors control the humidifier for low-level humidity control, and override the temperature controls to open the cooling coil valve for high-limit humidity control.

4.113 Multi-zone systems are more usually controlled by a minimum humidity sensor located in the supply duct(s) following the last heater-battery.

4.114 Overriding controls separate from the normal plant humidistat should be installed. Their purpose is to prevent excessive condensation in the conditioned space when starting up. A time delay should be incorporated into the humidifier control system such that the humidifier does not start until 30 minutes after the ventilation/plant start-up. In addition, a high-limit humidistat should be installed to limit the output of the humidifier so that the saturation in the duct does not exceed 70%. This humidistat is to control the added moisture. It is not necessary to install a de-humidifier to reduce the humidity of the incoming air if it already exceeds 70%. The humidifier control system should ensure that the humidifier is switched off when the fan is not running.

4.115 On systems with two-speed operating, it is usual to isolate the humidifier upon selection of low speed. In addition, on system shutdown, low airflow or fan failure, the humidifier should be isolated.

Filtration

General requirements

4.116 The purpose of filtration is to reduce the level of airborne contamination in an air stream. It is generally carried out in stages.

4.117 Filters must be securely housed and sealed in well-fitting frames that minimise air by pass. Air by pass significantly reduces filter efficiency, the higher the filter grade the greater the effect. Mounting frames should be designed so that the air flow pushes the filter into its housing to help minimise air bypass. Mounting frames that withdraw so that the filter can be changed without having to reach into the unit are preferred.

4.118 Neither the filter media, nor any material used in the construction of the filters, should be capable of sustaining combustion. The filter media should be such that particles of it do not detach and become carried away by the airflow.

4.119 Filters need to be readily accessible for replacement so a hinged access door should be provided. The upstream side of the filter should be visible for inspection through a viewing port with internal illumination.

4.120 All filters should be provided with a means of visually checking the differential pressure across them. Direct-reading dial-type gauges marked with clean and dirty sectors are preferred.

4.121 A complete spare set of filters must be provided at handover.

Definition of filter terms

4.122 Particulate air filters are divided into four categories:

- general ventilation filters grades G1 to G4;

- fine filters grades F5 to F9;
- high efficiency particulate filters (HEPA) graded H10 to H14;
- ultra-low particulate air filters (ULPA) graded U15 to U17.

4.123 General filters are graded in terms of their 'Synthetic dust weight 'Arrestance'. This represents the percentage of a test dust captured by a filter. 'Arrestance' provides a good indication of a filter's ability to remove the larger, heavier particles found in outdoor air. These are of a size to block finned batteries and large enough to settle out in the air distribution system.

BS EN 779 grade (Eurovent grade)	% Arrestance	Notes and typical healthcare application
G1 - (EU1)	< 65	Metal mesh grease filter
G2 - (EU2)	65 to < 80	Coarse primary filter
G3 - (EU3)	80 to < 90	Primary air intake; return air; energy recovery device protection
G4 - (EU4)	> 90	General purpose tempered air supply

Table 4: General Filters

4.124 Fine filters are graded in terms of their 'Atmospheric dust spot Efficiency'. This is a measure of the filter's ability to remove the very fine staining particles found in outdoor air. It will indicate how 'visibly' clean a filter will keep a ventilated space. The staining particles are approximately the same size as most common bacteria so it is also a rough measure of the filter's ability to remove microorganisms.

BS EN 779 grade (Eurovent grade)	% Efficiency	Notes and typical healthcare applications
F5 - (EU5)	40 to 60	General purpose panel / bag filter
F6 - (EU6)	60 to < 80	Basic grade bag filter
F7 - (EU7)	80 to < 90	Medium grade bag or pleated paper Conventional operating theatre supply air
F8 - (EU8)	90 to < 95	High grade bag or pleated paper
F9 - (EU9)	> 95	Basic HEPA filter – Level 8 clean rooms

Table 5: Fine Filters

4.125 High efficiency filters (HEPA and ULPA) are graded in terms of their ability to capture their 'Most Penetrating Particle Size' (MPPS). High-efficiency filters self-select the particle that they are least able to trap, hence the MPPS. They are then tested against that size of particle. These filters are designed to provide very high-efficiency filtration of particles in the sub-micron size range.

BS EN 1822 grade (Eurovent grade)	% Efficiency @ MPPS	Notes and typical healthcare application
H10 - (EU10)	85	Ultra-clean theatre terminal
H11 - (EU11)	95	
H12 - (EU12)	99.5	
H13 - (EU13)	99.95	
H14 - (EU14)	99.995	Pharmacy aseptic suite Category 3 room extract
U15 – U17	-	Not generally used in healthcare

Table 6: High Efficiency (HEPA) Particulate Filters

Selection primary filters

4.126 All filters should be of the dry type. Panel filters are cheap and disposable with relatively low dust-holding capacity. They are generally used as pre-filters to eliminate large particles that would otherwise clog or cause damage to the fan and finned heating and cooling batteries. Stainless steel frames that hold disposable pre-cut filter pads are preferred.

4.127 General ventilation supply plant should incorporate primary air filters of grade G3, sized for a maximum face velocity of 2.0 m/s. Additional coarse pre-filters may be justified where the intake air is exceptionally polluted. They are sometimes fitted as a temporary measure when building work is being carried out in the vicinity of the air intake.

Secondary filters

4.128 Where a higher standard of filtration is required, secondary bag or pleated paper panel filters would be used. Rigid frame filters incorporating pleated paper elements are preferred over bag filters for critical care applications such as operating theatres.

4.129 In urban or other areas of high atmospheric pollution, a higher standard of filtration may be justified to reduce the level of staining to internal finishes.

Extract air filters

4.130 Extract filtration will generally only be required where heat-recovery devices are installed. There are a very limited number of specialised applications (microbiological safety cabinets and similar LEV systems) where contaminated air is required to be filtered prior to discharge to atmosphere. If it is safe for staff to work in a room without wearing respiratory protective equipment, it is safe to discharge the room air to atmosphere without filtration.

Return-air filters

4.131 They are used to reduce the load on HEPA filters in recirculating applications such as Ultra Clean operating suite ventilation canopies and pharmacy aseptic suites.

High-efficiency filters – HEPA and ULPA

4.132 HEPA filters are expensive so their use should be kept to a minimum. Applications requiring HEPA filters include the air supply to aseptic suites in manufacturing pharmacies, the discharges from microbiological safety cabinets and isolation facilities.

4.133 If used, HEPA filters should be of the replaceable panel type with leak-proof seals. They should be installed in a manner that permits on-site validation of the filter and its housing. This may involve the release of a Dispersed Oil Particle (DOP) challenge smoke through an injection point upstream of the filter and a measurement of the DOP penetration across the downstream face. Alternatively a particle-counting method may be used.

4.134 HEPA filters are sometimes fitted in extract systems to capture hazardous substances or organisms. Design provision must be made for the subsequent safe handling of contaminated filters by maintenance staff. This may be achieved by:

- sealing the hazardous substance into the filter before it is removed;
- providing a system to fumigate the filter to kill any organisms;
- housing it in a ”safe change” unit that permits the filter to be ejected into a bag and sealed without staff having to come into direct contact with it.

4.135 In view of the costs and problems associated with placing HEPA filters in extracts, it is recommended that a full risk assessment be carried out at the design stage. This should include defining the true need for HEPA filters in an extract; validation of its performance at installation; the method of safely changing a contaminated filter; and its subsequent disposal.

4.136 ULPA filters are very expensive and are designed to remove particles below a size that are either surgically or aerobiologically significant. There would have to be exceptional circumstances in order to justify their use in healthcare ventilation systems.

Activated carbon filters

4.137 Activated carbon filters are able to remove gases and vapours from an air stream and are graded according to the range of substances they can remove. They are not normally fitted in air-conditioning supply systems.

4.138 They are occasionally fitted retrospectively because the main air intake has been poorly sited and is drawing in traffic fumes. Where used they must be protected by a particulate air filter.

4.139 Activated carbon filters are more commonly used in specialised fume extraction systems when the location of the discharge means that dilution cannot be relied upon to disperse noxious fumes.

Location

4.140 The primary filter should be positioned on the inlet side of the supply fan, downstream of the frost coil. The secondary filter, when fitted, should be on the positive-pressure side of the fan. This will prevent air being drawn into the system after the filter and capture any particles shed by items of equipment within the AHU.

4.141 The filter installation must be arranged to provide easy access to filter media for cleaning, removal or replacement, with side or front withdrawal as required.

Control

4.142 Differential-pressure transducers should be provided to monitor and alarm remotely on excessive filter pressure drop. In critical areas dirty-filter indication lights should be provided at the point-of-use.

Energy-recovery

General requirements

4.143 Energy recovery will normally be fitted to all healthcare ventilation systems. It may be omitted only where it would clearly be uneconomic. Where the economic case is marginal, space should be allowed for the retrofitting of an energy recovery system.

4.144 For systems in healthcare premises, a plate heat exchanger or 'run-around coil' system is suitable. Thermal wheels may be used providing they are fitted with a purge sector. The small amounts of air leakage across those devices are not considered significant. Other systems such as heat pumps or heat pipes are also suitable. Selection should be based on relative locations of the supply and extract units, ease of maintenance and practicality. Cleaning access will be required to both sides of any energy-recovery device.

4.145 The following are the minimum energy transfer efficiencies required for devices handling equal air volumes:

- run-around coil – 45%;
- plate heat exchanger – 50%;
- thermal wheel – 65%;
- any other energy-recovery device – 50%.

4.146 If a plate heat exchanger is chosen, the plates should be constructed of metal. Plastic should not be used for internal bypass dampers and drive gears.

4.147 Whichever energy-recovery device is chosen the extract side will need to be protected by a G3 filter and provided with a drainage system as described in Paragraphs 4.20 - 4.25, to remove condensate.

Location

4.148 Energy-recovery devices should be located downstream of the frost battery and pre-filter, prior to the cooling coil or main heater battery on the supply side.

Control

4.149 It is essential to consider the control of both the energy recovery device and the frost battery when assessing the economics of recovery, as all energy provided by the frost battery will directly reduce the heat exchange of the recovery device. To this end, the off-coil setting of the frost coil should be the minimum possible to protect the primary filter (for example +2°C).

4.150 The energy-recovery device should be controlled in sequence with the main heater battery, and should incorporate a control to prevent the transfer of unwanted heat when the air-on condition rises above the required plant set point.

4.151 In instances where the plant is cooling the air, it may be possible to remove heat from the supply air at high ambient conditions, under the dictates of enthalpy sensors in the intake and extract ducts.

Attenuation

General requirements

4.152 Noise will be generated in an air distribution system by the fan, plant items and airflow. The ductwork is a very effective transmitter of this noise hence there is generally a need to limit the noise transmission to meet the requirements of the building. This normally involves the provision of sound attenuation treatment as part of the overall ductwork system design.

4.153 A thorough assessment of the design should be made to assess the noise impact. This should take into account the following primary factors:

- fan- and plant-noise generation;
- air-flow generated noise in ductwork fittings and dampers;
- noise generated at grilles, diffusers and other terminals;
- noise break-in and break-out of ductwork;
- cross-talk and similar interference;
- the noise limitations for the building and surrounding areas;
- external noise generation.

4.154 A method of assessment of these factors and the sound attenuation requirements of ductwork systems is given in CIBSE Guide B.

4.155 The fan is usually the main source of system noise. The sound power that it generates varies as the square of the fan pressure, and thus to limit the fan noise level the system resistance should be kept as low as economically

possible. As a general rule the selected fan should operate close to its point of maximum efficiency to minimise its noise generation. Where there is disturbance to the airflow at the fan inlet, the manufacturer's stated fan noise levels should be increased by up to 5 dB(A). More precise guidance on this aspect may be available from the manufacturers.

4.156 Fans radiate noise through both the inlet and outlet connections and it may be necessary to provide attenuation to limit the noise from both of these connections. It is always preferable and more economic to control noise and vibration at source, or as close to source as possible. It should be noted that attenuators offer a resistance to airflow. The resistance must be included in the fan and ductwork calculations.

4.157 Provided care is taken in the design and construction of low-pressure systems to avoid significant noise generation in the ductwork, attenuation should only be needed to absorb fan noise.

4.158 Noise breakout from all equipment housed in the plantroom must be taken into consideration if control is to be satisfactory. Any ductwork within the plantroom after the silencer should be acoustically insulated to prevent noise break-in or the silencer relocated at the point of entry or exit of ductwork to and from the plant room.

4.159 There is no complete means of control over external noise generation from such as road traffic, aircraft, factory and community noise. Consideration must be given to this at the design and planning stage.

Acceptable types and location

4.160 The noise levels produced by ventilation and other plant should be reduced by either lining the inside of the duct with sound-absorbing material or fitting bespoke attenuator units.

4.161 In supply systems, sound-absorbing material should not be applied to the inside surface of a duct system downstream of the final filter, owing to the risk of mechanical damage and the subsequent dispersal of the media into the ventilation system.

4.162 In supply and extract systems, sound-absorbing material must not be applied to the inside of a duct within 1 metre of a fire damper. The material should be non-particle-shedding and fire-resistant (further guidance can be found in SHTM Firecode suite of documents). Where sound-absorbing material is applied in a section of duct that will be routinely exposed during maintenance activities it should be protected from mechanical damage.

4.163 Bespoke attenuator units with a sound-absorbing infill suitable for the quality of air being handled and protected by a perforated sheet metal casing are the preferred option for critical systems. Absorption of moisture, dirt and corrosive substances into the 'in-fill' and the release of fibrous particles into the airstream should be prevented by the use of a membrane. The membrane material should have a declared service life of at least 25 years. If these conditions can be met then the attenuator may be located in the supply ductwork downstream

of the final filter. When so located, cleaning access should be provided at both ends of the attenuator unit.

5. Air distribution system

Air distribution arrangements

Ductwork distribution systems

5.1 Ductwork systems for ventilating and air-conditioning applications are referred to by their velocity or pressure category, that is, as low, medium or high velocity (or pressure) systems. Heating & Ventilating Contractors Association (HVCA) limits are up to 10 m/s or 1,000 Pa; 20 m/s or 1,750 Pa: and 40 m/s or 3,250 Pa in the case of conventional low, medium and high pressure systems respectively. High-pressure systems are disappearing because of the constraints of the Building Regulations but existing systems may sometimes need to be altered or extended.

5.2 For normal applications in healthcare buildings, low velocity systems are recommended. The use of higher velocities than those recommended is not likely to be economical. Future trends are likely to be towards even lower optimum duct velocities; however, velocities below 2 m/s are unlikely to be justified.

5.3 The site will often dictate the main routing of ductwork systems, but in general, the design should seek to make the layout as symmetrical as possible; that is, the pressure loss in each branch should be as nearly equal as possible. This will aid regulation and may reduce the number and variety of duct fittings that are needed.

5.4 Main distribution ductwork should not be routed above sleeping areas. Where there is no alternative route, additional acoustic insulation will be required.

5.5 Where auxiliary cooling units, fans, filters or trimming devices are installed in the distribution system, they must be independently supported and fitted with a suitable drainage system where appropriate. If they are a source of vibration they should be linked to the distribution ductwork via flexible connections.

5.6 The fan of a Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV) system provided under the COSHH Regulations should be located outside of the building so that all of the ductwork within the building is under negative pressure. Where the fan has to be within the building it should be located as close as practicable to the outside with an absolute minimum run of discharge ductwork within the building. The discharge ductwork within the building will be under positive pressure so it must not be penetrated by test holes or inspection hatches.

Ductwork materials and construction

5.7 The choice of duct material should take account of the nature of the air or gas being conveyed and the environment in which the duct will be placed.

5.8 Galvanised-sheet-steel is generally suitable and most economical for normal ventilating and air-conditioning applications. Its inherent mechanical strength

renders it resistant to casual damage both during the construction phase and throughout its service life when mechanical and electrical services around it are altered. It also readily withstands the impacts sustained when rotary equipment is used to for internal cleaning.

5.9 In instances where moisture levels and/or corrosive elements in the air being conveyed are very high, aluminium, stainless steel, PVC or GRP (glass-reinforced plastic) ducts should be used. Stainless or black steel are the only suitable materials for high-temperature ductwork.

5.10 In inherently wet areas, such as the base of fresh air inlet ducts and some extract systems, the ductwork may require draining to prevent a build-up of standing water. The layout of the drains should be as specified in Paragraphs 4.20 - 4.25.

5.11 Where builderwork plenum chambers or ducts are used, these may be constructed of various materials. However all such ducts must be rendered and sealed to prevent dust shedding. A greater allowance may need to be made for leakage.

5.12 Galvanised, black and stainless steel ductwork should be manufactured and installed to the current HVCA specification for sheet metal ductwork DW144, but excluding the use of bolt-through supports.

5.13 GRP and PVC ductwork should be manufactured and installed to the current HVCA specification for plastic ductwork DW154.

5.14 Where phenolic-board ductwork is considered, care should be taken to ensure that it is fabricated to a quality standard and installed strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Its pressure rating and degree of support should be suitable for the application and ducts should be fitted with mechanical protection where required. Designers should be fully conversant with installation techniques and Installers should be experienced having received training in the techniques required and certified to this effect by the manufacturers. Due consideration should be given to the impact on ductwork pressures created by the closing of dampers. Phenolic-board ducting should not be installed in plant rooms or any other areas where it could be vulnerable to impact damage. Internal cleaning using mechanical (rotary) means is also liable to cause damage to the integrity of surfaces.

5.15 Flexible ductwork is unsuitable for air distribution in healthcare applications. It should only be used to make the final connection to a terminal (See Paragraphs 5.54 and 5.55).

5.16 The inside of the ductwork should be free from structural projections and as smooth as possible. Flanged, gasketed joints are preferred.

Fire aspects, damper types and locations

5.17 It is essential that all relevant fire aspects of ducting systems are agreed with the fire officer before the design is finalised.

5.18 Ductwork must be fire-stopped where it penetrates fire compartment walls, floors and enclosures, cavity barriers and sub-compartment walls or enclosures, and provided with weatherproof collars where roofs or external walls are penetrated.

5.19 Fire/smoke dampers shall be provided at the locations required by SHTM Firecode. The fire-damper mounting frame must be securely attached to the building fabric. Where a fire-damper is not mounted directly in a fire compartment wall, it must be correctly supported and the ductwork between it and the firewall must posses the same fire rating as the firewall that it penetrates. The fire-rated portion of ductwork must not be penetrated by test holes or inspection hatches. All fire/smoke dampers shall be capable of remote re-setting via the Building and Energy Management System (BEMS) or equivalent, after periodic testing procedures.

5.20 An access hatch shall be provided adjacent to each fire damper so that its correct operation can be directly observed.

5.21 Smoke-diverting dampers must be provided on recirculation air systems to divert automatically any smoke-contaminated return air to the outside of the building in the event of a fire; and arranged so that the normally open smoke-diverting damper on the return-air branch to the input unit closes and all the return air is exhausted through the extract fan. Guidance is available in SHTM 81 and BS5588: Part 9.

Duct sections

5.22 Ducting is generally available in rectangular, circular and flat oval sections, although other sections may be made for special situations.

5.23 Rectangular ducting is most common on low-pressure systems, for the following reasons:

- it can readily be adapted to fit into the space available;
- fittings are cheaper than those for circular or flat oval ductwork;
- it can readily be joined to such component items as heating and cooling coils, and filters.

5.24 When sizing ductwork, the designer should take into account:

- both installation and operating costs;
- space limitations imposed by the structure and other services;
- operating noise levels;
- requirements of regulation at the commissioning stage.

5.25 For overall economy and performance, the aspect ratio should be close to 1:1, since high aspect ratios increase the pressure loss, heat gains or losses and overall cost (for example, changing the aspect ratio from 1:1 to 1:4 can typically

increase the installed cost of the ductwork by 40% and add 25% to the heat gains or losses).

5.26 Rectangular ducting should not be the first choice for high pressure systems, and should be avoided in systems operating at high negative pressures, because the strengthening of the flat sides and the sealing requirements necessary to make rectangular ducts suitable for these high pressures are costly.

5.27 Circular ducting is preferable for high-pressure systems, and for systems operating at high negative pressures. In the case of the latter, additional stiffening rings may be necessary. Machine-formed spirally-wound ducting and a standard range of pressed and fabricated fittings can sometimes make circular ducting more economical, particularly in low pressure systems having a relatively low proportion of fittings.

5.28 Flat oval ducting provides an alternative to circular ducting, principally where there is a limitation on one of the dimensions in the space available for the duct run.

5.29 Other sections may be used, such as triangular sections to pass through roof trusses. Such sections present difficulties in the provision of fittings, and connections to standard plant items, and are likely to be more expensive than traditional sections.

Standard ductwork fittings

5.30 All fittings should conform to current HVCA specification DW144. Wherever possible, long radius bends, large radius main branches, not more than 45° angle sub-branches and long-taper transformations should be used.

5.31 Fittings should be arranged with vanes in sub-branches connected directly to grilles and diffusers, and turning vanes in square bends (when used). When vanes are used, additional cleaning access will be required.

5.32 The number of duct fittings should be kept to a minimum and there should be a conscious attempt to achieve some standardisation of types and sizes. Increasing the number and variety of fittings in a system can markedly raise its overall cost.

5.33 Bad design in relation to air flow can lead to vibration of flat duct surfaces, increases duct-generated noise and pressure loss, unpredictable behaviour in branch fittings and terminals, and adverse effects on the performance of installed plant items (such as trimmer batteries).

Branches

5.34 There are many designs of branches and junctions in use. The important features are that the flow should be divided (or combined) with the minimum interference and disturbance. Changes in duct sizes should not be made at the branch but a short distance downstream (or upstream). A good dividing branch

design cannot be effective if the flow entering the branch is not uniform across the section.

Changes of section

5.35 The expansion of a duct section should be formed with sides having a total included angle of no more than 30°, and preferably less than 20°. If the angle of expansion is greater, the flow is not likely to remain attached to the walls of the duct and large eddies will be formed with flow reversal at the walls. This leads not only to a high-pressure loss, but also to non-uniform velocity pattern at the outlet. Where there is insufficient space for a gentle expansion and a greater angle is necessary, internal splitters should be used.

5.36 A contraction in a duct section is less critical, but the total included angle of the taper should not exceed 40° (or 20° where the contraction is made on one side of the duct only)

5.37 The most economical way to change the section of a rectangular duct is to restrict the change of duct size to one side only. If the calculated reduction or increase to the side dimension is 50mm or less, it is usually not economical to change the size at the position. The minimum size of a rectangular duct should usually be 150mm x 100mm.

Other fittings

5.38 As a general rule, fittings should avoid abrupt changes in direction and also sharp edges that cause the flow to separate and form eddies, thus limiting pressure loss and causing noise generation. If the fitting leads to the flow preferentially attaching to one side of the outlet, then a significant length of straight downstream duct is necessary before the next branch or fitting; this length should be greater than five equivalent diameters.

Thermal insulation

5.39 Thermal insulation is applied to ductwork to reduce heat exchange, and to prevent condensation.

5.40 In a duct system, the air temperature changes can be significant, especially when passing through untreated space, and these have the effect of reducing the heating or cooling capacity of the air and of increasing the energy input to the system. The heat transmission to and from the surrounding space can be reduced by effective insulation of the ducts. Extract ductwork conveying air from which heat recovery will be derived should be thermally insulated to the same standard as with associated supply ventilation ductwork.

5.41 Condensation can arise in ductwork systems conveying cooled air and, apart from creating conditions conducive to corrosion of ductwork, condensation affects the heat and vapour-resisting properties of insulating materials themselves which may induce further condensation.

5.42 In normal circumstances, the insulation thickness for heat resistance is sufficient to prevent surface condensation, but in extreme conditions the

insulation thickness for vapour resistance may be greater than that for heat resistance. When cold ducts pass through areas of high dew-point, carefully selected vapour barriers should be applied externally to the insulation.

Noise generation within the ductwork

5.43 Noise is generated in ductwork at sharp edges, by tie rods, damper blades, duct obstructions and sharp bends etc. This air-flow-generated noise becomes an important factor if it is about the same or greater level than the upstream noise level. (Air-flow-generated noise is often referred to as “regenerated noise”).

5.44 The noise level generated by airflow in ductwork is very sensitive to the velocity. The sound power of this noise is approximately proportional to the sixth power of the velocity; that is, a doubling of the duct velocity will increase the sound power by a factor of 64. The duct velocities should therefore be kept as low as possible. In general, duct fittings that have lower pressure loss factors in similar flow conditions will generate less noise.

5.45 Ductwork serving quiet areas should not be routed through noisy areas where noise break-in can occur and increase the noise level in the ductwork.

5.46 Grille, register and louvre noise should be kept to the minimum by selecting types having low noise-producing characteristics, without high tonal noise, and should be fitted with acoustically treated external inlet and outlet louvres.

5.47 Cross-talk attenuators may be necessary where noise intrusion between adjacent spaces can arise and where individual room confidentiality is required. They will normally be of the ‘through-the-ceiling, ‘up-and-over’ type and may include a fire damper if required.

Volume control damper locations

5.48 Manually operated balancing dampers are needed generally:

- in the main duct downstream of the fan;
- in branches of zone ducts;
- in sub-branch ducts serving four or more terminals;
- at terminals not covered by the previous item.

5.49 Dampers integral with terminals should only be used for final trimming of air volumes, otherwise noise and air distribution problems may ensue.

5.50 Dampers in rectangular ducts should be single-bladed when the longer side is up to 450mm but be of the opposed-blade multi-leaf type above this size. In circular ducts, iris-type dampers are recommended. Dampers must be accessible, incorporate a position indicator and means of locking in the commissioned position. Dampers should be located as far away as possible from adjacent branches or plant items.

Cleaning and access door locations

5.51 Cleaning and access doors are required to facilitate access to plant items and ductwork components for inspection, maintenance, cleaning and replacement, and must be of sufficient size to permit safe access for the required functions. Consideration should also be given to the number of doors to be provided. Older installations may be deficient in the provision of access doors and consideration will be necessary to have these incorporated in the course of any refurbishment in the accommodation served.

5.52 Recommended locations for access doors are given in the current HVCA specification DW144 and are generally provided to give access to:

- every regulating damper;
- every fire and motorised damper;
- filter (to facilitate filter withdrawal);
- both sides of cooling/heating coils;
- humidifiers;
- fans; and
- motors and impellers.

5.53 Care should be taken when siting access doors to ensure that no other services to be installed will prevent reasonable access.

Flexible ducting

5.54 Flexible ductwork may be used for final connections to grilles and diffusers provided it is constructed to meet the fire precautions recommended in BS8313. It must not pass through fire compartment walls, floors or enclosures of sub-compartment walls or enclosures, or through cavity barriers.

5.55 Flexible ducting will cause a significant frictional loss and may be difficult to clean and should never be used in lieu of a bend. Where installed it should take the most direct route and be as short as possible, never exceeding 1 metre in length.

Diffuser and grille selection and sizing

5.56 The effectiveness of all ventilation and air-conditioning systems depends on the methods by which air is introduced to, and vitiated air is removed from, the space. The usual results of poor air-terminal selection and/or positioning are: draughts, stagnation, poor air quality, large temperature gradients and excessive noise.

5.57 Air can be supplied to a space in a number of ways, although any device can be broadly placed into one of two categories: that producing a diffused supply, or that producing a perpendicular jet. Diffusers may be radial or linear, and normally utilise the Coanda effect (that is, adhesion of the air stream to an adjacent surface), to reduce the risk of excessive room-air movement. A

perpendicular jet is formed by discharging air through grilles, louvres or nozzles, which are generally adjustable.

5.58 Air-flow patterns produced by both types of terminal are dependent to a large extent on the presence of the Coanda effect.

5.59 Supply air terminals can be incorporated into any room surface, for example, floors, walls (high or low level), desktop etc.

5.60 As they operate on the jet principle, the use of sidewall and linear grilles is restricted to areas where air change rates are low, that is, less than 10 per hour. Perforated rectangular diffusers can provide acceptable conditions within the occupied zone at up to 15 air changes per hour. In areas where a higher air change rate is required, square or circular ceiling mounted diffusers should be used.

5.61 The performance of supply air terminal devices is provided, based on three criteria: throw, spread and drop.

- **throw** is defined as perpendicular or parallel distance from the terminal to the point at which the air velocity is 0.5 m/s isovel;
- **spread** is defined as the width of the 0.5 m/s isovel; and
- **drop** is defined as the vertical distance from the centre line of the terminal to the bottom edge of the 0.25 m/s isovel.

5.62 It is necessary to consider each of these parameters in both summer and winter conditions to ensure satisfactory operation of the air-terminal device, as warm jets behave very differently from cold jets.

5.63 A warm jet tends to rise until it attaches itself to a horizontal surface, while a cold jet falls. Care must be taken to ensure that this does not lead to unacceptable temperature gradients in winter or excessive air velocities in the occupied zone in summer.

5.64 In order to ensure satisfactory air movement within a space, it is necessary to consider interaction between air movement from adjacent terminals, and ceiling mounted fixtures (light fittings etc), as well as interaction between air movement and room surfaces.

5.65 If the supply and extract terminals are too close, short-circuiting may occur, while if they are too far apart, stagnant zones may be formed. Where two opposing air streams meet, the individual velocities must not be greater than 0.25 m/s.

5.66 Supply and extract grilles and diffusers should be fitted with opposed-blade dampers for fine balancing purposes.

5.67 Further guidance on the selection of grilles and diffusers is given in the CIBSE Guide B.

5.68 In operating theatres, the supply terminals must be able to produce a down-flow movement of air in the operating zone 1 metre above floor level. Ceiling mounted diffusers with fixed directional vanes that provide a downward turbulent airflow are the preferred option. Plenum boxes fitted with perforated screens to produce a parallel downward flow are also acceptable. Nozzles or jets of any type are not acceptable. Sidewall-mounted linear diffusers that utilise the Coanda effect to send air across the ceiling and 'drop' it into the operating zone are also not suitable. However linear ceiling mounted diffusers that provide a direct downward airflow around the operating zone may be used.

Transfer grille - size and location

5.69 Air-transfer grilles in walls, partitions or doors form an integral part of the building's air distribution system. Modern doorsets have very low leakage rates so cannot be relied upon to permit even quite small airflows. Failure to make adequate provision for air to move from room to room will result in excessive pressure differentials and 'door whistle'.

5.70 Transfer grilles are required in locations where there is a significant imbalance between the supply and extract rates in a room. They will relieve any pressure differentials that may affect the operation of the spaces and/or the ventilation system and permit airflow in a known direction. However, transfer grilles are vulnerable to damage and, in many instances, as long as the equivalent free area is provided, they can be substituted with undercut door.

5.71 Care needs to be taken to ensure that the positioning of transfer grilles does not interfere with the fire or smoke integrity of the building. In general, the air-transfer grilles should not be installed within fire-resisting boundaries, although if this is unavoidable, they should be fitted with fire- or smoke-dampers.

5.72 Where installed, transfer grilles should be of the non-vision type, sized for a maximum face velocity of 1.5 m/s.

5.73 In photographic dark rooms, lightproof transfer grilles will be required.

5.74 Cross-talk attenuators may be necessary where noise intrusion between adjacent spaces can arise and where individual room confidentiality is required. (See also Paragraphs 5.43 - 5.47).

Pressure stabilisers - size and location

5.75 Pressure stabilisers are required in lieu of air-transfer grilles in areas where it is necessary to maintain pressure differentials between adjacent rooms to prevent reversal of airflows for example, in operating suites, isolation facilities and clean rooms. (See also Paragraphs 7.24 - 7.28).

5.76 Fire precautions for pressure stabilisers are the same as for transfer grilles. For sizing criteria, refer to Paragraph 7.23

5.77 Pressure stabilisers should be of the balanced-blade type, with the facility to make fine adjustment of the pressure setting. They should be silent in

operation and give a seal as tight as practicable when closed. The materials of construction and method of assembly should allow for cleaning and disinfection.

5.78 Pressure stabilisers should be installed in a visible location so that their operation can be readily observed.

5.79 Cross-talk attenuators may be necessary where noise intrusion between adjacent spaces can arise and where confidentiality is required. In these cases, the pressure stabiliser and cross-talk attenuator should be mounted in a short length of ductwork within the ceiling void.

5.80 Pressure stabilisers may need to be fitted with a stand-off baffle on their discharge side to prevent a sight line in situations where a laser will be used. Baffles may also be required to preserve privacy or prevent discharge air causing draughts or disturbing the air distribution pattern in the adjoining room. They are also useful in low-level locations to prevent the airflow path being obstructed by portable equipment.

6. Automatic controls

6.1 Various options for control of single and multi-zone air-conditioning systems are given in CIBSE Guide B.

General requirements

6.2 The basic requirements for an automatic control system are as follows:

- facilities to start, set-back and stop the plant;
- facilities to control the volumetric air-flow;
- facilities to control the system or room pressure;
- temperature control and indication;
- humidity control and indication;
- devices to monitor and indicate the plant's operating state;
- alarms to indicate plant failure, low air-flow, and filter state.

The control functions actually provided will depend on the purpose of the ventilation system.

6.3 There will also be a need to determine the control strategy in the event of a fire either within the zone being served or within an adjoining zone.

6.4 The designer should consider whether it is necessary for the supply and extract fans to be interlocked, either so that the supply fan will not operate unless air-flow is established within the extract system, or vice-versa depending on the required pressures within the rooms being served.

6.5 The sequence switching of units in order to prevent transient reverse airflows will be particularly important in laboratory and pharmacy areas that also contain fume cupboards, safety cabinets and other LEV systems.

6.6 Alarms should be provided to show 'filter fault' and 'low air-flow'. The "filter fault" alarm should be initiated by a predetermined increase of pressure differentials across the filter. The 'low air-flow' alarm should be initiated when the supply air quantity falls to 80% of the design value.

Objectives of control system

6.7 The primary objective of ventilation plant control system is to maintain the space served within the required environmental control limits, at the appropriate times, regardless of external conditions or internal loads and with the minimum energy consumption.

6.8 Often, it is not possible to predict accurately building load variation at the design stage, and thus optimum set points cannot be assessed. Information provided by monitoring the operation of the plant via a Building and Energy Management

System (BEMS) will enable optimum set points to be established and energy consumption reduced. Control of most systems will be via a BEMS. This will enable the operating conditions and control tolerances to be set and monitored. The BEMS may also be set to log the actual energy consumed by the system together with that recovered by the energy-recovery device. This will provide a useful check on overall operating efficiency and provide evidence that energy targets are being achieved.

6.9 BEMS incorporating self-adaptive control algorithms that automatically adjust the set-point to the suit the usage and load are preferred. The provision of movement sensors within the controlled space in order to determine the actual occupancy will facilitate this process.

6.10 The failure of specialised ventilation systems can have grave consequences for the delivery of healthcare. Control systems should therefore be simple, robust and reliable.

6.11 Computer-software-driven control systems are becoming the norm in building services. However, it should be remembered that healthcare ventilation systems need to be available to operate outside of normal working periods when software support is not available. Should the software fail, it will be left to site staff, who may have little knowledge of the control algorithms to restart the ventilation system. It is therefore essential to ensure that a simple means of re-starting critical systems in the event of a software failure is provided (see also Paragraphs 4.62 - 4.63)

Location of controls

6.12 Whether within the plant, duct or room, sensors should be located to provide accurate measurement of the condition of the air being monitored.

6.13 Sensors and control items such as control valves should be located close to the element being sensed or plant item being controlled, in order to minimise time lags within the system which may create over-shoot of conditions beyond the design envelope and result in additional energy consumption.

6.14 There are practical advantages in locating all control valves for an air-handling unit in a bank (at a convenient height) at one end of the unit. (This will not normally result in an undue additional control lag.)

6.15 Some applications require intermittent mechanical ventilation, frequently at a high air-change rate, (for example, in bathrooms and treatment rooms.) Local controls to facilitate this mode of operation should be placed in a prominent position to encourage economical use.

6.16 Local controls that enable the user to select more than one mode of operation should be clearly labelled to identify the particular mode selected. Where the system allows different room pressures to be selected then a direct-reading pressure gauge should be fitted within the eye line of the users to provide an independent confirmation of the resultant mode of operation. A clear

description of the selectable modes of operation should be mounted adjacent to the control switch.

Fire aspects

6.17 A fire control panel should be mounted at the entrance of the area that the ventilation serves. The panel should have restricted access for the fire officer and include independent on/off controls and indication of the supply and extract systems.

6.18 In certain critical care departments it is preferable to maintain the supply ventilation in case of a fire within the area. For example, in an operating department, while undergoing surgery, the patient cannot always be easily moved without significant risk. In the event of a fire in a staff or support area of the department, or adjoining zone, the continued supply of air to a theatre will maintain it at a positive pressure and protect the patient and staff from the effects of smoke. This will allow time for the patient to be stabilised so that he/she can be safely evacuated if necessary. A similar situation occurs for patients in ITU and other critical care units. In all of these cases the ventilation to the critical area should continue to operate unless the AHU starts to draw in smoke. For these departments, a notice should be affixed to the fire control panel drawing attention for the need to liaise with departmental staff before switching off fan units.

6.19 All supply AHUs should have a smoke sensor mounted in the main supply duct immediately downstream of the AHU. In the event of a fire in the AHU or smoke being drawn into the system from an outside source, it should cause the supply air fire damper to close and shut down the AHU.

Time switching

6.20 Facilities to start, set-back and stop the plant should be provided in the plantroom. Remote start and set-back control and indication, if required, should be provided at a manned staff location, for example, at the reception or staff base or, in theatres, within the Surgeon's Panel.

6.21 Many ventilation systems may be completely shut down when the area served is not in active use. Alternatively, where there is a need to maintain a background condition, the ventilation output can be reduced by "setting back" the system. This will significantly reduce energy consumption and extend the life of filters and other system components.

Start-up control

6.22 The plant's start control should contain a control logic that will start the plant in the sequence set out in the following algorithms, Figures 2 - 5

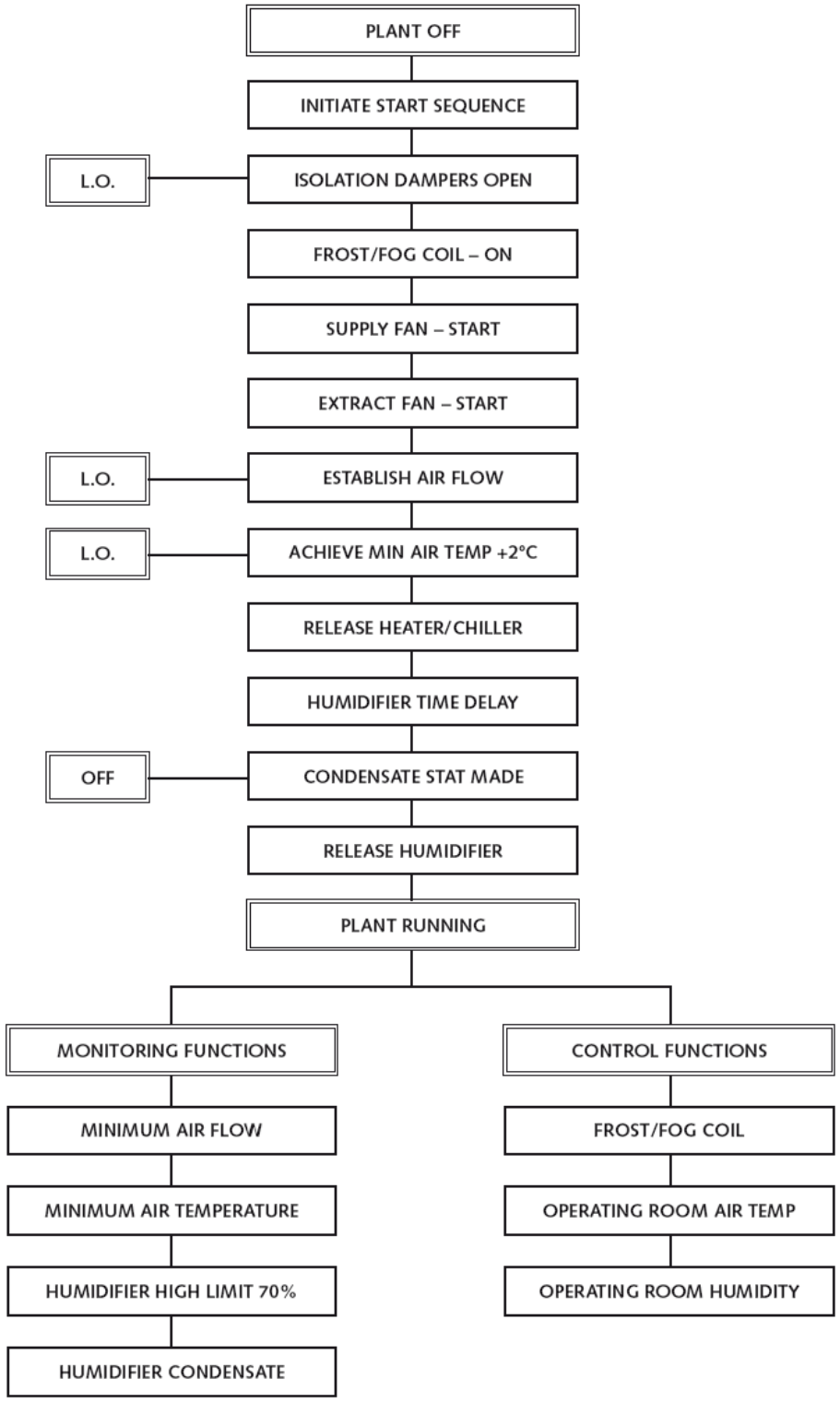


Figure 2: Typical plant control algorithm – normal start-up sequence

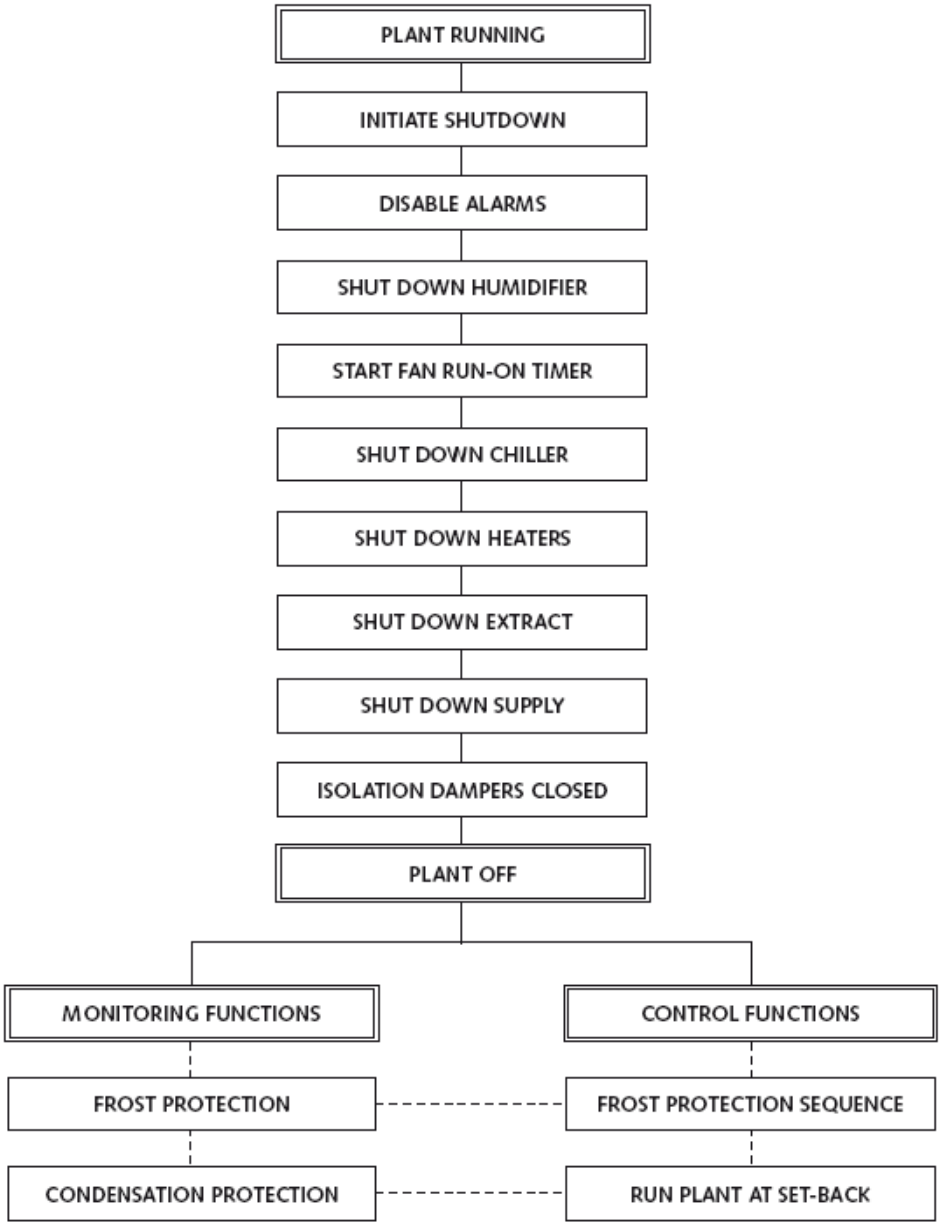


Figure 3: Plant control algorithm – normal shutdown sequence

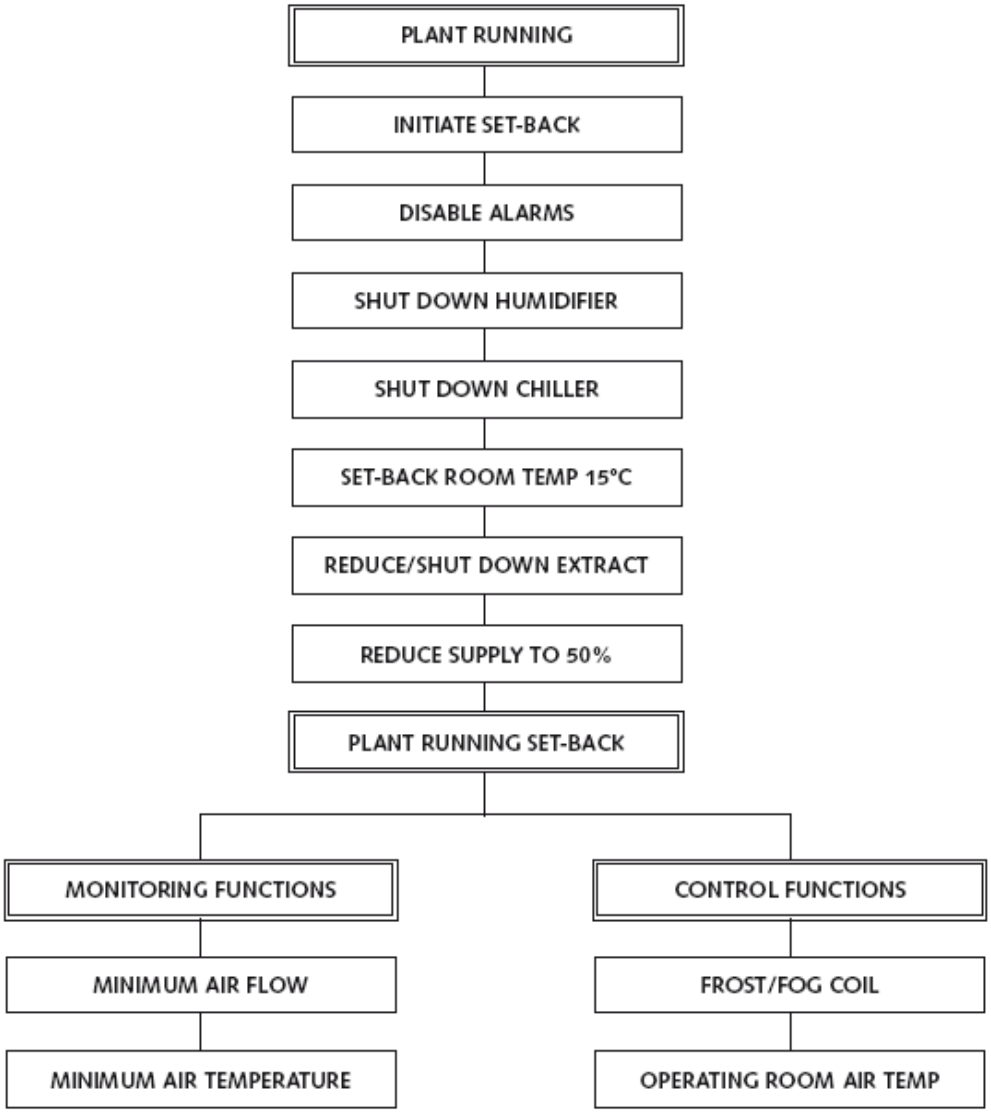


Figure 4: Plant control algorithm – set back sequence

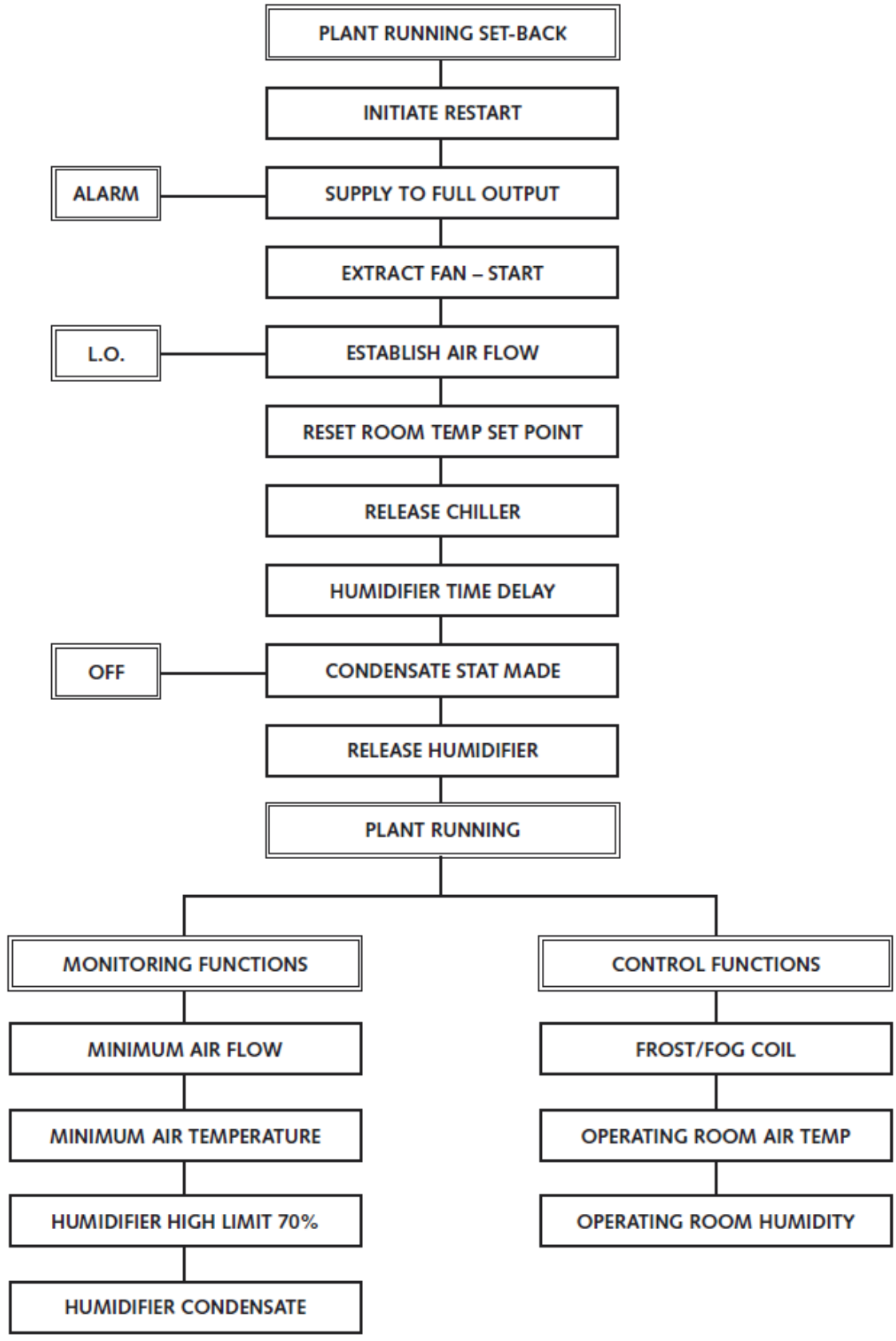


Figure 5: Plant control algorithm – restart from set-back

Set-back control

6.23 Where variable speed controls are installed, the setback facility for each plant should depress the control temperature to around 15°C; exclude any humidification and cooling from the system; and reduce the supply and extract air volumes to around 50%. The extract fan can also be turned off as long as the desired direction of air movement from clean to less clean will be maintained (See also Figures 2 - 5).

Use control

6.24 The installation of movement detectors allows for “use control” of ventilation systems. A simple control logic that reduces the system to a “set-back” condition if there has been no movement detected in the space for, say, 30 minutes and that switches the system “off” if no movement is detected for one hour is recommended for many applications, including operating suites.

6.25 A variation on this can be provided by linking ventilation controls to lighting. For example, in an operating theatre, the system may be off outside of working hours, could run at set-back when the general lighting was switched on and increase to full speed when the operating lamp is switched on. As with movement detection, a 30-minute run-on should be provided at each stage when the lights are turned off.

6.26 Either of the above control strategies may be refined by linking to the BEMS to provide a control logic related to normal working hours and associated ‘real-time’ movement within the zone being controlled. This should result in significant energy savings.

Environmental control

Temperature control methods and application

General

6.27 All control valves must fail safe, that is, close in the event of power or air-flow failure, with the exception of the fog/frost battery control valve, which should open upon power or airflow failure.

6.28 Control valves should be located in an accessible position. Isolation valves should be provided to enable the control valve to be removed for service without the need to drain-down the system.

6.29 Care should be taken to ensure that the installation of control valves and their associated pipework do not obstruct access to the AHU inspection doors and hatches.

Room temperature control

6.30 The limits for room temperature set point are generally between 16°C and 25°C depending on the particular application, and in some specialised instances (for

example, operating departments) are adjustable within a predetermined range by the user.

6.31 The selection of temperature set point for each room or zone may be by a control facility in the room / zone, or remotely at the control panel or BEMS. Where the control device is mounted within the room / zone and adjustable by the user, it should be marked either 'raise' and 'lower' or '+' and '-'. It should control within a specified temperature range to suit the user requirement with a control tolerance of ±1K. All other control set-points should be selectable either on the control panel or at the BEMS interface.

6.32 Where local control is provided, an indication of temperature will be required locally, or at a staff base (if appropriate), using an analogue or digital indicator. The indicator should be large enough to be read from the normal working position (for example, at the operating table in a theatre). This may be mounted in a supervisory or, 'surgeon's' control panel, with the signal repeated on the main system control panel or BEMS. It is important that this indicator displays the actual measured temperature and not the selected temperature.

6.33 Where the supply and extraction systems are designed for ventilation only and there is a wet heating system to provide background heating, care must be taken to avoid one system trying to heat the space while the other system is trying to cool the area.

Frost battery control

6.34 Steam-supplied frost batteries must be operated as on/off devices with their sensor mounted upstream of the battery. This will give 'open loop' control. A set point of +1°C is recommended.

6.35 Low pressure hot water (LPHW)-supplied frost batteries should be controlled using the proportional mode. Their sensor should be located downstream of the battery to give 'closed loop' control. A set point of between 2°C and 5°C is recommended.

6.36 If the temperature downstream of the frost battery, as sensed by a serpentine thermostat, falls below the required set point over any part of the coil, the plant must automatically shut down in order to prevent damage to the other batteries. The serpentine thermostat must not be in direct contact with the coil.

Off-plant control

6.37 The control logic must prevent the chiller and pre-heater being on at the same time.

Humidity control methods and application

6.38 In order to prevent excessive condensation when starting up from a total plant shut-down, a time delay should be incorporated into the control system such that the humidifier does not start until 30 minutes after the ventilation plant starts up.

6.39 Irrespective of the method of control, a high-limit humidistat should be installed to ensure that when the humidifier operates, the condition of the air in the duct does not exceed 70% saturated, particularly during plant start-up.

6.40 With certain types of steam humidifiers, it may be necessary to install a thermostat in the condensate line from the humidifier's steam supply, to ensure that the steam at the control valve is as dry as possible before it is injected into the air supply.

6.41 The humidifier and cooling-coil control must be interlocked so that they cannot be on at the same time.

6.42 The humidifier control system should ensure that it is switched off with the fan. It is preferable to design the control system so that the humidifier is isolated for an adequate time before the fan is turned off so as to purge humid air from the system.

6.43 All control valves must fail safe (that is, close in the event of power failure) and the humidifier must be interlocked with the low airflow switch.

Multi-zone control methods and application.

6.44 Close control of all air-conditioning parameters may be difficult to achieve with multi-zone systems, since each zone will in theory require a re-heater and humidifier to give total control of humidity if that is what is required. In reality such close control is rarely required in practice. It is therefore usual with multi-zone systems to provide control of zonal temperature only, with humidity control where fitted being based on average conditions within all zones, or minimum conditions within one zone.

6.45 Where there is a requirement for close control of air-conditioning parameters in a number of zones (e.g. an operating department) separate plants should be provided for each zone in order to avoid the need for expensive over-cooling and reheating of individual zones.

6.46 Most multi-zone systems within healthcare premises are controlled based on off-coil control within the central plant, with trimmer heater batteries on individual zones.

Alarms and indication

6.47 Supply and extract systems should include indicator lamps on the control panels to confirm the operational status of each system. Where the usage is on a regular daily pattern, time control with a user-operated timed manual over-ride should be provided.

6.48 Where a system is provided for a particular space, the indicator should be in, or immediately adjacent to, that space and local controls should be provided with labels clearly defining their function (eg. isolation suites.)

6.49 The 'plant failure' and 'low air-flow' alarms should be initiated by a paddle switch or other device located in the main air supply duct. This should operate when

the air quantity fails to reach or falls to around 80% of the design value and will give indication of fan failure, damper closed, access door left open, or any other eventuality that could cause a reduction of air quantity. Monitoring the current drawn by the fan motor is not a substitute for a sensing device that is directly affected by the air-flow.

6.50 The 'filter fault alarm' should be initiated by a predetermined increase of pressure differential across the filters, thereby indicating a dirty filter.

6.51 Direct-reading gauges or manometers should be installed across filters to give maintenance staff an indication of their condition.

6.52 Visual indication should be provided at a manned staff location (for example, the reception or staff base) and on the main control panel and BEMS to show 'plant failure' and 'low air flow'.

BEMS

6.53 Control of most systems will be via a Building Energy Management System (BEMS). This will enable the operating conditions and control tolerances to be set and monitored. The BEMS may also be set to log the actual energy consumed by the system and recovered by the energy recovery system. This will provide a useful check on the overall operating efficiency and provide evidence that energy targets are being achieved.

7. Specialised ventilation systems

7.1 This section contains design information for a range of healthcare ventilation applications.

7.2 The following departments will require a degree of specialised ventilation.

- the Operating department;
  - treatment rooms;
  - endoscopy, day case and minimum invasive suites;
  - cardiology and operative imaging suites;
  - conventional operating theatres;
  - Ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) operating theatres;
  - barn theatres;
  - recovery and ancillary areas.
- Obstetrics;
  - maternity theatres;
  - birthing rooms;
  - LDRP Rooms;
  - SCBU.
- critical areas and high-dependency units of any type;
- Isolation facilities;
  - infectious diseases units;
  - bone marrow and other transplant units;
  - chemotherapy and oncology units.
- Sterile Supply and Decontamination Units;
  - wash rooms;
  - inspection and packing rooms;
  - sterile pack stores.
- the Pharmacy departments;
  - aseptic suites;
  - extemporaneous preparation areas;
  - radio pharmacies.
- the Pathology department;
  - laboratories;
  - cat 3 and 4 rooms.

- the Mortuary and Post mortem suite;
  - mortuaries;
  - post-mortem rooms;
  - specimen stores.
- Hydrotherapy units;
- Burns units;
  - burns theatres;
  - treatment rooms;
  - isolation rooms;
  - tissue banks.
- Emerging specialties;
  - gene therapy units;
  - stem-cell laboratories.
- Infrastructure;
  - plant rooms housing combustion equipment;
  - welding facilities;
  - wood working workshops;
  - electric vehicle charging areas.

7.3 Design information for many of these applications is given in Appendix 1 Table A1, Appendix 2 and in the following Chapters within this section.

7.4 It is not possible within this existing document to give definitive guidance for every healthcare specific ventilation application. Additional detailed guidance may be issued in due course in the form of supplements.

General information

7.5 The section on operating theatres is the most extensive and contains much information that is common to other applications. Each theatre suite should have its own dedicated air-handling unit and extract fan. Where no specific guidance is given the principles set out below should be followed:

- the foregoing sections of the document contain general information on healthcare-specific aspects of ventilation system design and specification;
- a set of standard solutions for the design of general operating theatre suites to conform to past and new standards is given in new standard layouts Nos 1, 3, 5 and 7 and those for UCV theatres in new standard layouts Nos 2, 4, 6 and 8 within Appendix 3;
- the CIBSE Guides A & B contain basic information on ventilation design that can be applied to most applications;

- where a British or European standard exists that is specific to the application (for example, a clean room) it should be used as the basis of the design requirement;
- air should always move from clean to less-clean areas. A hierarchy of room cleanliness is given in Table A2;
- differential pressure will prevent contamination between areas when doors are closed. Information on air leakage through closed doors and hatches for a range of differential pressures is given in Table A3;
- the flow of air will prevent contamination between areas when doors are open. Information on air leakage through open doors and hatches for a range of differential pressures is given in Table A4;
- if anaesthetic gases are used, 15 air changes per hour will be required;
- a methodology for calculating a design solution for a non-standard suite of operating rooms is given in Appendix 4. This may be adapted as necessary to suit other less complex applications where air is required to cascade from clean to less clean areas.

7.6 The supply of air to a room has four main functions:

- to dilute airborne contamination;
- to control air movement within such that the transfer of airborne contaminants from less clean to cleaner areas is minimized;
- to control the temperature and if necessary the humidity of the space;
- to assist the removal of and dilute waste gases where used.

7.7 Because of the complexities of controlling air-movement patterns, much design effort will be required for this aspect. It is important that the design makes the best possible use of the air available, as excessive supply airflows for the control of air movement should not be used. The amount of air supplied will be determined by the number of doors and desired air-change rate.

7.8 There are four routes whereby airborne contaminants may appear in a room:-

- through the supply air;
- shed directly by the room occupants;
- arising as a result of the work activities;
- transferred from adjacent spaces.

7.9 Particles entering with the supply air can be controlled by the selection of suitable filter grades.

7.10 Particles shed directly by the room occupants can be controlled by:

- restricting access to essential persons only;
- the choice of the occupants' clothing;

- the room's air-change rate.

7.11 Particles arising as a result of the work activity can be controlled by:

- enclosing, semi-enclosing or otherwise controlling the work-based source;
- the room air-change rate.

7.12 The transfer of particles from adjacent spaces can be controlled by:

- differential pressure;
- air-flow paths.

7.13 Air change rates are given in Table A1. These figures have been found to give sufficient dilution of airborne contaminants, provided the mixing of room air is reasonably uniform.

7.14 A downward-displacement turbulent air distribution is generally preferred. The supply and extract diffusers should be positioned to ensure that all parts of the room are actively ventilated and that where necessary the staff will be in a clean air-flow path. (See Section 5 for additional guidance on supply terminals).

7.15 Horizontal-flow room-air distribution with or without a Coanda effect can be a source of draughts and difficult to set up correctly. Its use should be confined to non-critical areas.

Air movement control

7.16 The design of the system should seek to minimise the movement of contaminated air from less clean to cleaner areas. Transfer grilles enable air to pass in either direction between rooms of equal class and pressure. Pressure stabilisers operate in one direction only; they allow excess air to be directed to the area desired and assist in maintaining room pressure differentials. When closed they prevent significant reverse air-flow.

7.17 The relative locations of supply and extract terminals and their design air-volume rates will determine the basic airflow between adjacent spaces. Transfer grilles and pressure stabilisers will permit and control the flow of air between spaces ensuring a flow from the clean to less clean areas. Failure to provide such devices will lead to uncontrolled air flows when personnel move between rooms. They may also result in doors being held partially open by air pressure

Temperature and humidity control

7.18 To achieve the required room conditions, supply flow rates are calculated conventionally, taking account of all heat and moisture gains and losses, and of maximum permissible temperature differences between the room and supply air. In most applications the base heating load will be provided by a heating system. In critical systems the room or suite being considered will be within the heated building envelope so the ventilation will be sized to suit the casual gains or losses.

7.19 Temperature differences of up to 10K for winter heating and 7K for summer cooling must not be exceeded.

7.20 It is acceptable for the humidity to swing uncontrolled between 35% and 70% saturation.

Removal and dilution of waste anaesthetic gases

7.21 Anaesthetic gases are subject to occupational exposure limits. Waste anaesthetic gas must be contained and removed by a suitable gas-scavenging system. Some leakage from the anaesthetic equipment and the patient's breathing circuit will occur with all systems, particularly during connection and disconnection; and from the interface with the patient. The air movement scheme should ensure that this leakage is diluted and removed from the room. Anaesthetic agents are heavier than air so placing the supply terminal at high level with an extract at low level, adjacent to the anaesthetic gas terminal units will ensure that staff are in a clean air-flow path.

7.22 In LDRP and delivery rooms the use of anaesthetic gas is controlled on demand by the patient. This may result in significant leakage which, in order to reduce staff exposure, will need to be controlled by establishing a clean airflow path. A supply at high level at the foot-end of the bed with extract at low level at the head-end will provide such a path.

Fire aspects

7.23 When considering the overall airflow movement, careful thought needs to be given to the operation of the ventilation system, to limit smoke spread in the event of a fire.

Door protection

7.24 Air should flow from the cleaner to the less clean areas as shown in Table A2. There are several factors that affect the likelihood of a reverse air- flow through doorways:

- when a person passes through a doorway, both the passage of the person and the movement of the door flap cause a transfer of air between the areas separated by the door;
- when a door is left open there is a transfer of air between the two areas separated by the doorway. This is caused by air turbulence, but is greatly increased by any temperature differential between the areas (a 1.4m wide doorway may allow the transfer of 0.19 m^3/s of air in each direction when there is no temperature difference, but when the temperature differential increases to say 2K, the volume transferred may increase to 0.24 m^3/s).

7.25 Two methods of door protection are used in order to reduce the likelihood of contamination of clean area by a reverse air-flow from a less clean area:

- closed door protection – a pressure differential is created across a closed door so that any air leakage is from the clean to the less clean area.

Table A3 gives details of closed door leakage rates for a range of differential pressures;

- open door protection – the pressure differential drops (See Table A5) and is effectively replaced by a flow of air through the doorway from the clean to the less clean area. The flow of air needs to be sufficiently large to ensure that significant reverse airflow cannot occur and will be related to the relative cleanliness of the areas being considered. Table A4 gives air-flow rates for open door protection related to door / opening size and classification of the adjoining areas.

7.26 Pressure stabilisers enable the room differential pressure to be set when the doors are shut, thus providing closed-door protection. When a door is opened the stabilisers will close, forcing air to be directed through the doorway thus providing open-door protection.

7.27 The recommended air-flow rates to achieve this are given in Table A3. Provided that the dilution criteria in Table A1 are met, the occasional small back-flows created (when two doors are opened simultaneously; or when there is a high temperature difference across an open door) will have little effect on the overall air cleanliness of the affected room.

7.28 In applications where it is critical to maintain a specific airflow and /or pressure regime (for example isolation rooms) all windows in the zone should be locked shut or sealed. Trickle vents, if fitted, will also need to be sealed.

Systems design

7.29 The design of the ventilation system for an area depends on the overall configuration of the department. Where the department is served by more than one AHU, the control of the units may need to be interlocked so that reverse air-flow patterns do not occur.

7.30 Dual-duct high velocity systems have advantages, but are noisy, costly and may give rise to unacceptable values of humidity. Single-duct, low velocity/pressure systems are preferred.

7.31 Extract grilles should be sited and balanced to promote air movement in the desired direction.

7.0 (a) Operating department ventilation systems

7.32 The information given in this section relates to general operating suites. It will be applicable to other types of theatre suite such as maternity, burns, cardiac, etc. The standard values given may need to be adjusted to reflect non-standard room sizes, pressure regimes and air change rates.

7.33 A method of obtaining a design solution for non-standard theatres is given in Appendix 4.

7.34 Additional information for Ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) theatres is given in Section 7.0 (b).

General

7.35 The supply of air to an operating room has four main functions:

- to dilute airborne contamination;
- to control air movement within the suite such that the transfer of airborne contaminants from less clean to cleaner areas is minimized;
- to control the temperature and if necessary the humidity of the space;
- to assist the removal of, and dilute, waste anaesthetic gases.

7.36 Because of the complexities of controlling air-movement patterns, much design effort will be required for this aspect. It is important that the design makes the best possible use of the air available, as excessive supply airflows for the control of air movement should not be used. The amount of air supplied to the operating room will be determined by the number of doors and desired air-change rate.

7.37 The detailed considerations upon which the supply air-flow rate is based are as follows.

Dilution of airborne bacterial contaminants

7.38 There are four routes that airborne contaminants may appear in an operating room:

- through the supply air;
- shed by operating staff;
- produced by the surgical activities;
- transferred from adjacent spaces.

7.39 Supply flow rates for the main rooms of the operating suite are given in Appendix 3. For the other areas where room sizes and activities vary from site to site, air-change rates are given in Table A1. These figures have been found to give sufficient dilution of airborne bacterial contaminants, provided the mixing of room air is reasonably uniform.

7.40 A downward-displacement air distribution is preferred; it may be either turbulent or laminar flow. For turbulent flow the supply-air diffusers should be positioned either in the centre of each quadrant of the ceiling or along a line between the centres of each quadrant. This should ensure that all parts of the room are actively ventilated and that there will be adequate air movement at the operating table. Laminar flow would be provided by a perforated plenum terminal centred above the operating table. (See Section 5 for additional guidance on supply terminals).

7.41 Suspended articulated equipment is usually fitted in theatres. These require significant structural steelwork in the ceiling void to cater for the loads imposed by the resulting bending moments. It is important to ensure that the void is

deep enough to accommodate both the steelwork and the ventilation ducts. The location of the steelwork must not prevent a suitable layout of the ventilation ductwork and correct positioning of the supply air terminals. It needs to be recognised that the correct ventilation of an operating theatre plays a significant part in controlling healthcare acquired infections and is not subordinate to the desire to make equipment easy to move.

7.42 Horizontal flow distribution with or without a Coanda effect can be difficult to set up correctly and are unlikely to be as effective in Theatre applications. It should not be used in new installations. However space constraints may force its retention or replacement when refurbishing existing installations. Where fitted, the supply grilles will require a means of directional adjustment.

7.43 For general operating theatres, the air supply would be filtered in the AHU. Terminal HEPA filters are not generally required.

Control of air movement within the suite

7.44 The design of the system should seek to minimise the movement of contaminated air from less clean to cleaner areas. Transfer grilles enable air to pass in either direction between rooms of equal class and pressure. In older designs suitably dimensioned door undercuts were often used in lieu of transfer grilles. Pressure stabilisers operate in one direction only; they allow excess air to be directed to the area desired and assist in maintaining room-pressure differentials.

7.45 The relative locations of supply and extract terminals and their design air-volume rates will determine the basic air-flow between adjacent spaces. Transfer grilles and pressure stabilisers will permit and control the flow of air between spaces ensuring a flow from the clean to less-clean areas of the suite. Failure to provide such devices will lead to uncontrolled airflows when personnel move between rooms and doors being held partially open by air pressure.

Temperature and humidity control

7.46 Supply flow rates to achieve the required room conditions, are calculated conventionally, taking account of all heat and moisture gains and losses, and of maximum permissible temperature differences between the room and supply air. In most applications the room being considered will be within the heated building envelope.

7.47 Temperature differences of up to 10K for winter heating and 7K for summer cooling must not be exceeded.

7.48 It is acceptable for the humidity to swing uncontrolled between 35% and 60% saturation.

Removal and dilution of waste anaesthetic gases

7.49 Anaesthetic gases are subject to occupational exposure limits. The air-movement scheme should ensure that staff are in a clean air-flow path. (See Paragraph 7.21).

7.50 Air extracted from operating suites should not be re-circulated, as it may contain malodorous contaminants. However an energy recovery system should be fitted in the extract in order to reduce the plant energy consumption. (See Paragraphs 4.142 - 4.147).

Fire aspects

7.51 When considering the overall air-flow movement, careful thought needs to be given to the operation of the ventilation system, to limit smoke spread in the event of a fire. However, this is a highly staffed department with a low fire risk/load status and these factors need to be recognised when developing the fire strategy. It is considered satisfactory to treat the complete operating department as a single fire compartment providing there are at least two exits from it. Over-compartmentalisation can lead to difficulties in establishing clean air-flow paths and room-air dilution rates. This will lead to an increased risk of healthcare-associated infections. Staff areas within the department should be treated as a sub-compartment. (See Paragraph 6.18).

Door protection

7.52 Air should flow from the cleaner to the less clean areas as shown in Table A2. The factors that affect the likelihood of a reverse airflow through doorways are discussed in Paragraphs 7.24 - 7.26.

7.53 It is not possible to design an air-movement scheme, within the restraints of the amount of air available that will protect the operating room when two doors are simultaneously opened. The design process that has been used considers that each door is opened in turn and ensures that the direction and rate of air-flow through any open doorway is sufficient to prevent any serious back-flow of air to a cleaner area.

7.54 Provided that the air-change rates in Table A1 are met, dilution will be sufficient to ensure that the occasional small back-flows created (when two doors are opened simultaneously; or when there is a high temperature difference across an open door) will have little effect on the overall air cleanliness of the affected room.

7.55 The following general points should be taken into consideration during the design of operating suites:

- Number of exits – the fewer the number of rooms (and therefore doorways) leading from the operating room the better, as traffic is reduced and less complicated air-movement control schemes are required.
- Scrub and hand-wash facilities – these may be a part of the operating room, often in a bay. The bay would count as part of the operating room volume

and should have a low-level active or passive extract to remove the moisture-laden air. Should a separate room be required for the scrub area, a door between the scrub-up room and the operating room is an inconvenience to scrubbed staff, and could be replaced by an opening. This opening should be larger than a normal single doorway, but the scrub would not, in these circumstances, be considered part of the operating room volume.

- If an alcohol scrub regime is employed, individual theatre scrubs may not be required and would be replaced by a common departmental pre-/post-operation scrub position in the corridor. This would require local extract to prevent a build-up of moisture.
- Preparation 'Sterile Pack Store' (SPS) – if it is intended to 'lay-up' instruments in the operating room, the preparation room is then used simply as a sterile pack store. The nominal room pressure can therefore be the same as that of the operating room and the airflow between the two rooms in either direction. Air supplied to the preparation room may be directed into the operating room either through a door mounted transfer grille or if no door is fitted, through the opening. Alternatively, stock ready-use sterile items can be located in a bay within the theatre. In this case, a portion of the total theatre supply air should be provided in the bay to ensure it is actively ventilated.
- Preparation room 'lay-up' – when the preparation room is used as an instrument 'lay-up' room, it should be regarded as being of greater cleanliness than the operating room, and the design should minimise the transfer of air from the operating room to the preparation room. Air supplied to the room may be directed to the operating room through a pressure stabiliser taking care not to compromise the airflow pattern in the operating room. The air may also be directed into a corridor;
- Service corridor – if materials to be disposed of are placed in impervious material for transportation, it is not necessary to have a separate corridor for this purpose. However, a service corridor has many operational advantages it terms of the flow of materials through the theatre suite. It also permits routine service and maintenance access without compromising the use of adjacent theatre suites.

Standard air-movement control schemes

7.56 In the previous versions of this guidance standard air movement control schemes were given that provided a range of design solutions to typical operating suite layouts. These were satisfactory design solutions for 'standard' sized rooms within the suite but were never intended to be universal for any sized room or suite. Guidance on operating suites contained in HBN 26 (2004) has increased the recommended size of operating room from approximately 35m^2 to 55m^2. Associated room sizes and air change rates have also increased. This means that the original standard solutions are no longer appropriate for new-build installations.

7.57 Because of the resulting increase in the volume of air supplied to the theatre, provision needs to be made either to actively remove it or allow it to escape

passively through pressure stabilisers. The increase in room size has also made the number and position of air-supply terminals critical to the effective ventilation of the room.

7.58 Four new standard solutions have been developed to reflect the current guidance on theatre suite layout and room sizes given in HBN 26 (2004) as well as the general increase in air-change rates.

7.59 The most commonly used original standard solutions have been revised and updated. They have been retained in this guidance, as they will remain applicable to older theatre suites that are being refurbished to their original performance standards. They will also be applicable in existing departments where space constrains do not permit the upgrading of suites to the latest standard of performance or where a pre-built "shell" is being fitted out.

7.60 It is important to recognise that in any situation where a "non-standard" room size or theatre suite layout is being considered, the designer must return to first principles when developing a solution. Examples of non-standard configurations would be:

- cardiac theatres that typically have an operating room half as big again as normal, a perfusion laboratory and no anaesthetic room;
- operating departments served by a central instrument lay-up preparation area rather than individual prep rooms;
- balanced-flow theatres for infectious cases.

Appendix 4 contains a methodology for assisting the designer to arrive at a suitable solution.

7.61 The new and revised standard design solutions are as follows:

No 1 – Typical Conventional theatre – room sizes as HBN 26;

No 2 – Typical UCV theatre – room sizes as HBN 26;

No 3 – HBN 26 illustrated Conventional theatre;

No 4 – HBN 26 illustrated theatre with UCV terminal fitted;

No 5 – Pre-2006 Conventional theatre, single corridor (former SHTM 2025; 1b);

No 6 – Pre-2006 UCV theatre, single corridor (former SHTM 2025; 1a);

No 7 – Pre-2006 Conventional theatre, two corridor (former SHTM 2025; 5b);

No 8 – Pre-2006 UCV theatre, two corridor (former SHTM 2025; 5a).

7.62 Details of these standard solutions are given in Appendix 3. They contain diagrams that show the relationship of rooms and the various doors and transfer devices between them, **but should not be regarded as architectural layouts.**

The schemes have been developed using the calculation procedure described in Appendix 4. Important features of the solutions are:

- Zone trimmer heaters – a trimmer heater battery is advocated when calculations indicate that the temperature differential between rooms may be greater than 2K. Generally this will only be the case in the preparation room when designated as a lay-up.
- The preparation room (sterile pack store)/operating room interface – these rooms are deemed to be of equal cleanliness, and thus a transfer grille is required between these rooms or the door can be replaced with an opening wider than a standard door.
- Preparation (lay-up)/disposal room interface – pressure relief dampers are recommended here to provide an air path when doors are closed, while preventing back-flow when a door is opened elsewhere.
- Operating room/anaesthetic room interface – pressure stabilisers, or in some cases, carefully sized transfer grilles are recommended here, and between the anaesthetic room and corridor, and between the operating room and corridor.
- Operating room/scrub room interface – an opening is provided between these rooms. The flow of air through the opening provides protection, and gives bacterial dilution within the scrub room; the air is then exhausted to the corridor via a pressure stabiliser.

7.63 No mechanical supply or extract ventilation is provided in the scrub room, and thus when a door is opened elsewhere in the suite, the stabiliser will close, allowing the air to be re-directed to help protect the doorway. If the scrub is a bay within the theatre then a suitably positioned pressure stabiliser and / or active extract should be provided to ensure air movement and prevent a local build-up of moisture.

7.64 Any other scheme may be used and the standard solutions applied, if the following conditions are met:

- room relationships in air network terms are as shown in the plans;
- door-gap measurements approximate to those given in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 58: ‘Internal doorsets’, (but see also Table A3 and Note 3);
- casual heat gains are accounted for;
- a trimmer battery is installed in the air supply system to the preparation room;
- leakage through the structure is kept to a minimum.

Note 3: It should be noted that many doors are now fitted with cold smoke seals as standard. These will significantly reduce the door leakage rate when new and undamaged. It is therefore recommended that provision for the design door leakage is factored into the sizing of the appropriate transfer grille or pressure stabiliser. Failure to do this will result in air gap whistles and doors being held partially open by air pressure.

7.65 It is recommended that every effort should be made to adopt one of the schemes described above.

Air terminals and air distribution within rooms

7.66 The selection and sighting of air diffusers will be critical in establishing an efficient pattern of mixing. To this end the diffusers selected must be fit for purpose. Ceiling mounted circular 'air master' style, square 'four-way blow' or similar diffuser designs that provide a downward displacement, turbulent airflow are the preferred option. (See Paragraph 5.68).

7.67 Plenum-type 'laminar'-flow-style diffusers with a footprint that encompasses the operating site are acceptable but may be prone to buoyancy effects as a result of temperature difference. Manufacturers' type-test data should be consulted to ensure that the terminal will achieve the required performance envelope. Note that these are not true laminar-flow systems in the strict sense of the word but produce a downward-displacement parallel-flow style of air distribution.

7.68 The diffuser equipment chosen should not cause 'dumping' and it should provide a velocity 1 metre above floor level at the operating position of between 0.2 m/s and 0.3 m/s.

7.69 In the operating room, the supply air terminals must be at high level, and should all be adjustable for rate of flow as well as being easily cleaned and silent in operation.

7.70 In order to ensure that all parts of the operating room are actively ventilated, there should be an air-out path on each face or in each corner of the theatre. This may be provided by a pressure stabiliser, transfer grille, active or passive extract terminal. A minimum of three, but preferably four, air-out paths - approximately equally spaced - should be provided.

Automatic control

7.71 The automatic control of ventilation in operating suites needs to be simple and robust. Over-reliance on complex room pressure and flow relationships linked to automatic fan speed control is unnecessary and in the long term have been shown to be unreliable. Complex software algorithms that can only be accessed and interpreted by off-site specialists should not be used. Whichever control strategy is chosen it is important that on-site staff have the facility to override the control system and keep the ventilation operating at least until the surgical procedure is complete. (See also Paragraph 6.11)

7.72 Theatre air-conditioning control sensors should be actively ventilated. They would typically be located in a sampling extract duct mounted in the surgeon's

panel, positioned at normal working height (1.8m above finished floor level) and be accessible for cleaning and the removal of fluff and lint.

7.73 Wall-mounted passive-temperature and humidity sensors are not recommended.

7.74 Controls should be provided to enable operating department ventilation plants to be closed down when the operating suites are unoccupied. (See also Paragraphs 6.24 - 6.26)

7.75 When in the 'off' mode, the control system should ensure that the ventilation plant is automatically reinstated if the space temperature falls below 15°C.

7.76 The theatre control panel should include plant status indication; clearly-readable temperature and humidity indicating gauges; and means of adjusting the set point for temperature. Theatre ventilation plant status indication should be located at the staff control base.

7.77 Where it is considered necessary to fit a humidifier, it should be selected to humidify to 40% saturation at 20°C during the design winter outside conditions. The cooling coil should be able to remove sufficient moisture so that 60% saturation at 20°C is not exceeded during the design summer outside conditions.

7.78 Each operating suite should be served by an independent supply and extract plant.

Ventilation of operating department ancillary areas

General

7.79 There are advantages in providing mechanical ventilation to all areas of the department. Maintaining operating suite airflow patterns is simpler and grilles and diffusers can be sited to eliminate condensation on windows. Where radiators or embedded wall or ceiling panels are installed they should be confined to the corridors and staff-only areas of the department.

Ventilation requirements

7.80 Table A2 gives guidance on the operating department areas in descending order of cleanliness, and this should be considered in the overall design of the department ventilation systems. The specified flow rates of air through doors given in Table A4 for the operating suite are not necessary for other areas of the department. However, the air-flow directions must be maintained from the clean to the less clean areas.

7.81 All windows in the department should be double-glazed and hermetically-sealed in order to ensure that the desired airflow pattern is maintained under all external environmental conditions and to avoid infestation. Trickle vents if fitted will need to be sealed.

Systems design

7.82 The design of the ventilation system for the ancillary rooms depends on the overall configuration of the department. The plant for the ancillary rooms may need to be interlocked to the theatre suite plants so that reverse air-flow patterns do not occur.

7.83 Extract grilles should be sited and balanced to promote air movement along the clean and access corridors towards the reception/transfer areas. This should not affect the air distribution in the operating suite(s).

Reception

7.84 The aim in these areas is to provide comfortable conditions having regard to the movement control requirements of the department as a whole. The number of air changes will depend on the particular design.

Sterile pack bulk store

7.85 The store needs to be maintained at a positive pressure in order to preserve the cleanliness of the outside of the packs; 6 air changes are recommended.

Recovery

7.86 The air-change rate in the recovery room will be rather higher than that needed merely to provide clean, comfortable conditions, as it is necessary to control the level of anaesthetic gas pollution; 15 air changes are recommended, with a balanced air flow.

7.87 The supply air terminals should be ceiling mounted above the foot-end of the recovery bed positions. Extract should be at low (bed height or below) level behind the bed head positions or in the corners. This will establish a clean airflow path so that staff do not inhale anaesthetic gases exhaled by recovering patients.

7.0 (b) Ultra-clean ventilation systems

General requirements

7.88 The design philosophy of a conventionally ventilated operating suite is based on the need to dilute contaminants and control both the condition and movement of air in an operating suite. Ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) is a means of significantly increasing the dilution effect by providing a large volume of clean filtered air to the zone in which an operation is performed and sterile items are exposed. Air is discharged above the operating zone and while not truly laminar, its downward displacement purges the clean zone of contaminants and particles generated by the activities within it. The airflow in and around the clean zone also serves to prevent particles originating outside the zone from entering it. The resulting reduction in contaminants has been shown to reduce significantly post-operative sepsis following certain orthopaedic procedures.

7.89 The number of bacteria that are present in the air at the wound site and exposed surgical items is dependent on the operating team, their procedural discipline, choice of clothing and the type of UCV system. Ultra-Clean air is defined as that containing not more than 10 CFU/m^3.

7.90 UCV systems are very successful in reducing contaminants at the wound site so it is often considered that there is no need for complex air movement control schemes in the rest of the suite. However, when designing the ventilation scheme, it should be noted that the users may switch the UCV terminal to "set-back" when non-orthopaedic surgery is taking place. This is because the high airflow rates can cause increased moisture evaporation of exposed tissue that may be detrimental to the surgical outcome. In recognition of this, the ventilation scheme should be capable of providing operating conditions to at least a "conventional" theatre standard throughout the suite with the UCV in set-back mode. It should also be remembered that suitable levels of ventilation will always be required in the peripheral rooms.

7.91 UCV systems can be designed and built from first principles or a range of bespoke modular units of varying shapes and sizes are available with each manufacturer having a slightly different approach to UCV design. Some systems are fitted with partial or full walls to delineate the clean zone and direct a laminar or exponential downflow of air within it. Other designs utilise slotted linear supply terminals to produce an air curtain around the clean zone together with laminar-flow diffusers to provide a downward-displacement supply within it. **Notwithstanding any variation in the design philosophy, all UCV systems will be required to achieve completely the performance standard set out in the "Validation" section of this document**. (Section 8)

7.92 As with conventional theatres, each UCV operating suite should have its own dedicated air handling unit (AHU) to the standard set out in Section 4 of this document. To ensure operational flexibility and permit routine maintenance, air handling units should not be shared between suites.

7.93 In retrofit installations, site conditions may preclude individual AHUs for each suite. In these circumstances an AHU may be shared between not more than two operating suites providing each suite has its own control of temperature. An accessible airflow measurement test point should be provided in the supply branch duct to each theatre so that the primary air volume to each UCV canopy can be determined. In addition the branch supply and extract should be capable of being physically isolated and the main air-flow rate reduced so that either suite can be taken out of use without detriment to operating conditions in the other.

7.94 An inherent feature of a UCV system is its large airflow so it is essential to re-circulate the air supplied to the operating theatre and/or to recover its energy in order to optimise operating costs.

7.95 The primary fresh-air volume supplied to a UCV suite will be the same as in a conventional suite and it should be dispersed to the rooms in the suite in the same manner. This is an important aspect of the design and requests by UCV suppliers for increased primary air-supply volumes should be resisted.

7.96 Laying-up in the clean zone is preferable for infection control reasons. Where a Sterile Pack Store (SPS) Preparation room is provided a transfer grille will be required in the preparation room / theatre door.

7.97 If the Preparation room is intended to be used for laying-up instruments, a pressure stabiliser will be required between the prep room and theatre. It should be fitted with a stand-off baffle to prevent air transfer interfering with the ultra-clean airflow distribution.

7.98 Separate scrub-up or disposal facilities are not necessary for air cleanliness although operational policy may prefer such a provision. A separate anaesthetic room should, however, be provided.

7.99 There is no aerobiological reason why two or more UCV systems should not be installed in a common area as long as adequate spacing is provided. These are known as “barn theatres” and require special design considerations and operational discipline. The relative positions of the UCV units, temperature control range and location of doors and openings to other areas will all significantly affect the airflow at the operating positions.

Types of UCV system

Remote plant systems

7.100 In a remote plant system, all the air-conditioning equipment is located outside of the operating room, except for the unidirectional air-flow terminal, terminal filter, air diffuser and the return-air grilles (see Figure 6).

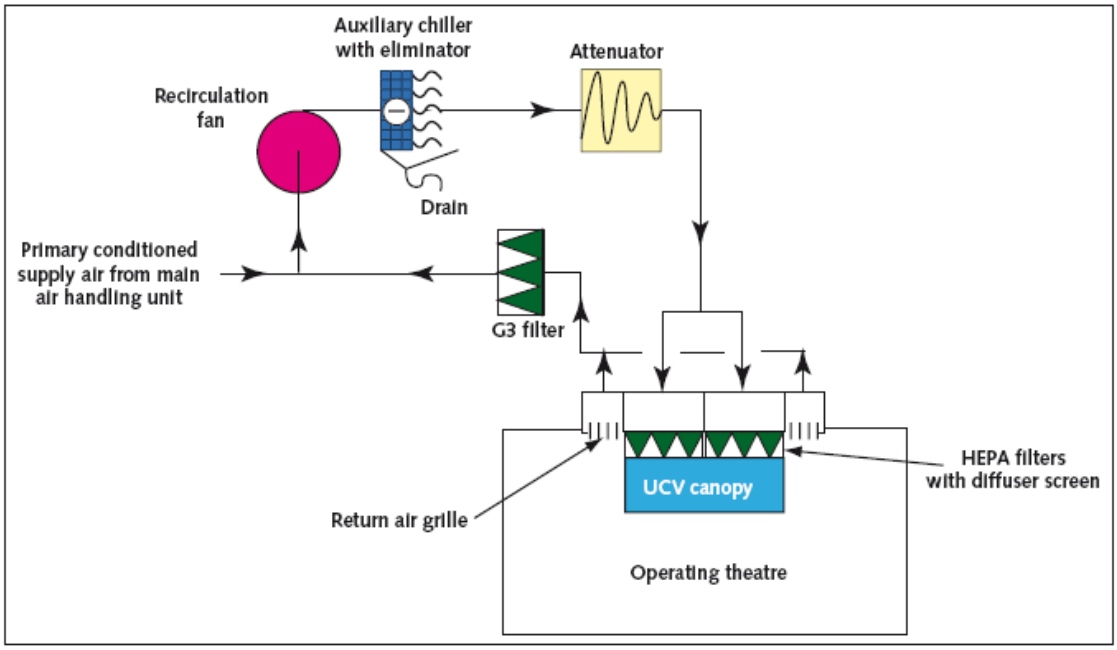


Figure 6: UCV theatre with remote air recirculation

7.101 This arrangement is the preferred option for new installations as it has the following advantages:

- the recirculation fans are out of the theatre thus reducing noise. Multiple recirculation fans can be replaced by a single fan unit with its drive out of the air stream;
- casual heat gains from recirculation fan(s), canopy lights, equipment and people within the theatre can be removed by a chiller battery in the return air stream. This will prevent heat build-up in the theatre;
- the return-air filters can be changed without needing access to the theatre making routine maintenance more feasible;
- the opportunity exists to locate the HEPA filter in the primary supply duct rather than the theatre terminal. This will reduce the number of filters required and allow them to be changed without entering the theatre.

Modular systems

7.102 Modular systems are frequently used in retrofit applications. Vertical or horizontal units are available.

7.103 Vertical-flow modular units comprise a ceiling-mounted air-terminal module containing return-air filters, return-air fans, final filter and air diffuser. Primary air is supplied by a remote air-conditioning unit at the volume and to the standard required for a conventional operating suite. (see Figure 7)

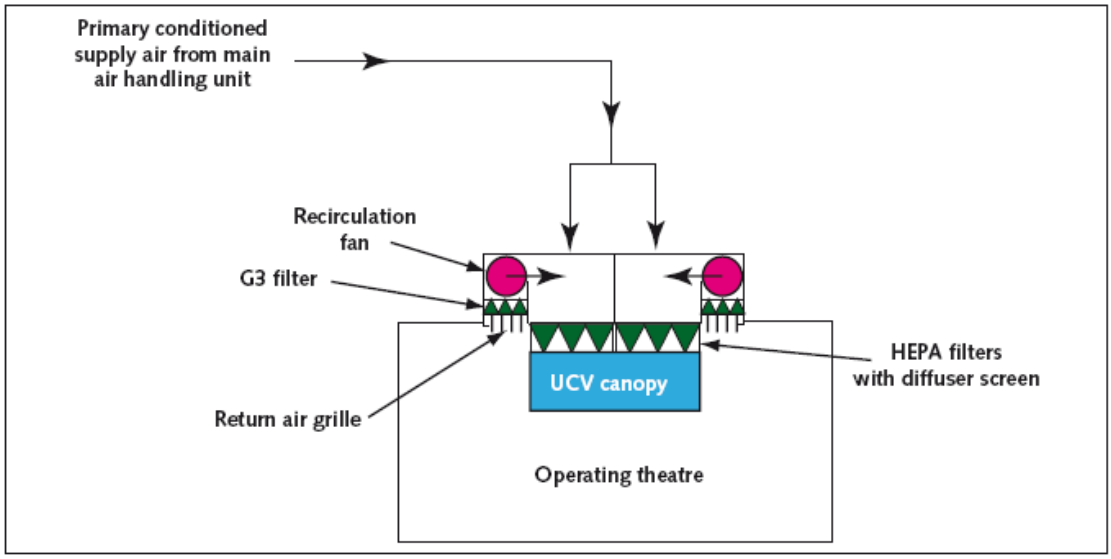


Figure 7: UCV theatre with modular system

7.104 Horizontal or cross-flow modular units comprise a wall-mounted air-terminal module standing vertically to produce a horizontal flow of air and containing final filter/diffuser, return-air filters and fans. The module may incorporate a cooling unit or be supplied with 'fresh air' from a separate primary cooling system.

Vertical flow UCV systems

7.105 Vertical-flow systems have a superior performance and are more effective at reducing infection risks. Air-curtain or partial-wall systems are acceptable, but are known to be more susceptible to problems arising from performance

deterioration, poor operating-team discipline and high occupancy rates than is the case with full-wall systems. A full-wall is considered to be any wall terminating not more than one metre above the finished floor level.

7.106 Because of the large volume of air being moved in a relatively small space, the siting of the return-air grilles can cause short-circuiting of the air discharged through the UCV terminal. If the return-air grilles are positioned at high level, partial walls should be provided to control short-circuiting. The partial-walls shall be not less than 1m from the operating room walls and terminate at least 2m above floor level. The clearance should be increased proportionally for larger terminals (that is, 1.15m for 3.2m x 3.2m units and 1.25m for 3.5m x 3.5m units). In all cases, the sidewalls should terminate at 2m above floor level.

7.107 Siting the return-air grilles around the periphery of the theatre at low level will eliminate short-circuiting, remove the need for partial walls and give an improved airflow path. In any event there should be an air-out path on each face or in each corner of the theatre. These may be provided by combination of pressure stabilisers and passive or active low level extract grilles. Failure to provide air-out paths on all faces of the theatre may result in the surplus air causing entrainment into the clean zone.

7.108 Vertical systems should have a clean zone large enough to encompass the operating site and all of the instrument trays likely to be needed for the surgical procedures to be undertaken. Ophthalmic and minor hand surgery would typically require a 1·4m circular or rectangular terminal. For major orthopaedic procedures a minimum size of 2·8m x 2·8m will be required. This is the area projected on the floor under the supply air terminal within the partial walls, full walls or air curtain. Any air outside this zone cannot be guaranteed to be ultra-clean although given the dilution factor the level of microbiological contamination will be much lower than the general level in a conventional operating room. The use of lines or a coloured area on the floor delineating the extent of the clean zone will assist staff and is therefore essential.

7.109 When upgrading an existing conventional theatre to an ultra-clean standard the only solution may be the installation of a modular system. In these units, the heat gains from the return-air fans and terminal lights may warrant the inclusion of supplementary cooling within the module although modern luminaries contribute substantially less unwanted heat. However issues of cooling coil drainage, condensate removal and maintenance access within the space constraints of the module may make this option impracticable. The additional cooling load should then be catered for by conditioning the primary air to compensate.

7.110 If an existing AHU is to be retained, it may require modification to ensure that it achieves the minimum standards set out in Section 4 of this document. The fan may need re-rating to accommodate the change in system resistance. The cooling coil may also need to be upgraded to cater for the increased load resulting from the return air fans and terminal lights. Failure to make adequate provision for this may make the theatre unusable during prolonged warm spells.

7.111 A factor affecting the air-flow pattern is the supply or room air temperature difference. When the supply-air temperature is significantly above room temperature, buoyancy effects will reduce the volume of air reaching the operating zone. If it is anticipated at design stage that this will be a regular occurrence, then a system incorporating full-walls should be used. Demountable extensions that convert a partial-wall to a full-wall unit are available.

7.112 Convection up-currents from the surgical team and operating lamp tend to counter the movement of clean air towards the operating site, hence the air velocity reaching the operating level is critical. The minimum velocity given below has been selected to take account of these factors and is greater than the theoretical minimum value.

7.113 For all vertical UCV systems the design discharge velocities will be as follows:

Air velocity 2 metres above floor level:

- partial-wall system = 0.38 m/s average;
- full-wall system = 0.30 m/s average.

Air velocity 1 metre above floor level:

- all systems = 0·2 m/s minimum within the operating zone.

The validation Paragraphs 8.75 – 8.86, gives details of the method of measurement.

7.114 Variable-speed recirculation fans with differential pressure control may be the most suitable solution for maintaining consistent performance and energy saving.

Horizontal UCV systems

7.115 Horizontal UCV air-flow systems have been shown to be less effective than vertical systems and are not the preferred solution. There may be occasions, however, where architectural, engineering, economic or workload considerations prevent the installation of a vertical-flow system and only a horizontal-flow system can be installed.

7.116 Horizontal- or cross-flow modular units comprise a wall-mounted air terminal standing vertically to produce a horizontal flow of air across the operating field. The terminal module contains the final filters, air diffuser, return-air grilles, filters and fans. The module may incorporate a full air-conditioning unit or be supplied with 'fresh-air' from a separate primary air-conditioning system. In the latter case the return-air fan power may warrant the inclusion of a supplementary cooling coil within the module.

7.117 The system should have sidewall panels at least 2·4m apart. The panels may fold to facilitate cleaning of the theatre. The minimum height of the terminal should be 2·1m and a deflector at the top of the filter/diffuser will be acceptable

as an alternative to a full roof. These dimensions reflect currently available equipment and may impose operational constraints in addition to a lower level of performance common to these systems.

7.118 In the horizontal flow systems, personnel working between the filter and surgical wound will disperse bacteria that are more likely to contaminate exposed surgical instruments and enter the wound. This may be minimised by the use of improved clothing and operating procedure to reduce dispersion of bacteria. The use of lines on the floor delineating the extent of the clean zone and hatching or colour coding the 'no-entry' zone between the air diffuser and patient will serve to prompt staff and are therefore essential.

7.119 The air discharge velocity as measured 1m from the diffuser face should have a mean value of 0·4 m/s. The validation Section 8 gives details of the method of measurement.

Filters

7.120 The main plant primary and secondary filters should be to the standards and in the location set out in Section 4.

7.121 Terminal filters should be provided within the airflow terminal or in the air supply to it. High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters grade H10 as specified in BS EN 1822 will be required as a minimum. There is no aerobiological benefit in fitting filters of a higher grade than this, although for practical reasons most UCV manufacturer recommend the fitting of H12-grade filters.

7.122 In some modular UCV units, the terminal filter is used as a pressure equaliser to balance airflow and filters of a higher grade with a greater pressure drop may be recommended by their manufacturer. The increased resistance may affect the velocity of air reaching the operating level and there will be penalties in terms of installed fan power and higher noise levels.

7.123 The final filters should be installed in a leak-proof housing in a manner that allows the terminal unit, filters and their seals to be validated. A challenge test will be carried out during commissioning to prove the effectiveness of the complete installation.

7.124 Where UCV units are constructed in sections, a means of measuring the pressure drop across the terminal filters in each section should be provided. The pressure test-points should be located outside of the partial wall, capped to prevent air leakage and accessible within the theatre without the need to open the unit inspection panels. Alternatively direct-reading pressure gauges should be fitted.

7.125 The UCV system will require a return-air filter to capture the relatively coarse particles that would otherwise significantly reduce the life of the final filter. This should be at least a G3 grade to BS EN 779. In remote recirculation systems there may be advantages in fitting a higher grade return air filter, as it will reduce the load on the terminal HEPA filters and extend their life.

Noise level

7.126 If sound-attenuating material is used to line any portion of the inside of the UCV unit it should be non-particle-shedding and fire-resistant. (Further guidance can be found in SHTM Firecode suite of documents).

7.127 The maximum noise level in an operating room fitted with a UCV terminal of any type shall not exceed 50 NR. The validation section gives details of the method of measurement.

Lighting and operating lights

7.128 CIBSE lighting guide LG2 and BS EN 12464-1 give detailed information of lighting requirements. Operating luminaires should comply with the photometric requirements detailed in relevant sections of BS EN 60601.

7.129 The position of the UCV light fittings and style of partial walls, where fitted, should neither adversely disturb the airflow nor result in significant spatial variations in illuminance levels.

7.130 In vertical units, specialised task lighting should be provided by toroidal, cruciform or small multiple dome-shaped luminaires as they have good aerodynamic properties. The ideal luminaire will have a minimal effect on the airflow regardless of where it is positioned. Large-diameter saucer-shaped luminaires should not be used in vertical-flow systems as they will occlude the airflow in the critical central zone. It is important to consider the suitability of existing luminaires when retrofitting UCV systems.

7.131 In vertical UCV installations a minimum of 2·75m from floor to underside of the diffuser is required to allow for supporting mechanisms and lamp articulation. When upgrading existing systems this dimension may not be achievable. However, when parked, the lowest point of the central light stem, luminaire and articulation arms should never be less than 2m above floor level.

7.132 The traditional means of light support is a central column that passes through the UCV terminal and is rigidly fixed to the building structure. The position of the support therefore prevents air being supplied at the centre of the terminal. Separate supports displaced from the centre of the clean zone would lead to improved airflow. This approach was advocated in the 1994 version of HTM 2025 but at the time of writing no UK manufacturer has chosen to adopt this solution.

7.133 In horizontal units the size or shape of the specialised task luminaire has little effect on the air-flow pattern.

Controls and instrumentation

7.134 The functions of the supply AHU and extract ventilation should be continuously monitored by a BEMS control unit. The controls and instrumentation for the main plant are set out in Section 6.

7.135 UCV systems will additionally require:

- a set-back facility that can reduce the air supplied through the UCV terminal to a volume that equates to not less than 25 air changes per hour of the operating room gross volume whilst still leaving the supply AHU operating at full speed;
- a facility to turn the entire system, supply AHU and UCV terminal, off. (an emergency stop is not required);
- a read-out sufficiently large to be clearly visible from the operating table that shows the temperature of the air being supplied by the UCV terminal;
- a read-out sufficiently large to be clearly visible from the operating table that shows the relative humidity of the air being supplied by the UCV terminal;
- a red indicator light that will illuminate when either the supply AHU or the UCV terminal fails, either or both are switched off or are at set-back;
- an amber indicator light that will illuminate when the UCV terminal is at set-back and the supply AHU is running;
- a green indicator light that will illuminate when both the supply AHU and UCV terminal are operating at full speed;
- a blue indicator light that will illuminate when the UCV terminal air flow, as detected by a differential pressure sensor, falls below 80% of the design flow rate.

AHU	UVC terminal	Indicator light	Comment
Off or Fault	Off or Fault	Red	Ventilation not operating at a suitable level to commence surgical procedures
Off or Fault	On (set-back)		
Off or Fault	On (full speed)		
On (set-back)	Off or Fault		
On (full speed)	Off or Fault		
On (set-back)	On (set-back)		
On (full speed)	On (set-back)	Amber	Ventilation provided to at least conventional theatre standard
On (full speed)	On (full speed)	Green	Full UCV standard conditions
-	-	Blue	HEPA-filter resistance causing low air flow

Table 7: Indicator light logic table

7.136 The switching devices and indicators should be incorporated in the surgeon's panel and their functions clearly labelled. In retrofit installations an auxiliary panel for the UCV may be the most practical option. If fitted it should be mounted adjacent to the surgeon's panel and their control functions interlocked as necessary.

7.137 When a system is designed to have partial walls with full-wall extensions, a volume control facility may be incorporated to allow the system to be run with reduced velocity when the demountable full-walls are in place. It would be the responsibility of the user to ensure correct operation of the system. To assist the user an explanatory notice should be included on the theatre control panel.

7.138 A direct-reading gauge should be fitted in the theatre to show a representative pressure drop across the final filters. If the UCV control box is located out of the theatre and has a means of manually adjusting the return air-fan speed then it should also be fitted with a direct-reading differential pressure gauge. The means of adjusting the return-air fan speed should be lockable to prevent casual adjustment. The direct-reading gauges should be fitted with a means of indicating the correct operating pressure range.

7.139 The UCV-unit manufacturer's control box should be located in an accessible position preferably in the operating department adjacent to the operating theatre that it serves. A service corridor, if provided, is an ideal location. The control box should be clearly labelled with the identity of the operating theatre that it serves.

7.0 (c) Extract systems

7.140 Extracts may be provided for a variety of reasons including:

- simple odour control (for example in a WC or mortuary);
- to receive and remove moisture-laden air (for example, in a kitchen);
- as part of a combined supply/extract balanced system (for example, in an operating suite);
- to capture a hazardous substance at source (for example a safety cabinet).

7.141 Devices that use an inflow of air to control exposure of staff to hazardous substances are classified as Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV) systems under the COSHH Regulations.

7.142 An LEV system may comprise a self-contained unit incorporating its own carbon filter such as a simple bench-top fume cupboard. Alternatively it may be a complete "ventilation system" comprising a make-up air supply, multiple-exhaust-protected work stations, branch and central extract ductwork, duplex extract fans and a high-level discharge terminal. It may also incorporate a special filtration system appropriate to the hazardous substance being controlled. Such systems could be required for workshops containing woodworking machinery or large centralised pathology laboratories housing multiple safety cabinets, dissection benches, fume cupboards and specimen stores.

7.143 It is important to recognise at the design stage whether an extract is being provided for comfort or as an LEV system. Typical systems in healthcare include:

- microbiological safety cabinets and Category 3 containment rooms;
- fume cupboards;
- welding-fume extracts;
- woodworking machinery duct collectors;
- battery-charging bay extracts;

- powered plaster and bone saws;
- pharmaceutical preparation cabinets and tablet machines;
- dissection benches, cut-up tables and some specimen stores;
- medium- and high-risk infectious disease isolation facilities;
- decontamination facilities;
- dental furnaces, grinders and polishers.

7.144 General design information and guidance for LEV systems is produced by the Health and Safety Executive (HSE) as HS(G)37. Information on the design and installation of microbiological safety cabinets is given in BS5726 and that for fume cupboards is given in BS EN 14175. Their recommendations should be closely followed.

7.145 LEV systems are statutory items that will be subject to an independent inspection every 14 months.

Hood extract systems

Special requirements

7.146 Extract canopies will be required over steam-and-heat-emitting appliances, for example sterilisers, catering and washing equipment; and for the extraction of toxic fumes over benches used for mixing, sifting and blending procedures.

7.147 Perimeter-drain gulleys and corrosion-proof grease eliminators should be provided on kitchen hoods.

Typical arrangements

7.148 The air-flow rate must be sufficient to ensure an adequate capture velocity in the vicinity of the process; typical values are as follows:

- evaporation of steam and like vapours 0.25 m/s to 0.5 m/s;
- chemical and solvent releases 1.0 m/s;
- vapour of gases 5 m/s to 6 m/s;
- light dusts 7 m/s to 10.0 m/s.

Excessive velocities will be wasteful of power and generate noise.

7.149 The lowest edge of the canopy should be 2m above finished floor level, with a minimum of 300mm overhang beyond the edge of the equipment on all sides.

7.150 A compact arrangement of equipment (but with access for maintenance) will minimise the canopy area, and hence reduce the air volume necessary to achieve the optimum capture velocity.

7.151 Hoods required for the control of heat gain and vapours may be connected to the general extract system when it is convenient to do so, but where non-corrosive ductwork materials are necessary, a separate discharge is preferred.

7.152 Lighting and internal divider plates are often required to be built into the perimeter of large canopies. However, built-in shelving systems are not recommended, as they interfere with the air-flow, and constitute a maintenance problem.

Control of hood extracts

7.153 Provided that it does not interfere with the operation of the department when not in use, the ventilation system for the hood extract and any associated supply can be shut down. To this end, local control should be provided.

Bench extract systems

Special requirements

7.154 Bench extract ventilation is required in departments such as pathology and mortuary, where activities involve the release of malodorous or toxic fumes that should not be inhaled. Where hazardous substances are being controlled, the system should be designated an LEV.

Typical arrangements

7.155 Each ventilated position will usually be accommodated in a continuous run of benching, which should not be more than 650mm from front to rear and which should be provided with a continuous upstand at the rear. Each position should have a 1200mm x 150mm linear extract grille mounted on a purpose-designed plenum box (incorporating guide vanes as necessary), with its face flush with the upstand. The bottom of the grille should be as close as practicable to the level of the working surface (usually 75mm above, to allow for cleaning). The minimum velocity across any part of the grille should be 1 m/s. The grille should be readily demountable to allow for cleaning.

Control of bench extract systems

7.156 Provided that it does not interfere with the operation of the department when not in use, the ventilation system for the bench extract and any associated make-up supply can be shut down. However, a run-on timer with a minimum setting of 30 minutes must be provided. To this end, local or automatic-use control should be provided.

7.157 Processes that produce hazardous vapours, fumes, dusts or noxious vapours should be enclosed or semi-enclosed in a suitable cabinet or exhaust protected workstation.

Safety cabinet and fume-cupboard extract systems

7.158 Safety cabinets and fume cupboards are devices that use an inflow of air to control exposure of staff to hazardous substances. The units, their exhaust

systems, filters, fans and discharge terminals are all classified as Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV) systems under the COSHH Regulations. The make-up air system to a room that contains an LEV system should also be considered as an essential part of the system and be included in the LEV classification. Information on the design and installation of microbiological safety cabinets is given in BS5726 and that for fume cupboards is given in BS EN 14175. Their recommendations should be closely followed.

7.159 The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) publishes 'The Management, Design and Operation of Microbiological Containment Laboratories' covering the general environment in which they are used and operational considerations.

Special requirements

7.160 The supply-air system should not distort the unidirectional and stable air pattern required for fume cupboards and microbiological safety cabinets. In general, supply-air ceiling diffusers should not discharge directly towards fume cupboards or safety cabinets, unless the terminal velocity is such that the air-flow pattern of the cabinet is unaffected. The design should ensure that high air-change rates, and/or the opening and closing of doors do not have any adverse effect on the performance of safety cabinets or fume cupboards. A damped door-closure mechanism may help.

7.161 In order to safeguard the user, all safety cabinets and fume cupboards must be fitted with a clear indication that they are operating correctly. Direct-reading gauges or falling-ball indicators are preferred (in addition to electronic pressure indicators). The system should be set to alarm audibly if the face velocity falls below the minimum safe operating level.

Arrangements for safety cabinet installations

7.162 The manufacture and installation of microbiological safety cabinets must be in accordance with the relevant national standards and guidance issued by the Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP).

7.163 A Class 1 microbiological safety cabinet must be specified for routine work involving Group 3 pathogens. It should be housed in a Category 3 containment room. Specific design information on containment rooms is issued by ACDP in conjunction with the Health and Safety Commission.

7.164 Siting and installation of microbiological safety cabinets are of particular importance because:

- the protection afforded to the operator by the cabinet depends on a specific and stable unidirectional air flow through the open front;
- the protection to the environment by the cabinet depends on the high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters. The exhaust air should never be considered as totally free from microbiological hazard.

7.165 Microbiological safety cabinet is HEPA filtered prior to being discharged to outside. The extract ductwork should as far as practicable be kept under negative pressure while inside the building.

7.166 Current standards permit the installation of microbiological safety cabinets with integral fans, provided that the extract ductwork can be kept short (that is, less than 2m); such an installation however, is likely to be noisy and is not recommended for use in new buildings.

7.167 The discharge from the cabinet should be fitted with a back-draft damper. In multiple installations where several cabinets discharge into a common extract and discharge duct, it must be possible to isolate each cabinet from the system when not in use.

7.168 Roof-level discharge, wherever practicable, is preferred since it removes much of the uncertainty over air re-entering the building through ventilation inlets and/or windows. In such an installation, the extract fan should be situated separately from the cabinet and close to the discharge outlet, to maintain the duct within the building under negative pressure. The discharge point on a flat roof should be through a 3m high terminal. This is required to safeguard staff who may need to access the roof periodically for maintenance. This requirement will also be applicable to fume-cupboard discharges.

7.169 Where this is impracticable, discharge into the room via a double HEPA filter has been accepted. The preferred method, however, is to discharge 3m above the roofline in line with the similar standard for fume cupboard designs.

Arrangements for fume cupboard installations

7.170 The manufacture and installation of fume cupboards must be in accordance with the relevant national standards and associated guidance.

7.171 The primary factors that contribute to the effective performance of fume cupboards include:

- an adequate volume of supply air;
- an effective exhaust system to promote the safe dispersal of waste products to atmosphere.

7.172 The air velocities through sash openings must be sufficient to prevent hazardous materials from entering the laboratory while avoiding excess flow rates that interfere with the investigation process. Average face velocities should be between 0.5 and 1.0 m/s, with a minimum at any point within 20% of the average, the upper end of the range being applicable to the containment of materials of high toxicity. The design velocity must be maintained irrespective of whether the sash opening is varied, or whether doors or windows are open or closed. Variable Air Volume (VAV) cupboards are available which offer a reduction in energy use.

7.173 The possibility of a fire or explosion that may not be contained by a fume cupboard must always be considered. A fume cupboard should not, therefore,

be sited in a position where exit to an escape route will necessitate passing directly in front of it.

7.174 Fume-cupboard fans should be installed as near as possible to the termination of the duct, thus maintaining the maximum amount of ductwork at negative pressure.

7.175 Where there are adjacent buildings with opening windows, or where downdraughts occur, it may be necessary to increase the height of discharge ducts in order to achieve adequate dispersal. In complex locations, airflow modelling or wind tunnel tests may be required to determine the optimum height of the stack (see also Paragraph 7.167).

7.176 Fume-cupboards for certain processes must have separate extract systems. However, where appropriate, individual fume-cupboard exhaust systems may discharge via non-returning dampers into a single collection duct rather than having a large number of separate stacks. The collection duct should have a large cross-sectional area to minimise its effect on the individual exhaust systems; be open to atmosphere upstream of the first connection; and be designed to discharge a total air volume at least equal to the combined individual extract systems.

7.177 Individual fume-cupboard extract systems, discharging either directly to atmosphere or into a collection duct, do not require duplex fans. However, a collection duct designed to provide dispersal of effluent from a number of individual extracts, should have duplex fans with automatic changeover.

7.178 Some fumes are particularly corrosive, so the choice of material for the ductwork, and type of extract fan fitted should reflect the nature of the fume being conveyed.

Control of extract systems

7.179 It is desirable to provide local control of safety cabinets in order to maximise the life of the HEPA filter, and to permit the sealing of the cabinet and room for fumigation if spillage occurs.

7.180 To cope with the risk of an accident or spillage outside safety cabinets, a ‘panic button’ should be provided to switch off the supply to that area; and discharge all extracted air to atmosphere.

7.181 In pathology departments, it will be necessary to have one or more microbiological safety cabinets and one or more fume cupboards available for use at all times, including weekends, therefore, local overriding controls for all these items and any associated ventilation plant will be necessary.

7.0(d) Plantroom ventilation

General requirements

7.182 Plant rooms are required to be ventilated in order to maintain acceptable temperatures for satisfactory operation of the plant and controls, and for

maintenance activities. In the case of plant rooms housing combustion equipment, a secondary function of the ventilation is to provide make-up air for the combustion process.

7.183 The air required for these purposes should be introduced into the space through inlets positioned to minimise the discomfort to occupants; they should be unlikely to be blocked, closed deliberately (except in the case of fire shutters if required), or rendered inoperative by prevailing winds.

7.184 Plantroom ventilation air should not be used for any other purposes, such as make-up air for extract; and where the plantroom contains combustion equipment, the appliance pressure must not fall below the outside air pressure.

7.185 Specialised healthcare air handling equipment must not be located in a fire compartment that houses combustion equipment.

7.186 Statutory regulations for plantroom ventilation are contained in the Scottish Building Regulations, and further guidance is given in CIBSE Guides A & B.

Assessment of ventilation levels

7.187 Ventilation requirements must take into account all heat sources within a plantroom, and where there are large glazing areas, solar gains. The ventilation rate should limit the maximum temperature within the plantroom to 32°C.

7.188 As the level of equipment operating during mid-season and summer is often lower than the winter condition, and the cooling effect of the outside air is reduced, it is necessary to calculate the minimum volume for each season of operation, and the inlet and outlet grilles or fan sizes should be chosen to cater for the largest seasonal air volume.

7.189 Replacement air should not be drawn through pipe trenches or fuel service ducts. Where metal ducts penetrate walls and floors, effective sealing should be provided to confine the ventilation to the boiler room and to meet fire protection requirements. Penetration of fire barrier walls by ventilation ducts should be avoided if possible.

7.190 Fire dampers in plant room ventilation ducts should be electrically interlocked with the boiler plant.

7.191 Care must be taken to prevent any noise generated in the boiler room emerging from natural or mechanical ventilation openings to the detriment of the surrounding environment. Particular care is necessary with mechanical flue draughts and fan-diluted flue systems.

7.192 Information on required air volumes in contained in the CIBSE Guide A & B.

7.193 Where combustion plant is installed, the high-level (outlet) openings should be sized to cater for the total ventilating air quantity; and the low-level (supply) openings sized to cater for the total combined ventilating and combustion air quantity.

Choice of ventilation system

7.194 Ventilation air may be introduced and exhausted by either natural or mechanical means or a combination of both. However, natural systems are preferred where possible.

7.195 Generally, small installations at or above ground level should have their combustion and ventilation air provided by natural means, employing both high- and low-level openings.

7.196 Basement, internal and large installations at or above ground level will usually require a combination of natural and mechanical ventilation. If the airflow rate is difficult, both supply and extract may require mechanical means.

7.197 Whether natural or mechanical, the system should be designed to avoid both horizontal and vertical temperature gradients. Both inlet and outlet openings should be placed on opposite or adjacent sites of the building to reduce the effect of wind forces.

7.198 Where mechanical air supply is employed, electrical interlocks with the boiler plant should be provided to prevent damage in the event of failure of the supply fan(s) once the air volume is established.

7.199 The necessary free opening areas for a naturally ventilated plantroom may be calculated using either the method in A4 of the CIBSE Guide A or the table in section B13 of CIBSE Guide B.

7.200 A combined natural and mechanical ventilation system should allow for natural extract at high level, to take advantage of convective forces in the room, with mechanical supply at low level. The high level natural ventilators should be sized to cope with the total quantity of ventilation air, as above.

7.201 To prevent leakage of flue gases and to ensure that the flue draught is not impeded at any time, the air pressure in the boiler room must not exceed the prevailing outside pressure. Therefore, the fan duty should exceed the calculated total combined combustion and ventilation air quantity by at least 25%. Fan-powered inlets should be arranged to flow outside air into the space at a point where cross-ventilation will ensure pick-up of heat without causing discomfort to occupiers.

7.202 Where it is impractical to provide sufficient natural ventilation to remove the heat emitted by the plant, both mechanical supply and extract will be required.

7.203 The high-level extract should be sized to cater for the total ventilating air quantity and the low-level supply should exceed the total combined combustion and ventilating air quantity by at least 25%, as above.

7.0(e) Ventilation of hydrotherapy suites

General requirements

7.204 In a hydrotherapy suite heat recovery should be via heat pump.

7.205 The quantity of supply air should be calculated as 25 litres/sec/m^2 wetted surface, with the wetted surface taken as 110% of the pool water surface area.

7.206 A re-circulation plant is recommended, with a minimum of 20% fresh air.

7.207 As far as practicable, re-circulated pool air should be provided to the ancillary changing and recover accommodation, with the only extract from the toilets, laundry/utility room and pool hall.

7.208 Supply air to the pool hall should be introduced at high level and directed towards the perimeter to mitigate condensation, with extract air taken from directly over the pool. Dampers should not be located over the pool water.

Control of hydrotherapy pool installations

7.209 The supply and extract fans should be interlocked so that the supply fan does not operate until flow is established within the extract system.

7.210 Time-clock control should be provided, with a local override switch to extend the normal operating period as required.

7.211 Night setback temperature (in the range of 21°C -25°C) and high humidity control (in the range of 60-75% sat) should be provided to override the time clock in order to prevent condensation. The exact set points should be ascertained post-installation.

7.212 A remote indication panel should be provided in the pool hall, giving a visual display of the pool water and pool air temperature.

8. Validation of specialised ventilation systems

Definitions

Commissioning - Commissioning is the process of advancing a system from physical completion to an operating condition. It will normally be carried out by specialist commissioning contractors working in conjunction with equipment suppliers. Commissioning will normally be the responsibility of the main or mechanical services contractor.

Validation - A process of proving that the system is fit for purpose and achieves the operating performance originally specified. It will normally be a condition of contract that "*The system will be acceptable to the client if at the time of validation it is considered fit for purpose and will only require routine maintenance in order to remain so for its projected life.*"

Note: Commissioning is often sub divided into sections e.g. air handling unit, automatic controls, airside balance, building fabric and fittings. Each section may be commissioned by its specialist installer and they are often accepted in isolation. Validation differs from commissioning in that its purpose is to look at the complete installation from air intake to extract discharge and assess its fitness for purpose as a whole. This involves examining the fabric of the building being served by the system and inspecting the ventilation equipment fitted as well as measuring the actual ventilation performance.

It is unlikely that 'in house' staff will possess the knowledge or equipment necessary to validate critical ventilation systems such as those serving operating suites, pharmacy clean rooms and local exhaust ventilation systems. Validation of these systems should therefore be carried out by a suitably qualified independent Authorised Person appointed by the NHS Board.

It is anticipated that training in the validation of specialised healthcare ventilation systems for independent Authorised Persons will become available during the life of this SHTM.

Commissioning general

8.1 Commissioning is an essential process for ventilation systems. It is therefore important that adequate provision for the process be made at the design stage of the project. Procedures for commissioning air-handling systems are given in CIBSE Commissioning Codes and BSRIA Application Guide Set COMPAK 1.

8.2 The duct-sizing procedure should take into account the requirements of system balancing, and the position and number of regulating dampers included in the design should be sufficient for this purpose.

Location of dampers and test holes

8.3 Balancing/commissioning dampers will be required in each branch of the distribution ductwork.

8.4 Test holes for the measurement of air-flow will be required at carefully selected points in main and all branch ducts. The number and spacing of holes are given in the BSRIA Application Guide Set COMPAK 1. Their positions must be identified at the design stage.

8.5 The test positions need to be accessible for commissioning to take place. They may also be required for subsequent annual verification of the system performance, so they should not be covered by permanent lagging.

8.6 The measurement point should be in a straight length of duct as far away as possible from any upstream bends, dampers or other elements that could cause disturbance to the airflow. The actual location should be:

- at least 1.5 duct diameters upstream of sources of turbulence such as dampers and bends;
- if this is not possible, 10 diameters downstream of dampers, bends or tees, and 5 diameters downstream of eccentric reducers;
- where there is enough space round the duct to insert the pitot tube and take readings;
- where the duct has a constant cross-sectional area.

8.7 Test holes for measuring total airflow from a fan should be located either 4 diameters upstream or 10 diameters downstream of the fan. Provision should also be made for measuring the speed of rotation.

Information to be provided

8.8 It is essential that the designer should pass on his intentions fully to the commissioning engineer by indicating which parts of the system are high, medium and low pressure, and by providing:

- relevant parts of the specification;
- schematic drawings indicating performance data as indicated in Table 8;
- equipment schedules;
- controller and regulator schedule;
- fan performance curves;
- wiring diagrams for electrical equipment, including interlock details.

Items in system	Information to be provided
Fans	Fan total pressure Volume flow rate at high and low speed Maximum motor current
Plant items	Type and identification numbers from equipment schedules Fluid and air volume flow rates Fluid and air side pressure losses Dry bulb temperatures Wet bulb temperatures Humidity
Dampers, including motorised and fire dampers	Identification numbers from equipment schedules Location Identification number Volume flow rate
Main and branch ducts	Dimensions Volume flow rates and velocities Identification numbers from equipment schedules
Terminal	Location Identification number Grille or diffuser factor Volume flow rate and neck velocity Operating static pressure
Test holes and access panels	Location Identification number
Controllers	Set points

Table 8: Information to be provided on schematic drawings

Notes: For Table 8

1. Fan total pressure is the difference between the total pressure (static pressure + velocity pressure) at the fan outlet and the total pressure at the fan inlet.

2. Where volume flow rates are variable, maximum and minimum values should be provided.

Commissioning personnel

8.9 As one individual is unlikely to possess all of the required commissioning skills, a commissioning team is therefore usually needed. The objective of commissioning is to ensure that the necessary performance and safety requirements are met.

8.10 During the commissioning process a great deal of information will be generated which will form an invaluable future source of reference about the plant. It is essential to ensure that it is collected together in the form of a commissioning manual and handed over to the client on completion of the contract together with the 'as fitted' drawings. This information should be both in hard copy and electronic format.

8.11 In order to be successful the commissioning process must start before achieving practical completion as many parts of the system will become progressively less accessible. The correct installation of those parts will need to be witnessed and leak-rate tests carried out as construction proceeds. Failure to establish responsibility for commissioning early enough will delay the completion of the project or lead to unsatisfactory plant performance.

Commissioning brief

8.12 The commissioning team will require a detailed brief from the system designer. This should include:

- a 'user' brief comprising a description of the installation and its intended mode of operation;
- the precise design requirements with regard to the scheme of air movement, room static pressures, supply and extract air-flow rates and acceptable tolerances;
- full details of the design conditions both inside and out, for winter and summer together with the control strategy;
- equipment manufacturer's type test data, commissioning, operation and maintenance recommendations;
- drawings showing the layout of the system, positions of air-flow measurement test points, dampers, regulating devices and filters within the duct runs, together with sizes of ducts and terminal fittings. It will save time if these drawings are annotated with the design volumes and static pressures required at each branch and outlet point;
- wiring diagrams for all electrical equipment associated with the air handling systems including motor control circuit details and any interlocking and safety devices such as emergency-stop buttons adjacent to the item of plant.

8.13 The CIBSE Commissioning Code, Series 'A' – "Air Distribution", provides full guidance on the information that will be required by the commissioning team.

8.14 The designer should include in the contract document instructions on verifying the accuracy of test instruments that should be supported by reference to relevant calibration certificates.

8.15 The system, on completion, should be operated by the contractor as a whole and subject to performance tests in accordance with the contract requirements. For critical systems, these may include independent validation of the system performance on behalf of the client.

8.16 Prior to dynamic commissioning, it is essential that builders' work in the area served by the system is complete, all rubbish and dust is removed, concealed plumbing (IPS-type) panels are in position and ceiling tiles are in place and clipped. Floors should be mopped and visible dust removed from all other surfaces.

8.17 Once the system is shown to meet the design intent the handover documentation should be completed. In the event of performance not being acceptable, the matter should be dealt with in accordance with the contract arrangements.

Pre-commissioning checks

8.18 The pre-commissioning checks consist of visual inspection, manual operation of equipment, static measurements and functional tests of individual components. They should be carried out prior to setting the system to work and undertaking the dynamic commissioning process set out in Paragraph 8.29 onwards of this guidance.

Standard of installation

8.19 During the installation of the system the following must be witnessed:

- that the plant and installations have been provided and installed in accordance with the design specification and drawings;
- that only approved sealants have been used in the installation;
- that all components function correctly;
- that the satisfactory sealing of access doors and viewing ports have been carried out;
- that air pressure tests and air-leakage tests on ventilation ducting have been carried out in accordance with the methods set out in the HVCA's DW/143: Ductwork Leakage Testing. It is usual to carry out these tests, a section at a time, as the ductwork is installed and before its insulation is applied. The results must be recorded in the commissioning manual;
- that gaps around doors and hatches are as specified in the design;
- that the correct operation of pressure stabilisers, control dampers, isolating and non-return dampers have been checked and installed in the correct orientation for air-flow;
- that test holes have been provided in their specified locations and are sealed with suitable grommets;
- that control dampers are secured and their quadrants fitted correctly;
- that any interlocks are operative and in accordance with specification;
- that the electric circuits are completed, tested and energised;
- that electric motors have been checked for correct direction of rotation both at full speed and set-back;
- that cooling and heating media are available at correct temperatures and pressures and in specified quantities;
- that the air-conditioning plant components and controls function correctly;
- that the air-conditioning plant interlocks and safety controls function correctly;

- that the plant is physically complete, insulation is applied and all ducts and pipework are identified as specified;
- that the building housing the ventilation plant is generally in a fit condition for commissioning and performance tests to commence, that is, windows, doors, partitions etc are completed, surfaces sealed and their final finish applied;
- that the areas containing the ventilation plant and those being served by it are clean;
- that access to all parts of the system is safe and satisfactory.

Cleanliness of installation

8.20 During installation it must be established that ductwork is being installed to the 'advanced level' as defined in the HVCA (2005) 'TR/19 – Guide to good practice: internal cleanliness of ventilation systems'. This specifically includes ensuring that ductwork sections arrive on site and are stored with their open ends sealed and that open ends remain sealed during installation to prevent the ingress of builders' dust.

8.21 Should any doubt exist whether the guidance has been observed, the ducts must be cleaned internally to restore them to this standard before being taken into use.

8.22 "Builders work" ducts of brick or concrete must be surface sealed to prevent the release of dust before being taken into use.

8.23 The area around the supply air intake must be free of vegetation, waste, rubbish, builders' debris or any other possible source of contamination.

Certification of equipment

8.24 The following test certificates should be assembled by the commissioning team and be available for inspection at any time during the contract period. They will form part of the handover information and should be placed in the commissioning manual:

- type-test performance certificates for fans;
- pressure-test certificates for:
  - heater-batteries;
  - cooling coils;
  - humidifiers (if appropriate);
- type-test certificates for attenuators;
- type-test certificates for primary and secondary filters;
- individual test certificates for high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters.

Equipment tests

8.25 Prior to setting the system to work, the checks in Paragraphs 8.26 - 8.28 should be witnessed, and proving tests should be carried out as detailed.

Filters

8.26 The quality of filter housing and in particular, the seals is a critical factor in maintaining the efficacy of the filtration system by ensuring that air does not bypass the filter panels. Therefore, the following checks should be made:

- filter seals should be fitted and in good condition;
- filters should be installed correctly with respect to air flow;
- bag filters should be installed so that the bags are vertical and their pockets free;
- HEPA filters should be installed in a sealed housing and their seals tested to DIN 1946 if specified;
- all filters should be checked to ensure they are free of visible damage;
- the differential pressure indicators should be checked for accuracy and that they are marked with the initial and final filter resistance.

Drainage arrangements

8.27 The drain should conform in all respects to the “Design considerations” of this SHTM. In addition the following must be proved:

- that the drain tray is easily removable;
- that a clear trap is fitted and is easily removable;
- that the drain has a clear air gap of at least 15mm;
- that the pipework is supported so that the air break cannot be reduced;
- that the drain system from each drain tray is independent up to the air break;
- that the operation of the drainage system is proved by introducing water into the duct at the drain tray and observing that it completely drains out. This check is to be repeated both at normal speed and set back once the fans have been commissioned. At this time the clear trap can be marked to indicate the normal water level with the fan running.

Fire dampers

8.28 The following must be witnessed and proving tests should be carried out as detailed:

- the operation of all fire dampers;
- the access provided to enable the dampers’ to be visually inspected and / or re-set should be sufficient for the purpose;

- indication should be provided of the dampers' position (open/tripped);
- indication of the fire dampers' location should be provided both on the ductwork and at a visible point on the building fabric if the ductwork is concealed.

Dynamic commissioning

Air-handling and distribution system

8.29 The fan drive, direction of rotation, speed and current drawn should be set in accordance with their manufacturer's instructions.

8.30 After the installation has been checked to ensure that it is in a satisfactory and safe condition for start-up, it should be set to work and regulated to enable the plant to meet its design specification. The proportional balancing method described in the CIBSE Commissioning Code "A" must be followed. The air-flow rates must be set within the tolerances laid down in the design brief. This will normally be the design airflow rate +10% -0%.

8.31 When combined supply and extract systems are to be balanced and the area that they serve is to be at or above atmospheric pressure then the supply should be balanced first with the extract fan switched off, and then the extract balanced with the supply fan(s) on.

8.32 For combined systems where the area that they serve is to be below atmospheric pressure then the extract should be balanced first with the supply fan switched off and then the supply balanced with the extract fan on.

8.33 On completion of the balance all volume air-flows in supply and extract ducts and from grilles and diffusers must be measured and recorded. The true air change rate can them be calculated from the data obtained.

8.34 The main supply and extract duct volume control dampers must be locked and their position marked.

8.35 All grille and diffuser volume control registers must be locked to prevent alteration and their final position marked.

Room air distribution

8.36 The pressure-relief dampers and pressure stabilisers must be set to achieve the specified room static pressures and locked. The grille direction control vanes and diffuser cones must be set to give the specified air-movement pattern. Visualisation techniques may need to be employed in order to prove that the required air-flow pattern is being achieved. This may be a potential requirement when commissioning LEV systems or rooms that contain them.

Air-conditioning plant

8.37 The specified flow rate and/or pressure drops must be set for all heater batteries, cooling coils and humidifiers. The methods described in the CIBSE

Commissioning Codes “W” and “R” should be followed. On completion their regulating devices must be locked to prevent alteration.

Control system

8.38 The control system should not be commissioned until both the air distribution system and air-conditioning equipment have been commissioned.

8.39 Because of the specialised nature of control systems and the fact that each manufacturer’s system will contain its own specialist components and settings, the commissioning should be completed by the supplier and witnessed by a representative of the user.

8.40 The location of all control and monitoring sensors should be checked and their accuracy proved.

8.41 The control system’s ability to carry out its specified functions must be proved.

8.42 If the plant is provided with a “user’s” control panel in addition to the one located in the plantroom then the operation of both must be proved. This will typically apply to operating departments and laboratory systems.

Specific performance standards

Air movement

8.43 The performance of the system should be measured and compared with information provided by the designer.

Plant capacity and control

8.44 When setting to work and proving the design, both the manufacturer of the air-handling plant and the control specialist should attend site together and jointly commission the system.

8.45 If any doubt exists as to the capacity of the installed system, then its ability to achieve the specified inside design conditions with the plant operating at winter and summer outside design conditions must be proved. Artificial loads will be required in order to simulate the internal gains/losses and the outside design conditions.

8.46 On completion of the plant performance test, recording thermo-hygrographs should be placed in each room/area served by the plant and also the supply air duct upstream of the frost battery. The plant should be run for 24 hours with all doors closed. During this period the inside conditions must stay within the tolerances specified. The BEMS should be used to obtain the information required wherever possible. Periodic tests will be required during the defects liability period.

Noise levels - general

8.47 The commissioning noise level is the level measured with a sound-level meter in the unoccupied room and taking account of the external noise together with the noise generated by the ventilation system. When occupied and in use this commissioning level will constitute a continuous background noise that will allow the overall noise level to be achieved. The ventilation plant design noise level is that generated by the plant alone with no other noise source being considered. The levels suggested make recognised allowance for the ingress of environmental noise.

8.48 The noise levels apply at the maximum velocity for which the system is designed to operate. Acoustic commissioning tests should be carried out with all plant and machinery running normally and achieving the design conditions of airflow, temperature and humidity.

8.49 An industrial-grade sound-level meter to BS3489 or IEC 651 Type 2 will normally be sufficient to check the noise level.

8.50 The noise level readings are to be taken at typical normal listening position 1.5m above floor level and at least 1m from any surface and not on any line of symmetry. In critical rooms the noise should be measured at the centre of the room and at the centre of each quarter. The mean of the 5 readings should then be calculated.

8.51 In the event of a contractual deficiency, a Type 1 precision-grade sound-level meter should be used and the noise level determined by the procedure given in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01 (2011).

Filter challenge

General ventilation filters

8.52 In-situ performance tests will not normally be required for primary and secondary filters and their housings. However the filters should be visually inspected for grade, tears, orientation and fit within their housing. Filters should be clean and a replacement set available. Bag filters should be installed so that their bags are vertical and spaced so that air can move through them freely. Any filter found to be wet should be replaced and the cause investigated.

HEPA filters (for exhaust protective enclosures and laboratories)

8.53 Pathogenic material may be discharged through damaged or badly installed HEPA terminal filters. The complete installation must be tested using the method set out in BS EN: 14644 ‘Method of Testing for the Determination of Filter Installation Leaks’.

8.54 The challenge tests may be carried out using either of the following techniques:

- use Dispersed Oil Generator (DOP) to provide the challenge and a photometer to detect leaks;

- use a Discrete Particle Counter (DPC) to detect leaks. (In order to obtain a sufficient challenge it may be necessary to remove temporarily the supply AHU secondary filters).

8.55 In both cases the upstream challenge should be measured. A measurement of particle penetration through a representative section of the HEPA filter media is then taken and used as the reference background level. These two readings enable the range of the detecting instrument to be set.

8.56 A challenge aerosol of inert particles of the type produced by a DOP generator should be introduced into the air, upstream of the HEPA filter. The downstream face of the filter, its mounting seal and housing would then be scanned for leakage using a photometer. A leak should be deemed to have occurred if a steady and repeatable reading on the photometer at any point exceeds 0.01% of the upstream reading.

8.57 Alternatively a Discrete Particle Counter (DPC) may be used. For the Discrete Particle Counter method the filter face is sampled at several points to establish the smallest non-penetrating particle size. If particles at or above this size are detected when subsequent scans of the filter face, its seal and housing are made, then there is deemed to be a significant leak at, or near, the test position.

8.58 Should the HEPA filter fail this test it must be replaced. Should the filter mounting seal or housing fail this test it may be repaired and the test repeated.

Bacteriological sampling

General ventilation systems

8.59 Bacteriological sampling will not normally be required for either general or local exhaust ventilation (LEV) systems unless otherwise specified.

Conventional operating rooms

8.60 The level of airborne bacteria introduced by the supply air can be checked by closing all doors and leaving the operating room empty with the ventilation system running for 15 minutes. An active air sampler set to 1 cubic metre and mounted on the operating table should then be activated remotely. Aerobic cultures on non-selective media should not exceed 10 bacterial and/or fungal colony forming units per cubic metre (CFU/m^3).

8.61 The results should be examined to establish the broad category of organisms present. A high preponderance of fungal organisms may be an indication of inadequate filtration for the particular installation. Precise guidance is inappropriate and will depend on local circumstances.

8.62 It may be appropriate to carry out a check of airborne bacteria during a surgical operation. If required this should be carried out as soon as possible after handover. Unless there are unusually high numbers of personnel or extensive activity in the room, the number of airborne bacterial and/or fungal CFU

averaged over any five-minute period, would be unlikely to exceed 180 per cubic metre.

8.63 Information on the additional validation testing of UCV Operating suites is given in Section 8.0(a).

Ventilation system commissioning/validation report

8.64 Following commissioning and/or validation a full report detailing the findings should be produced. The system will only be acceptable to the client if at the time of validation it is considered fit for purpose and will only require routine maintenance in order to remain so for its projected life.

8.65 The report shall conclude with a clear statement as to whether the ventilation system achieved or did not achieve the required standard. A copy of the report should be lodged with the following groups:

- the user department;
- infection control (where required);
- estates and facilities.

8.0(a) Validation of UCV operating suites

General

8.66 Commissioning of a UCV terminal will normally be carried out by its supplier. Commissioning of the air-handling unit, fire dampers, distribution ductwork and control systems may be undertaken by different teams. It is therefore important to recognise that the UCV terminal is only one element of the specialised ventilation system serving the operating suite and it cannot be accepted in isolation.

8.67 In order to ensure that the complete system operates correctly it will be necessary to validate the system as a whole from the air intake through to the extract discharge. It is unlikely that “in house” staff will possess the knowledge or equipment necessary to undertake this process. Validation of Ultra-Clean operating theatre ventilation systems should therefore be carried out by a suitably qualified independent Authorised Person appointed by the client.

8.68 It is anticipated that training in the validation of specialised healthcare ventilation systems for independent Authorised Persons will become available during the life of this SHTM.

8.69 The following regime of inspection and testing should be applied to the validation of new installations designed to provide Ultra-Clean conditions in an Operating suite. The test regime has been devised to ensure that the system as installed fully achieves the design requirement for these systems as set out in Section 7.0(b) of this document.

Basic requirement

8.70 The operating suite to be validated should be physically complete with final finishes applied. All ventilation systems serving it should be operating correctly and delivering the design air-flow rates.

8.71 In order to avoid pre-loading the UCV terminal's recirculation ducts and HEPA filters, the Operating suite should be free of any obvious dust and at least "builders clean" before the recirculation fans are set to work.

8.72 The validation procedure for a conventional theatre suite should have been satisfactorily completed to the standard set out in Section 8 prior to attempting to validate the UCV unit. In particular:

- the supply AHU will have achieved the minimum standard;
- the operation of all fire dampers will have been proved;
- the supply and extract air-flow rates as measured in ducts and at room terminals will achieve their design values +10%; -0%;
- room differential pressures will be correct.

Evidence of the satisfactory achievement of the foregoing standard should be available for inspection and independently measured as necessary *prior to validating the UCV unit.*

UCV unit validation procedure

8.73 Tests to validate the suitability and performance of an ultra-clean operating suite should be undertaken in the order that they appear below. Should an item fail to meet the required standard it should be rectified and successfully retested before passing on to the next test.

Summary of test regime

- Challenge tests to ensure that:
  - the UCV terminal unit is correctly assembled and sealed so that no air will bypass the filters;
  - the terminal filters are correctly sealed in their housings;
  - the terminal filters are of the same grade, of uniform quality and undamaged.
- Air velocity measurements to ensure that
  - a sufficient quantity of air is being delivered by the terminal;
  - the terminal quadrants are in balance;
  - the air flow has sufficient velocity to reach the working plane.
- An entrainment test to ensure that contaminants arising outside of the UCV terminal footprint are not drawn into it.

- Visualisation techniques to gain an understanding of the overall system performance.
- Noise measurement to ensure that working conditions are satisfactory.
- Control system checks to ensure that the system operates as specified.
- Biological monitoring to determine how effective the system is in use.

Test and measuring conditions

8.74 While validating the UCV terminal, the conditions in the Operating room shall be stable and within the given ranges.

temperature: – 19°C - 23°C dry bulb.

humidity: – 30 – 65% relative humidity.

Test and measuring equipment

8.75 Any test or measuring equipment used should have a certificate to prove that it has been validated within the previous 12 months at a calibration facility using traceable national standards.

8.76 In the case of a noise meter, its “matched sound source” should have a certificate to prove that it has been validated within the previous 12 months at a calibration facility using traceable national standards. The noise meter should be calibrated to the sound source on each occasion that it is used.

Test grid – vertical units

8.77 A test grid should be constructed on the floor within the ultra-clean terminal footprint as projected by the inside dimensions of the sidewalls or boundary air curtain. A suitably marked test sheet will provide a consistent standard of test grid.

8.78 The test grid should comprise test squares of 280mm each side.

8.79 The test grid should be aligned along the centre lines of the terminal footprint with its centre under the centre point of the terminal.

8.80 Any test square with 80% of its area within the UCV footprint should be used as a test position.

8.81 An inner zone should be designated that is not less than 36% of the total footprint. It should be made up of a number of test squares distributed symmetrically about the terminal footprint centre line. Regardless of the shape of the terminal footprint, the inner zone should comprise a minimum grid of 6 x 6 test squares.

8.82 Unless specified otherwise, a test position should be in the geometric centre of a test square.

8.83 Test position 1 should be the leftmost test square in the row nearest to the operating room wall that houses the surgeon's panel.

(For an example of a grid for a 2.8 x 2.8 metre terminal see Figure 8)

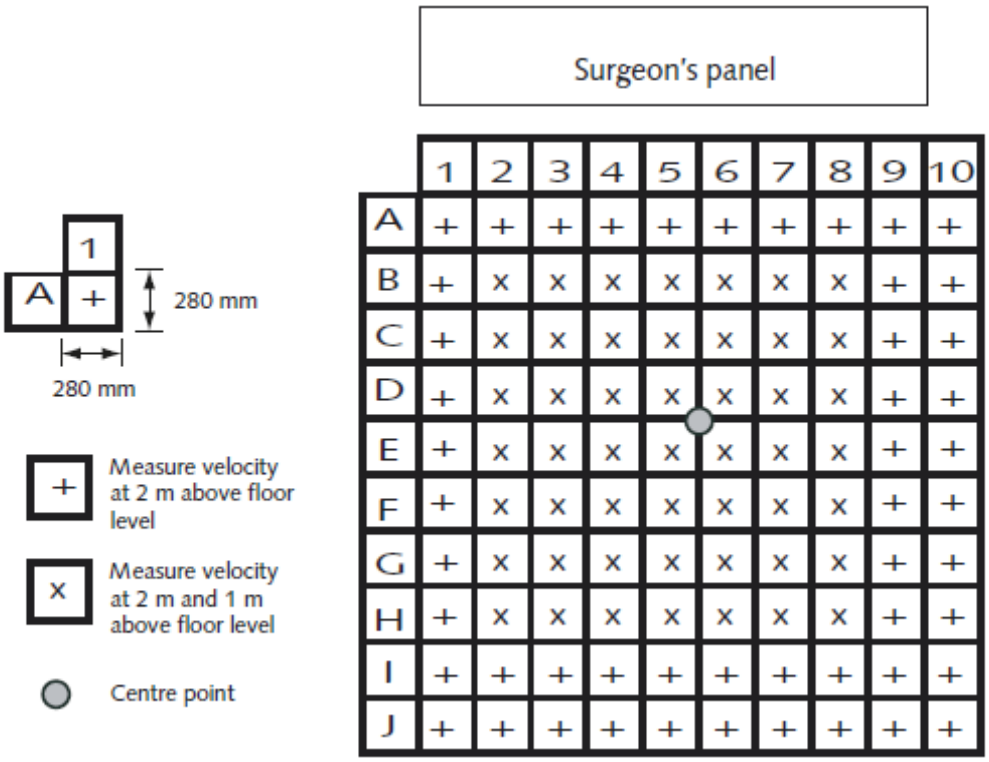


Figure 8: Example of a Test Grid for a 2.8m x 2.8m UCV Terminal

Test grid – horizontal units

8.84 A line of test positions should be marked on the floor 1m in front of the face of the UCV terminal.

8.85 A test position should be marked in the centre of the line. Additional test positions should be marked at 280mm spacing along the line either side of the centre position, up to the full-face width of the unit.

UCV terminal challenge tests (Vertical and horizontal systems)

8.86 The diffuser screen fitted below the face of the terminal HEPA filters should be lowered or removed while the challenge tests are being carried out.

8.87 The installed HEPA filters should be checked to ensure that their grade accords with the design specification and that their performance has been certified by the manufacturer.

8.88 The challenge tests may be carried out using either of the following techniques:

- use DOP to provide the challenge and a photometer to detect leaks;
- use a DPC to detect leaks. In order to obtain a sufficient challenge it may be necessary to remove temporarily the supply AHU secondary filters.

8.89 In both cases the upstream challenge should be measured. A measurement of particle penetration through a representative section of the HEPA filter media is then taken and used as the reference background level. These two readings enable the range of the detecting instrument to be set.

8.90 For the DOP test this should be set as the reference level and a leak will be declared significant if penetration greater than 0.01% of the range is detected. (See Paragraph 8.56 for details).

8.91 For the DPC method the filter face is scanned to establish the smallest non-penetrating particle size. If significant particles at or above this size are detected when subsequent scans are made then there is deemed to be a significant leak at, or near, the test position. (See Paragraph 8.57 for details)

UCV terminal unit clean zone leak test

8.92 This test will confirm that there is no unfiltered air bypassing the HEPA filter.

8.93 The joints and service penetration points under the UCV terminal within its side walls or boundary air curtain should be scanned to prove that there are no leaks.

8.94 A leak is defined as a significant rise above the background level.

Terminal HEPA filter seal leak test

8.95 The test will confirm that there is no unfiltered air bypassing the HEPA filter's seal.

8.96 Each HEPA filter's seal should be scanned to prove that there are no leaks.

8.97 A leak is defined as a significant rise above the background level.

Terminal HEPA filter media leak test

8.98 The test will confirm that the HEPA filters have not sustained damage while being installed.

8.99 The face of each HEPA filter should be scanned to prove that there are no leaks.

8.100 A leak is defined as a significant rise above the background level.

Vertical UCV terminal air velocity tests

Test set up

8.101 The terminal face diffuser screen should be in place for these tests.

8.102 Take spot readings to establish that the room is within the specified temperature and humidity test conditions.

8.103 Set out the test grid as described previously.

8.104 Swing the operating lamp arms and any other stem arms so that they align to present the least resistance to air flow, are perpendicular to the front edge of the test sheet and face the back edge. Any lamp and equipment heads should as far as practicable be outside of the UCV terminal footprint.

Test instrument

8.105 The measuring instrument should be a hot-wire anemometer with a digital read-out. The instrument resolution should be at least 0·01m/s, have a tolerance of ±0·015 m/s or 3% of that reading and be calibrated down to 0·15 m/s or lower. An alternative instrument may be used providing it is of no lesser specification.

Test method

8.106 The instrument should be mounted on a test stand and set to take a mean reading over a ten-second sample interval.

8.107 It is recommended that a printer be linked to the test instrument so that readings are recorded automatically. Alternatively they could be downloaded to a computer or data logger at the end of the test.

8.108 The test stand to be positioned on each test point in turn and the reading taken when the instrument has stabilised.

8.109 When taking a reading the test person should not stand within the same quadrant as the test instrument.

8.110 Readings are to be taken at the test positions with the instrument probe facing the wall housing the surgeon's panel, commencing at the first test position. Readings are taken working along the row from left to right and back, or for all text positions in one quadrant at a time.

8.111 When all test positions under one half of the terminal have been covered, readings of temperature and humidity are then taken at the specified height in the centre of the terminal. The read-outs on the surgeon's panel should be recorded at the same time.

8.112 Having completed one half of the test grid, the operating lamp arms and any other stem arms should be swung round through 180º and the test stand reversed so that the wall housing the surgeon's panel is behind the test person. Readings are recommenced starting at the right of the test row and working from right to left a quadrant at a time, as above.

UCV high-level discharge velocity test

8.113 Measurements of air velocity are to be taken at every test position 2m above floor level and the results averaged.

8.114 The average of the total readings taken is to be not less than:

0.38 m/s for a partial-wall system;

0.30 m/s for a full-wall system.

The average air velocity for each quadrant should not exceed ±6% of the measured average velocity for the terminal

UCV low-level air velocity test

8.115 Measurements of air velocity are to be taken at each of the inner zone test position 1m above floor level.

8.116 The measured velocity at every test position in the inner (operating) zone shall be not less than 0·2 m/s.

Horizontal UCV terminal air velocity test

Test set up

8.117 Set out the line of test positions as described previously.

8.118 Swing the operating lamp arms and any other stem arms so that they align to present the least resistance to air flow and are perpendicular to the line of test positions.

Test instrument

8.119 See that specified for vertical systems (Paragraph 8.105 refers).

Test method

8.120 The instrument should be mounted on a test stand and set to take a mean reading over a ten-second sample interval.

8.121 It is recommended that a printer be linked to the test instrument so that readings are recorded automatically. Alternatively, they could be downloaded to a computer or data-logger at the end of the test.

8.122 The test stand should be positioned on each test point in turn and the reading taken when the instrument has stabilised.

8.123 When taking readings the test person should stand well downstream of the instrument.

8.124 Readings are to be taken at the test positions with the instrument probe facing the UCV terminal, commencing at the first test position on the left and working along the row from left to right at the specified height.

8.125 The instrument should be reset to the next specified height and the test repeated and so on.

8.126 Readings of temperature and humidity should be taken at the specified height in the centre of the terminal. The read-outs on the surgeon's panel should be recorded at the same time.

UCV discharge velocity test

8.127 Measurements of air velocity are to be taken at all test positions at 1m, 1·5m and 2m above floor level.

8.128 The average of the total readings taken should be no less than 0·4 m/s.

UCV entrainment test (Vertical systems only)

Rationale for the entrainment test

8.129 The performance of UCV systems may be compromised by room air being drawn into the ultra-clean airflow, a phenomenon known as “entrainment.” Significant levels of entrainment could lead to microbial contamination of items left exposed on instrument trolleys laid out beneath the canopy.

8.130 UCV systems having permanently fitted full sidewalls do not need to be tested, as the sidewalls physically prevent entrainment.

Principle of the test

8.131 A source of particles is produced outside of the UCV terminal and is used to challenge the system. A detector is placed within the ultra-clean airflow and used to determine the percentage penetration of the test particles at predefined locations under the UCV terminal footprint. The source and detector are moved in tandem around the UCV canopy and pairs of readings taken, from which the percentage penetration at specified locations is calculated. The degree of penetration should be below specified maximum limits if entrainment is to be declared not significant.

8.132 The entrainment test may be carried out using either of the following techniques:

- use DOPs to provide the challenge source at the specified release position and a photometer to measure the entrainment; or
- duct non-HEPA-filtered air to the specified release position and use a DPC to measure the entrainment.

Test set-up

8.133 The terminal face diffuser screen should be in place for these tests.

8.134 The test should be performed without any equipment in place beneath or closely adjacent to the UCV terminal.

8.135 The theatre lights should be moved to a central position beneath the terminal and raised to 2m above floor level, so as not to interfere with the peripheral airflows.

8.136 Take spot readings at the centre of the canopy, one metre from floor level, to establish that the room is within the specified temperature and humidity test conditions.

8.137 Set out the test grid as described previously.

8.138 For either of the following entrainment tests, a measurement of particle penetration through a representative section of the HEPA filter media is to be taken and used as the reference background level.

Test equipment, challenge source, measuring instrument and detector head

8.139 The challenge and detector equipment should be chosen so that:

- the tracer particles are mainly within the size range 0.3 to 5 microns and thus capable of remaining airborne for a substantial time;
- the particles used should not be able to penetrate the terminal filters in sufficient numbers to cause a background count that is more than 0.1% of the challenge count;
- the choice of particle and detector will enable a minimum of a three-logarithm (1,000-fold) range of counts to be recorded between the highest (that is, source) and lowest (that is, background) readings expected. (A concentration of approximately 10^5 particles per cubic metre of source air has been shown to be adequate.)

Source – Dispersed Oil Particles (D.O.P.)

8.140 The DOP generator should be able to produce a cloud of test particles in the form of a visible smoke. The test smoke should be delivered via an aperture so that it flows vertically downward from the lowermost edge of the partial wall, on the outside of the UCV canopy.

8.141 The test smoke is to be delivered via an aperture.

Note 4: To prevent undue contamination of the theatre and filters with deposits of oil, DOP should only be released for the minimum amount of time necessary to complete the test.

Challenge source – natural particles

8.142 The source unit should be a fan/blower or other method that takes non-HEPA-filtered air and expels it via a delivery head at the specified release position to provide the particle challenge. The challenge air should be delivered vertically downwards from the lowermost edge of the partial wall, on the outside of the UCV canopy, parallel to the airflow coming from the diffusers. The challenge air velocity should be the same as the measured average velocity at 2m from the terminal under test.

Note 5: The use of DOP for testing is gradually being phased out and replaced by a natural challenge measured with a DPC. At the time of writing research is under way to define more precisely a challenge source unit for natural particles. It is anticipated that such a unit, together with a matching test methodology, will become available during the life of this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum.

The detector (defined in terms of range and resolution)

8.143 This may be a photometer or a DPC. It is recommended that a printer be linked to the test instrument so that readings are recorded automatically. The instrument should be capable of sampling a minimum a 28.3 litres of air per minute and in the case of the DPC, provide readings for particle size ranges from 0.3 microns to 5.0 microns and greater. The instrument should be compliant with the requirements of BS EN ISO 14644-1. An alternative instrument may be used providing it is of no lesser specification.

Test positions and orientation of source and detector

8.144 The test positions should be at the centre of each test square, as defined for the velocity test.

8.145 For rectangular UCV terminals, measurements of penetration are to be taken at the four corner test squares of the test grid and at intermediate positions along the line of test squares between the corners. The number of intermediate test positions will be as equally spaced as possible around the periphery with no fewer than 3 and no more than 5 complete test squares between test positions.

8.146 A further series of measurements are to be obtained around the periphery of the inner zone. Measurements of penetration are to be taken at the four corner test squares of the inner zone of the test grid and if necessary at intermediate positions along the line of test squares between the corners as equally spaced as possible, with no fewer than 3 and no more than 5 complete test squares between test positions.

8.147 A single measurement should be taken at the geometrical centre of the UCV terminal footprint. The centre measurement will be taken with the detector head mounted vertically upwards 1 metre above floor level.

8.148 The centre of the challenge particle source should be aligned with the centre of the designated test square, with its longer edge against the outer edge of the partial wall and delivering the challenge from the lower edge of the partial wall. The air containing challenge particles is directed vertically downwards from the lower edge of the partial wall, in a plane parallel to the adjacent partial wall. Where there is physical interference due to obstructions such as gas pendants, the source will be moved to the next available non-obstructed test-square location nearest to the stipulated sampling position. The detector should then also be moved to remain opposite the source.

8.149 In the case of non-rectangular terminals, an interpretation of the above strategy should be adopted that will yield a no less searching examination of the unit's ability to control entrainment.

Test method

8.150 The sampling head of the detector instrument is mounted on a test stand with its sampling orifice facing outwards horizontally from the centre of the UCV canopy, 1m above floor level. The sampling head should be orientated at right angles to the partial wall when sampling along the sides of the test grid but will be set to bisect the angle when measuring at the corner test positions (Figure 88 illustrates the challenge and detector orientations when evaluating a 2.8m x 2.8m UCV terminal).

8.151 The test will commence at the first test position, this being designated the leftmost corner of the test grid when facing the wall housing the surgeon's panel. The penetration will also be measured at the corresponding test point on the inner zone commencing at the corner nearest to the first test position. When these tests have been completed, the source and detector equipment should be moved to the next test positions, working around the test grid in a clockwise direction.

8.152 The test stand should be positioned on each test point in turn and a pair of readings (challenge, then penetration) taken when the instrument has stabilised. The detector should be set to take a reading over a 15 second sample interval.

8.153 When taking a reading the test person should stand within the UCV terminal footprint but not in the same quadrant as the detector head.

Analysis and interpretation

8.154 The following standard is to be achieved:

- penetration to be not greater than 10% of the challenge at each test position in the outer zone;
- penetration to be no greater than 1% of the challenge at each test position in the inner zone;
- penetration to be no greater than 0·1% of the challenge at the centre of the test grid.

If a result is close to, or above the given limits, then a further reading must be obtained using a longer time base (1 minute) and the penetration must not exceed the given limit.

Basis of the test

8.155 Whyte W, Shaw BH, Freeman MAR. An evaluation of a partial-walled laminar-flow operating room. *J Hyg Camb* 1974; 73: 61 – 75.

Whyte W, Lidwell OM, Lowbury EJL, Blowers R. Suggested bacteriological standards for air in ultraclean operating rooms. *J Hosp Infect* 1983; 4: 133 – 139.

UCV visualisation

8.156 The use of smoke to gain an understanding of the overall performance of the system may prove useful at this stage in the validation process but cannot be relied on to produce a contractually definitive measure of performance.

UCV noise level

8.157 An industrial-grade sound-level meter to BS EN 61672 Type 2 fitted with a muff should be used to check the noise level. The instrument should be calibrated using a matched sound source prior to each set of readings.

Vertical systems

8.158 The noise level readings should be taken at typical normal listening positions 1·5m above floor level and at least 1m from any surface and not on any line of symmetry. Measurements should be taken under the centre of each quadrant of the UCV terminal and the four readings averaged.

Horizontal systems

8.159 The noise level readings are to be taken at typical normal listening positions 1·5m above floor level on the test line. The width of the unit should be divided in two and a measurement taken in the centre of each half but avoiding any line of symmetry. The two readings should be averaged.

8.160 Measurements should also be taken in each room of the suite.

8.161 In the event of a contractual deficiency a Type 1 precision-grade sound-level meter complying with BS EN 61672 should be used. Readings should be taken at the positions specified above and in each case the logarithmic mean of the results should be calculated in order to determine the noise level. Further information can be found in SHTM 08-01 (2011).

8.162 For vertical or horizontal systems, the noise level shall not exceed:

- 50NR [55dB(A)] – for UCV operating rooms and spaces without doors that open directly on to it (for example the scrub);
- 40NR [45dB(A)] – for all other peripheral rooms of the suite.

UCV control system checks

Temperature

8.163 The readings of temperature taken under or in front of the UCV unit should be within ±1 K of each other and the read-out on the surgeon's panel.

Humidity

8.164 The readings of humidity taken under or in front of the UCV unit should be within ±5% of each other and the read-out on the surgeon's panel.

Direct-reading differential pressure gauges

8.165 The differential pressure across the terminal filter(s) should be measured to confirm the accuracy of the indicated reading of any gauge.

Control functions

8.166 The operation of all control functions provided on the surgeon's panel should be proved for conformity with the design specification.

8.167 If an auxiliary panel has been fitted then its interlocking with the main surgeon's panel control functions must be proved to conform to the design specification.

Panel indicator lights

8.168 The panel indicator lights should illuminate as appropriate when the control functions are selected or warning levels are reached

BEMS interface

8.169 The operation, monitoring and alarm functions must be proved to conform to those set out in the design specification.

UCV theatre microbiological tests

8.170 There is little value in performing microbiological sampling in a new theatre supplied with ultra-clean ventilation. The foregoing filter challenge tests, air velocity measurements and entrainment test should have proved that the system operates satisfactorily and achieves the contracted level of performance. The HEPA filters will remove bacteria-sized particles from the air supplied through the UCV terminal. Therefore there will be an insignificant number of bacterial and/or fungal CFUs present until the Theatre is actually used.

8.171 Once the theatre has been taken into use, microbial sampling during a surgical procedure should help to confirm the satisfactory performance of the system and discipline of the users. Before commencing bacteriological testing, the room and its ventilation system should have achieved a steady state condition: (see also Paragraph 8.74)

8.172 The installation should be tested during surgical procedure at intervals between the time of the first incision and final closure of the wound. On average, the air sampled within 300mm of the wound should not contain more than 10 CFU/m^3.

UCV validation report

8.173 Following validation a full report detailing the findings should be produced. The report shall conclude with a clear statement as to whether the UCV theatre suite achieved or did not achieve the standard set out above.

8.174 A copy of the report should be lodged with the following groups:

- operating department;
- infection control;
- estates and facilities.

Appendix 1: Recommended air-change rates

Application	Ventilation	ac/Hour	Pressure (Pascals)	Supply Filter	Noise (NR)	Temp (°C)	Comments For further information see Section 6
General ward	S / N	6	-	G4	30	18-28	
Communal ward toilet	E	10	-ve	-	40	-	
Single room	S / E / N	6	0 or –ve	G4	30	18-28	
Single room WC	E	3	-ve	-	40	-	
Clean utility	S	6	+ve	G4	40	18-28	
Dirty utility	E	6	-ve	-	40	-	
Ward Isolation room	-	-	-	-	-	-	See SHPN 4; Supplement 1
Infectious disease Iso room	E	10	-5	G4	30	18-28	Extract filtration may be required
Neutropenic patient ward	S	10	+10	H12	30	18-28	
Critical Care Areas	S	10	+10	F7	30	*18-25*	Isolation room may be –ve press
Birthing Room	S & E	15	-ve	G4	40	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path
SCBU	S	6	+ve	F7	30	*18-25*	Isolation room may be –ve press
Preparation room (Lay-up)	S	>25	35	F7*	40	*18-25*	*H12 if a lay-up for a UCV Theatre
Preparation room / bay sterile pack store	S	10	25	F7	40	*18-25*	*50NR if a bay in a UCV Theatre
Operating theatre	S	25	25	F7	40	*18-25*	
UCV Operating theatre	S	25*	25	H12	40	*18-25*	Fresh air rate; excludes re-circulation
Anaesthetic room	S & E	15	>10	F7	40	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path
Theatre Sluice/dirty utility	E	>20	-5	-	40	-	
Recovery room	S & E	15	0	F7	35	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path

Table A1

Application	Ventilation	ac/Hour	Pressure (Pascals)	Supply Filter	Noise (NR)	Temp (°C)	Comments For further information see Section 6
Recovery room	S & E	15	0	F7	35	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path
Cardiac catheterisation lab	S	15	+ve	F7	40	*18-22*	
Endoscopy room	S	15	+ve	F7	40	*18-25*	
Endoscopy cleaning	E	>10	-ve	-	40	-	
Day case theatre	S	15	+ve	F7	40	*18-25*	
Treatment room	S	10	+ve	F7	35	*18-25*	
Pharmacy aseptic suite	S	20	#	H14	-	*18-22*	# See EGGMP (Orange guide) a
Cat 3 or 4 containment room	#	>20	#	H14*	-	*18-22*	# See ACDP guide; *Filter in extract
Post mortem room	S & E	S = 10 E = 12	-ve	G4	35	*18–22*	Provide clean air-flow path
Specimen store	E	-	-ve	-	-	-	Fan accessible from outside of store

Table A1 continued

Notes: 18°C-22°C indicates the range over which the temperature may float

18°C-22°C indicates the range over which the temperature should be capable of being controlled

S = supply N = natural ventilation

E = extract [a] – European guidelines on good manufacturing practice published by the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Authority (MHRA)

Appendix 2: Hierarchy of cleanliness

			Air-flow rate for bacterial contaminant dilution	
Class	**Room**	**Nominal pressure (Pa) a**	**Flow in or supply m^3/s**	**Flow out or extract m^3/s**
Sterile	Preparation room (a) lay-up (b) sterile pack store Operating room Scrub bay b	 35 25 25 25	See standard schemes in Appendix 3 for recommended design values	
Clean	Sterile pack bulk store Anaesthetic room c Scrub room	 +ve 14 c 14	6 ac/h The greater of 15 ac/hr or 0.15 -	- The greater of 15 ac/hr or 0.15 0.10
Transitional	Recovery room Clean corridor General access corridor Changing rooms Plaster room	3 0 0 3 3	15 ac/hr d e e 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr	15 ac/hr d 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr
Dirty	Service corridor Disposal room	0 -5 or 0	- -	f 0.41 or 0.10

Table A2

Notes (applicable to Table A2):

a. Nominal room pressures are given to facilitate setting up of pressure relief dampers, the calculation process, and the sizing of transfer devices. In practice, the resultant pressures are not critical, provided the desired airflow rates and movement are achieved.

b. An open or semi-open bay is considered to be part of the operating room; provided air movement is satisfactory, no specific extract is required. However if the layout means that air movement is poor, a local extract may be required to control local condensation on the building surfaces, which can result in mould growth.

c. For design purposes, anaesthetic should be assumed to be at 14Pa. When commissioning 10Pa is considered suitable.

d. 15 ac/hr are considered necessary for the control of anaesthetic gas pollution.

e. Supply airflow rate necessary to make up 7 ac/hr after taking into account secondary air from cleaner areas.

f. No dilution requirement. Temperature control requirements only.

Type	Pressure difference - Pa						
	5	10	15	20	25	30	40
Single door (CDB Size 2.4.3.2.6.)	.03	.05	.06	.06	.07	.07	.08
Double door (CDB)	.04	.08	.10	.11	.12	.13	.14
High permanent length of 3mm gap	.004	.008	.010	.011	.012	.012	.013

Table A3: Leakage flows in m^3/s through closed door gaps

Note: CDB = Component Data Base

It should be noted that many doors are now fitted with cold smoke seals as standard. These will significantly reduce the door leakage rate when new and undamaged. It is therefore recommended that provision for the design leakage is factored into the sizing of the appropriate transfer grille or pressure stabiliser. Failure to do this will result in air gap whistles and doors being held partially open by air pressure.

Factory-assembled door-sets with a steel frame and pre-hung leaves have become common. There is effectively no leakage across these doors when closed. Therefore, when this type of door assembly is fitted, the door leakage can be ignored and the design airflow into the room reduced accordingly. The design airflow would then become that required either (i) for open door protection, or (ii) to achieve the specified air-change rate - whichever is the greater.

Room class		Dirty	Transitional	Clean	Sterile
Sterile	Hatch Single door Double door	0.3 0.47 0.95	0.24 0.39 0.75	0.18 0.28 0.57	 0 or 0.28 a 0 or 0.57 a
Clean	Single door Double door	0.39 0.75	0.28 0.57	0 or 0.28 a 0 or 0.57 a	
Transitional	Single door Double door	0.28 0.57	0 or 0.28 a 0 or 0.57 a		
Dirty	Single door Double door	0 0	Open single door = 0.80m x 2.01m high Open double door = 1.80m x 2.01m high		

Table A4: Recommended air flow rates in m^3/s through a doorway between rooms of different cleanliness to control cross-contamination

Designer's Notes:

a. The degree of protection required at an open doorway between rooms is dependent upon the degree of difference in cleanliness between them.

b. Flow rate required between rooms within the same class tends to zero as class reduces.

c. If two rooms are of equal cleanliness, no flow is required (in practice there will be an interchange in either direction) and the design of the air movement will assume zero air-flow. In certain cases, however, interchange is not permitted and protection airflow of 0.28 is assumed in the design, for example, in the case of a preparation room used as a "lay up".

		Effect on other rooms	
Door open between	Resultant pressure in these rooms (Pa)	Room	Pressure (Pa)
Operating room and corridor or Scrub bay and corridor	0	Anaesthetic Preparation – lay up Disposal Preparation – sterile pack store	0 12 -6 5
Operating room and anaesthetic room (or other series room with double doors)	17	Preparation – lay up Disposal Preparation – sterile pack store	26 -9 22
Operating room and disposal room or Operating room and preparation room	25	No change	
Anaesthetic room and corridor (or other series room with double doors)	0	Preparation – lay-up Disposal Operating room Preparation – sterile pack store	30 -6 20 25
Preparation room – corridor Disposal room & corridor	0	No change	
Disposal room & outer corridor	0	No change	

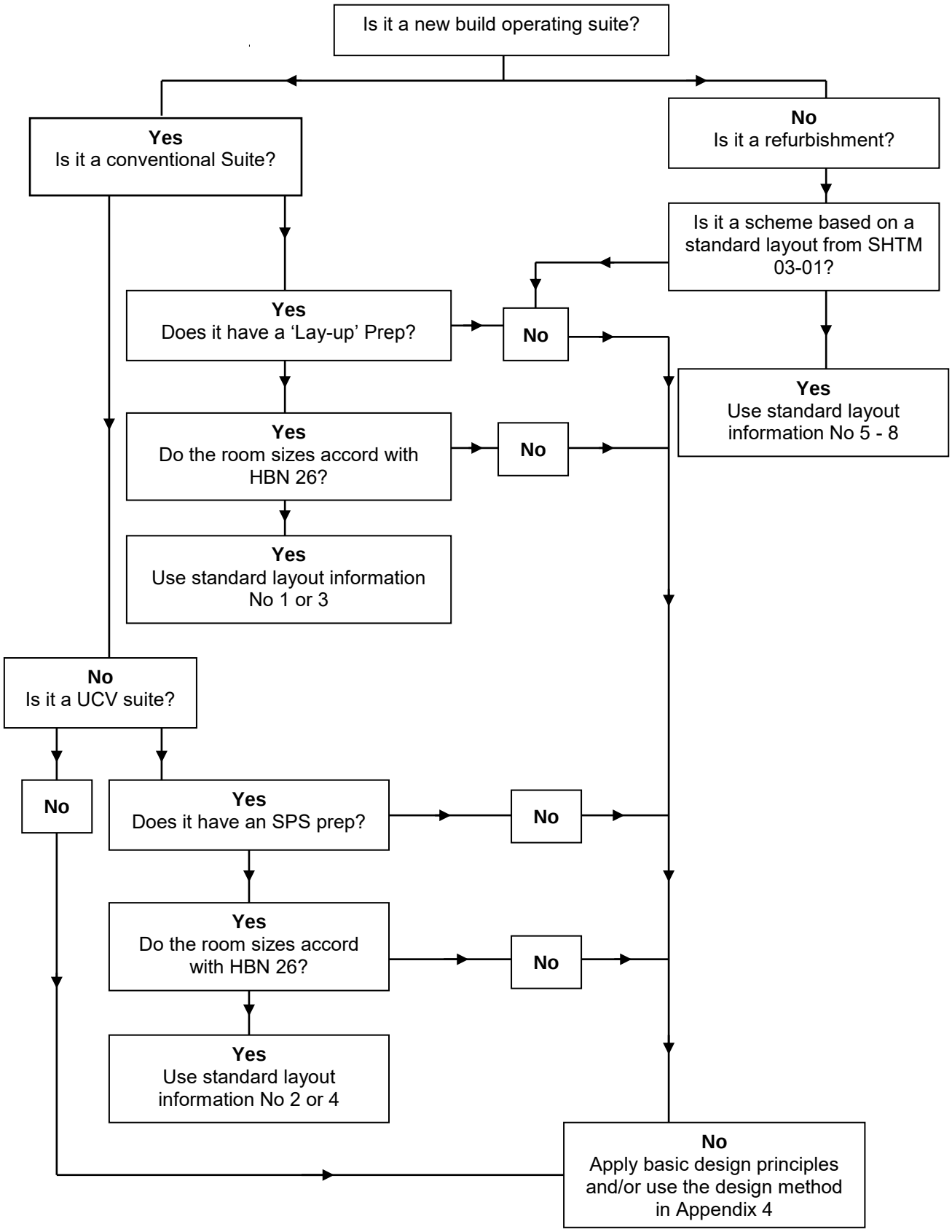
Table A5: Typical pressures in an operating suite when a given door is open

Notes: 1. The room differential pressure protects against reverse flows when the door is closed.

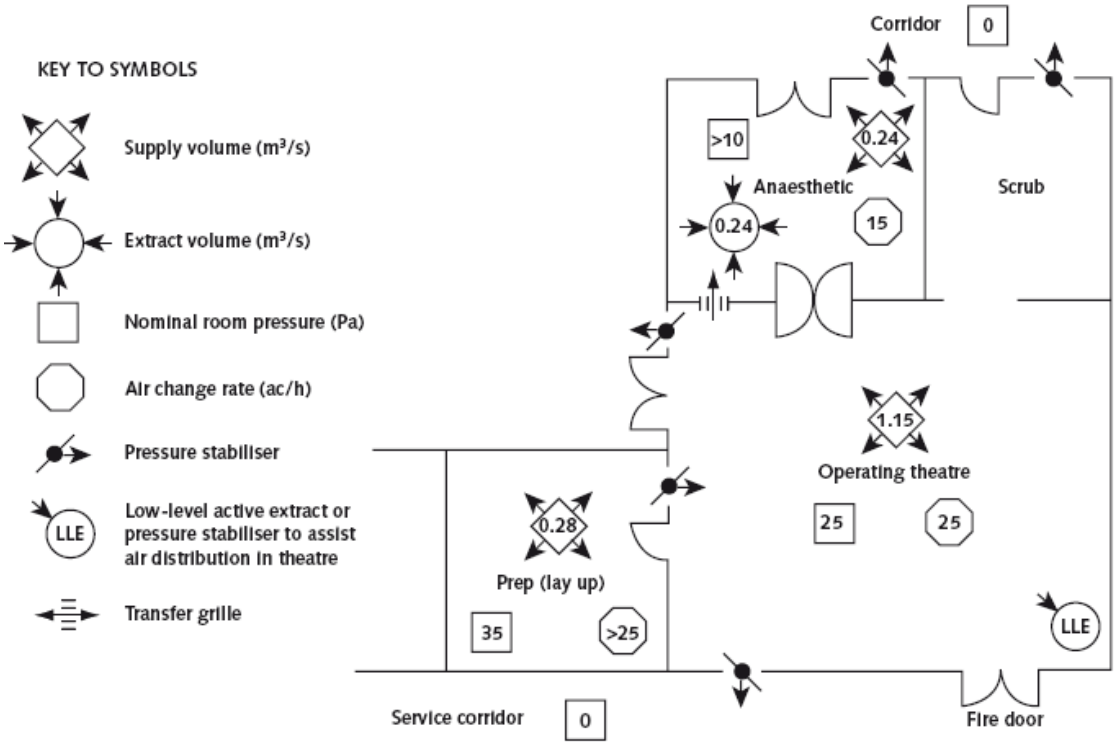
2. The flow of air through a doorway protects against reverse airflow when the door is open.

3. Pressure stabilisers control flow and ensure a known air-flow path between rooms when doors are closed and reduce back-flow between rooms when doors to other rooms are open.

Appendix 3: Operating suite design logic



New Standard Layout N° 1 - Suitable for a typical conventional theatre suite (Room sizes as specified in HBN 26)



Room	Size m³ Derived from HBN26	Air-Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15
Anaesthetic	57	15	>10	0.24
Lay-Up-Prep	36	>25	35	0.28**
Scrub	*	-	25	-

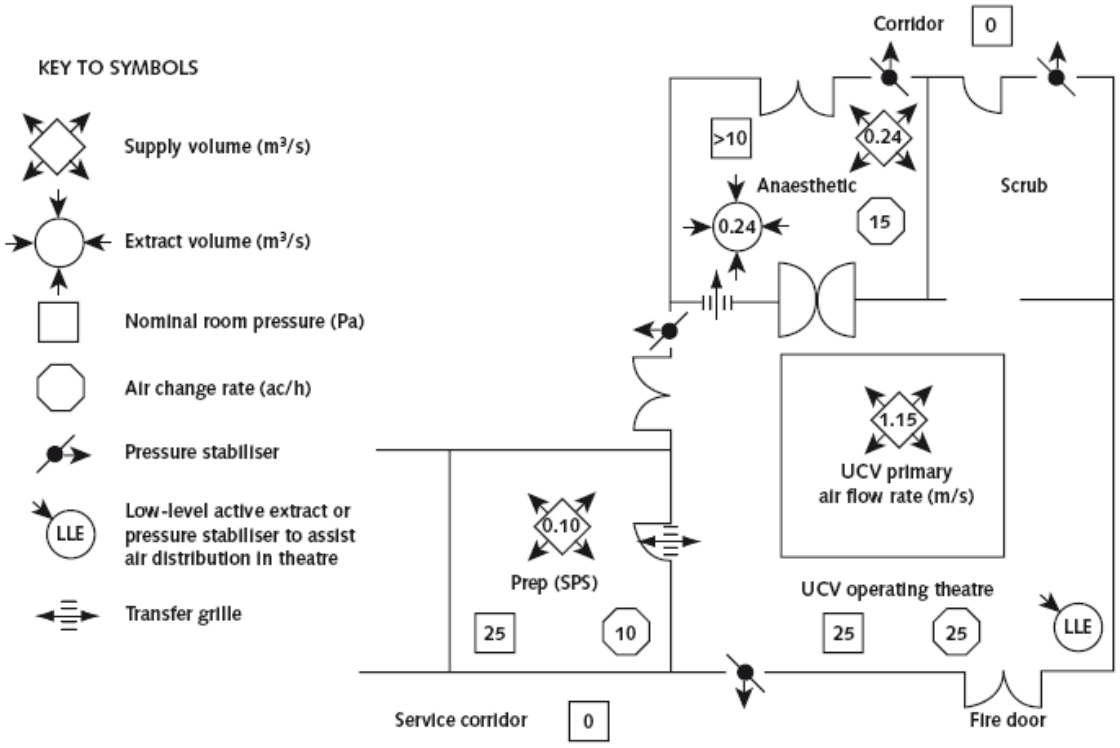
*This is a separate scrub and is not considered as being part of the theatre volume.

**Interchange is not permitted between the theatre and lay-up prep; therefore an airflow protection of 0.28 + 0.06 closed-door airflow is required as a minimum.

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilisers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N° 2 - Suitable for a typical UCV theatre suite (Room sizes as specified in HBN 26)



Room	Size m³ Derived from HBN26	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15**
Anaesthetic	57	15	>10	0.24
Sterile Prep	36	25	25	0.10
Scrub	*	-	25	-

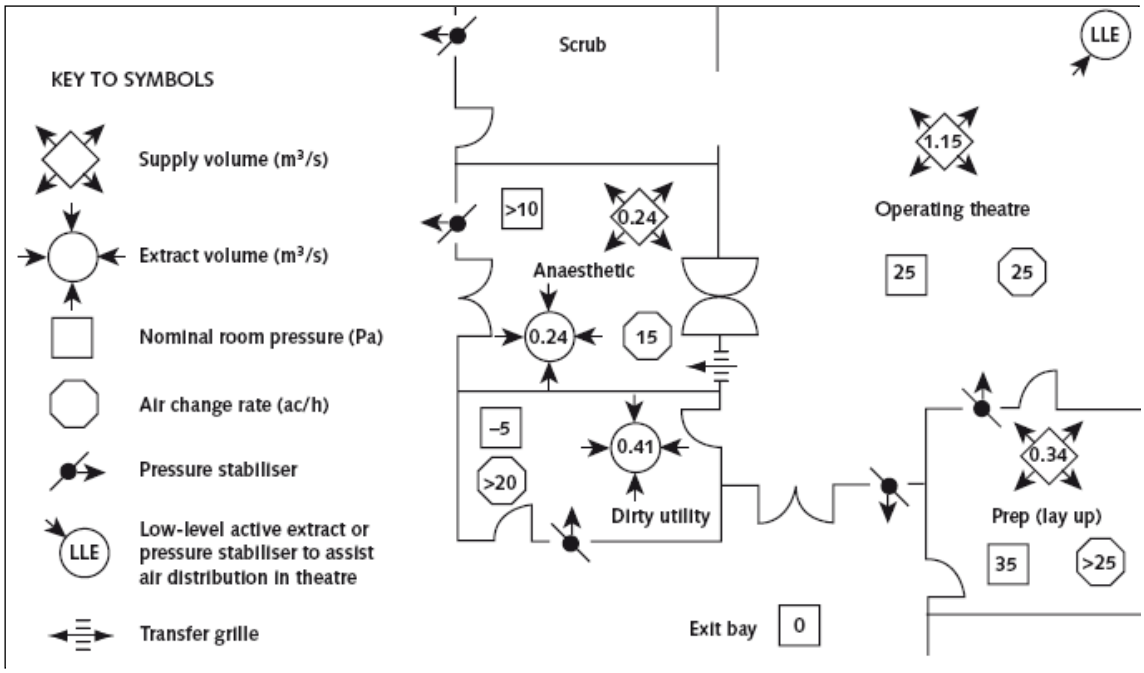
*Separate scrub and not considered as part of theatre volume

**Primary Fresh air Volume Only

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilizers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N° 3 - Suitable for a typical Conventional theatre suite (Layout and room sizes are as illustrated in HBN 26)



Room	Size m³ Derived from HBN26	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15
Anaesthetic	57	15	14	0.24
Lay-Up Prep	36	>25	35	0.34**
Scrub	*	-	25	-
Dirty Utility	36	-	-5	0.41

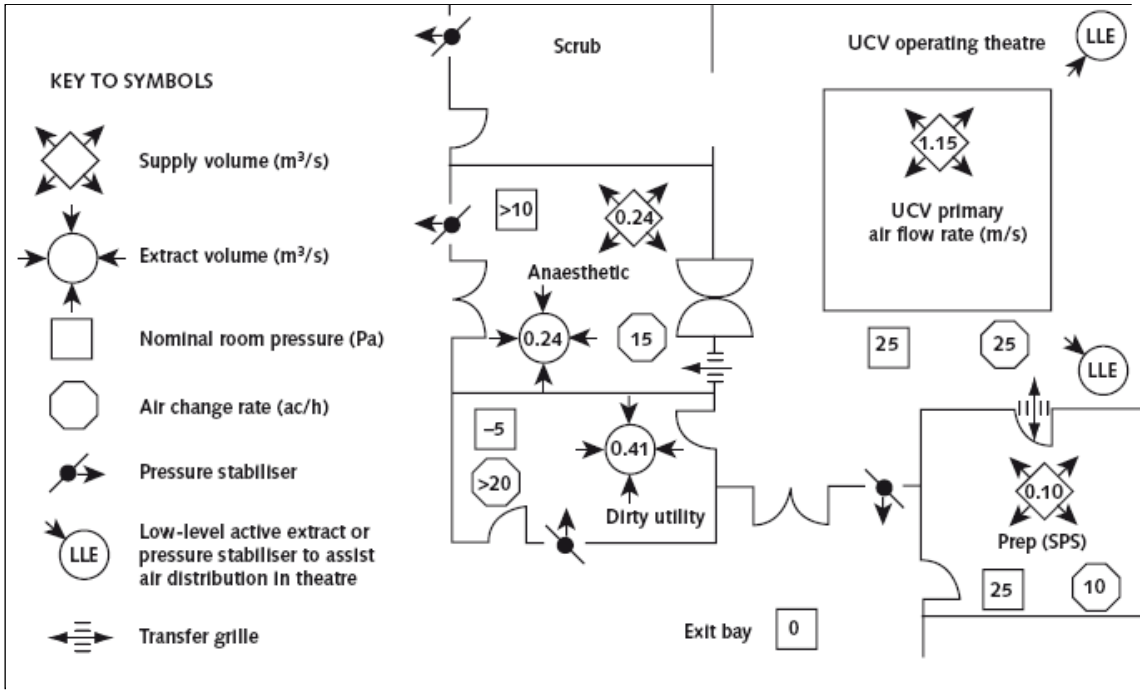
*Separate scrub not considered part of theatre volume.

**Interchange is not permitted between the theatre and lay up prep therefore as Table 4 an airflow protection of 0.28 + 0.06 closed door air flow is required as a minimum.

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilizers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N° 4 - Suitable for a typical UCV theatre suite (Layout and room sizes are as illustrated in HBN 26)



Room	Size m³ Derived from HBN26	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15**
Anaesthetic	57	15	>10	0.24
Sterile Pack Prep	36	10	25	0.10
Scrub	*	-	25	-
Dirty Utility	36	-	-5	0.41

* Separate scrub not considered part of theatre volume

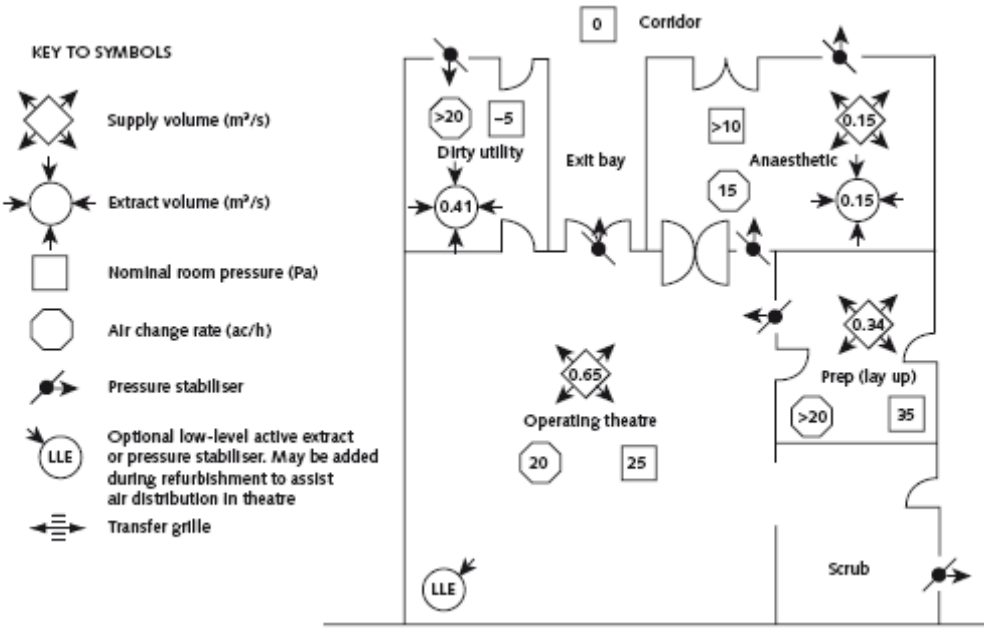
**Primary Fresh air Volume Only

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilizers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N° 5 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard plan '1b' typical layout for a conventional theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.

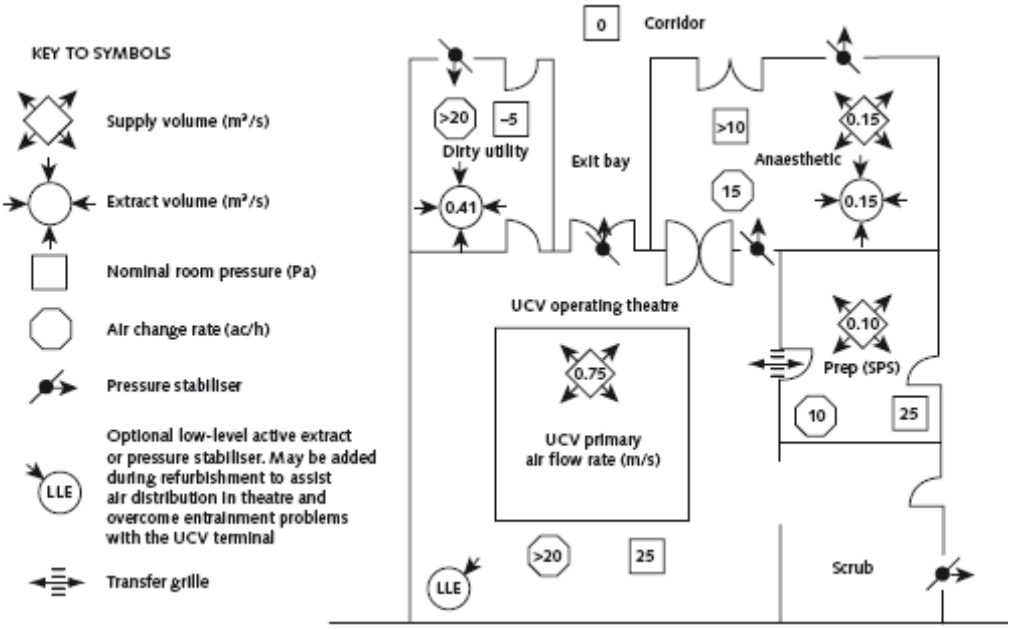


Room	Size m³	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to Be measured on site	20	25	0.65
Anaesthetic		15	14	0.15
Lay-Up Prep		-	35	0.34
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	-5	0.41

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor.

Standard layout No 6 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard Plan '1a' Typical layout for a UCV theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.



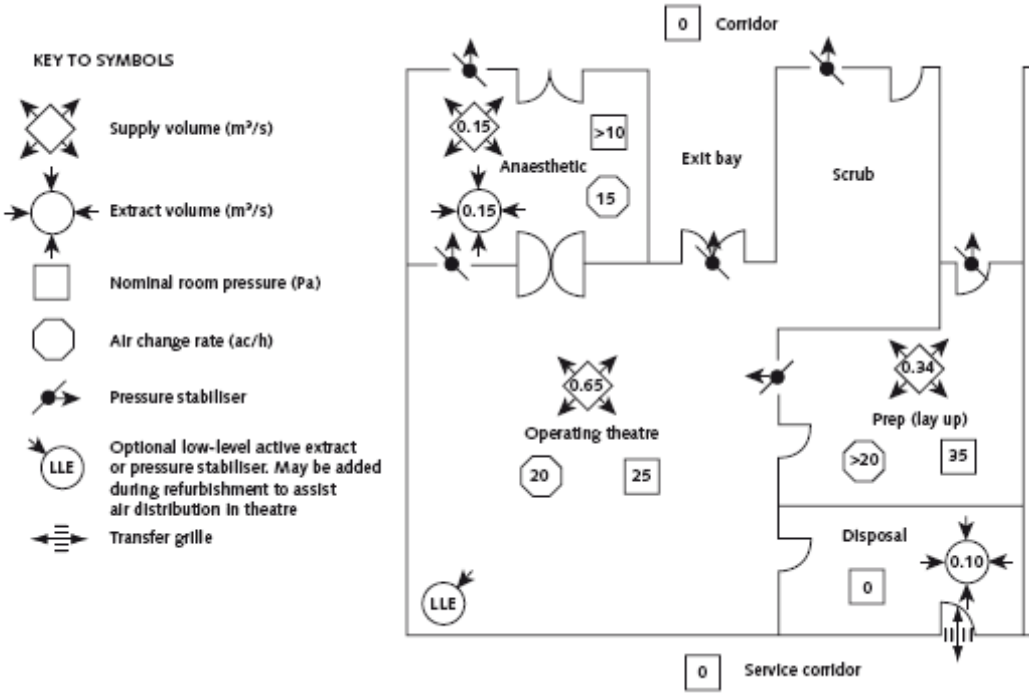
Room	Size m^3	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to be measured on site	20	25	0.75*
Anaesthetic		15	>10	0.15
Sterile Pack Prep		10	25	0.1
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	-5	0.41

*Primary fresh airflow volume

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor.

Standard layout N° 7 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard Plan '5b' Typical layout for a conventional theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.

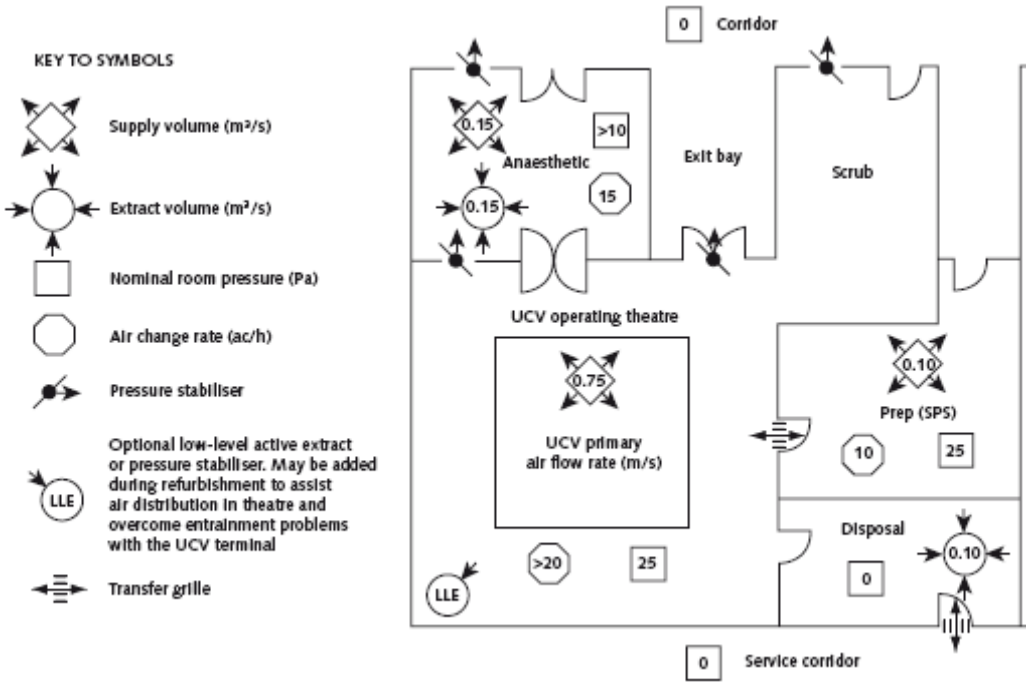


Room	Size m³	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to be measured on site	20	25	0.65
Anaesthetic		15	>10	0.15
Lay-Up Prep		>20	35	0.34
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	0	0.1

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor. Alternatively the disposal room could be omitted and replaced with a disposal hatch between the theatre and corridor.

Standard layout N° 8 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard Plan '5a' Typical layout for a UCV theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.



Room	Size m³	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to be measured on site	20	25	0.75*
Anaesthetic		15	>10	0.15
Sterile Prep		10	25	0.1
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	0	0.1

*Primary fresh air-flow volume only

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor. Alternatively the disposal room could be omitted and replaced with a disposal hatch between the theatre and corridor.

Appendix 4: Design of air-movement control schemes for operating theatres.

General

A4.1 Standard operating suite design solutions are given in Appendix 3. If these standard solutions cannot be used, the following procedure should be adopted, which will result in an acceptable design. Note that the method employed can equally be used to provide a design solution to a ventilated suite of rooms for any application.

A4.2 The method is concerned with the calculation of airflow rates to ensure that correct air movement occurs between rooms when any one door is open. Under most circumstances, the air quantities required for air-movement control will approximate to those for either temperature control or bacterial contaminant dilution. This flow rate is sufficient to control the effects of any slight reverse flows occurring when a door is opened.

A4.3 The progression through the design procedure is shown in the airflow design procedure chart (Figure A4/3) and is supported by worksheets WS1 to WS7 described in Paragraph A4.4. It is recommended that a plan of the suite and an airflow network be made (Figure A4/2) to collate all information. Flow rates, air-transfer devices etc should be entered as required. The remainder of this Appendix may be treated as reference data to assist in the various steps. The following symbols are used:

S_S – supply airflow rate for summer temperature control;

S_W – supply airflow rate for winter temperature control;

S_D – supply airflow rate for dilution of bacterial contaminants;

S_L – supply airflow rate for heat loss;

S_G – supply airflow rate for heat gain;

E_D – extract airflow rate for dilution of bacterial contaminants;

S_F – final supply airflow rates;

E_F – final extract flow rates;

S_{AMC} – air-supply flow rate for air-movement control;

E_{AMC} – air-extract flow for air-movement control;

L_{OUT} – leakage airflow rate outward;

L_{IN} – leakage airflow rate inward;

$\sum_{OUT}$ – total airflow rate outward;

$\sum_{IN}$ – total airflow rate inward.

A4.4 To simplify the procedure, standard worksheets (WS1 to WS7) have been devised. For each operating suite, a set is required comprising one each of WS1, WS3, WS5, WS6a, WS6b and WS7, one WS4 for each corridor and one WS2 to cover each peripheral room. WS2 has five versions:

- WS2a single flow;
- WS2b parallel/series multi-flow;
- WS2c parallel multi-flow or series multi-flow (unbalanced);
- WS2d series multi-flow (balanced); and
- WS2e bay (semi-open).

Peripheral room type

A4.5 The rooms in the operating suite other than the operating room and corridor are referred to as peripheral rooms. Peripheral rooms have been classified according to the flows in and out. These room classifications are defined below in Paragraphs A4.6 – A4.11.

Single flow

A4.6 This is a room with only one door and a net surplus of supply or extract air.

Parallel multi-flow

A4.7 This is a room with two or more doors through each of which the air-flows either outwards (high-pressure) or inwards (low-pressure) (for example the Prep (lay-up) in standard layout 5).

Parallel/series multi-flow

A4.8 This is a room having a net surplus of supply or extract and with two or more doors. One or more doors will be to an area of equal cleanliness and need not be protected; hence, the flow may vary between inwards and outwards, the remaining door being to an area of greater or lesser cleanliness (for example the Prep (SPS) in standard layout 6).

Series multi-flow (unbalanced)

A4.9 This is a room having a net surplus of supply or extract and with two or more doors. Air flows inwards through one or more doors and outwards through one or more doors.

Series multi-flow (balanced)

A4.10 This is a room as in Paragraph A4.9 above, but having either no mechanical ventilation or no net surplus of supply or extract. (for example an anaesthetic room).

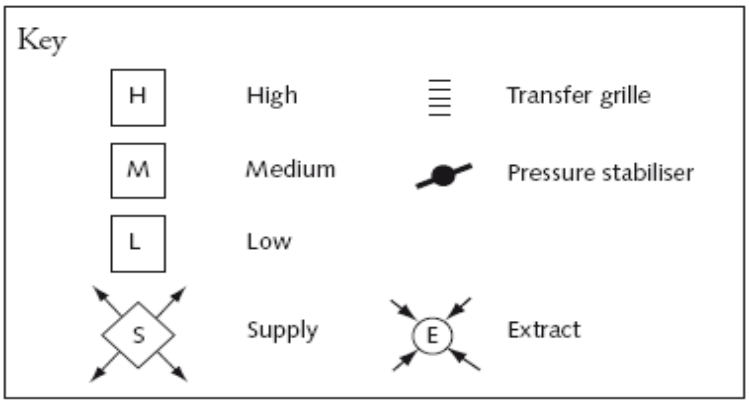
Bay

A4.11 A room that has a permanent opening to the operating room may be considered as a bay off the latter (for example a scrub). Two categories exist:

- open bay – the opening is larger than a normal single door opening. The bay may be considered as part of the main room;
- semi-open bay – the opening is no larger than a normal single door opening. In this case it is possible to protect the bay from the main room by provision of air supply or extract in the bay, or by passing air to or from another area.

Air-movement control in peripheral rooms

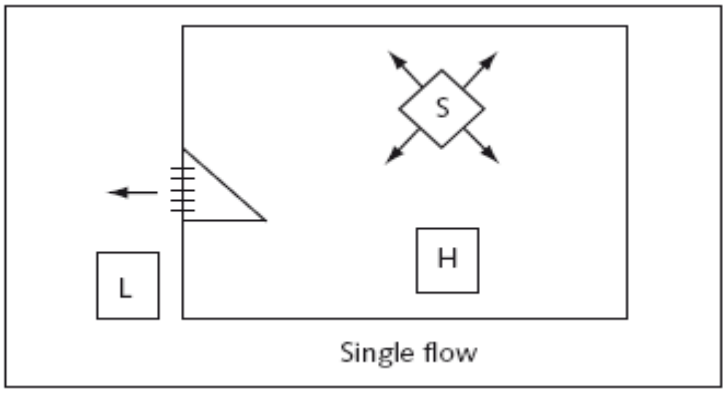
A4.12 For the design of air-movement control, two types of air-transfer device are considered. These are transfer grilles and pressure stabilisers. Each has a particular field of application within the design, as described in Paragraphs A4.34 – A4.43. Air movement is controlled in each of the different room types described in Paragraphs A4.13 – A4.31.



Note: This key applies to each diagram in A4.13 - A4.27.

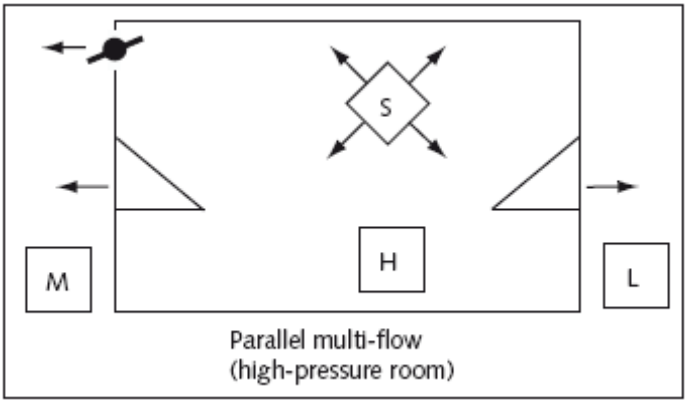
Single flow rooms

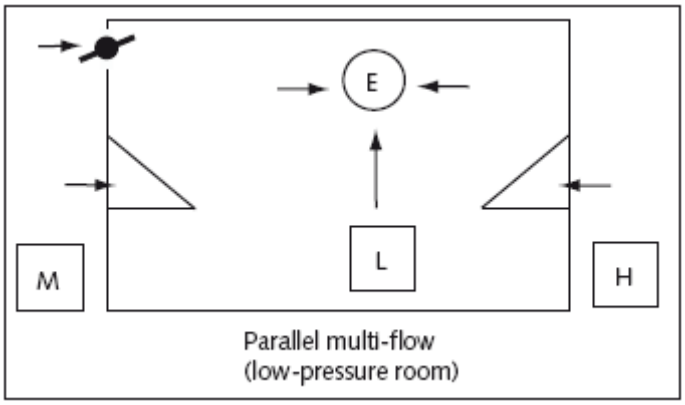
A4.13 An appropriately sized transfer grille should be located in or adjacent to the door of each single flow room to relieve the pressure differences across the door when closed.



Parallel multi-flow rooms

A4.14 The pressure difference across the closed doors must be relieved, but transfer grilles are not appropriate where two doors lead to areas of different pressures, because reverse flow could occur when the other door is open. For this reason, pressure stabilisers are used.



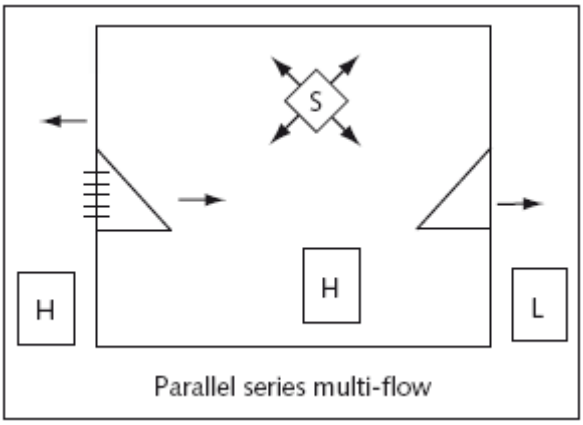


A4.15 These rooms will be either high-pressure or low-pressure with respect to the adjacent areas (see preparation lay-up room and disposal room, respectively, in standard layout 5). The pressure-relief damper is always situated between the room and area, which results in the smaller differential pressure to ensure best use of air.

A4.16 Just as reverse flow can occur if transfer grilles are used, it can similarly occur via door gaps when the other door is opened. It is not possible to avoid this, except by using air locks, but due to the low flow rates and short durations involved, this is not considered to be of importance.

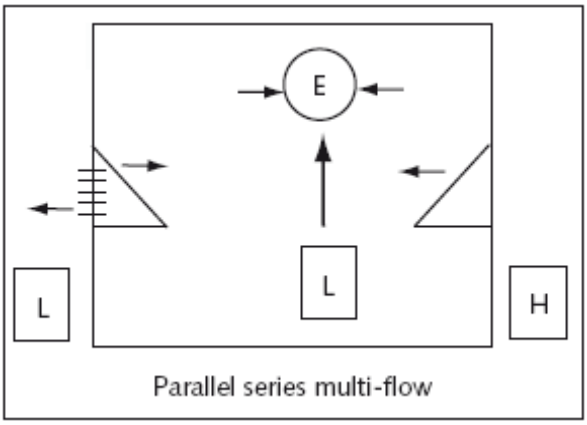
Parallel-series multi-flow rooms

A4.17 These rooms are similar to those in Paragraph A4.14 above, but because the room is of equal cleanliness to one of the adjacent rooms the nominal pressures will be equal and air may flow through the adjoining doorway in either direction. (for example the Prep (SPS) in standard layout 6).



Parallel series multi-flow

A4.18 Where the nominal room pressure equals that of the higher-pressure adjacent room, the best use of air is by supplying air required for bacterial dilution only and allowing this to exhaust via a transfer grille to the area of equal cleanliness. The doorway to the lower pressure area is protected by the combination of the supply air and the air that will flow inwards through the transfer grille from the area of equal cleanliness.

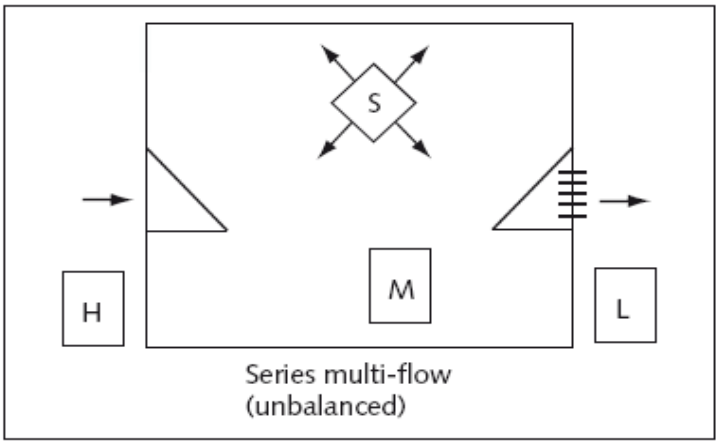


Parallel series multi-flow

A4.19 Conversely, where the nominal pressure equals that of the lower-pressure adjacent room, extract ventilation and a transfer grille to the lower pressure adjacent room should be provided. (for example, the disposal room in standard layout 8).

Series multi-flow (unbalanced)

A4.20 These rooms are somewhat similar to those in Paragraph A4.15 above, but because the pressure lies between that of the rooms on either side, the back-flow problem does not exist.



Series multi-flow (unbalanced)

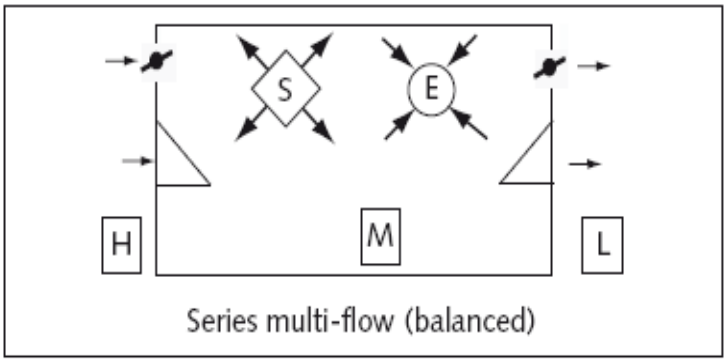
A4.21 Where the room has a net surplus of mechanical supply air, a transfer grille should be located in or adjacent to the door through which air flows outwards, and the mechanical supply flow rate to the room should be chosen to give protection when this door is open.

A4.22 Where the room has a net surplus of mechanical extract air, a transfer grille should be located adjacent to the door through which the air flows inwards, and the mechanical extract flow rate to the room should be chosen to give protection when this door is open.

A4.23 The grille must be sized for the protection requirement of the opposing door when open. When the room on the high-pressure side depressurises, there is a possibility of back-flow through gaps around the door, but this problem may be ignored.

Series multi-flow (balanced)

A4.24 In these rooms, a transfer device adjacent to each doorway is required in order to provide a flow path for the air required to protect the opposing door when opened.



Series multi-flow (balanced)

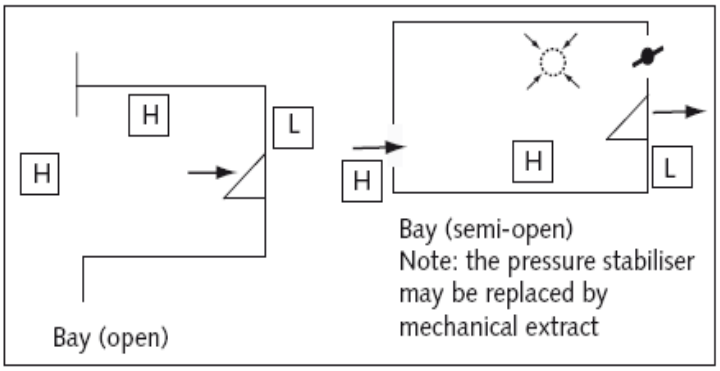
A4.25 These transfer devices will normally be pressure stabilisers, although transfer grilles may be used where a large amount of excess air is to be exhausted from the operating room when all doors are closed. (for example, anaesthetic rooms).

A4.26 The calculation procedure is to assume that pressure stabilisers are being used; then (if there is sufficient excess air) change to transfer grilles as described in Paragraph A4.50.

Bay

Open bay

A4.27 A bay of the open type (for example scrub-up) is considered to be part of the operating room. Provided air movement is satisfactory, no specific extract is required.



Semi-open bay

A4.28 In a bay of the semi-open type, protection of one area from the other is possible. (For example scrub-up).

A4.29 As stated previously, the need for protection between operating room and scrub-room is not very great. Better use of air can therefore be achieved in this case by installing a pressure stabiliser between the scrub-room and clean corridor. This will allow a flow of air through the scrub-room at all times, except when a door is opened elsewhere in the suite. The pressure stabiliser will then close and the air will be diverted to the other door. When it is considered necessary to protect the scrub-room at all times, either a transfer grille to the corridor or mechanical extract in the scrub-room should be provided.

Operating room

A4.30 Once the peripheral rooms have been considered, the operating room requirements may then be decided and the supply flow rate required for air-movement control calculated. This flow rate should be such that, with any one door open, the correct air movement directions are maintained. There will be one door in the suite that will require the largest supply flow rate to the operating room for protection when open. This is called the “key door” and is discussed separately in Paragraph A4.33. Use of this concept avoids repetitive

calculations for each door in turn. Having established the required supply flow rate, a relief route must be provided to the clean corridor for any excess air when the doors are closed. This would be via transfer grilles or pressure stabilisers through a series-flow room or via pressure stabilisers to the clean corridor directly.

Corridors

A4.31 All surplus air from the suite, except that lost through structure leakage and any passing to the outer corridor, will arrive in the patient/staff corridor. Should this air be insufficient to achieve the required air-change rate (see Appendices 1 and 2), some additional air supply should be provided. (The air balance should take account of structural leakage.)

Door opening

A4.32 Whereas the resulting pressures are dependent on ductwork layout, room relationships and characteristics of the fan, the generalisations shown in Appendix 2 can be used to estimate the change in room pressure when a door is opened.

A4.33 The “key door” will be the open double door which leaves the operating room at the highest pressure, and/or requires the largest air flow. This should be determined using the procedure in worksheet WS3.

Transfer grilles

A4.34 These may be used to limit the pressure differences across the closed door of a single-flow room or, in some instances, for protection of a series-flow or parallel-series-flow room. They allow airflow in both directions and may not be suitable for all applications.

A4.35 The free area of a grille is calculated from the following equation:

$$A = \frac{Q}{0.84\sqrt{\Delta P}}$$

where:

A is free area (m^2)

Q is flow rate (m^3/s)

P is pressure difference (Pa).

A4.36 The flow through a grille at a different pressure may be found from the following equation:

$$Q_2 = Q_1\sqrt{\frac{\Delta P_1}{\Delta P_2}}$$

where:

Q_1 and P_1 are original flow and differential pressure

Q_2 and P_2 are new flow and differential pressure.

A4.37 The transfer grille may be replaced by carefully proportioned door undercuts of the equivalent free area.

A4.38 The function of the transfer grille is to provide a means of airflow control by which the volume and pressure loss can be established. If a grille is used, it should have an easily removable core to facilitate cleaning.

Pressure-relief dampers

A4.39 The functions of a pressure-relief damper are now carried out by pressure stabilisers. Accordingly, all further mention of them has been removed from this document.

Pressure stabilisers

A4.40 Pressure stabilisers can be adjusted to hold the pressure constant over a wide range of flow rates. They are used where requirements exist for accurate room-pressure control or rapid shut-off on pressure fall.

A4.41 The installation of a grille or baffle in association with a stabiliser will alter the operating characteristics. It is recommended that a location be chosen to avoid the need for visual screening, for example, at high level. The location should be chosen to minimise the likelihood of damage.

A4.42 The stabilisers used should be virtually silent in operation, adjustable on site, maintenance-free and of a type that cannot be wrongly inserted. They should not be used in external walls or where the pressure difference is less than 5 Pa. The required size of a pressure stabiliser is dependent on the design pressure difference across it and flow rate through it. The manufacturer should provide data relating pressure difference to mean velocity (or flow rate per unit area). From this, the required area can be calculated and then rounded-up to the nearest size manufactured or nearest combination of smaller sizes.

A4.43 It is sometimes possible to arrange for a pressure stabiliser to perform two tasks. In an anaesthetic room, for example, the two pressure stabilisers may be made to pass the open door protection air, and also control the operating and anaesthetic room pressures with the door closed. To achieve this, the stabilisers are sized for the flow rate required with one of the doors open, but

the pressure setting is adjusted to be the value required with the doors closed. This is shown in Figure A4/1.

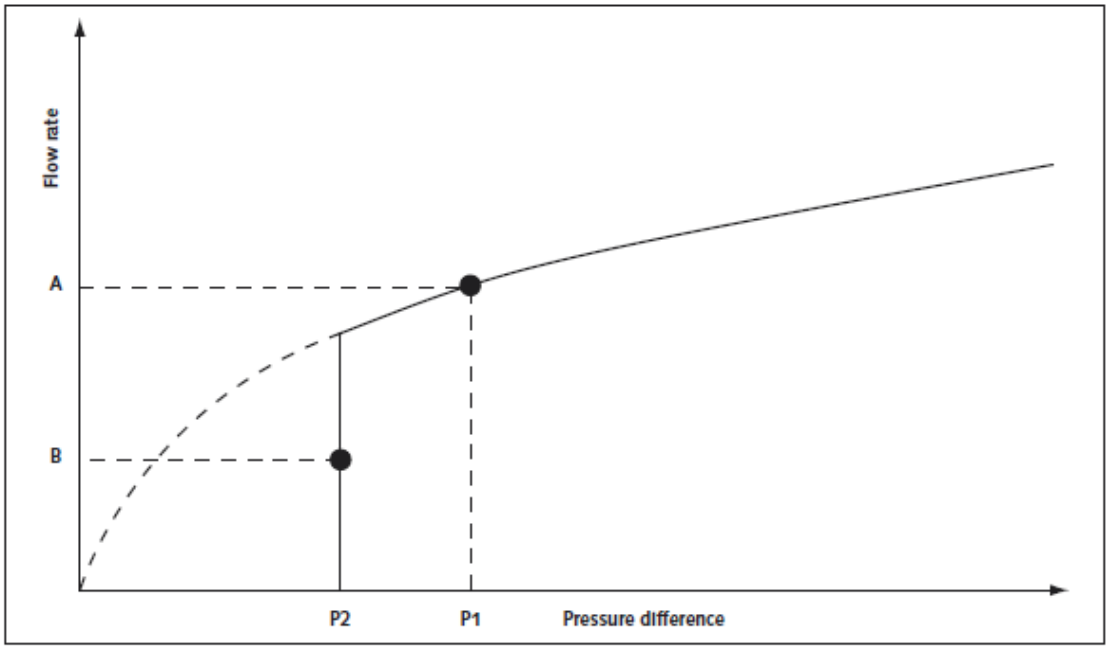


Figure A4/1

Door leakage flows

A4.44 For an air-movement control scheme to work satisfactorily, it is essential that the estimates of door-gap leakage made at the design stage are closely related to those which are achieved in practice. The calculation of gap-flows is complicated by the fact that such flows generally fall into the transition region between laminar and turbulent flow and hence do not follow the normal flow equations. The gaps assumed are 4mm along the bottom, 3mm at the top and sides, and 2mm between double leaves. Doors should not have wider gaps than these. Tighter gaps would result in lower flow-rate requirements and hence lower fan power, but care should be taken to ensure that all doors in the suite have similar gap dimensions. It may be possible to ignore the door leakage and so reduce the airflow requirement (see the notes in Appendix 3).

Room temperature estimation

A4.45 The air-flow rate required to prevent back-flow through an open door is dependent on the temperature difference across the door. The design figures shown in Appendix 3 are based on the temperature differences that will normally occur in practice, assuming heat gains and losses in accordance with Appendix 2.

A4.46 In accordance with the airflow design process, the temperature differences across the doors of all rooms classed as “sterile” is calculated. Worksheet WS6 is recommended for the calculations, using the following criteria:

- assume that the operating room is being controlled at 20°C and calculate the incoming air-supply temperature as shown on worksheet WS6;

- the calculation should be repeated for both summer and winter conditions, with an operation in progress;
- assume all doors are closed;
- use the room supply flow rates from WS1;
- use the inward air flows through air-transfer devices and closed door leakages from WS2a to WS2e;
- the formula used in worksheet WS6 is as follows:

$$T = \frac{(t_1Q_1 + t_2Q_2 + \cdots + t_nQ_n) + 0.828H}{(Q_1 + Q_2 + \cdots Q_n)}$$

where:

Q = flow rate from source (m^3/s)

t = the temperature of source (°C)

H = the room heat gain (kW).

A4.47 If the evaluated temperature differences between rooms do not exceed 2°C, the solution is satisfactory; otherwise proceed as follows:

- check the assumption on which the heat gains are based;
- take steps to reduce the heat gains;
- if the door is to a corridor, the flow through the open door will be larger than the value given in Appendix 2. Calculate on WS3, assuming it is the "key door" with door-flow unknown, and the supply as known;
- if the door leads to a room with mechanical supply, install a trimmer heater in the supply to the room controlled by either a differential thermostat or a thermostat slaved to the operating room thermostat to ensure that T is minimized.
- If the door leads to a room with no mechanical supply, increase the door protection flow as follows:

$$Q_{new} = Q_{old}\left[\frac{\Delta T + 1}{2}\right]$$

A4.48 These options should be considered in the above order, and the first three should be investigated thoroughly before proceeding to the latter two. The mechanical supply may need to be increased in order to achieve the desired air-change rates.

Relief of excess air from operating room when all doors are closed

A4.49 As the mechanical supply to the operating room is sized to provide an appropriate flow outward through any door that is opened, it follows that when all doors are closed, there will be more air supplied to the operating room than

can exit from it via leaks etc. This “excess” air can be relieved by either of the two methods described in Paragraphs A4.50 - 4.54.

By transfer devices via the anaesthetic room

A4.50 For door protection, the transfer devices in the anaesthetic room are typically designed to pass 0.47 m^3/s at a differential pressure of 14 Pa. When the doors are closed, the differential pressure will change to 11 Pa between theatre and anaesthetic room, and 14 Pa between anaesthetic room and corridor; the volume of air passed by the transfer devices will be modified as shown in the following formula:

$$Q = Q_1\left(\frac{\Delta P_1}{\Delta P_2}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= 0.47\left(\frac{11}{14}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= 0.42\ m^3/s$$

where:

Q = “excess” air to be vented with doors closed;

Q_1 = air-flow required for door protection through transfer device;

ΔP_1 = nominal differential pressure with door to operating room closed and door to corridor closed;

ΔP_2 = nominal differential pressure between either the anaesthetic room and corridor when the operating room door is open, or the anaesthetic room and operating room when the corridor is open. This differential pressure is used when selecting size of both devices.

A4.51 If the “excess” air is less than 0.42 m^3/s, a pressure stabiliser is required to ensure that the correct protection airflow is available to pass through the door.

A4.52 If the “excess” air is greater than 0.42 m^3/s, a transfer grille is acceptable because at all times the airflow will exceed the flow required for door protection.

By pressure stabilisers to the corridor

A4.53 If it is undesirable to pass operating room air through the anaesthetic room, it may be passed directly to a corridor via a separate pressure stabiliser.

A4.54 If there is sufficient “excess” air, the transfer grille solution at Paragraph A4.52 should be adopted, as it provides the simplest solution and, once set up, will require no further maintenance. With less excess air, it is recommended that the air be passed through the anaesthetic room via the pressure stabilisers as at Paragraph A4.51, thus keeping the number of pressure stabilisers to a minimum. Both these solutions increase the air-change rate in the anaesthetic

room, but care should be taken to avoid passing excessive amounts through that would cause discomfort to the occupants.

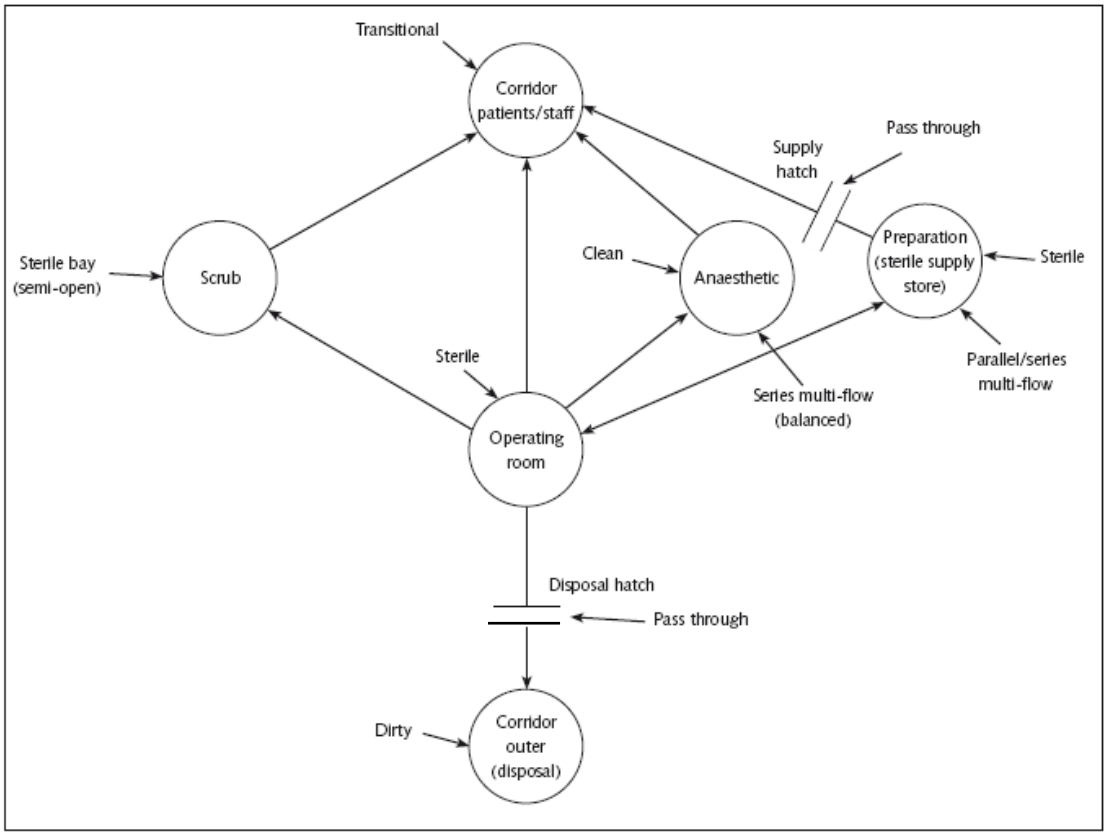
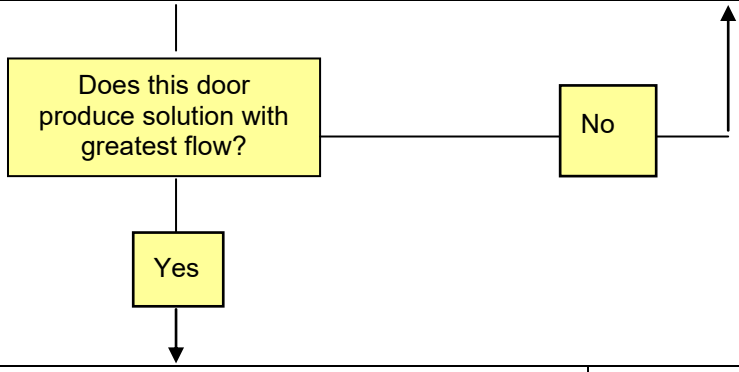


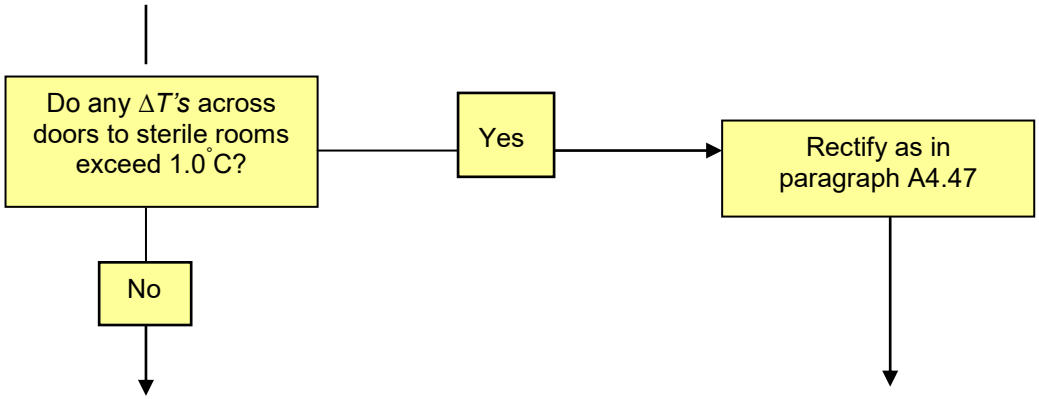
Figure A4/2: An example of an airflow network

A42659819

Step	Description	Worksheet
1	Show nominal room pressures and air flow directions on the plan of the theatre suite and WS1	WS1
2	Enter heat/loss/gain data and calculate supply airflow rates for temperature control only. Categorise room types e.g. sterile, clean etc.	WS1
3	Enter airflows required for bacterial contamination control or air change rate whichever is the greater, add supply and extract volumes (S_D, E_D) on the plan.	WS1
4	Define peripheral room types, see paragraphs A4.5 - A4.11, and select appropriate worksheets.	Select from WS2a - WS2e
5	Locate air transfer devices, enter details on worksheets and locate on the plan and Figure A4/2	Selected worksheets from WS2a - WS2e
6	For each peripheral room, determine air flows through doors when open and calculate mechanical supply or extract and transfer device flows	As above
7	Select "Key Door" and calculate air supply for operating room	WS3



8	Transfer to WS1 and select final rate S_F and E_F	WS1. WS3
9	Make provision for relief of excess air with doors closed	Selected Worksheets and WS3
10	Calculate supply and extract flow rates for corridor(s)	WS4, WS5
11	Calculate room temperatures (all doors closed) and ΔT's	WS4, WS5



12	Make summary of flows	WS6a and WS6b
13	Size transfer devices, size ductwork, central plant etc	WS7
14	Design ductwork layout, control plant etc	

Figure A4/3: Airflow design procedures

Note: In the following worksheets WS1, WS2a-e, WS3, WS4, WS5, WS6a&b and WS7 it has been necessary to reduce the font size to 8pt instead of the usual 10pt in order to set out the complete tabular information for each within a single page for ease of use.

Calculation sheet for			**Worksheet WS1** **Reference:**			
Room Name:						
1. Summer Temperature Control Heat Gain	kW					
2. Acceptable Δt	°C					
3. Air flow rate (S_G) $= \frac{\text{Gain}}{\Delta t \times 1.2}$	m^3/s					
4. Winter Temperature Control Heat Loss	kW					
5. Acceptable Δt	°C					
6. Air flow rate (S_L) $= \frac{\text{Loss}}{\Delta t \times 1.2}$	m^3/s					
7. Dilution of bacterial contaminations Air flow rate	m^3/s					
S_D or E_D						
8. Desired air change rate	ac/hr					
$\frac{\text{AC/hr x room volume } (m^3)}{3600}$	m^3/s					
9. Maximum of S_G, S_L, S_D or E_D or air change rate from Step 8	m^3/s					
10. Air movement control	S m^3/s					
Air flow for air movement control S_{AMC} or E_{AMC} (from WS2, WS3, or WS4)	E m^3/s					
11. Final Supply Flow Rate (S_F)	m^3/s					
12. Final Extract	m^3/s					
13. Total Supply	m^3/s					
14. Total Extract	m^3/s					

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… **Date**……

A42659819

Air Movement Control **Peripheral Room** ..... **type, single flow**	**Worksheet WS2a** **Reference:** **Nominal Pressure: ..... Pa**

Consider door to..... open

			Air flow, m^3/s		
	Pa	Δt	Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
Total					

S_{AMC} $(\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN})$ ____ m^3/s

or

E_{AMC} $(\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN})$ ____ m^3/s

Transfer S_{AMC} or E_{AMC} to WS1

Consider door to.....closed

	Pa	Δt	Out	In	Remarks
Closed door leakage					
Total					

Return S_F and E_F to WS1 ____ ____

Flow through transfer grille outward ($S_F - E_F - L_{OUT}$ ____

or

Flow through transfer grille inward ($E_F - S_F - L_{IN}$) ____

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... **Date**.....

A42659819

Air movement control **Peripheral Room ..... type, parallel/series multi-flow**	**Worksheet WS2b** **References:** **Nominal Pressure: Pa**

Door from this room to ..... (room of equal cleanliness) is not to be protected.
A transfer grille is located in, or adjacent to, this door.

Consider door to..... open

Room pressure now becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa (see Appendix 6)

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
Mechanical supply or extract (S_F/E_F)					
		Total			

X ($\sum$ OUT - $\sum$IN) [ ] Or Y ($\sum$ IN - $\sum$OUT) [ ]

Transfer grille required:

or from high-pressure zone Flow = *X* [ ] at [ ] ΔPa

to low-pressure zone Flow = *Y*

Size of transfer grille (free area) A1 [ ]

Consider doors and hatch closed – room pressure becomes [ ] Pa (nominal)

Closed door leakage from Appendix 4 (assuming no transfer grille)	Pa	ΔP	Out	In	Remarks
Mechanical supply or extract					
		Total			

Air flow required through transfer grille = IN – OUT = Z' [ ]

or OUT – IN = Z'' [ ]

Transfer grille required flow *Z' or Z''* [ ] @ [ ] ΔP

Size of transfer grille (free area) A2 = [ ]

Select larger of A1 or A2 [ ]

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... Date.....

A42659819

Air movement control **Peripheral Room ..... type, parallel multi-flow high/low or series multi-flow (unbalanced)**	**Worksheet WS2c** **References:** **Nominal Pressure: Pa**

Consider door from this room to ..... open.

Room pressure now becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa (see Appendix 6)

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

S_1 ($\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN}$) [ ] Or E_1 ($\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT}$) [ ]

Consider door from this room to ..... open

Room pressure then becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa

			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through open doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors are:	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

S_2 ($\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN}$) [ ] Or E_2 ($\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT}$) [ ]

Consider doors closed. Closed doors leakage from Appendix 4

Door to:	Pa	ΔP	Out	In	Remarks
Total					

Return S_F and E_F to WS1 [ ] [ ]

Flow through transfer grille outward ($S_F - L_{OUT}$) [ ] to .....

or

Flow through transfer grille inward ($E_F - L_{IN}$) [ ] from.....

Transfer grille [ ] Pressure relief damper [ ]

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... Date.....

A42659819

Air movement control **Peripheral Room ..... type, parallel/series multi-flow**	**Worksheet WS2d** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**

Note: In this type of room the supply and extract air flow rates are equal and take no part in the air movement control (AMC)

First, open door to higher pressure area.

Room pressure then becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa (see Appendix 2)

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

Q_1 ($\sum_{IN}$ - $\sum_{OUT}$) [ ] (+ve inwards)

Next, open door to lower pressure area.

Room pressure then becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa

			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through open doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors are:	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

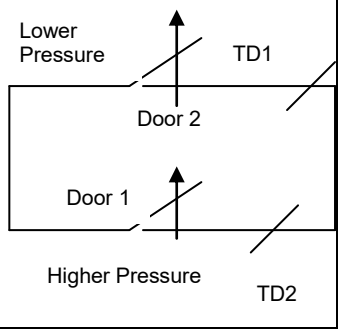
Q_1 ($\sum_{IN}$ - $\sum_{OUT}$) [ ] (+ve inwards)

Flow through transfer device (TD1) to protect Door 1 = Q1 at resultant [ ]

ΔP .....

Flow through transfer device (TD2) to protect Door 2 = Q2 at resultant [ ]

ΔP .....



Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... Date.....

A42659819

Air movement control **Peripheral Room ..... type bay (semi-open)**	**Worksheet WS2e** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**

Note: If the room is of the open bay type (i.e. opening is larger than normal single doorway), then room should be considered part of the main room. No air movement control considerations need then be made, and this sheet can be discarded. Supply and/or extract flow ill be based on air distribution considerations.

Consider permanent opening

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
		Total			

E_{AMC} [ ] or flow outward through transfer ($\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT}$) [ ]

Transfer S_{AMC} or E_{AMC} to WS1

Transfer device – transfer grille [ ]

– pressure stabiliser [ ]

Size select transfer device for flow rate [ ] @ ΔP [ ]

Note: A door from the bay is considered with the peripheral room to which it leads or, if it leads to the corridor, it is considered with the main room.

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... Date.....

Air movement control **Operating Room**	**Worksheet WS3** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**

Note: To avoid considering each door open in turn, the "key door" concept is introduced. This is the door which requires the greatest mechanical flow when open. See paragraph A4.33

Select "key door" (see above).

Consider this door open – room pressure now becomes _____ Pa (See Appendix 2)

See Appendix 3 for room pressures

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
Air flow "out" or "in" via doors, transfer devices etc.	Pa	ΔP			
Mechanical extract					
Total					

S_{AMC} $(\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN})$ _____ Transfer S_{AMC} to WS1

Consider all doors closed.

Return S_F and E_F to WS1 _____ Room pressure now _____ Pa (nominal)

Air flow "out" or "in" via door leakage, transfer devices etc	Pa	Δt	Out	In	Remarks
Mechanical extract					
Total					

Flow $(\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT})$ through transfer device _____ @ ΔP _____ to……

……

For final selection of transfer device see paragraphs A4.50 – A4.54

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

A42659819

Air movement control **Corridor**			**Worksheet WS4** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**		
Consider all doors closed					
			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
Leaks through closed doors, transfer devices, permanent openings etc.	Pa	ΔP			
Total flow inwards (S_1)					
Add mechanical input (S_2) if necessary to increase S_1 to give 7 AC/hr					
Total Flow Outwards and Inwards					
$S_{AMC} = (\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN} + S_2)$		Transfer to WS5			
or $E_{AMC} = (\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT} + S_2)$		Transfer to WS5			

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… **Date**……

Air movement control **Corridor**	**Worksheet WS5** **References:**

Summary of Air Supply and extract for an Operating Suite

Consider all doors closed

Air Flow to Corridor	All Doors Closed	Anaesthetic (key door open)
	m^3/s	m^3/s
From Preparation		
From Operating Room		
From Scrub		
From Anaesthetic		
Total (a)		
Air Flow to Corridor from Disposal		
From other source		
Total (b)		
Other Room Supplies.....Total (c)		
Total Air Supply (a) + (b) + (c)		

Consider corridor ventilation (see Appendix 2) and calculate air volume required, based on 7 ac/hr (see Note 1)	
	m^3/s
Additional Air to Ventilate Corridor	
Additional Air to Ventilate Service Corridor (see Note 2)	
Air Extract The size of the extract plant should be of the order of 10% below the supply to assist in maintaining the department under positive pressure relative to the outside departments.	
	m^3/s
Extract Plant = Supply less Leakage	
Less 10% of Supply	
Total Extract (see Note 3)	

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… **Date**……

A42659819

Room Temperature - Summer | **Worksheet WS6a**

References:

Find summer supply temperature T_{SS} = 20 – 0.828 H/(O/R) ____ = T_{SS} ____ °C

Q(O/R) ____

Note: The temperature of a space may be calculated from

$$T = \frac{t_1 Q_1 + t_2 Q_2 + \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots + t_n Q_n + (0.828H)}{Q_1 + Q_2 + \ldots Q_n}$$

Where t_1 is temperature of source (1°C)
Q_1 is flow from source 1 when all doors are closed (m^3/s)
H is heat gain in space (kW)

Summary of Air Supply and extract for an Operating Suite

Consider all doors closed

Room	Heat Gain kWh	Supply		Flows Inwards										Temperature °C T
				From		From		From		From		From		
		Q	T_{SS}	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	

Check Doors to Sterile Areas

Door Between	Calculated Room ΔT (°C)	Maximum ΔT *Permitted*	Remarks

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… **Date**……

A42659819

Room Temperature - Winter | **Worksheet WS6b**

References:

Find winter supply temperature T_{SW} = 20 – 0.828 H/(O/R) _____ = T_{SW} _____ °C

Q(O/R) _____

Note: The temperature of a space may be calculated from

$$T = \frac{t_1 Q_1 + t_2 Q_2 + \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots + t_n Q_n + (0.828H)}{Q_1 + Q_2 + \ldots Q_n}$$

Where t_1 is temperature of source (1°C)
Q_1 is flow from source 1 when all doors are closed (m^3/s)
H is heat gain in space (kW)

Summary of Air Supply and extract for an Operating Suite

Consider all doors closed

Room	Heat Gain kWh	Supply		Flows Inwards										Temperature °C T
		Q	T_{SW}	From		From		From		From		From		
				Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	

Check Doors to Sterile Areas

Door Between	Calculated Room ΔT (°C)	Maximum ΔT *Permitted*	Remarks

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

A42659819

Transfer Grilles, Pressure Relief Dampers and Pressure Stabilisers	**Worksheet WS7** **Reference:**

Transfer Grilles – see paragraphs A4.34 – A4.38

Check Doors to Sterile Areas

No	Location	Pressure Difference Pa	Flow Rate m^3/s	Free Area m^2	Model	Resultant Δp Pa	Remarks

Pressure Relief Dampers – see paragraph A4.39

No	Location	Pressure Difference Pa	Flow Rate m^3/s	Free Area m^2	Pressure Setting Pa	Remarks

Pressure Stabilisers –see paragraphs A4.40 – A4.43

Note: where a stabiliser is acting both as series room door protection and operating pressure control, "pressure difference" and "flow rate" are from WS2d; "pressure setting" is from WS3

No	Location	Pressure Difference Pa	Flow Rate m^3/s	Free Area m^2	Pressure Setting Pa	Remarks

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date…….

A42659819

References

Acts and regulations

NB: Access to information related to the following Acts and Regulations can be gained via **www.legislation.gov.uk.**

Scottish Technical Handbooks Non Domestic. Scottish Building Standards Agency, 2007. http://sbsa.gov.uk

Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non Domestic, Section 2: Fire. Scottish Building Standards Agency. 2007 http://sbsa.gov.uk

Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non Domestic Section 6: Energy. Scottish Building Standards Agency 2007. http://sbsa.gov.uk

Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (COSHH) 2002. SI 2002 No 2677. TSO, 2002. \\westdata01\dept\HFS\HFS West\Documents\SHTMs technical\SHTM 03-01 Ventilation\Part A\www.opsi.gov.uk\si\si2002\20022677.htm

(The) Health & Social Care Act 2008: Code of practice for the prevention and control of healthcare associated infections. 2008. www.dh.gov.uk

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974. HMSO, 1974.

Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999. SI 1999 No 3242. TSO, 1999. \\westdata01\dept\HFS\HFS West\Documents\SHTMs technical\SHTM 03-01 Ventilation\Part A\www.opsi.gov.uk\SI\si1999\19993242.htm

Medicines Act 1968. TSO, 1968.

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998. SI 1998 No 2306. HMSO, 1998. \\westdata01\dept\HFS\HFS West\Documents\SHTMs technical\SHTM 03-01 Ventilation\Part A\www.opsi.gov.uk\SI\si1998\19982306.htm

Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992. SI 1992 No 3004. HMSO, 1992.

British Standards

BS5588-9: 1999. Fire precautions in the design, construction and use of buildings. Code of practice for ventilation and air conditioning ductwork. British Standards Institution, 1999.

BS5726: 2005. Microbiological safety cabinets. Information to be supplied by the purchaser to the vendor and to the installer, and siting and use of cabinets. Recommendations and guidance, British Standards Institution, 2005.

BS5925: 1991. Code of practice for ventilation principles and designing for natural ventilation. British Standards Institution, 1991.

BS EN 779: 2002. Particulate air filters for general ventilation. Determination of the filtration performance. British Standards Institution, 2002.

BS EN 1822-1:1998. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Classification, performance testing, marking. British Standards Institution, 1998.

BS EN 1822-2:1998. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Aerosol production, measuring equipment, particle counting statistics. British Standards Institution, 1998.

BS EN 1822-3:1998. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Testing flat sheet filter media.

BS EN 1822-4:2000. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Determining leakage of filter element (scan method).

BS EN 1822-5:2000. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Determining the efficiency of filter element.

BS EN 12469:2000. Biotechnology. Performance criteria for microbiological safety cabinets.

BS EN 13030:2001. Ventilation for buildings. Terminals. Performance testing of louvres subjected to simulated rain.

BS EN 14175-2:2003. Fume cupboards. Safety and performance requirements.

BS EN ISO 14644-1:1999. Clean rooms and associated controlled environments. Classification of air cleanliness.

BS EN ISO 14644-4:2001. Clean rooms and associated controlled environments. Design, construction and start-up.

Department of Health Publications

Health Building Note 26 – Facilities for surgical procedures. The Stationery Office, 2004.

Model Engineering Specification C04 – Mechanical ventilation and air conditioning systems. The Stationery Office, 1997.

NHSScotland Publications

Scottish Health Planning Note 13: Sterile services department. Health Facilities Scotland forthcoming.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04-01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems. Health facilities Scotland 2010.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 55: Windows. Health Facilities Scotland 2006

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 58: Internal doorsets. Health Facilities Scotland 2006

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 81: Fire Preventions in New Hospitals. Health Facilities Scotland 2003.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07-02: Environment and Sustainability. Health Facilities Scotland 2006

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01: Acoustics**.** Health Facilities Scotland 2011

Scottish Health Facilities Note 30: Infection Control in The Built Environment: Design and planning. Health Facilities Scotland 2007.

Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers publications

Applications Manual AM10: Natural ventilation in non-domestic buildings. CIBSE, 2005.

Applications Manual AM13: Mixed mode ventilation. CIBSE, 2000.

Commissioning Code A: Air distribution systems. CIBSE 1996.

Commissioning Code R: Refrigerating systems. CIBSE 2002.

Commissioning Code W: Water distribution systems. CIBSE 2003.

Guide A: Environmental design. CIBSE, 2006.

Guide B: Heating, ventilating, air conditioning and refrigeration**.** CIBSE, 2005.

Lighting guide LG2: Hospitals and health care buildings. CIBSE, 2008.

Heating & Ventilating Contractors' Association (HVCA) publications

DW/143: A practical guide to ductwork leakage testing. HVCA Publications, 1998.

DW/144: Specification for sheet metal ductwork, low, medium & high pressure/velocity air systems. HVCA Publications, 1998.

DW/154: Specification for plastics ductwork. HVCA Publications, 2000.

TR/19: Guide to good practice: internal cleanliness of ventilation systems. HVCA Publications, 2005.

Other publications

Advisory committee on Dangerous Pathogens (2001). **The management, design and operation of microbiological containment laboratories.** HSE Books, 2001.

Building Services Research & Information Association (BSRIA). **Application Guide AG 3/89.3: Commissioning of air systems in buildings.** BSRIA, 2001.

Building Services Research & Information Association (BSRIA). **COMPAK 1: Commissioning guides set.**

DIN 1946-4. Ventilation and air conditioning – ventilation in hospitals. Deutsches Institut Fur Normung, 1999.

Health & Safety Commission (2000). **Approved Code of Practice, Legionnaires' disease: the control of legionella bacteria in water systems (L8).** Health and Safety Executive, 2000.

Health & Safety Executive (1993). **HS(G)37: an introduction to local exhaust ventilation.** HSE Books, 1993.

Health & Safety Executive (2005). **Workplace exposure limits: containing the list of workplace exposure limits for use with the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations 2002 (as amended).** HSE Books, 2005.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2003). **Safe working and the prevention of infection in clinical laboratories and similar facilities.** HSE Books, 2003.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2003). **Safe working and the prevention of infection in the mortuary and post-mortem room.** HSE Books, 2003.

Hospital Infection Society (2005). **Microbiological commissioning and monitoring of operating theatre suites.** HIS, 2005. www.his.org.uk/_db/_documents/OTIC-final.pdf

Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (2007). **Rules and guidance for pharmaceutical manufacturers and distributors** (The Orange Guide). Pharmaceutical Press, 2007. www.mhra.gov.uk

Water Regulations Advisory Scheme (WRAS) (2005). **Water Fittings and Materials Directory.** WRAS, 2005. www.wras.co.uk

Whyte W, Lidwell OM, Lowbury EJL and Blowers R (1983), **Suggested bacteriological standards for air in ultraclean operating rooms**. *J Hosp Infect,* Vol 4, pp 133-139.

Whyte W, Shaw BH and Freeman MAR (1974), **An evaluation of a partial-walled laminar flow operating room**. *J Hyg Camb*, Vol 73, pp 61-75.

NHS National Services Scotland

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03-01

Ventilation for healthcare premises
Part A – Design and validation

Health Facilities Scotland
Engineering and Environment

February 2013

Contents

Acknowledgements

Health Facilities Scotland would like to thank the principal contributors and the Steering Group led by the Department of Health for their efforts in producing the HTM 03-01 Part A document.

HTM 03-01 Part A has been updated and amended by Health Facilities Scotland for use in NHSScotland as SHTM 03-01 Part A and the contribution from the National Heating & Ventilation Advisory Group is gratefully acknowledged.

Preface

About Scottish Health Technical Memoranda

Engineering Scottish Health Technical Memoranda (SHTMs) give comprehensive advice and guidance on the design, installation and operation of specialised building and engineering technology used in the delivery of healthcare.

The focus of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum guidance remains on healthcare-specific elements of standards, policies and up-to-date established best practice. They are applicable to new and existing sites, and are for use at various stages during the whole building lifecycle.

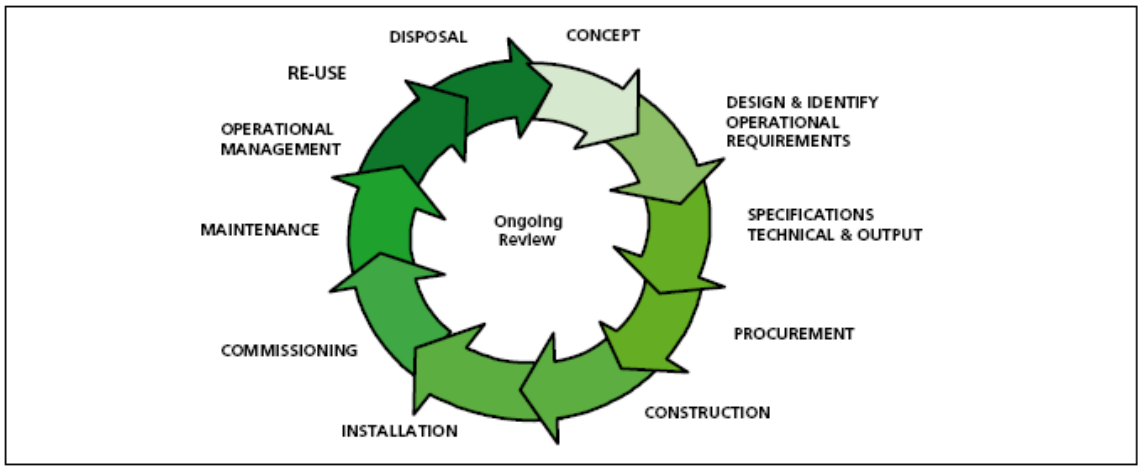
Healthcare providers have a duty of care to ensure that appropriate engineering governance arrangements are in place and are managed effectively. The Engineering Scottish Health Technical Memorandum series provides best practice engineering standards and policy to enable management of this duty of care.

It is not the intention within this suite of documents to repeat unnecessarily international or European standards, industry standards or UK Government legislation. Where appropriate, these will be referenced.

Healthcare-specific technical engineering guidance is a vital tool in the safe and efficient operation of healthcare facilities. Scottish Health Technical Memorandum guidance is the main source of specific healthcare-related guidance for estates and facilities professionals.

The core suite of eight subject areas provides access to guidance which:

- is more streamlined and accessible;
- encapsulates the latest standards and best practice in healthcare engineering;
- provides a structured reference for healthcare engineering.



Healthcare building lifecycle

Structure of the Scottish Health Technical Memorandum suite

The series of engineering-specific guidance contains a suite of eight core subjects:

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00: Policies and principles (applicable to all Scottish Health Technical Memoranda in this series).

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 01: Decontamination.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 02: Medical gases.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03: Heating and ventilation systems.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04: Water systems.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 05: Reserved for future use.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06: Electrical services.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07: Environment and sustainability.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08: Specialist services.

Some subject areas may be further developed into topics shown as -01, -02 etc and further referenced into Parts A, B etc.

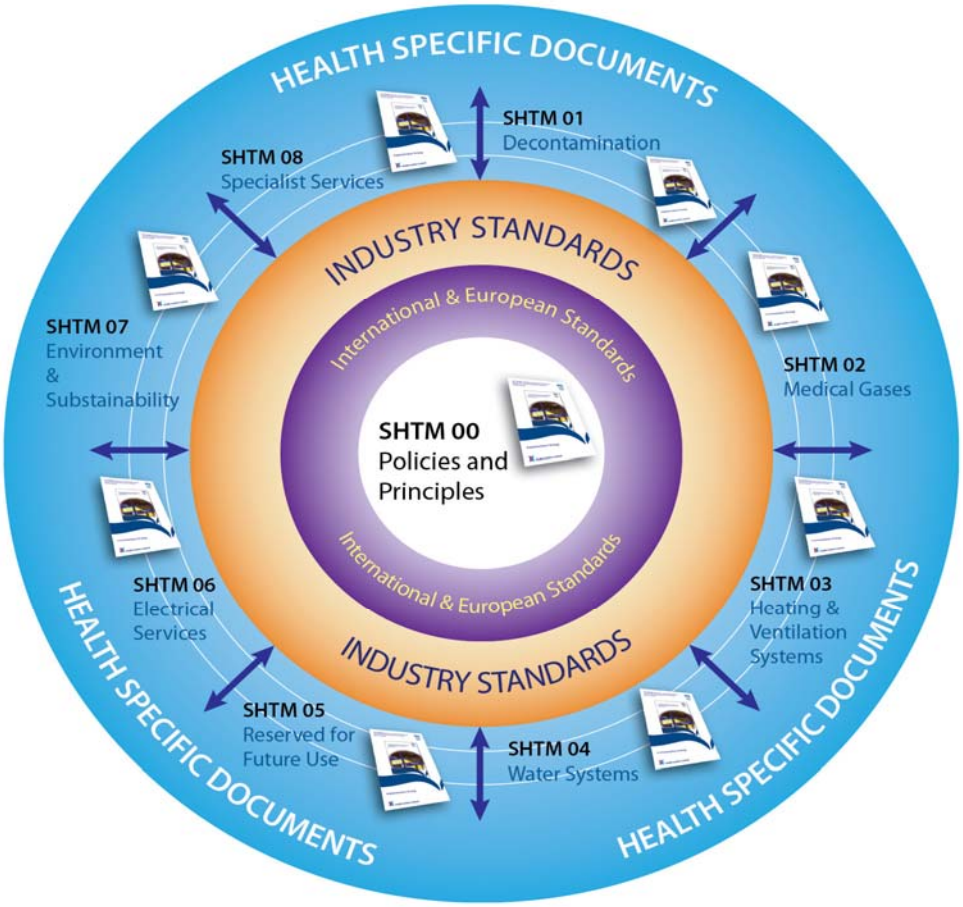
Example: Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 06-02 Part A will represent: Electrical Services – Electrical safety guidance for low voltage systems.

In a similar way Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07-02 will simply represent:

Environment and Sustainability – EnCO_2de.

All Scottish Health Technical Memoranda are supported by the initial document Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 00 which embraces the management and operational policies from previous documents and explores risk management issues.

Some variation in style and structure is reflected by the topic and approach of the different review working groups.



Engineering guidance

1. Introduction

1.1 Ventilation is used extensively in healthcare premises or primary patient treatment in operating departments, high dependency units and isolation facilities. It is also installed to ensure compliance with quality assurance of processed items in pharmacy and sterile supply departments and to protect staff from harmful organisms and toxic substances, for example, in laboratories.

1.2 This edition of Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 03 'Ventilation in healthcare premises' is published in two sections. It is equally applicable to both new and existing sites. It gives comprehensive advice and guidance to healthcare management, design engineers, estate managers and operations managers on the legal requirements, design implications, maintenance and operation of general and specialised ventilation in all types of healthcare premises.

1.3 Current statutory legislation requires both 'management' and 'staff' to be aware of their collective responsibility.

1.4 'Ventilation' is also provided in healthcare premises for the comfort of the occupants of buildings. More specialised ventilation will also provide comfort but its prime function will be to control closely the environment and air movement of the space that it serves in order to contain, control and reduce hazards to patients and staff from airborne contaminants, dust and harmful micro-organisms.

1.5 Ventilation systems in themselves present little danger to patients or staff. However, they do possess the ability to transmit hazards arising from other sources to large numbers of people. The danger may not become apparent until many patients and staff have been affected.

1.6 The sophistication of ventilation systems in healthcare premises is increasing. Patients and staff have a right to expect that it will be designed, installed, operated and maintained to standards that will enable it to fulfil its desired functions reliably and safely.

1.7 The Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 (HSW Act 1974) is the core legislation that applies to ventilation installations and these installations are intended to prevent contamination, control closely the environment, dilute contaminants or contain hazards. Their very presence indicates that risks to health have been identified.

Statutory requirements

1.8 The Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) regulations place upon management an obligation to ensure that suitable measures are in place to protect their staff and others affected by the work activity. These methods may include both safe systems of work and the provision of a specialised

ventilation system. In laboratories the requirements are often met by the provision of fume cupboards and safety cabinets.

1.9 The existing requirements to provide ventilation, implicit under HSW Act 1974 and COSHH, have been made explicit by the Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999, the Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992 and the Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998, all issued as a result of European Directives.

1.10 Where specialised ventilation plant is provided as part of the protection measures there is a statutory requirement that it be correctly designed, installed, commissioned, operated and maintained. The local exhaust ventilation (LEV) section of the COSHH regulations requires that the plant be inspected and tested at least every 14 months by an independent organisation and that management maintain comprehensive records of its performance, repair and maintenance.

1.11 Certain substances have Occupational Exposure Limits (OEL) set out in Guidance Note EH 40 published annually by the Health and Safety Executive. If special ventilation systems are provided in order to achieve these standards they will be subject to the COSHH regulations as above.

1.12 All ventilation systems should conform to the principles set out in the Approved Code of Practice and guidance document entitled “Legionnaires’ disease: the control of *Legionella* bacteria in water systems” (commonly known as ‘L8’) published by the Health and Safety Executive and Scottish Health Technical Memorandum SHTM 04-01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, “safe” hot water, cold water and drinking water systems.

1.13 Special ventilation plants installed in laboratories dealing with research, development or testing, whether involving drugs, animals or genetically modified organisms, may be subject to particular legislation with regard to their operation in addition to that mentioned above. Further information is given by the Health and Safety Executive Health Services Advisory Committee in:

- safe working and prevention of infection in clinical laboratories;
- safe working and prevention of infection in clinical laboratories: model rules for staff and visitors;
- safe working and prevention of infection in clinical laboratories in the mortuary and post-mortem room.

1.14 Plants installed in units manufacturing medicinal products to the standards set out in the current European Guide to Good Manufacturing Practice may also be subject to particular legislation with regard to their operation in addition to that mentioned above.

1.15 Records should be kept of equipment design and commissioning information. The Health and Safety Executive, Medicines Inspectorate and other interested bodies have a statutory right to inspect them at any time. All records should be kept for at least five years.

1.16 The fire regulations require that if ventilation ductwork penetrates the fabric of a building it should be designed and installed so as to contain the spread of fire. (for further information refer to Firecode Series SHTMs 81, 83 and 85)

1.17 Increased health risks to patients will occur if the more specialised ventilation systems installed to supply high quality air to operating departments do not achieve and maintain the required standards. The link between post-operative infection and theatre air quality has been well established. Plants serving conventional operating departments, for instance, will be required to ensure the separation of areas within the suite by maintaining a specific direction of air flow between rooms, even when doors are opened. They will also maintain the selected operating department environmental conditions regardless of changes in the outside air conditions or activities within the space. In addition ultra-clean operating ventilation systems that are designed to provide an effectively particle-free zone around the patient while the operation is in progress, have been shown to reduce significantly post-operative infection in patients undergoing deep wound surgery. Their use for other forms of surgery may well be required.

1.18 Ventilation systems that can be shown to be inappropriate, inadequate or ineffective and that give rise to proven failures can result in a civil suit by the patient against the operators.

1.19 If the plant has been installed to dilute, extract or contain harmful substances (the definition of which now includes microorganisms) its failure may expose people to unacceptable levels of hazard. Proven failures can give rise to a civil suit against the designers and operators by the individuals who have been affected. This would be in addition to the actions brought as a result of breaching the statutory requirements.

1.20 There is a statutory requirement to provide ventilation in all enclosed workspaces. It may be provided by either natural or mechanical means. The following are some of the factors that determine the ventilation requirements of a workspace:

- human habitation (minimum fresh air requirement);
- the activities of the department, that is, extraction of odours, aerosols, gases, vapours, fumes and dust – some of which may be toxic, infectious, corrosive, flammable, or otherwise hazardous (see Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) regulations;
- dilution and control of airborne pathogenic material;
- thermal comfort;
- the removal of heat generated by equipment (e.g. catering, wash-up, sterilising areas, electrical switch rooms, uninterruptible power supply (UPS) cupboards and some laboratory areas);
- the reduction of the effects of solar heat gains where other forms of reducing the solar effect is not available or practical, i.e. solar blinds;

- the reduction of excessive moisture levels to prevent condensation (for example Hydrotherapy pools);
- combustion requirements for fuel burning appliances (see BS5376, BS5410 and BS5440);
- 'make-up' supply air where local exhaust ventilation (LEV) etc., is installed.

Mechanical ventilation systems are expensive in terms of capital and running costs, and planning solutions should be sought which take advantage of natural ventilation either where the use of the area in question is not critical to airflow patterns or pressures, or where backup systems are available when natural ventilation cannot be achieved.

1.21 When new ventilation systems are accepted for use, full information as to their designed mode of operation together with recommended maintenance procedures should be provided as part of the handover procedure.

Requirement	Reason	Application
Statutory	Health and Safety at Work etc Act	Operating department Laboratories Pharmacy
	COSHH regulations	Areas containing identified biological or chemical hazards Areas containing oxygen displacing gases
	Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV)	Enclosed work-spaces Workshops
Functional	Comfort	Situations where the quality of the environment for staff and patients is critical to their general performance and well-being
Clinical	Post-operative infection reduction	Operating suites used for general surgery, casualty, obstetrics/gynaecological and maternity procedures
	Reduction of deep wound sepsis	Ultra-clean operating suites for transplant, deep wound surgery, hip replacement, bone grafting and bone marrow transplant procedures
	Isolation from contact with bio hazards	Isolation units for patients who present a biological, chemical or radiation hazard to others. Isolation units for patients with a reduced immune system

Table 1: Reasons for providing ventilation

Functional overview – Terms in use

1.22 The terms 'ventilation' and 'air-conditioning' are often incorrectly used to describe the same equipment. A general explanation of the terms is given below.

Ventilation

1.23 Ventilation is a means of removing and replacing the air in a space. In its simplest form this may be achieved by opening windows and doors. Mechanical ventilation systems provide a more controllable method. Basic systems consist of a fan and either collection, (extraction) or distribution (supply) ductwork. More complex systems may include the ability to heat and filter the air passing through them. Ventilating equipment may be required in order to remove smells, dilute contaminants and ensure that a supply of 'fresh' air enters a space.

Air-conditioning and mechanical cooling

1.24 Air-conditioning is the ability to heat, cool, dehumidify and filter air. For full air-conditioning, humidification may also be provided. This means that the climate within a space being supplied by an air-conditioning plant can be maintained at a specific level regardless of changes in the outside air conditions or the activities within the space. Mechanical cooling may be provided where close control of 'comfort conditions' within a space is required but humidity control is not needed.

Special ventilation

1.25 In healthcare premises, certain activities will necessitate the provision of ventilation equipment with additional special features in order to achieve and maintain specific conditions. These may be needed in order to assist with the treatment of patients or maintain the health and safety of staff. The precise reason for providing special ventilation will depend upon the intended application. The list below indicates some of the more typical reasons:

- to remove, contain or dilute specific contaminants and fumes;
- to ensure the isolation of one space from another;
- to preserve a desired air flow path from a 'clean' to a 'less clean' area;
- to provide control of the cleanliness of a space;
- to provide 'close' control of temperature;
- to provide 'close' control of humidity.

1.26 The following departments will usually have specialised ventilation requirements, either for a single room or throughout a suite of rooms:

- operating department;
- laser surgery unit;
- intensive treatment unit;
- infectious diseases isolation unit;
- manufacturing pharmacy;
- specialised imaging, X-ray and scanning unit;

- pathology containment laboratories;
- mortuary and dissection suite;
- research laboratory;
- sterilising and disinfecting unit (SDU);
- endoscopy unit;
- renal dialysis suite;
- ultrasound facilities;
- audiology room.

1.27 Ventilation may be provided in a wide variety of ways. These will include:

- extensive purpose-built air-conditioning units housed in their own plant rooms;
- proprietary 'packaged' systems often sited outside on a roof or;
- wall-mounted electric fans located at the point of use.

1.28 A fixed volume of air may be supplied, often expressed in terms of the resulting number of air changes per hour (ac/h) within the space being ventilated. It may also be expressed in terms of litres/second/person. Alternatively the volume of air supplied may be varied in order to maintain a specific pressure relationship between the area supplied and other surrounding areas. In some situations a combination of both methods may be adopted.

1.29 Modern plants are fitted with the means to recover energy from the extract air where this can be justified without causing contamination of the incoming supply air.

1.30 Ultra-clean systems use the same basic plant and equipment as standard air-conditioning but are in addition fitted with a terminal device that supplies the air in a unidirectional manner to the working area. Their standard of filtration will be capable of delivering air with a very low particle count to the space that they serve.

Local exhaust ventilation

1.31 Local exhaust ventilation (LEV) is a term used to describe systems installed to prevent hazardous substances from entering the general atmosphere of the room in which they are being used. Their primary function is to protect staff from the effects of their work activity.

1.32 Simple LEV systems comprise a capture hood, extract ductwork and fan. These are used to contain industrial types of hazard such as fumes from welding processes, gas discharges from standby battery banks and dust from woodworking machinery. The vapour given off when large quantities of chemicals are decanted into ready-use containers and fumes from X-ray film processing units are further examples of chemical hazards often controlled by LEV systems.

1.33 In laboratories, pharmaceutical manufacturing facilities and operating suites, LEV systems usually take the form of semi-open fronted cabinets within which the hazardous substance is manipulated. These cabinets either have their own filtered air supply or are fed with air from the room. The air extracted from the cabinet is passed through a high-efficiency filter before being discharged either to the atmosphere or back into the room. Microbiological safety cabinets, laboratory fume cupboards, cytotoxic drug cabinets and fixed or mobile disinfection enclosures are all examples of this type of facility.

1.34 Mortuaries and dissection suites may have LEV systems incorporated within the dissection table, specimen bench and bone saw.

Management action

1.35 The guidance contained in this SHTM should be applied in full to new installations and major refurbishments of existing installations.

1.36 Ventilation will need to be provided:

- as a requirement for patient care;
- in order to fulfil a statutory duty.

1.37 In assessing the need for more specialised ventilation and the standards desired for patient care, managers will need to be guided by their medical colleagues and by information published by Health Facilities Scotland.

1.38 The statutory need for ventilation falls into two categories:

- in the first, the need for specialised ventilation and the standards to be adopted are clearly set out in specific pieces of legislation. An excellent example of this is the current legislation surrounding the manufacture of medicinal products in the European Community. The managers of the departments affected by this type of legislative requirement should be aware of their needs and be able to advise on the standards to be achieved;
- the second type of statutory requirement arises due to the interpretation of both the Health and Safety at Work etc Act and the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) regulations. The person tasked with conducting COSHH assessments will be able to advise as to the need for, and standard of, ventilation in each particular case.

Design and validation process

1.39 It is essential when undertaking the design of a specialised ventilation system that the project be considered as a whole. The process model set out below should ensure that all relevant factors are considered.

Step	Question	Design statement and information required	Comment
1	Why is the system required?	Healthcare applications Statutory elements Non-healthcare applications	
2	What is the required system performance?	Room air flow pattern Air change rate Differential pressures Air quality Room air condition Noise limits	
3	What are the constraints on the distribution system?	Location, Size, Materials Dampers, Access, Insulation Fire considerations Room terminals	
4	What are the minimum requirements for the AHU(s)?	Intake / Discharge positions *Legionella*, Health and Safety Access, Fire, Electrical safety Leaks, Insulation, Cleanliness Filtration, Drainage	
5	What control functions are required?	User control requirements Estates control functions Energy management Environmental conditions Control sequence logic Run, Set back, Off philosophy	
6	How will the system performance be validated?	Validation methodology Instruments used Design information required [*Design air flow rates* *Design air velocities* *Pressure differentials* *Noise levels* *Air quality* *Installation standard*]	
7	The system will only be acceptable to the client if at the time of validation it is considered fit for purpose and will only require routine maintenance in order to remain so for its projected life.		
8	Handover to client	Basic design information Commissioning results Validation report	

Table 2: Design and Validation process model

Use and function of typical equipment used in ventilation plant

1.40 Typical equipment used in ventilation systems is listed below together with a brief description of both function and use.

General

1.41 The equipment built into the ventilation system and its ductwork should be of a type that will neither cause nor sustain combustion. No materials that could sustain biological activity should be used in the construction or assembly of the system.

Air Intake

1.42 An uncontaminated air supply to the system is essential. In order to achieve this, the air intake will be positioned so that air discharged from extract systems or other dubious sources cannot be drawn in. Exhaust fumes from vehicles can present particular problems. The area surrounding the intake will need to be kept clean and free of vegetation and waste material in order to reduce the possibility of biohazards or fire. The intake itself will be protected by a louvre and mesh screen to prevent rainwater, vermin and insects etc from entering the system.

Damper

1.43 Several types may be fitted:

- automatic dampers fitted immediately behind the air intake and extract louvres. They will automatically close when the system is shut down in order to prevent an uncontrolled circulation of air;
- balancing dampers are fitted into each branch of the air distribution ductwork system so that the design air flow rate can be set during the commissioning process;
- where ductwork passes through a fire compartment wall, ceiling or floor a fire and/or smoke damper may be required;
- plant isolating dampers are fitted so that the main plant can be isolated from its air distribution duct system. They are manually operated and enable cleaning and maintenance of the air-conditioning equipment to be carried out.

Ducting

1.44 The means by which air is conveyed from the intake to its point of use. Ducting is usually constructed of galvanised steel and will normally be insulated to reduce noise and conserve energy. Ducts can also be formed in concrete, brickwork, stainless steel or plastic and may be rigid or flexible.

Fan

1.45 A series of rotating blades that move the air in the direction required. Fans are usually powered by electric motors either directly connected to them or driven through belts and pulleys. A fan may be arranged either to force air into or draw air from a ductwork system.

Attenuator / silencer

1.46 A device that will contain and absorb the noise emitted by a fan. They may be required to reduce disturbance caused by noise breaking out through the air intake and also noise transmitted along the ductwork to the conditioned space.

Filter

1.47 A filter consists of a labyrinth of fibrous material contained in a frame. It is designed to capture and hold particles being carried in the airstream. Because of the size range and number of particles that exist in air no filter can remove them all. The purpose of filtration is to reduce their number and size range to an acceptable level. Filters of progressively higher grades are fitted through the ventilation system:

- primary filters (coarse) are designed to collect the larger particles and are intended to keep the air-conditioning plant clean;
- secondary filters (fine) will remove the staining particles from air and keep the conditioned space visibly clean;
- high efficiency particulate air filters (HEPA/absolute) will remove virtually all particles from air. These may be required in order to reduce contamination in the working area either biologically or in terms of particle count.

Filters may be fitted to extract systems to protect energy recovery devices. They may also be fitted to remove biological, radiation or chemical hazards and if so, are often contained in a ‘safe change’ facility in order to protect those carrying out maintenance.

Activated carbon filters will reduce odours in extracted or recirculated air.

Heater battery / heater coils

1.48 A series of heater batteries or heating coils with or without fins through which steam or hot water is circulated. Heat is given up to the air passing over the battery thus increasing its temperature. Heating is usually carried out in stages, the final battery being controlled by the end user. Small batteries may be electric.

Humidifier

1.49 A device for increasing the humidity of air by adding moisture. For ventilation in healthcare premises this is normally achieved by releasing ‘clean’ steam into an

air supply duct. The steam will be completely absorbed into the air, increasing its humidity. The level of humidity may be preset or controlled by the end user.

Cooler battery / cooling coil

1.50 A series of finned coils mounted in the air supply duct. Either chilled water or refrigerant is circulated through the coils causing heat to be removed from the air. This will reduce its temperature and may also condense moisture out of the air. As free moisture in a duct can be a source of contamination the coil will be fitted with an eliminator and drainage system.

Eliminator

1.51 A device for catching and removing water droplets from an air stream. It may form part of a cooling coil or be a separate device.

Drainage system

1.52 A means of removing water from ductwork and disposing of it safely. Typically it will consist of a tray mounted in the duct to catch moisture, a glass water seal trap, continuously falling drainage pipework and an air break in the drain run to prevent waste water returning and contaminating the duct.

Access doors and observation ports

1.53 Doors and removable panels providing access for routine maintenance and cleaning. The doors should be fitted with glazed ports and suitable lighting provided so that the correct operation of devices such as cooling coils, humidifiers and filters can be easily observed without needing to switch off the plant.

Energy recovery

1.54 Many plants are fitted with the means to recover energy from the extract air without causing contamination of the incoming supply air. These devices will be fitted with a drainage system and may incorporate an eliminator. Several types of energy recovery systems are available.

1.55 Precise definitions of ventilation and air-conditioning terms are given in the Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers (CIBSE) Guide B.

Typical plant

1.56 The layout of a typical plant that conforms to the requirements for healthcare applications is shown in Figure 1 overleaf. It contains most of the equipment described above.

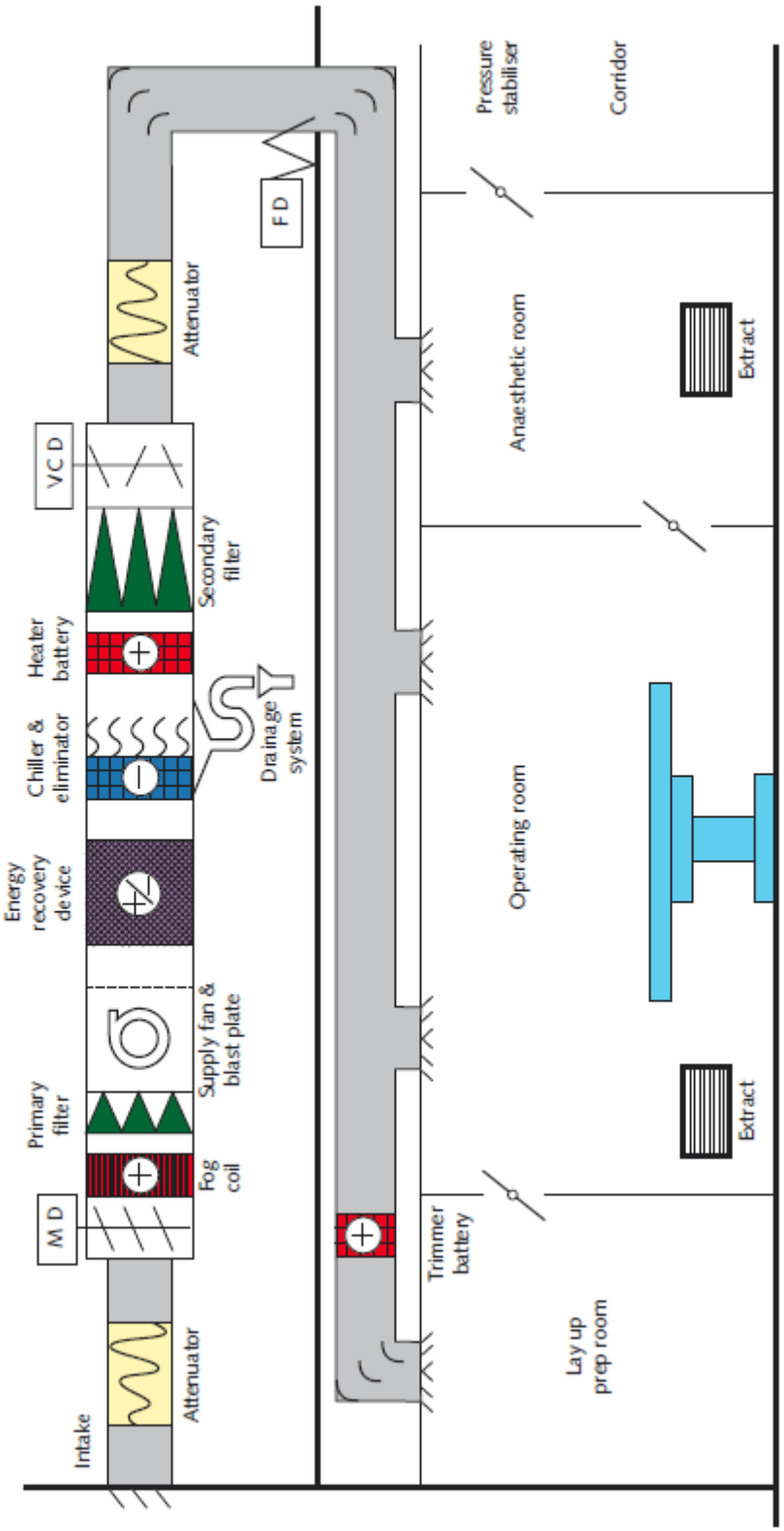


Figure 1: Design and Validation process model

2. Provision of ventilation in healthcare buildings

2.1 It is acknowledged that planning constraints imposed by the building shape and/or functional relationships of specific areas will invariably result in some measure of deep planning thus reducing the opportunity for natural ventilation. However, ventilation costs can be minimised by ensuring that where practicable, core areas are reserved for rooms that have a functional requirement for mechanical ventilation. Examples are sanitary facilities, dirty utilities and those rooms where clinical or functional requirements have specific environmental needs; and where for reasons of privacy, absence of solar gain etc., windowless accommodation is acceptable. Other spaces appropriate to core areas are those that have only transient occupation and therefore require little or no mechanical ventilation, for example circulation and storage areas.

Natural ventilation

2.2 Natural ventilation is usually created by the effects of wind pressure. It will also occur if there is a temperature difference between the inside and the outside of the building. The thermo-convective effect frequently predominates when the wind speed is low and will be enhanced if there is a difference in height between inlet and outlet openings. Ventilation induced by wind pressures can induce high air change rates through a building provided air is allowed to move freely within the space from the windward to the leeward side.

2.3 As the motivating influences of natural ventilation are variable, it is almost impossible to maintain consistent flow rates and ensure that minimum ventilation rates will be achieved at all times. This variability is normally acceptable for general areas including office accommodation, general wards, staff areas, libraries rooms, dining rooms and similar areas which should, where possible, be provided with opening windows of a design that facilitates natural ventilation.

2.4 Current guidance restricts the amount windows can be opened for safety reasons and as many designs are top-hung, their ability to permit natural ventilation is limited. It may therefore be necessary to provide dedicated ventilation openings in the fabric of the building to allow a sufficient natural flow of air into and out of the space. Paragraph 2.20 also refers.

2.5 In all cases, excessive heat gain, indoor air quality requirements or external noise may limit or preclude the use of natural ventilation.

Extract ventilation systems

2.6 Separate extract ventilation will be required for sanitary facilities, lavage areas, dirty utilities and in rooms where odorous, but non-toxic fumes are likely, in order to ensure air movement into the space. 10 air changes per hour have been found necessary, particularly in geriatric and psychogeriatric

accommodation. This will assist with infection control procedures. A single fan/motor unit can be suitable for individual rooms, but multi-room systems should be provided with duty and standby fans or motors to meet this need.

2.7 Toilets should have an extract ventilation rate as set out in the building regulations. Where WC's are located in shower and bathroom spaces, the ventilation required for the WC will normally be adequate for the whole space.

Supply only ventilation

2.8 Mechanical supply ventilation will be required in areas where it is important to maintain a positive pressure in order to prevent the ingress of less clean air, e.g. in pharmacy aseptic suites, sterile supply packing rooms, operating theatres and their preparation rooms (air change rates are given in Table A1).

Supply and extract ventilation

2.9 Mechanical supply and extract ventilation should be provided in rooms where there is a need to control room pressure in relation to adjacent spaces. Intensive Care Units, (ICU), isolation suites and treatment areas are typical applications.

Mechanical or comfort cooling

2.10 Cooling is very expensive in terms of energy costs and should be provided only where necessary to maintain a comfortable environment for staff and patient, or to ensure satisfactory operation of equipment. The imaging department in particular may require cooling to offset the equipment load.

2.11 Calculations and thermal modelling should be undertaken to ensure that during the summertime, internal temperatures in patient areas do not exceed 28ºC (dry bulb) for more than 50 hours per year taking into account the level of design risk for the application.

2.12 Certain non-patient areas may also require cooling and will typically include some laboratories, central wash-up and other areas that are subject to high equipment heat gains.

2.13 Where deep planning of other continuously occupied spaces, for example offices, is unavoidable, there will also be occasions when acceptable levels of comfort can only be maintained by cooling. Planning solutions of this type however will be exceptional.

2.14 Refrigeration plant should be of sufficient capacity to offset heat gains and maintain areas at a temperature that does not exceed the external design shade temperatures by more than about 3ºC taking into account the level of design risk for the application.

Air-conditioning

2.15 Full air-conditioning is only required in a very small number of areas within healthcare buildings and due to the capital and running cost its inclusion should be kept to a minimum. Paragraphs 3.14 - 3.15 and 4.91 - 4.93 also refer.

2.16 Areas whose functions may warrant the installation of air-conditioning include operating departments, intensive therapy units, manufacturing pharmacies and areas with particularly sensitive equipment.

Specialised ventilation

2.17 Due to the nature and extent of activities carried out in healthcare buildings, there will be a need for a wide range of specialised ventilation systems. The types of system which are generally required in individual departments and typical arrangements are given in Section 7.

2.18 The activities within some departments will require the provision of local exhaust ventilation (LEV). This is a statutory requirement under COSHH wherever the escape of chemicals, toxic fumes, biological material or quantities of dust into the general area would present a hazard to the occupants.

Ventilation for general areas

2.19 Table A1provides recommended air change rates, temperatures and pressures for general areas that require mechanical ventilation in healthcare buildings.

Use of natural ventilation

2.20 The air tightness of new buildings has improved to the point that infiltration through building leakage can no longer be relied upon to provide sufficient air-flow. Attention must therefore be given to the provision of purpose-made ventilation openings to achieve the necessary flow rates. The air entering the openings may need to be controlled by motorised dampers linked to temperature and / or occupancy sensors in the ventilated space.

2.21 Internal partitions, fire compartment walls and closed doorways can often impede the flow path, and when this happens, the process will be more dependent on single-sided ventilation. Nevertheless, even with this degree of compartmentation, acceptable ventilation may still be achieved without window openings that would prejudice safety, security or comfort.

2.22 Some types of window, for example, vertical sliding, can enhance single sided air change by temperature difference, and these will improve the overall rate of natural ventilation in protected or sheltered areas where the effect of wind pressure is likely to be minimal.

2.23 It is generally considered that natural cross-flow ventilation is able to give reasonable air distribution for a distance of up to 6 metres inwards from the

external façade, provided that reasonably clear air paths are maintained. Beyond this distance in areas where clear air paths cannot be maintained and in areas where high minimum air change rates are specified, mechanical ventilation should be provided.

2.24 Further information can be found in SHTM 55 'Windows', BS5925 'Code of practice for ventilation principles and designing for natural ventilation' and CIBSE Applications Manual AM10: 'Natural ventilation in non-domestic buildings'.

Mixed mode ventilation

2.25 This comprises an assisted form of natural ventilation. Fans are fitted in the purpose made damper-controlled ventilation openings. Alternatively a separate ventilation unit may be installed. In both cases the dampers and fans are controlled under the dictates of temperature and occupancy sensors to ensure a minimum air flow rate while taking advantage of natural ventilation effects when present.

2.26 Where natural or mixed mode ventilation is adopted with complex air paths, the designer should produce an air flow diagram in order to ensure correct provision of air transfer devices. CIBSE Applications Manual AM13: 'Mixed mode ventilation in non-domestic buildings' gives guidance.

Mechanical extract ventilation

2.27 General extract systems can vary in complexity from a single wall-mounted fan to a ducted air system with dual extract fans.

2.28 Replacement air is generally provided by a central supply system (as described below). Unless special precautions are taken, the latter may result in an unacceptable level of draughts occurring in winter, and possible risk of unacceptable levels of noise transmission.

2.29 If individual systems are used, the ventilation can be operated intermittently, provided it continues to run for at least 15 minutes after the room is vacated, as with light switch-operated fans in individual toilets.

2.30 If general exhaust systems are used; it is recommended that filtered and tempered replacement air is provided via a central supply plant to adjoining lobbies or corridors, to prevent the risk of discomfort caused by the ingress of cold air. Fire compartmentation requirements must be maintained.

2.31 Information on specialised extract systems is given in Section 7.

Mechanical supply systems

2.32 Where mechanical supply systems are required, the fresh air should be tempered and filtered before being delivered to the space, to avoid discomfort.

2.33 The air should be heated using a constant or variable temperature source, but generally only to the space air temperature. In most instances, the low-pressure hot water heating (LPHW) should offset any fabric loss, so that setback room temperatures can be maintained during unoccupied periods without the need for the ventilation system to operate.

Balanced ventilation

2.34 Balanced ventilation systems are merely a combination of a supply and extract systems of equal volume; and either a single space or a whole building may be considered to be balanced. A balanced system is necessary in instances where it is essential to maintain consistent air movement within an area, for example, treatment rooms.

Cascade ventilation

2.35 In operating departments it is normal practice to supply air to the operating room, and allow it to pass through less clean areas – corridors, utility rooms etc. (from where it is eventually extracted).

Recirculation systems

2.36 Due to the nature of the use of mechanical ventilation systems within healthcare buildings, there are few opportunities for the application of recirculation air systems. They are however normally used for HEPA filtered clean room applications where the extract air is significantly cleaner than the outside supply. Recirculation is also routinely used in the canopy section of Ultra Clean Operating theatre ventilation systems.

2.37 Where the designer is considering the installation of a recirculation air system, due account must be taken of:

- minimum fresh air supply volume required by the Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004 (currently 20%);
- prevention of contamination of supply air from vitiated air in extract systems;
- prevention of stratification occurring within plenum chambers and mixing boxes which may result in freezing of downstream coils;
- ensuring sufficient velocities through control dampers (ideally 5-6m/s) to provide suitable authority; and good shut-off;
- modulating control of mixing to provide optimum on-plant conditions;
- use of ‘free cooling’ by cycling the dampers to minimum fresh air when the enthalpy of the outside air is above that of the extract air under conditions when cooling is required.

Chilled beams

2.38 The use of chilled beams for the provision of heating, cooling and ventilation is increasingly common in healthcare premises. The use of Active Chilled Beams providing tempered filtered air to a heating / cooling device within the room can provide effective local control of environmental conditions.

2.39 Care should be taken in positioning chilled beams to ensure the avoidance of cold draughts particularly when used in the cooling mode. The control settings should ensure that the external elements of the beam are always above dewpoint.

2.40 Consideration should be given to the ease with which specific types of chilled beam units can be accessed for cleaning having regard to the need to control the infection risk. The impact of maintenance requirements on room availability should also be considered.

Split comfort air-conditioners

2.41 Split comfort air-conditioners, room conditioners or cassette units are used increasingly where there is a small local requirement for cooling for operational purposes. They can provide an effective economic solution to cooling needs, where a central refrigeration system is not practicable.

2.42 The units re-circulate room air so provision for a fresh air make up, either by natural or mechanical means, to the standard required by the Building (Scotland) Regulations must be provided.

2.43 The recirculation of room air presents problems with indoor air quality (IAQ) and may increase the risk of healthcare associated infection (HAI). Split units should not therefore be used in critical patient areas.

2.44 Split units may be used for single room applications or as multiple linked units that can independently provide either heating or cooling, all served by a single outdoor unit. These systems enable good temperature control of a number of rooms with maximum energy efficiency.

2.45 Whether single or multiple systems are used, it is essential that the designer gives due consideration to the source of electrical supply, location of the heat rejection unit, environmental effects to the refrigerant used and drainage provision for the cooling coil condensate.

2.46 The units will require routine maintenance for filter change and cleaning; they should therefore be installed in an accessible position.

Dilution ventilation and clean air flow paths

2.47 Dilution ventilation has in the past been used to control levels of hazardous substances in a space. This approach is no longer considered acceptable. The COSHH Regulations require that known hazardous substances should

be substituted by safe alternatives. If this is not possible then they should be controlled at source by the use of closed systems such as anaesthetic gas scavenging units or exhaust protective enclosures such as fume cupboards.

2.48 The exposure of staff to casual spillages of substances such as medical gases in anaesthetic rooms should in the first instance be dealt with by establishing a clean airflow path. Air should be supplied at high level and extracted at low level directly behind the anaesthetic equipment position. The philosophy of establishing a clean air-flow path from the supply point; to the staff; on to the patient and out via a low level extract would also apply in recovery rooms and maternity delivery rooms including labour, delivery, recovery & post partum (LDRP) Rooms. A suitable air change rate will provide dilution ventilation as an additional safeguard; see Table A1, Table A2 and Note c.

2.49 In operating theatres the patient will be on a closed breathing circuit in a room with a high air change rate. Under these circumstances the dilution effect would be considered sufficient to control any casual exposure to anaesthetic gases.

Mechanical ventilation systems

System selection

2.50 Natural ventilation is always the preferred solution for a space, provided that the quantity and quality of air required, and the consistency of control of ventilation to suit the requirements of the space, are achievable with this method. If this is not the case, a mechanical ventilation system will be required.

Choice of central/local plant

2.51 Mechanical ventilation is expensive to operate, and as such, should be controlled to operate when the space being served requires to be ventilated. In addition, loads on refrigeration plant are rarely constant owing to changes in solar gain, occupancy and use of heat-generating equipment and lights, therefore control of temperature is critical.

2.53 If the ventilation loads throughout a department or building are in phase, or are not significant, a central plant with single zone control can be adopted. However, this is rarely the case, and elsewhere, the condition or quantity of supply air to different areas or zones of the building must be varied accordingly. This can be done by providing either individual plants to each zone, or separate zone terminal control. Where there is a high density of rooms with similar ventilation requirements in an area of a building or department, it is usually economical to combine them into a central system.

2.54 In large buildings, a choice between a single distribution system and multiple smaller systems may arise. Large distribution systems and their plant can have the advantage of lower operating costs, but require more space for vertical shafts and horizontal distribution. In general, very long runs of ducting should be avoided to prevent undue heat losses or gains, excessive leakage, and difficulties in balancing during commissioning. As the pressure losses in the

long runs will be greater and a higher initial static pressure will be required, this will lead to a more expensive class of ductwork. Multiple smaller distribution systems may be more expensive in capital and operating costs but they avoid long runs, large ducts and vertical shafts, and this may reduce overall building costs. They also provide a more robust service as the failure of an individual system does not prevent the use of the rest of the building.

Zoning of the building

2.55 The efficiency and effectiveness of any ventilation or air-conditioning installation depends largely on the zoning and control of the installation. The factors to consider when determining the zoning of a ventilation system for a building or department are:

- periods of occupancy;
- fresh air/ventilation requirements;
- smoke control.

2.56 Where the ventilation system is not merely tempering the air, but also providing the heating and/or cooling requirements, the following additional factors will need to be considered:

- internal or peripheral location;
- orientation of windows;
- variation in internal loads;
- level of control required.

2.57 For single zone plant in staff areas, local control (with a run-on timer if required) is recommended, as this can be turned off when the space is not in use, thus saving both thermal and electrical energy. Most supply and extract systems, conversely, are required to operate continuously while the department is occupied, thus some form of time or use control is necessary.

2.58 The control of individual plant items is covered in Section 4, with examples of typical control strategies in Section 6. For control of particular specialised ventilation and air-conditioning systems refer to Section 7 of this document.

2.59 On very rare occasions a duplicate standby air handling plant may be justified. If installed it must be provided with a gas-tight damper at its junction with the supply distribution duct, so that no back-flow can occur. Standby plants can become sources of contamination if warm moist air is allowed to dwell within them. Their design and control system must ensure that this cannot happen.

Specific requirements for hospital departments

2.60 Specific requirements for individual spaces and departments are included in the Health Building Notes (HBNs) and Activity Database (ADB) A-Sheets, or Scottish Health Planning Notes (SHPNs).

3. Assessment of service requirement

Selection of design criteria

External design conditions

3.1 The most accurate data that is available for the summer and winter conditions at the site should be used. The Metrological office can supply data for the United Kingdom.

3.2 Healthcare mechanical ventilation systems will normally be 'full fresh air'.

3.3 Local adjustments such as for height above sea level, exposure factor, or other climate peculiarities, should be made as appropriate.

Internal design conditions

3.4 The design conditions selected within patient areas must strike a balance between the comfort requirements of staff and patients, who often have very different levels of clothing and activity.

3.5 Recommendations for the dry resultant temperature and humidity of individual spaces are shown on Activity Database (ADB) A-Sheets. Table A1 gives a summary.

Minimum fresh air requirements

3.6 For most applications involving human occupancy, the dilution of body odours is the critical factor in determining ventilation requirements. Where natural ventilation or mechanical full fresh-air systems are used, all ventilation air will be fresh.

3.7 Where odour dilution is the overriding factor, it is recommended that 10 litres/second/person should be taken as the minimum ventilation rate.

3.8 Smoking is not permitted in healthcare premises. If permitted for example in residential care, it will be confined to designated areas. It therefore follows that these areas will contain a high percentage of smokers so the ventilation rate would be at least 36 litres/second/person for these applications (CIBSE Guide A; Table 1.10 refers).

3.9 In non-standard applications such as laboratories, aseptic suites, operating departments, etc., the particular requirements for each area should be considered independently in order to determine the overriding minimum requirement for ventilation.

Limiting supply air conditions

3.10 For most applications in healthcare buildings, it is the temperature differential between the supply and room air, rather than the actual temperature of the supply air which is the critical factor. The maximum recommended supply-to-room air temperature differential is:

summer cooling: - 7K

winter heating: + 10K

3.11 It is also necessary to keep supply air humidity below 70% during winter in order to minimise risks associated with condensation.

Air purity

3.12 In healthcare premises, the standard of filtration will depend on the activities within the occupied spaces. With the exception of special areas, (for example manufacturing pharmacies), the requirement for aerobiological needs is not stringent and filtration is only required to:

- maintain hygienic conditions for the health and welfare of occupants, or for processes such as food preparation;
- protect finishes, fabrics and furnishings; to reduce redecoration costs;
- protect equipment either within the supply air system; that is, to prevent blocking of coils, or in the space itself to prevent dust collection.

3.13 Given that almost all viable particles will originate from the occupants of a space and not from the incoming air, dilution is the more important factor aerobiologically. Therefore, for general areas a G4 filter will be suitable. More critical areas will require a F7 filter. HEPA filters will only be required in Ultra Clean systems.

Humidity control requirements

3.14 Providing humidification is expensive in terms of plant, running costs and maintenance, and therefore its use should be restricted to where it is necessary for physiological or operational reasons.

3.15 Humidification was originally required for some healthcare applications, e.g. operating theatres, in order to control the risk associated with the use of flammable anaesthetic gases. The use of such gases has now ceased. Humidification is therefore no longer required unless there is a very specific application requirement.

Maximum noise levels

3.16 Noise will be generated in an air distribution system by the fan, ductwork fittings, dampers and grilles. The specified maximum noise level will depend on the activities within the occupied spaces.

3.17 The overall noise levels should not exceed the values given in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01: 'Acoustics', although general requirements are given in Table 3.

3.18 Attenuation should be incorporated into the ductwork system or plant arrangement as necessary to reduce noise from fans and plant items in order to achieve the acceptable limits within the rooms at the design air flows.

3.19 Plant noise should not be greater than 80dB(A) within the plant room from the fans, coolers, heaters, humidifiers etc. when starting up or running, and should be reduced to lower noise levels where the plant is near to departments sensitive to noise.

3.20 Attention must be given to the reduction of tonal components. High tonal components from air diffusers etc. can seriously disturb concentration over longer periods even when the overall noise level is low. Broadband noise causes less annoyance. Reference should be made to SHTM 08-01: 'Acoustics'.

3.21 The designer requires knowledge of the total hospital layout and operational policies, to assign acceptance magnitudes to all the possible noise sources, in order to arrive at the correct rating.

Room	Overall noise level - NR	Ventilation plant commissioning - NR	Ventilation plant design - NR
Operating department	50 (55)	45	40
Ward areas	33	30	30
Sanitary facilities	45	40	35
Industrial areas	50	45	40
Circulation areas	50	45	40

Table 3: Interior noise level

3.22 In Table 3, above, the overall noise level takes account of all internal and external noise sources. The commissioning noise level is the level measured with a sound level meter in the unoccupied room, taking account of the external noise together with the noise generated by the ventilation system. When occupied and in use, this commissioning level will constitute a continuous background noise which will allow the overall noise level to be achieved. The ventilation plant design noise level is that generated by the plant alone with no other noise source being considered. The levels suggested make recognised allowance for the ingress of environmental noise that must be considered in the overall design, that is, in specifying the attenuation of walls, partitions, ceilings, etc.

3.23 The recommended criterion is measured as the "A" weighted sound pressure level expressed in decibels, which should not be exceeded for more than 10% of the time.

3.24 The designer must also consider noise escaping to the external environment and this must not be unacceptable to occupants of adjacent buildings.

Calculation of building loads

Air infiltration

3.25 Air infiltration occurs due to a complex combination of wind pressure, thermal effects, location relative to other features and the construction standard of the building. The infiltration rate is governed by the size and number of openings in the building envelope and the complexity of internal air paths.

3.26 CIBSE Guide A (2006) Section 4 provides information and formulae for the calculation of air infiltration and natural ventilation of buildings. In all cases the requirements of the appropriate section of the Building (Scotland) Regulations must be met.

Summertime temperatures

3.27 The calculation method for determining the summertime temperature is described CIBSE Guide A (2006) Section 5. However, it is very important to select the time of day and time of year of peak loadings for the calculations. These will be dependent on the orientation and proportion of solar to total heat gain. In establishing outside design values, the design risk having regard to the function and occupancy of the building should be considered.

3.28 Where calculations indicate that internal temperatures will frequently exceed the selected design external shade temperature by more than 3K for a period that exceeds the building design risk, methods of reducing temperature rise should be implemented. Options include: - reducing solar and casual gains, the use of chilled beams or ceilings, increasing ventilation rates or providing mechanical cooling. In some situations it may be possible to alter the thermal mass of the structure to 'move' the peak temperature event time so that it occurs outside of the occupancy period. Calculations and thermal modelling should be undertaken to ensure that during the summertime internal temperatures in patient areas do not exceed 28°C dry bulb for more than 50 hours per year. It has been found that there is a relationship between preferred indoor temperatures and mean outside temperature. Fig A2 in CIBSE Guide A indicates this relationship.

Peak heating load

3.29 Peak heating local calculations are necessary on all mechanical supply systems to establish the size of heater batteries and subsequently the central plant.

3.30 Where ventilation systems provide tempered air to spaces that have supplementary LPHW to offset the building fabric losses, the plant heating load should be calculated based on the external winter design temperature, the design internal air temperature, and the calculated total air volume (including a suitable allowance for leakage).

3.31 Where the ventilation system is the only means of heating a space, an increase in load equivalent to the calculated fabric heat losses from the space should be added to the ventilation load. A check of supply temperature difference should be made. If it exceeds 10K the ventilation supply volume should be increased to suit.

Condensation risk

3.32 A check should be made to ensure that the selected air condition will not lead to surface condensation on low-temperature elements of the ventilated space.

3.33 Where there are local sources of moisture that would require excessive levels of ventilation to avoid condensation, the designer should consider the capture and removal of moisture at the source of the evaporation via an exhaust hood or similar device.

3.34 In intermittently heated buildings, it is necessary to consider the condensation risk at night setback conditions as well as during normal operation. Calculation methods for this assessment are given in CIBSE Guide A.

Peak cooling load

3.35 In addition to the base data of airflow rates and temperatures, when calculating cooling loads, the designer must take into account:

- solar cooling loads;
- surface conduction cooling loads;
- internal gain cooling loads;
- cooling loads due to high-level humidity control;
- method of control of internal conditions;
- fluctuations in internal temperatures.

3.36 When the peak internal loads have been assessed and a suitable allowance made for non-coincidence, the supply temperature can be calculated.

3.37 Once the lowest required supply temperature of the air handling unit has been established, and an allowance made for temperature rise through the fan and ductwork (usually 1K for low pressure systems), the off-plant enthalpy can be established from a psychrometric chart or table.

3.38 The cooling loads for all plants on the chilled water system should be calculated at each of the individual peak times in order to establish accurately the required (diversified) capacity of the chiller.

Annual energy consumption

3.39 Annual energy consumptions of heating-only ventilation systems are simple to calculate based on supply-to-external air temperature rise, and frequency of occurrence of external temperatures as given in CIBSE Guide A.

3.40 Minimum air volumes are usually fixed by the room loads or fresh air requirements. However, the designer may increase airflow to some rooms or zones in order to balance loads, as detailed in the following paragraphs on "Calculation of plant requirements."

3.41 The method of zoning and control can significantly influence energy consumption.

3.42 The nature of air-conditioning operation, comprising cooling and reheating for humidity or zonal temperature control, makes prediction of energy consumption very complex. It is imperative that these calculations are performed to ensure optimum energy efficiency.

3.43 The concept of load and plant operation charts is outlined in the CIBSE Guide A. The method requires the designer to establish the minimum and maximum loads on all zones across the range of external temperatures between winter and summer design conditions. Once the load chart is complete, the plant chart converts the loads to supply temperatures, which are then superimposed on external air temperatures.

3.44 When all temperatures for all zones are plotted on the plant operation chart, set points and resetting schedules can be established. From this information, the outputs of individual heaters, coolers and humidifiers can be established at any given external temperature. When those loads are computed against annual frequency of occurrence of external temperatures as given in CIBSE Guide A, the annual energy consumption of individual elements, and thus the air-conditioning system, can be established.

3.45 In order to prevent surface condensation occurring, it is necessary to provide sufficient ventilation to maintain the maximum and ambient dew-point temperature below the lowest surface temperature, the coldest usually being the glazing. Paragraphs 3.33 and 3.34 also refer.

Calculation of plant requirements

Air supply volumes

3.46 The minimum air supply volume for a room is determined by the greatest of these three criteria:

- the minimum fresh-air requirement;
- the minimum supply volume for the room load as determined by the maximum heating or cooling supply temperature differential;
- the desired/required air change rate.

Plant sizing

3.47 Once the design airflow has been established the cross-sectional area of the air-handling unit can be calculated based on a maximum coil face velocity of 2.0 m/s.

3.48 In order to establish the length of the air-handling unit, it will be necessary to refer to manufacturers' literature, ensuring all necessary access panels and components are included as detailed in Section 4.

3.49 The fan duty should be calculated by adding the resistances of all elements that contribute to the pressure drop of the index circuit.

3.50 The main elements that must be considered are:

- inlet or discharge louvres;
- plant entry and discharge;
- attenuators;
- components within the air-handling unit;
- duct-mounted heaters and filters (including a dust allowance);
- ductwork distribution;
- ductwork fittings, including: fire dampers, volume control dampers, bends and sets, tees, changes of section;
- air terminal device;
- discharge velocity.

3.51 Where packaged air-handling units are installed, the fan pressure drop is usually quoted as external plant resistance, and thus the designer does not need to calculate the resistances of individual plant items. The designer should, however, ensure that an allowance has been made for filter clogging; and confirm whether the fan pressure quoted is fan total or static pressure.

3.52 Resistances of ductwork and fittings may be obtained from the CIBSE Guide A. However, the designer should exercise some care when using tabulated pressure loss information for fittings that are relatively close together.

3.53 Upon completion of the resistance calculation exercise, the designer should make allowances for calculation and construction tolerances as indicated in Table 4.

Criteria	Low pressure systems	Medium/high pressure systems
Volume flow rate margin for leaking and balancing requirements	+5%	+5%
Total pressure loss margin A. for increase in volume flow rate (above)	+5%	+5%
B. for uncertainties in calculation	+5%	+10%
Combined total pressure loss margin	+10%	+15%

Table 4: Typical fan volume and pressure margins

Plantroom size and location

3.54 The ventilation plant and associated equipment should be positioned to give maximum reduction of noise and vibration transmitted to sensitive departments; while at the same time, achieve an economic solution for the distribution of services.

3.55 It is not recommended that noise and vibration generating plant be housed either directly above or below sensitive areas (for example, operating or anaesthetic rooms) unless there is no alternative, in which case, additional care and attention must be given to the control measures.

3.56 The plant must also be located so that it is remote from possible sources of contamination, heat gains and adverse weather conditions. The design should ensure that wind speed and direction have a minimal effect on plant throughput.

3.57 Safe access to and around plant is essential to facilitate inspection, routine maintenance, repair and plant replacement.

Provision of primary services

3.58 Where more than one air-handling plant requires cooling, remote central cooling plants with piped chilled water are preferred. In the case of a single plant, a multi-stage direct-expansion cooling coil with refrigerant piped from an adjacent compressor/condensing plant could be considered. If this option is selected, a refrigerant gas detector mounted in the base of the duct and an alarm system audible to the end-user will also need to be provided (as dictated by COSHH Regulations).

3.59 Clean dry steam is preferred for humidification, provided that the boiler water treatment does not render the steam unusable for direct humidification.

3.60 If a suitable supply of steam cannot be obtained from the steam main, a steam generator should be provided locally, or a self-generating humidifier installed. Electric humidifiers require considerable electrical loads and if a gas supply can be derived, this would be preferable. The location of a local steam generator is critical if condensate is to drain back into it.

Inlet and discharge sizing and location

3.61 Air intakes and discharge points should preferably be located at high level, to minimise the risks of noise nuisance to surrounding buildings, contamination and vandalism.

3.62 Intakes and discharges should be designed and located so that wind speed and direction have a minimal effect on the plant throughput.

3.63 Helicopter landing pads in the vicinity of ventilation intakes and discharges can result in large short-term pressure changes. This can cause pressure surges in supply systems and reverse airflows in extracts. Exhaust fumes from the helicopter may also be drawn into intakes. For general information, refer to Health Building Note (HBN) 15-03 – Hospital helipads.

3.64 Intake points should also be situated away from cooling towers, boiler flues, vents from oil storage tanks, fume cupboards and other discharges of contaminated air, vapours and gases, and places where vehicle exhaust gases may be drawn in.

3.65 Where intakes have necessarily to be sited at or near ground level, the area around them should be paved or concreted to prevent soil or vegetation being drawn in. They should also be caged or located within a compound to prevent rubbish being left in the vicinity. The likely proximity of vehicle exhausts should also be taken into account when determining the protected area around the intake.

3.66 The discharge from an extract system must be located so that vitiated air cannot be drawn back into the supply air intake or any other fresh-air inlet. Ideally, the extract discharge will be located on a different face of the building from the supply intake(s). In any event, there must be a minimum separation of 4 metres between them, with the discharge mounted at a higher level than the intake.

3.67 Discharges from LEV systems should preferably be vertical and usually not less than 3m above roof level. They should not be fitted with a cowl that could cause the discharge to be deflected downwards.

3.68 Each intake and discharge point should be fitted with corrosion-resistant weatherproof louvres or cowls to protect the system from driving rain. Louvres should be sized based on a maximum face velocity of 2 m/s in order to prevent excessive noise generation and pressure loss.

3.69 The inside of the louvres should be fitted with a mesh of not less than 6mm and not more than 12mm to prevent leaves being drawn in and infestation by vermin.

3.70 The duct behind louvres should be self-draining. If this is not practicable, it should be tanked and provided with a drainage system.

3.71 Cleaning access must be provided either from the outside via hinged louvres or by access doors in the plenum behind the louvre. Where a common plenum is provided, cleaning access should be via a walk-in door.

Heat rejection devices

3.72 The design conditions given in Section 2 make no allowance for the elevated temperatures that can occur on the roof of buildings. Refrigeration condensers should, if practicable, be shaded from direct solar radiation, or the design adjusted to take account of the gain.

3.73 Air-cooled condensers must always be the first choice for heat rejection from any refrigeration plant. Evaporative cooling systems must not be used in healthcare premises.

3.74 Reference should be made to Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04-01: 'The Control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'Safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems, Part A: Design, Installation and Testing, and Part B: Operational Management, published by Health Facilities Scotland, 2011.

4. Air handling unit design and specification guidance

General requirements

Location and access

4.1 Air-handling units should be located in an accessible area secured from unauthorised entry. Siting units in ceiling voids above occupied spaces is not appropriate.

4.2 Units located on roofs must have a safe means of access together with suitable precautions to prevent personnel or equipment falling or being blown off during maintenance activities.

4.3 Units located at ground level should be secured within a locked compound to prevent unauthorised access. Measures should be taken to exclude vehicles from the vicinity to ensure that exhaust fumes will not be drawn into intakes.

4.4 Units may have a working life of approximately 20 years. It can be anticipated that over this period there will be a need to access every element within the unit for deep cleaning. It is also quite possible that the main fan and individual heater and chiller batteries will need replacement. Suitably positioned service connection joints and adequate spacing should permit these items to be withdrawn without the need to dismantle other installed plant or equipment. Batteries significantly wider than 1 metre should be split to permit withdrawal from both sides.

4.5 It is essential that air-handling units are positioned so that all parts are easily and safely accessible for routine inspection and service. If a unit is located against a wall or backs onto another unit then access to all parts must be available from the front. Units greater than 1 metre wide should preferably have access from both sides or access doors large enough to permit the full and safe entry of maintenance personnel.

4.6 Water may be used during routine cleaning or spilt when maintenance is being undertaken. The area around the unit should be tanked to prevent water penetration to adjacent areas and adequately drained.

4.7 Fire precautions should be incorporated in accordance with Firecode. Guidance is available in BS5588: Part 9 and Sections 5 and 6 of this document.

4.8 Combustion equipment must not be located in a fire compartment that houses air-handling equipment.

Technical requirements

4.9 The basic technical requirements of the whole of the ventilation system should meet the relevant clauses of the Model Engineering Specification. It should be noted that the Specification contains a menu of clauses that cover a wide range of applications, so it is important to select only those that are relevant to the specific application.

Note 1: At the time of writing, Model Engineering Specification C04 was listed for revision in order to bring it into line with the revised standards as set out in this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum. Where conflicts in specification arise, the Scottish Health Technical Memorandum takes precedence.

4.10 It is essential that the main plant/ductwork is located far enough above the floor to permit the correct installation of drainage systems for cooling coils, humidifiers and heat recovery systems. Easy access for maintenance of drainage systems and their associated pipework must be provided.

4.11 Organic materials or substances that can support the growth of microorganisms must not be used in the construction of the plant or its distribution system. The water fittings and materials directory lists suitable materials for sealants and gaskets.

4.12 The plant and its distribution system must not contain any material or substance that could cause or support combustion.

4.13 Plants should have a high standard of air-tightness. The double-skin method of construction with insulation sandwiched between two metal faces is recommended. The panels may be available in a variety of colours at no additional cost. This can aid identification by colour coding of units in a plant room (for example green for general ventilation; blue for theatres; red for laboratories and isolation facilities; grey for extract etc).

4.14 The inside of the plant should be as smooth as possible. Channels, rolled angles or formed sections that could trap or hold moisture should be kept to a minimum. If stiffeners are required, they should be fitted externally. If internal bracing has to be fitted it must be of a design that will not trap or hold moisture.

4.15 Airflow across air treatment components such as filters, heat exchangers and humidifiers will be influenced by the pattern of the approaching airstream. If unsatisfactory conditions are created, the performance of the component will be reduced.

4.16 Access to items that require routine service such as filters, frost batteries and chiller batteries should be via hinged doors. The doors should be large enough (for example 500mm minimum) to allow easy access. Items requiring infrequent access such as attenuators may be via bolted-on, lift-off panels. All doors and panels should be close-fitting and without leaks.

4.17 Care should be taken during installation to ensure that electrical and mechanical services are not installed in positions that will reduce or impede access.

4.18 It can be difficult to turn off AHUs in order to inspect filters and drainage trays. Viewing ports and internal illumination will therefore facilitate routine inspection of such items. Viewing ports should be at a convenient height so that temporary ladders are not required. Internal illumination should be provided by fittings to at least IP55 rating. Fittings should be positioned so that they provide both illumination for inspection and task lighting. All of the lights in a unit should be operated by a single switch.

4.19 Access to AHUs and items in the distribution system such as filters or heater / chiller batteries should be via fixed ladders and platforms or pulpit-style moveable steps. The installation of distribution ductwork and other electrical or mechanical services should provide sufficient clearance to allow the pulpit steps to be easily wheeled into position.

AHU drainage system

4.20 All items of plant that could produce moisture must be provided with a drainage system. The system will comprise a drip tray, glass trap, air break and associated drainage pipework.

4.21 The drip-tray should be constructed of a corrosion-resistant material (stainless steel is preferred) and be so arranged that it will completely drain. To prevent 'pooling', it is essential that the drain connection should not have an upstand; and that a slope of approximately 1 in 20 in all directions should be incorporated to the drain outlet position. The tray must be completely accessible or, for smaller units, easily removable for inspection and cleaning.

4.22 Each drip tray should be provided with its own drain trap. The drain trap should be of the clear (borosilicate) glass type. This permits the colour of the water seal to be observed thus giving an early indication of corrosion, biological activity or contamination within the duct. The trap should have a means for filling and incorporate couplings to facilitate removal for cleaning. It should be located in an easily visible position where it will not be subject to casual knocks. The pipework connecting it to the drainage tray should have a continuous fall of not less that 1 in 20.

4.23 Traps fitted to plant located outside or in unheated plant rooms may need to be trace-heated in winter. The trace-heating must not raise the temperature of water in the trap above 5°C.

4.24 Water from each trap must discharge via a clear air gap of at least 15mm above the unrestricted spill-over level of either an open tundish connected to a foul drainage stack via a second trap, or a floor gully (or channel). A support should be provided to ensure that the air gap cannot be reduced. More than one drain trap may discharge into the tundish providing each has its own air break.

4.25 Drainage pipework may be thermoplastic, copper or stainless steel. Glass should not be used. The pipework should be a minimum diameter of 22mm and a fall of at least 1 in 60 in the direction of flow. It should be well supported and located so as not to inhibit access to the AHU.

Layout of air handling unit

4.26 The AHU should be arranged so that the majority of items are under positive pressure. Any item of plant requiring a drain should be on the positive pressure side of the fan. A recommended layout is given in schematic from in Figure 3.

4.27 A separate extract unit will generally be required for the area served by each supply unit.

4.28 An energy recovery system will normally be fitted between the supply and extract units.

Provision of dampers

4.29 Fire- or smoke-actuated dampers shall be provided at the locations required by Firecode. (See Paragraphs 5.17 - 5.21).

4.30 Motorised low-leakage shut-off dampers should be located immediately behind the intake and discharge of each supply and extract system respectively. They should be of the opposed-blade type, opening through a full 90° and must close automatically in the event of power failure or plant shutdown to prevent any reversal of the system airflow.

4.31 The quality of motorised dampers is critical. They should be rigid, with square connections fitted with end and edge seals of a flexible material and with minimal play in linkages. The leakage on shut-off should be less than 2%.

4.32 A manually operated isolating damper should be installed between the main AHU and its distribution system to enable the unit to be isolated when cleaning is in progress.

4.33 Good practice will require the fitting of a main volume control damper so that the design airflow rate can be set at commissioning. The damper should be lockable in any position. If it will also be used for plant isolation, it should be capable of being reset to give the design airflow without the need for re-measurement.

4.34 Internal plant isolating dampers or provision for the fitting of shut-off plates between items within a unit are not required.

Vibration

4.35 Vibration from a remote plantroom can be transmitted by the structure of the building, may be regenerated and may sometimes be magnified many times. Units should be selected to have the minimum vibration generation and installed on suitable anti-vibration mounts. Pipe and ductwork should incorporate anti-

vibration couplings, preferably in two planes at right angles, as close to the vibration source as possible. Consideration should be given to the use of anti-vibration pipe hangers and supports.

Sequence of components

4.36 The following arrangement of plant components is typical although in many instances not all elements will be required:

- fresh air intake;
- motorised isolation damper;
- frost / fog coil;
- pre-filter;
- energy-recovery device;
- attenuator;
- fan;
- blast plate;
- attenuator;
- chiller battery;
- eliminator;
- heater battery;
- humidifier;
- final filter;
- isolation / volume control damper.

Note 2: Attenuators may be located in the intake and discharge duct if they are of a suitable type (See Paragraphs 4.159 - 4.162)

There may be instances where the above arrangement is not appropriate and the plant arrangement should be planned accordingly.

Fans

General requirements

4.37 The fan should be selected for good efficiency and minimum noise level, but the overriding factor should be the selection of a fan characteristic such that the air quantity is not greatly affected by system pressure changes due to filters becoming dirty or external wind effects.

Acceptable types

4.38 Fans can be of the axial, centrifugal, cross-flow, mixed-flow or propeller type, depending upon the requirements of the system.

4.39 Where used, centrifugal fans should preferably be of the backward-blade type. Alternatively, where noise levels are more critical and pressure requirements are lower, forward-curved blade fans are acceptable. For high-power applications, aerofoil-blade fans may be appropriate.

Selection

4.40 Generally, large ventilation systems will use centrifugal fans due to their efficiency, non-overloading characteristics, and developed pressures.

4.41 Forward curved centrifugal fans can overload if allowed to handle more air than they are designed for.

4.42 Alternatively, it may be appropriate to use mixed flow fans in high-pressure systems.

4.43 Axial flow or propeller fans are generally only used in local through-the-wall systems, or systems with very low pressure requirements.

4.44 Cross-flow fans have very low operating efficiencies, and thus their use is restricted to applications such as fan coil units.

Location and connection

4.45 Fans are normally positioned to ‘blow through’ the central plant so that the cooling coil and humidifier drains will be under positive pressure.

4.46 The fan performance figures given by manufacturers in their catalogue data are based on tests carried out under ideal conditions, which include long uniform ducts on the fan inlet/outlet. These standard test connections are unlikely to occur in practice, the designer should therefore ensure as far as is practical that the fan performance will not be significantly de-rated by the system. This objective can be approached by ensuring that the fan inlet flow conditions comprise uniform axial flow velocities with low levels of turbulence.

4.47 Where the outlet duct is larger than the fan discharge connections, there should be a gradual transition, with a following section of straight duct, having a length equivalent to three duct diameters.

4.48 The design of the fan intake connection must be carefully considered to avoid swirl in the airstream. When the air spins in the same direction as the impeller, the performance and power consumption of the fan are reduced. When the air spins in the opposite direction to the impeller the power consumption and noise will increase with hardly any pressure increase. Airstream swirl is usually induced by large variations across the fan intake caused by the air passing round a tight bend immediately before the intake.

4.49 Where a centrifugal fan is located with an open intake, the clear distance between the suction opening and the nearest wall should be not less than half the diameter of the inlet. If two fans with free inlets are positioned within the same chamber, their adjacent suction openings should be at least 1 diameter apart.

4.50 Airtight flexible joints should be provided at fan inlet and outlet connections. They should be equal in cross-section to the points of connection and be neither longer than 200mm nor shorter than 100mm.

4.51 For centrifugal fans, a diffuser screen / blast plate should be fitted immediately downstream of their discharge.

Supply fan drive arrangements

4.52 Where the fan drive is via a motor-driven belt and pulley, it should be external to the air stream. This arrangement has the following advantages:

- the fire risk is reduced;
- the drive is visible so it is simple to check that the belt is still there;
- particles shed from the drive belt are outside of the air stream;
- if the belt slips, the “burning rubber smell” is not transmitted down into occupied areas of the premises;
- noise generated by the motor and drive will not be transmitted along the ductwork;
- waste heat is excluded from the system;
- the drive may be through a vee or toothed belt and pulley. The latter have the advantage of eliminating belt squeal on start up and have a longer service life. They are particularly suitable where the fan drive motor is fitted with a soft start and should be located external to the air stream.

4.53 The drive train should be easily visible without the need to remove access covers. Protecting the drive train with a mesh guard is the preferred option. For weatherproof units designed to be located outside, the fan drive will be external to the duct but enclosed. It should be easily visible through a viewing port with internal illumination and access via a lockable hinged door.

4.54 For direct-coupled fan and motor units, the motor should be out of the air stream.

4.55 For induction drive ‘plug’ motor arrangements (where the motor is fitted within the fan and is integral to it) and in line axial fans with a pod motor; the fan / motor combination may be within the air stream provided the motor windings are protected from over temperature by a thermister and lockout relay.

Extract fan drive arrangements

4.56 The preferred method where the fan drive is via a motor driven belt and pulley arrangement will be to locate it external to the air stream.

4.57 The fan drive and motor may be located inside the duct within the air stream provided the motor windings are protected from over-temperature by a thermister and lockout. The drive train should be easily visible through a viewing port, have internal illumination and access via a lockable hinged door.

4.58 Where the system air is explosive, aggressive or has high moisture content, the extract fan motor must be located outside the air stream. This is generally achieved with axial fans by using a bifurcated unit.

Control

4.59 Fans in healthcare applications are normally either single or two-speed. Where there is a requirement for two-speed operation, this is generally via a local user control (for example, in a hood extract system to provide a boost facility) or via a time schedule for energy saving during unoccupied periods.

4.60 Normally only a single motor is required with a standby motor available for fitting as necessary or fitted but not belted. Twin, run and standby motors - with the standby being jockeyed around - are not required.

4.61 Where there is a specified requirement for standby fans, the system should incorporate an automatic changeover facility activated via an airflow sensor. Fault indication should be provided.

4.62 The control of fans in terms of start-up and run is increasingly being vested in computer software. Inverter-drive, variable-speed, soft-start systems are becoming a standard approach. It should be remembered that most healthcare applications require known amounts of air to be delivered while the system is in use. Constant volume systems that deliver specified air-change rates are therefore the norm. Duct- or room-pressure-controlled, variable-speed systems have a very limited application in healthcare.

4.63 It is necessary to ensure that - should the computer control system or its software develop a fault - then the fan can be switched to a direct-start, fixed-speed, manual operation. This is particularly important for critical care systems serving operating suites, high-dependency care units of any type, patient isolation facilities, laboratories and pharmaceutical production suites. Off-site software support is no substitute for the ability of on site staff to override the automatic control and keep the system operating in an emergency. Under these circumstances actions that may shorten the life of the plant are considered of secondary importance to that of preserving the health and safety of patients and staff.

Heater batteries / heater coils

General requirements

4.64 Frost batteries are installed to protect the downstream filters from low-temperature, high-humidity intake air conditions. As they handle unfiltered air they should be constructed of plain tubing without fins and be as near to the outside as possible to minimise condensation during cold weather. Access for cleaning will need to be provided to both sides of the coil.

4.65 Where steam coils are used for a frost battery, they may be constructed using spiral-finned copper tube. As they will be prone to fouling the tube layout and spacing should permit easy access for regular cleaning.

4.66 Main and branch heater-batteries should be constructed of solid-drawn copper-tube coils with copper fins, generally connected in parallel.

4.67 Where there is a wet heating system in the areas served, the main heater-battery should be sized for the ventilation requirements only, and not for the fabric loss.

4.68 Access for cleaning must be provided to both sides of all frost batteries and heater-batteries.

Acceptable types

4.69 Electric, water or steam heater-batteries may be considered. However, electric heater-batteries are expensive to operate and where there are alternatives, their use should be restricted to low-power use (for example trimming control).

4.70 Where steam-supplied heater-batteries are used, their control, venting and trapping systems should be designed so that a vacuum cannot occur within the coil. The condensate drainage arrangements should not allow pressure to build in the main resulting in a back-up of condensate in the coil.

Location

4.71 Where possible, wet-trimmer heater-batteries should be located in plant areas.

4.72 Where it is necessary to locate heater-batteries in false ceilings etc, consideration should be given to the use of electric heaters. If this is not practicable, drip-trays should be installed under both the battery and the control valve assembly to protect the ceiling. A moisture sensor and alarm should be fitted in the tray. In any event, to facilitate maintenance access, they should be located above corridors or other non-critical areas and never above patient occupied spaces.

4.73 Auxiliary fan coil units should not be installed in the ceiling above an occupied space. They should be accessible for routine maintenance and cleaning without the need to cause significant disruption to the operation of the department that they serve.

Control

4.74 LPHW frost coils should be controlled by an off-coil temperature sensor operating a motorised valve to provide a minimum plant "on temperature" of between 2°C and 5°C. The off-coil temperature of the frost coil is generally sensed by a serpentine thermostat downstream of the coil or upstream of the next plant item. This thermostat will shut the fan down if any part of the air stream is below the minimum set-point.

4.75 Steam-supplied frost coils should be fitted with an on/off control operated by a temperature sensor mounted upstream of the battery. These are normally set to open the control valve fully when the outside temperature drops to +1°C. This will ensure that there is no standing condensate in the base of the coil.

4.76 The main heater-battery should be controlled in the same manner under the dictates of either an off-coil temperature sensor, or a room temperature sensor, depending on the plant configuration and method of control. Trimmer heater-batteries are generally controlled by one or more averaging temperature sensors within the room or rooms in the zone.

4.77 Heater-battery control valves should drive to a closed position on system shutdown or fan failure. The control system should then automatically set to provide frost protection.

Cooling coils

General requirements

4.78 Cooling coils will need to be decontaminated periodically. They must have good access both up and downstream. Hinged access doors with viewing ports and illumination inside the duct should be provided both sides of the coil.

4.79 An eliminator will be required downstream of all cooling coils. The eliminator may take the form of an extension of the coil fins or be a separate device. If a separate device it should be removable as a unit to permit cleaning of the coil face.

4.81 4.80 All cooling coils must be fitted with their own independent drainage system as specified above. A baffle or similar device must be provided in the drip tray to prevent air bypassing the coil. The tray should be large enough to capture the moisture from the eliminator, bends and headers. Where coils are greater than 1m high, intermediate drip-trays will be required.

4.82 Condensate traps manufactured from Borosilicate Glass will allow easy visual inspection and incorporate a self-cleaning smooth non-porous internal surface, complying with ISO 3585 and BS2589 Part 1.

Selection

4.83 Cooling coils supplied with chilled water are the preferred option. For small loads or where chilled water is not available, direct expansion coils may be used.

4.84 Care must be taken in selection to minimise electrolytic action resulting from condensation on the airside. Coils constructed from copper tubes with copper fins extended on the downstream side in the form of an eliminator and electro-tinned after manufacture are preferred. Aluminium fins should only be used if vinyl-coated.

4.85 All parts of the coil and its associated ductwork in contact with moisture must be manufactured from corrosion-resistant materials. Pressed steel coil headers, even if treated, have been shown to be prone to corrosion over time and should not be used. Steel mounting frames and casings present similar problems hence stainless steel is preferred.

Location

4.86 Microorganisms that multiply in moisture cannot be avoided when the coil is dehumidifying. However, locating the final filter downstream of the coils will reduce the risk of infection.

4.87 Cooling coils in AHUs should be located upstream of the final filter.

4.88 Where any cooling coil has to be located above a ceiling, drip-trays should be installed under both the coil and the control valve assembly to protect the ceiling. A moisture sensor and alarm should be fitted in the tray. To facilitate maintenance access, they should be located above corridors or other non-critical areas and never above patient occupied spaces.

Control

4.89 There are two basic methods of control for cooling coils:

- off-coil control – used in multi-zone systems or single-zone systems where close humidity control is required, to provide a constant maximum off-plant condition which satisfies the temperature and high humidity requirements of the zone with the highest load;
- sequential control – used in single-zone systems, or multi-zone systems with averaging sensors where close control is not required. A room or duct temperature sensor controls the cooling coil and heater battery in sequence to maintain constant room conditions.

4.90 The advantage of off-coil control is that accurate humidity control can be provided without relying on humidity sensors, which are prone to inaccuracy and drift. Off-coil control is however, expensive to operate in terms of energy consumption, due to the fact that there is no feedback of room loads, and thus

at low loads and in systems where there are large zonal variations, significant over-cooling and reheating will occur.

4.91 On systems with two-speed operating, it is usual to isolate the cooling coil upon selection of low speed. In addition, on system shutdown, low airflow or fan failure, the cooling coil must be isolated.

Humidifiers

Design need

4.92 Humidification was originally required for some healthcare applications in order to control the risk associated with the use of flammable anaesthetic gases. The use of such gases has now ceased. Humidification is therefore no longer required unless there is a very specific application requirement.

4.93 Operating-theatre AHUs do not generally require humidifiers but provision for their retrofitting in terms of space provision and a capped drainage system should be provided.

4.94 Where humidification is required, it will be subject to the specific requirements set out below. These are intended to ensure that the unit will operate safely and not become a source of contamination.

General requirements

4.95 The most important requirement for a humidifier is to create complete mixing of the steam with the air. The manufacturers' instructions should be followed regarding minimum distances which should be allowed before bends or other components. This is particularly important with respect to a filter mounted downstream. If it becomes saturated by the humidifier, organisms can grow through the filter and be released into the duct. These may then be carried on the airstream into an occupied space.

4.96 The section of ductwork containing the humidifier may need to be periodically decontaminated. Hinged access doors with viewing ports and internal illumination should be provided. A label warning that the device emits live steam and should be isolated prior to opening should be affixed to the access door.

4.97 All parts of the humidifier and its associated ductwork in contact with moisture must be manufactured from corrosion-resistant materials. Stainless steel is preferred.

4.98 The electrodes of self-generating electrode-boiler type humidifiers should be stainless steel.

4.99 All humidifiers must be fitted with their own independent drainage systems as detailed in Paragraphs 4.20 - 4.25 or 4.72 and 4.87.

4.100 For self- and locally-generated steam humidifiers, the cleanliness of the water supply is essential for their safe operation. Provision should be made for draining down supply pipework and break tanks for periodic disinfection and cleaning during periods when they are not required in service.

4.101 The addition of treatment chemicals for continuous control of water quality for humidifier/air handling units should be avoided. Consideration could be given to installing a UV system to control microbiological growth. Given the limitations of UV systems, however, this will require filtration to high quality to ensure the effectiveness of exposure of organisms to the UV irradiation. As with all water treatment systems the unit should be of proven efficacy and incorporate UV monitors so that any loss of transmission can be detected.

Acceptable types

4.102 Only steam-injection manifold-type humidifiers are considered suitable for use in health building air-conditioning systems. Water humidifiers of any type should not be used.

4.103 Steam may be derived from the central steam supply provided that it does not contain any treatment carry-over, or generated locally either within or adjacent to the humidifier.

4.104 The introduction of steam should be by an appliance specially designed to discharge dry steam into the air-conditioning system without objectionable noise or carry-over of moisture.

4.105 During the design stage, consideration should be given to the proposed methods for the regular cleansing of the humidifier(s) and their components.

Selection

4.106 The number and length of steam-injection manifolds to be used is dependent on various factors such as duct cross-sectional area, air velocity, dry-bulb temperature and manifold design. Guidance from the manufacturer should be followed closely.

4.107 A mains steam humidifier can be noisy and will be difficult to control if it is operated at an excessive steam pressure. It should be sized for an operating pressure of approximately 1 bar. The pipework supplying it should be provided with a dirt pocket, pressure reducing valve and steam trap installed as close as practicable to the humidifier, so that the steam condition at entry is as dry as possible. A temperature switch on the condensate line (or equivalent design provision by the humidifier manufacturer) should be incorporated to prevent 'spitting' on start-up.

4.108 Most operational problems with mains steam humidifiers arise because of back-pressure in the condensate discharge line which will result in flooding into the duct. Unless the condensate from the device can be discharged and collected at atmospheric pressure, it should be discharged directly to drain.

4.109 A local steam generator, where used, must be fed with potable quality water. Additional water treatment to the standard set out above may be required. If the humidifier is unused for a period exceeding 48 hours, it must automatically drain its water content, including that contained in the supply pipework, right back to the running main and leave itself empty.

4.110 Some steam generators are of a type that requires regular cleaning and descaling. The design must allow for them to be installed such that they can be physically isolated from the air duct in order to prevent contamination of the supply by cleaning agents while this is taking place.

Location

4.111 Careful siting of the humidifier injection manifold is required to prevent the steam impinging onto the side(s) of the duct, condensing and generating excess moisture.

Control

4.112 Accurate humidity control can only be provided on single-zone systems, or multi-zone systems with zonal humidifiers. In the above systems, humidity sensors control the humidifier for low-level humidity control, and override the temperature controls to open the cooling coil valve for high-limit humidity control.

4.113 Multi-zone systems are more usually controlled by a minimum humidity sensor located in the supply duct(s) following the last heater-battery.

4.114 Overriding controls separate from the normal plant humidistat should be installed. Their purpose is to prevent excessive condensation in the conditioned space when starting up. A time delay should be incorporated into the humidifier control system such that the humidifier does not start until 30 minutes after the ventilation/plant start-up. In addition, a high-limit humidistat should be installed to limit the output of the humidifier so that the saturation in the duct does not exceed 70%. This humidistat is to control the added moisture. It is not necessary to install a de-humidifier to reduce the humidity of the incoming air if it already exceeds 70%. The humidifier control system should ensure that the humidifier is switched off when the fan is not running.

4.115 On systems with two-speed operating, it is usual to isolate the humidifier upon selection of low speed. In addition, on system shutdown, low airflow or fan failure, the humidifier should be isolated.

Filtration

General requirements

4.116 The purpose of filtration is to reduce the level of airborne contamination in an air stream. It is generally carried out in stages.

4.117 Filters must be securely housed and sealed in well-fitting frames that minimise air by pass. Air by pass significantly reduces filter efficiency, the higher the filter grade the greater the effect. Mounting frames should be designed so that the air flow pushes the filter into its housing to help minimise air bypass. Mounting frames that withdraw so that the filter can be changed without having to reach into the unit are preferred.

4.118 Neither the filter media, nor any material used in the construction of the filters, should be capable of sustaining combustion. The filter media should be such that particles of it do not detach and become carried away by the airflow.

4.119 Filters need to be readily accessible for replacement so a hinged access door should be provided. The upstream side of the filter should be visible for inspection through a viewing port with internal illumination.

4.120 All filters should be provided with a means of visually checking the differential pressure across them. Direct-reading dial-type gauges marked with clean and dirty sectors are preferred.

4.121 A complete spare set of filters must be provided at handover.

Definition of filter terms

4.122 Particulate air filters are divided into four categories:

- general ventilation filters grades G1 to G4;
- fine filters grades F5 to F9;
- high efficiency particulate filters (HEPA) graded H10 to H14;
- ultra-low particulate air filters (ULPA) graded U15 to U17.

4.123 General filters are graded in terms of their ‘Synthetic dust weight ‘Arrestance’. This represents the percentage of a test dust captured by a filter. ‘Arrestance’ provides a good indication of a filter’s ability to remove the larger, heavier particles found in outdoor air. These are of a size to block finned batteries and large enough to settle out in the air distribution system.

BS EN 779 grade (Eurovent grade)	% Arrestance	Notes and typical healthcare application
G1 - (EU1)	< 65	Metal mesh grease filter
G2 - (EU2)	65 to < 80	Coarse primary filter
G3 - (EU3)	80 to < 90	Primary air intake; return air; energy recovery device protection
G4 - (EU4)	> 90	General purpose tempered air supply

Table 4: General Filters

4.124 Fine filters are graded in terms of their ‘Atmospheric dust spot Efficiency’. This is a measure of the filter’s ability to remove the very fine staining particles found in outdoor air. It will indicate how ‘visibly’ clean a filter will keep a ventilated space. The staining particles are approximately the same size as most

common bacteria so it is also a rough measure of the filter's ability to remove microorganisms.

BS EN 779 grade (Eurovent grade)	% Efficiency	Notes and typical healthcare applications
F5 - (EU5)	40 to 60	General purpose panel / bag filter
F6 - (EU6)	60 to < 80	Basic grade bag filter
F7 - (EU7)	80 to < 90	Medium grade bag or pleated paper Conventional operating theatre supply air
F8 - (EU8)	90 to < 95	High grade bag or pleated paper
F9 - (EU9)	> 95	Basic HEPA filter – Level 8 clean rooms

Table 5: Fine Filters

4.125 High efficiency filters (HEPA and ULPA) are graded in terms of their ability to capture their 'Most Penetrating Particle Size' (MPPS). High-efficiency filters self-select the particle that they are least able to trap, hence the MPPS. They are then tested against that size of particle. These filters are designed to provide very high-efficiency filtration of particles in the sub-micron size range.

BS EN 1822 grade (Eurovent grade)	% Efficiency @ MPPS	Notes and typical healthcare application
H10 - (EU10)	85	Ultra-clean theatre terminal
H11 - (EU11)	95	
H12 - (EU12)	99.5	
H13 - (EU13)	99.95	
H14 - (EU14)	99.995	Pharmacy aseptic suite Category 3 room extract
U15 – U17	-	Not generally used in healthcare

Table 6: High Efficiency (HEPA) Particulate Filters

Selection primary filters

4.126 All filters should be of the dry type. Panel filters are cheap and disposable with relatively low dust-holding capacity. They are generally used as pre-filters to eliminate large particles that would otherwise clog or cause damage to the fan and finned heating and cooling batteries. Stainless steel frames that hold disposable pre-cut filter pads are preferred.

4.127 General ventilation supply plant should incorporate primary air filters of grade G3, sized for a maximum face velocity of 2.0 m/s. Additional coarse pre-filters may be justified where the intake air is exceptionally polluted. They are sometimes fitted as a temporary measure when building work is being carried out in the vicinity of the air intake.

Secondary filters

4.128 Where a higher standard of filtration is required, secondary bag or pleated paper panel filters would be used. Rigid frame filters incorporating pleated

paper elements are preferred over bag filters for critical care applications such as operating theatres.

4.129 In urban or other areas of high atmospheric pollution, a higher standard of filtration may be justified to reduce the level of staining to internal finishes.

Extract air filters

4.130 Extract filtration will generally only be required where heat-recovery devices are installed. There are a very limited number of specialised applications (microbiological safety cabinets and similar LEV systems) where contaminated air is required to be filtered prior to discharge to atmosphere. If it is safe for staff to work in a room without wearing respiratory protective equipment, it is safe to discharge the room air to atmosphere without filtration.

Return-air filters

4.131 They are used to reduce the load on HEPA filters in recirculating applications such as Ultra Clean operating suite ventilation canopies and pharmacy aseptic suites.

High-efficiency filters – HEPA and ULPA

4.132 HEPA filters are expensive so their use should be kept to a minimum. Applications requiring HEPA filters include the air supply to aseptic suites in manufacturing pharmacies, the discharges from microbiological safety cabinets and isolation facilities.

4.133 If used, HEPA filters should be of the replaceable panel type with leak-proof seals. They should be installed in a manner that permits on-site validation of the filter and its housing. This may involve the release of a Dispersed Oil Particle (DOP) challenge smoke through an injection point upstream of the filter and a measurement of the DOP penetration across the downstream face. Alternatively a particle-counting method may be used.

4.134 HEPA filters are sometimes fitted in extract systems to capture hazardous substances or organisms. Design provision must be made for the subsequent safe handling of contaminated filters by maintenance staff. This may be achieved by:

- sealing the hazardous substance into the filter before it is removed;
- providing a system to fumigate the filter to kill any organisms;
- housing it in a ”safe change” unit that permits the filter to be ejected into a bag and sealed without staff having to come into direct contact with it.

4.135 In view of the costs and problems associated with placing HEPA filters in extracts, it is recommended that a full risk assessment be carried out at the design stage. This should include defining the true need for HEPA filters in an

extract; validation of its performance at installation; the method of safely changing a contaminated filter; and its subsequent disposal.

4.136 ULPA filters are very expensive and are designed to remove particles below a size that are either surgically or aerobiologically significant. There would have to be exceptional circumstances in order to justify their use in healthcare ventilation systems.

Activated carbon filters

4.137 Activated carbon filters are able to remove gases and vapours from an air stream and are graded according to the range of substances they can remove. They are not normally fitted in air-conditioning supply systems.

4.138 They are occasionally fitted retrospectively because the main air intake has been poorly sited and is drawing in traffic fumes. Where used they must be protected by a particulate air filter.

4.139 Activated carbon filters are more commonly used in specialised fume extraction systems when the location of the discharge means that dilution cannot be relied upon to disperse noxious fumes.

Location

4.140 The primary filter should be positioned on the inlet side of the supply fan, downstream of the frost coil. The secondary filter, when fitted, should be on the positive-pressure side of the fan. This will prevent air being drawn into the system after the filter and capture any particles shed by items of equipment within the AHU.

4.141 The filter installation must be arranged to provide easy access to filter media for cleaning, removal or replacement, with side or front withdrawal as required.

Control

4.142 Differential-pressure transducers should be provided to monitor and alarm remotely on excessive filter pressure drop. In critical areas dirty-filter indication lights should be provided at the point-of-use.

Energy-recovery

General requirements

4.143 Energy recovery will normally be fitted to all healthcare ventilation systems. It may be omitted only where it would clearly be uneconomic. Where the economic case is marginal, space should be allowed for the retrofitting of an energy recovery system.

4.144 For systems in healthcare premises, a plate heat exchanger or ‘run-around coil’ system is suitable. Thermal wheels may be used providing they are fitted with a

purge sector. The small amounts of air leakage across those devices are not considered significant. Other systems such as heat pumps or heat pipes are

also suitable. Selection should be based on relative locations of the supply and extract units, ease of maintenance and practicality. Cleaning access will be required to both sides of any energy-recovery device.

4.145 The following are the minimum energy transfer efficiencies required for devices handling equal air volumes:

- run-around coil – 45%;
- plate heat exchanger – 50%;
- thermal wheel – 65%;
- any other energy-recovery device – 50%.

4.146 If a plate heat exchanger is chosen, the plates should be constructed of metal. Plastic should not be used for internal bypass dampers and drive gears.

4.147 Whichever energy-recovery device is chosen the extract side will need to be protected by a G3 filter and provided with a drainage system as described in Paragraphs 4.20 - 4.25, to remove condensate.

Location

4.148 Energy-recovery devices should be located downstream of the frost battery and pre-filter, prior to the cooling coil or main heater battery on the supply side.

Control

4.149 It is essential to consider the control of both the energy recovery device and the frost battery when assessing the economics of recovery, as all energy provided by the frost battery will directly reduce the heat exchange of the recovery device. To this end, the off-coil setting of the frost coil should be the minimum possible to protect the primary filter (for example +2°C).

4.150 The energy-recovery device should be controlled in sequence with the main heater battery, and should incorporate a control to prevent the transfer of unwanted heat when the air-on condition rises above the required plant set point.

4.151 In instances where the plant is cooling the air, it may be possible to remove heat from the supply air at high ambient conditions, under the dictates of enthalpy sensors in the intake and extract ducts.

Attenuation

General requirements

4.152 Noise will be generated in an air distribution system by the fan, plant items and airflow. The ductwork is a very effective transmitter of this noise hence there is generally a need to limit the noise transmission to meet the requirements of the building. This normally involves the provision of sound attenuation treatment as part of the overall ductwork system design.

4.153 A thorough assessment of the design should be made to assess the noise impact. This should take into account the following primary factors:

- fan- and plant-noise generation;
- air-flow generated noise in ductwork fittings and dampers;
- noise generated at grilles, diffusers and other terminals;
- noise break-in and break-out of ductwork;
- cross-talk and similar interference;
- the noise limitations for the building and surrounding areas;
- external noise generation.

4.154 A method of assessment of these factors and the sound attenuation requirements of ductwork systems is given in CIBSE Guide B.

4.155 The fan is usually the main source of system noise. The sound power that it generates varies as the square of the fan pressure, and thus to limit the fan noise level the system resistance should be kept as low as economically possible. As a general rule the selected fan should operate close to its point of maximum efficiency to minimise its noise generation. Where there is disturbance to the airflow at the fan inlet, the manufacturer's stated fan noise levels should be increased by up to 5 dB(A). More precise guidance on this aspect may be available from the manufacturers.

4.156 Fans radiate noise through both the inlet and outlet connections and it may be necessary to provide attenuation to limit the noise from both of these connections. It is always preferable and more economic to control noise and vibration at source, or as close to source as possible. It should be noted that attenuators offer a resistance to airflow. The resistance must be included in the fan and ductwork calculations.

4.157 Provided care is taken in the design and construction of low-pressure systems to avoid significant noise generation in the ductwork, attenuation should only be needed to absorb fan noise.

4.158 Noise breakout from all equipment housed in the plantroom must be taken into consideration if control is to be satisfactory. Any ductwork within the plantroom after the silencer should be acoustically insulated to prevent noise break-in or the silencer relocated at the point of entry or exit of ductwork to and from the plant room.

4.159 There is no complete means of control over external noise generation from such as road traffic, aircraft, factory and community noise. Consideration must be given to this at the design and planning stage.

Acceptable types and location

4.160 The noise levels produced by ventilation and other plant should be reduced by either lining the inside of the duct with sound-absorbing material or fitting bespoke attenuator units.

4.161 In supply systems, sound-absorbing material should not be applied to the inside surface of a duct system downstream of the final filter, owing to the risk of mechanical damage and the subsequent dispersal of the media into the ventilation system.

4.162 In supply and extract systems, sound-absorbing material must not be applied to the inside of a duct within 1 metre of a fire damper. The material should be non-particle-shedding and fire-resistant (further guidance can be found in SHTM Firecode suite of documents). Where sound-absorbing material is applied in a section of duct that will be routinely exposed during maintenance activities it should be protected from mechanical damage.

4.163 Bespoke attenuator units with a sound-absorbing infill suitable for the quality of air being handled and protected by a perforated sheet metal casing are the preferred option for critical systems. Absorption of moisture, dirt and corrosive substances into the ‘in-fill’ and the release of fibrous particles into the airstream should be prevented by the use of a membrane. The membrane material should have a declared service life of at least 25 years. If these conditions can be met then the attenuator may be located in the supply ductwork downstream of the final filter. When so located, cleaning access should be provided at both ends of the attenuator unit.

5. Air distribution system

Air distribution arrangements

Ductwork distribution systems

5.1 Ductwork systems for ventilating and air-conditioning applications are referred to by their velocity or pressure category, that is, as low, medium or high velocity (or pressure) systems. Heating & Ventilating Contractors Association (HVCA) limits are up to 10 m/s or 1,000 Pa; 20 m/s or 1,750 Pa: and 40 m/s or 3,250 Pa in the case of conventional low, medium and high pressure systems respectively. High-pressure systems are disappearing because of the constraints of the Building Regulations but existing systems may sometimes need to be altered or extended.

5.2 For normal applications in healthcare buildings, low velocity systems are recommended. The use of higher velocities than those recommended is not likely to be economical. Future trends are likely to be towards even lower optimum duct velocities; however, velocities below 2 m/s are unlikely to be justified.

5.3 The site will often dictate the main routing of ductwork systems, but in general, the design should seek to make the layout as symmetrical as possible; that is, the pressure loss in each branch should be as nearly equal as possible. This will aid regulation and may reduce the number and variety of duct fittings that are needed.

5.4 Main distribution ductwork should not be routed above sleeping areas. Where there is no alternative route, additional acoustic insulation will be required.

5.5 Where auxiliary cooling units, fans, filters or trimming devices are installed in the distribution system, they must be independently supported and fitted with a suitable drainage system where appropriate. If they are a source of vibration they should be linked to the distribution ductwork via flexible connections.

5.6 The fan of a Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV) system provided under the COSHH Regulations should be located outside of the building so that all of the ductwork within the building is under negative pressure. Where the fan has to be within the building it should be located as close as practicable to the outside with an absolute minimum run of discharge ductwork within the building. The discharge ductwork within the building will be under positive pressure so it must not be penetrated by test holes or inspection hatches.

Ductwork materials and construction

5.7 The choice of duct material should take account of the nature of the air or gas being conveyed and the environment in which the duct will be placed.

5.8 Galvanised-sheet-steel is generally suitable and most economical for normal ventilating and air-conditioning applications. Its inherent mechanical strength renders it resistant to casual damage both during the construction phase and throughout its service life when mechanical and electrical services around it are altered. It also readily withstands the impacts sustained when rotary equipment is used to for internal cleaning.

5.9 In instances where moisture levels and/or corrosive elements in the air being conveyed are very high, aluminium, stainless steel, PVC or GRP (glass-reinforced plastic) ducts should be used. Stainless or black steel are the only suitable materials for high-temperature ductwork.

5.10 In inherently wet areas, such as the base of fresh air inlet ducts and some extract systems, the ductwork may require draining to prevent a build-up of standing water. The layout of the drains should be as specified in Paragraphs 4.20 - 4.25.

5.11 Where builderwork plenum chambers or ducts are used, these may be constructed of various materials. However all such ducts must be rendered and sealed to prevent dust shedding. A greater allowance may need to be made for leakage.

5.12 Galvanised, black and stainless steel ductwork should be manufactured and installed to the current HVCA specification for sheet metal ductwork DW144, but excluding the use of bolt-through supports.

5.13 GRP and PVC ductwork should be manufactured and installed to the current HVCA specification for plastic ductwork DW154.

5.14 Where phenolic-board ductwork is considered, care should be taken to ensure that it is fabricated to a quality standard and installed strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Its pressure rating and degree of support should be suitable for the application and ducts should be fitted with mechanical protection where required. Designers should be fully conversant with installation techniques and Installers should be experienced having received training in the techniques required and certified to this effect by the manufacturers. Due consideration should be given to the impact on ductwork pressures created by the closing of dampers. Phenolic-board ducting should not be installed in plant rooms or any other areas where it could be vulnerable to impact damage. Internal cleaning using mechanical (rotary) means is also liable to cause damage to the integrity of surfaces.

5.15 Flexible ductwork is unsuitable for air distribution in healthcare applications. It should only be used to make the final connection to a terminal (See Paragraphs 5.54 and 5.55).

5.16 The inside of the ductwork should be free from structural projections and as smooth as possible. Flanged, gasketed joints are preferred.

Fire aspects, damper types and locations

5.17 It is essential that all relevant fire aspects of ducting systems are agreed with the fire officer before the design is finalised.

5.18 Ductwork must be fire-stopped where it penetrates fire compartment walls, floors and enclosures, cavity barriers and sub-compartment walls or enclosures, and provided with weatherproof collars where roofs or external walls are penetrated.

5.19 Fire/smoke dampers shall be provided at the locations required by SHTM Firecode. The fire-damper mounting frame must be securely attached to the building fabric. Where a fire-damper is not mounted directly in a fire compartment wall, it must be correctly supported and the ductwork between it and the firewall must posses the same fire rating as the firewall that it penetrates. The fire-rated portion of ductwork must not be penetrated by test holes or inspection hatches. All fire/smoke dampers shall be capable of remote re-setting via the Building and Energy Management System (BEMS) or equivalent, after periodic testing procedures.

5.20 An access hatch shall be provided adjacent to each fire damper so that its correct operation can be directly observed.

5.21 Smoke-diverting dampers must be provided on recirculation air systems to divert automatically any smoke-contaminated return air to the outside of the building in the event of a fire; and arranged so that the normally open smoke-diverting damper on the return-air branch to the input unit closes and all the return air is exhausted through the extract fan. Guidance is available in SHTM 81 and BS5588: Part 9.

Duct sections

5.22 Ducting is generally available in rectangular, circular and flat oval sections, although other sections may be made for special situations.

5.23 Rectangular ducting is most common on low-pressure systems, for the following reasons:

- it can readily be adapted to fit into the space available;
- fittings are cheaper than those for circular or flat oval ductwork;
- it can readily be joined to such component items as heating and cooling coils, and filters.

5.24 When sizing ductwork, the designer should take into account:

- both installation and operating costs;
- space limitations imposed by the structure and other services;
- operating noise levels;

- requirements of regulation at the commissioning stage.

5.25 For overall economy and performance, the aspect ratio should be close to 1:1, since high aspect ratios increase the pressure loss, heat gains or losses and overall cost (for example, changing the aspect ratio from 1:1 to 1:4 can typically increase the installed cost of the ductwork by 40% and add 25% to the heat gains or losses).

5.26 Rectangular ducting should not be the first choice for high pressure systems, and should be avoided in systems operating at high negative pressures, because the strengthening of the flat sides and the sealing requirements necessary to make rectangular ducts suitable for these high pressures are costly.

5.27 Circular ducting is preferable for high-pressure systems, and for systems operating at high negative pressures. In the case of the latter, additional stiffening rings may be necessary. Machine-formed spirally-wound ducting and a standard range of pressed and fabricated fittings can sometimes make circular ducting more economical, particularly in low pressure systems having a relatively low proportion of fittings.

5.28 Flat oval ducting provides an alternative to circular ducting, principally where there is a limitation on one of the dimensions in the space available for the duct run.

5.29 Other sections may be used, such as triangular sections to pass through roof trusses. Such sections present difficulties in the provision of fittings, and connections to standard plant items, and are likely to be more expensive than traditional sections.

Standard ductwork fittings

5.30 All fittings should conform to current HVCA specification DW144. Wherever possible, long radius bends, large radius main branches, not more than 45° angle sub-branches and long-taper transformations should be used.

5.31 Fittings should be arranged with vanes in sub-branches connected directly to grilles and diffusers, and turning vanes in square bends (when used). When vanes are used, additional cleaning access will be required.

5.32 The number of duct fittings should be kept to a minimum and there should be a conscious attempt to achieve some standardisation of types and sizes. Increasing the number and variety of fittings in a system can markedly raise its overall cost.

5.33 Bad design in relation to air flow can lead to vibration of flat duct surfaces, increases duct-generated noise and pressure loss, unpredictable behaviour in branch fittings and terminals, and adverse effects on the performance of installed plant items (such as trimmer batteries).

Branches

5.34 There are many designs of branches and junctions in use. The important features are that the flow should be divided (or combined) with the minimum interference and disturbance. Changes in duct sizes should not be made at the branch but a short distance downstream (or upstream). A good dividing branch design cannot be effective if the flow entering the branch is not uniform across the section.

Changes of section

5.35 The expansion of a duct section should be formed with sides having a total included angle of no more than 30°, and preferably less than 20°. If the angle of expansion is greater, the flow is not likely to remain attached to the walls of the duct and large eddies will be formed with flow reversal at the walls. This leads not only to a high-pressure loss, but also to non-uniform velocity pattern at the outlet. Where there is insufficient space for a gentle expansion and a greater angle is necessary, internal splitters should be used.

5.36 A contraction in a duct section is less critical, but the total included angle of the taper should not exceed 40° (or 20° where the contraction is made on one side of the duct only)

5.37 The most economical way to change the section of a rectangular duct is to restrict the change of duct size to one side only. If the calculated reduction or increase to the side dimension is 50mm or less, it is usually not economical to change the size at the position. The minimum size of a rectangular duct should usually be 150mm x 100mm.

Other fittings

5.38 As a general rule, fittings should avoid abrupt changes in direction and also sharp edges that cause the flow to separate and form eddies, thus limiting pressure loss and causing noise generation. If the fitting leads to the flow preferentially attaching to one side of the outlet, then a significant length of straight downstream duct is necessary before the next branch or fitting; this length should be greater than five equivalent diameters.

Thermal insulation

5.39 Thermal insulation is applied to ductwork to reduce heat exchange, and to prevent condensation.

5.40 In a duct system, the air temperature changes can be significant, especially when passing through untreated space, and these have the effect of reducing the heating or cooling capacity of the air and of increasing the energy input to the system. The heat transmission to and from the surrounding space can be reduced by effective insulation of the ducts. Extract ductwork conveying air from which heat recovery will be derived should be thermally insulated to the same standard as with associated supply ventilation ductwork.

5.41 Condensation can arise in ductwork systems conveying cooled air and, apart from creating conditions conducive to corrosion of ductwork, condensation affects the heat and vapour-resisting properties of insulating materials themselves which may induce further condensation.

5.42 In normal circumstances, the insulation thickness for heat resistance is sufficient to prevent surface condensation, but in extreme conditions the insulation thickness for vapour resistance may be greater than that for heat resistance. When cold ducts pass through areas of high dew-point, carefully selected vapour barriers should be applied externally to the insulation.

Noise generation within the ductwork

5.43 Noise is generated in ductwork at sharp edges, by tie rods, damper blades, duct obstructions and sharp bends etc. This air-flow-generated noise becomes an important factor if it is about the same or greater level than the upstream noise level. (Air-flow-generated noise is often referred to as “regenerated noise”).

5.44 The noise level generated by airflow in ductwork is very sensitive to the velocity. The sound power of this noise is approximately proportional to the sixth power of the velocity; that is, a doubling of the duct velocity will increase the sound power by a factor of 64. The duct velocities should therefore be kept as low as possible. In general, duct fittings that have lower pressure loss factors in similar flow conditions will generate less noise.

5.45 Ductwork serving quiet areas should not be routed through noisy areas where noise break-in can occur and increase the noise level in the ductwork.

5.46 Grille, register and louvre noise should be kept to the minimum by selecting types having low noise-producing characteristics, without high tonal noise, and should be fitted with acoustically treated external inlet and outlet louvres.

5.47 Cross-talk attenuators may be necessary where noise intrusion between adjacent spaces can arise and where individual room confidentiality is required. They will normally be of the ‘through-the-ceiling, ‘up-and-over’ type and may include a fire damper if required.

Volume control damper locations

5.48 Manually operated balancing dampers are needed generally:

- in the main duct downstream of the fan;
- in branches of zone ducts;
- in sub-branch ducts serving four or more terminals;
- at terminals not covered by the previous item.

5.49 Dampers integral with terminals should only be used for final trimming of air volumes, otherwise noise and air distribution problems may ensue.

5.50 Dampers in rectangular ducts should be single-bladed when the longer side is up to 450mm but be of the opposed-blade multi-leaf type above this size. In circular ducts, iris-type dampers are recommended. Dampers must be accessible, incorporate a position indicator and means of locking in the commissioned position. Dampers should be located as far away as possible from adjacent branches or plant items.

Cleaning and access door locations

5.51 Cleaning and access doors are required to facilitate access to plant items and ductwork components for inspection, maintenance, cleaning and replacement, and must be of sufficient size to permit safe access for the required functions. Consideration should also be given to the number of doors to be provided. Older installations may be deficient in the provision of access doors and consideration will be necessary to have these incorporated in the course of any refurbishment in the accommodation served.

5.52 Recommended locations for access doors are given in the current HVCA specification DW144 and are generally provided to give access to:

- every regulating damper;
- every fire and motorised damper;
- filter (to facilitate filter withdrawal);
- both sides of cooling/heating coils;
- humidifiers;
- fans; and
- motors and impellers.

5.53 Care should be taken when siting access doors to ensure that no other services to be installed will prevent reasonable access.

Flexible ducting

5.54 Flexible ductwork may be used for final connections to grilles and diffusers provided it is constructed to meet the fire precautions recommended in BS8313. It must not pass through fire compartment walls, floors or enclosures of sub-compartment walls or enclosures, or through cavity barriers.

5.55 Flexible ducting will cause a significant frictional loss and may be difficult to clean and should never be used in lieu of a bend. Where installed it should take the most direct route and be as short as possible, never exceeding 1 metre in length.

Diffuser and grille selection and sizing

5.56 The effectiveness of all ventilation and air-conditioning systems depends on the methods by which air is introduced to, and vitiated air is removed from, the

space. The usual results of poor air-terminal selection and/or positioning are: draughts, stagnation, poor air quality, large temperature gradients and excessive noise.

5.57 Air can be supplied to a space in a number of ways, although any device can be broadly placed into one of two categories: that producing a diffused supply, or that producing a perpendicular jet. Diffusers may be radial or linear, and normally utilise the Coanda effect (that is, adhesion of the air stream to an adjacent surface), to reduce the risk of excessive room-air movement. A perpendicular jet is formed by discharging air through grilles, louvres or nozzles, which are generally adjustable.

5.58 Air-flow patterns produced by both types of terminal are dependent to a large extent on the presence of the Coanda effect.

5.59 Supply air terminals can be incorporated into any room surface, for example, floors, walls (high or low level), desktop etc.

5.60 As they operate on the jet principle, the use of sidewall and linear grilles is restricted to areas where air change rates are low, that is, less than 10 per hour. Perforated rectangular diffusers can provide acceptable conditions within the occupied zone at up to 15 air changes per hour. In areas where a higher air change rate is required, square or circular ceiling mounted diffusers should be used.

5.61 The performance of supply air terminal devices is provided, based on three criteria: throw, spread and drop.

- **throw** is defined as perpendicular or parallel distance from the terminal to the point at which the air velocity is 0.5 m/s isovel;
- **spread** is defined as the width of the 0.5 m/s isovel; and
- **drop** is defined as the vertical distance from the centre line of the terminal to the bottom edge of the 0.25 m/s isovel.

5.62 It is necessary to consider each of these parameters in both summer and winter conditions to ensure satisfactory operation of the air-terminal device, as warm jets behave very differently from cold jets.

5.63 A warm jet tends to rise until it attaches itself to a horizontal surface, while a cold jet falls. Care must be taken to ensure that this does not lead to unacceptable temperature gradients in winter or excessive air velocities in the occupied zone in summer.

5.64 In order to ensure satisfactory air movement within a space, it is necessary to consider interaction between air movement from adjacent terminals, and ceiling mounted fixtures (light fittings etc), as well as interaction between air movement and room surfaces.

5.65 If the supply and extract terminals are too close, short-circuiting may occur, while if they are too far apart, stagnant zones may be formed. Where two

opposing air streams meet, the individual velocities must not be greater than 0.25 m/s.

5.66 Supply and extract grilles and diffusers should be fitted with opposed-blade dampers for fine balancing purposes.

5.67 Further guidance on the selection of grilles and diffusers is given in the CIBSE Guide B.

5.68 In operating theatres, the supply terminals must be able to produce a down-flow movement of air in the operating zone 1 metre above floor level. Ceiling mounted diffusers with fixed directional vanes that provide a downward turbulent airflow are the preferred option. Plenum boxes fitted with perforated screens to produce a parallel downward flow are also acceptable. Nozzles or jets of any type are not acceptable. Sidewall-mounted linear diffusers that utilise the Coanda effect to send air across the ceiling and 'drop' it into the operating zone are also not suitable. However linear ceiling mounted diffusers that provide a direct downward airflow around the operating zone may be used.

Transfer grille - size and location

5.69 Air-transfer grilles in walls, partitions or doors form an integral part of the building's air distribution system. Modern doorsets have very low leakage rates so cannot be relied upon to permit even quite small airflows. Failure to make adequate provision for air to move from room to room will result in excessive pressure differentials and 'door whistle'.

5.70 Transfer grilles are required in locations where there is a significant imbalance between the supply and extract rates in a room. They will relieve any pressure differentials that may affect the operation of the spaces and/or the ventilation system and permit airflow in a known direction. However, transfer grilles are vulnerable to damage and, in many instances, as long as the equivalent free area is provided, they can be substituted with undercut door.

5.71 Care needs to be taken to ensure that the positioning of transfer grilles does not interfere with the fire or smoke integrity of the building. In general, the air-transfer grilles should not be installed within fire-resisting boundaries, although if this is unavoidable, they should be fitted with fire- or smoke-dampers.

5.72 Where installed, transfer grilles should be of the non-vision type, sized for a maximum face velocity of 1.5 m/s.

5.73 In photographic dark rooms, lightproof transfer grilles will be required.

5.74 Cross-talk attenuators may be necessary where noise intrusion between adjacent spaces can arise and where individual room confidentiality is required. (See also Paragraphs 5.43 - 5.47).

Pressure stabilisers - size and location

5.75 Pressure stabilisers are required in lieu of air-transfer grilles in areas where it is necessary to maintain pressure differentials between adjacent rooms to prevent reversal of airflows for example, in operating suites, isolation facilities and clean rooms. (See also Paragraphs 7.24 - 7.28).

5.76 Fire precautions for pressure stabilisers are the same as for transfer grilles. For sizing criteria, refer to Paragraph 7.23

5.77 Pressure stabilisers should be of the balanced-blade type, with the facility to make fine adjustment of the pressure setting. They should be silent in operation and give a seal as tight as practicable when closed. The materials of construction and method of assembly should allow for cleaning and disinfection.

5.78 Pressure stabilisers should be installed in a visible location so that their operation can be readily observed.

5.79 Cross-talk attenuators may be necessary where noise intrusion between adjacent spaces can arise and where confidentiality is required. In these cases, the pressure stabiliser and cross-talk attenuator should be mounted in a short length of ductwork within the ceiling void.

5.80 Pressure stabilisers may need to be fitted with a stand-off baffle on their discharge side to prevent a sight line in situations where a laser will be used. Baffles may also be required to preserve privacy or prevent discharge air causing draughts or disturbing the air distribution pattern in the adjoining room. They are also useful in low-level locations to prevent the airflow path being obstructed by portable equipment.

6. Automatic controls

6.1 Various options for control of single and multi-zone air-conditioning systems are given in CIBSE Guide B.

General requirements

6.2 The basic requirements for an automatic control system are as follows:

- facilities to start, set-back and stop the plant;
- facilities to control the volumetric air-flow;
- facilities to control the system or room pressure;
- temperature control and indication;
- humidity control and indication;
- devices to monitor and indicate the plant's operating state;
- alarms to indicate plant failure, low air-flow, and filter state.

The control functions actually provided will depend on the purpose of the ventilation system.

6.3 There will also be a need to determine the control strategy in the event of a fire either within the zone being served or within an adjoining zone.

6.4 The designer should consider whether it is necessary for the supply and extract fans to be interlocked, either so that the supply fan will not operate unless air-flow is established within the extract system, or vice-versa depending on the required pressures within the rooms being served.

6.5 The sequence switching of units in order to prevent transient reverse airflows will be particularly important in laboratory and pharmacy areas that also contain fume cupboards, safety cabinets and other LEV systems.

6.6 Alarms should be provided to show 'filter fault' and 'low air-flow'. The "filter fault" alarm should be initiated by a predetermined increase of pressure differentials across the filter. The 'low air-flow' alarm should be initiated when the supply air quantity falls to 80% of the design value.

Objectives of control system

6.7 The primary objective of ventilation plant control system is to maintain the space served within the required environmental control limits, at the appropriate times, regardless of external conditions or internal loads and with the minimum energy consumption.

6.8 Often, it is not possible to predict accurately building load variation at the design stage, and thus optimum set points cannot be assessed. Information provided by monitoring the operation of the plant via a Building and Energy Management System (BEMS) will enable optimum set points to be established and energy consumption reduced. Control of most systems will be via a BEMS. This will enable the operating conditions and control tolerances to be set and monitored. The BEMS may also be set to log the actual energy consumed by the system together with that recovered by the energy-recovery device. This will provide a useful check on overall operating efficiency and provide evidence that energy targets are being achieved.

6.9 BEMS incorporating self-adaptive control algorithms that automatically adjust the set-point to the suit the usage and load are preferred. The provision of movement sensors within the controlled space in order to determine the actual occupancy will facilitate this process.

6.10 The failure of specialised ventilation systems can have grave consequences for the delivery of healthcare. Control systems should therefore be simple, robust and reliable.

6.11 Computer-software-driven control systems are becoming the norm in building services. However, it should be remembered that healthcare ventilation systems need to be available to operate outside of normal working periods when software support is not available. Should the software fail, it will be left to site staff, who may have little knowledge of the control algorithms to restart the ventilation system. It is therefore essential to ensure that a simple means of re-starting critical systems in the event of a software failure is provided (see also Paragraphs 4.62 - 4.63)

Location of controls

6.12 Whether within the plant, duct or room, sensors should be located to provide accurate measurement of the condition of the air being monitored.

6.13 Sensors and control items such as control valves should be located close to the element being sensed or plant item being controlled, in order to minimise time lags within the system which may create over-shoot of conditions beyond the design envelope and result in additional energy consumption.

6.14 There are practical advantages in locating all control valves for an air-handling unit in a bank (at a convenient height) at one end of the unit. (This will not normally result in an undue additional control lag.)

6.15 Some applications require intermittent mechanical ventilation, frequently at a high air-change rate, (for example, in bathrooms and treatment rooms.) Local controls to facilitate this mode of operation should be placed in a prominent position to encourage economical use.

6.16 Local controls that enable the user to select more than one mode of operation should be clearly labelled to identify the particular mode selected. Where the system allows different room pressures to be selected then a direct-reading

pressure gauge should be fitted within the eye line of the users to provide an independent confirmation of the resultant mode of operation. A clear description of the selectable modes of operation should be mounted adjacent to the control switch.

Fire aspects

6.17 A fire control panel should be mounted at the entrance of the area that the ventilation serves. The panel should have restricted access for the fire officer and include independent on/off controls and indication of the supply and extract systems.

6.18 In certain critical care departments it is preferable to maintain the supply ventilation in case of a fire within the area. For example, in an operating department, while undergoing surgery, the patient cannot always be easily moved without significant risk. In the event of a fire in a staff or support area of the department, or adjoining zone, the continued supply of air to a theatre will maintain it at a positive pressure and protect the patient and staff from the effects of smoke. This will allow time for the patient to be stabilised so that he/she can be safely evacuated if necessary. A similar situation occurs for patients in ITU and other critical care units. In all of these cases the ventilation to the critical area should continue to operate unless the AHU starts to draw in smoke. For these departments, a notice should be affixed to the fire control panel drawing attention for the need to liaise with departmental staff before switching off fan units.

6.19 All supply AHUs should have a smoke sensor mounted in the main supply duct immediately downstream of the AHU. In the event of a fire in the AHU or smoke being drawn into the system from an outside source, it should cause the supply air fire damper to close and shut down the AHU.

Time switching

6.20 Facilities to start, set-back and stop the plant should be provided in the plantroom. Remote start and set-back control and indication, if required, should be provided at a manned staff location, for example, at the reception or staff base or, in theatres, within the Surgeon's Panel.

6.21 Many ventilation systems may be completely shut down when the area served is not in active use. Alternatively, where there is a need to maintain a background condition, the ventilation output can be reduced by "setting back" the system. This will significantly reduce energy consumption and extend the life of filters and other system components.

Start-up control

6.22 The plant's start control should contain a control logic that will start the plant in the sequence set out in the following algorithms, Figures 2 - 5

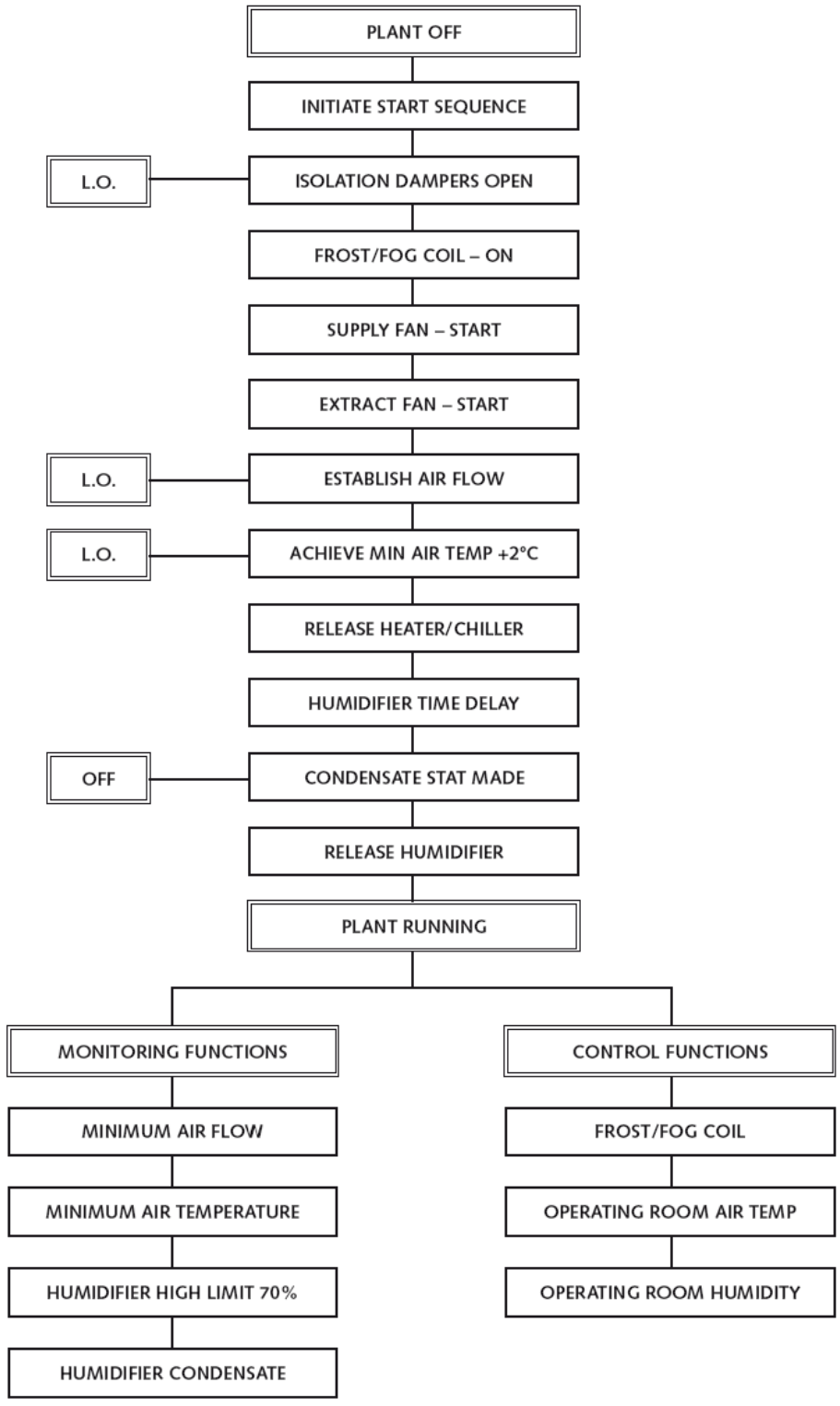


Figure 2: Typical plant control algorithm – normal start-up sequence

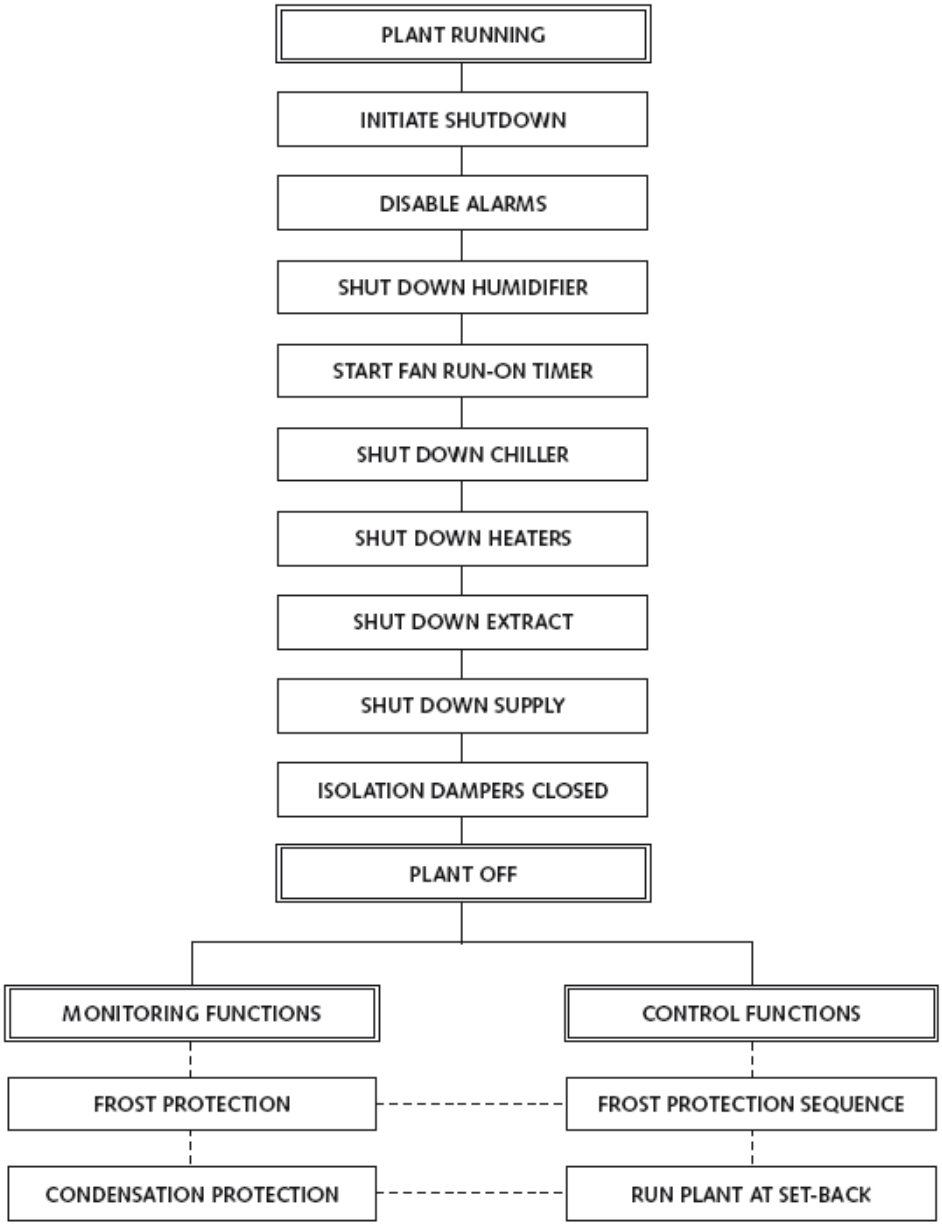


Figure 3: Plant control algorithm – normal shutdown sequence

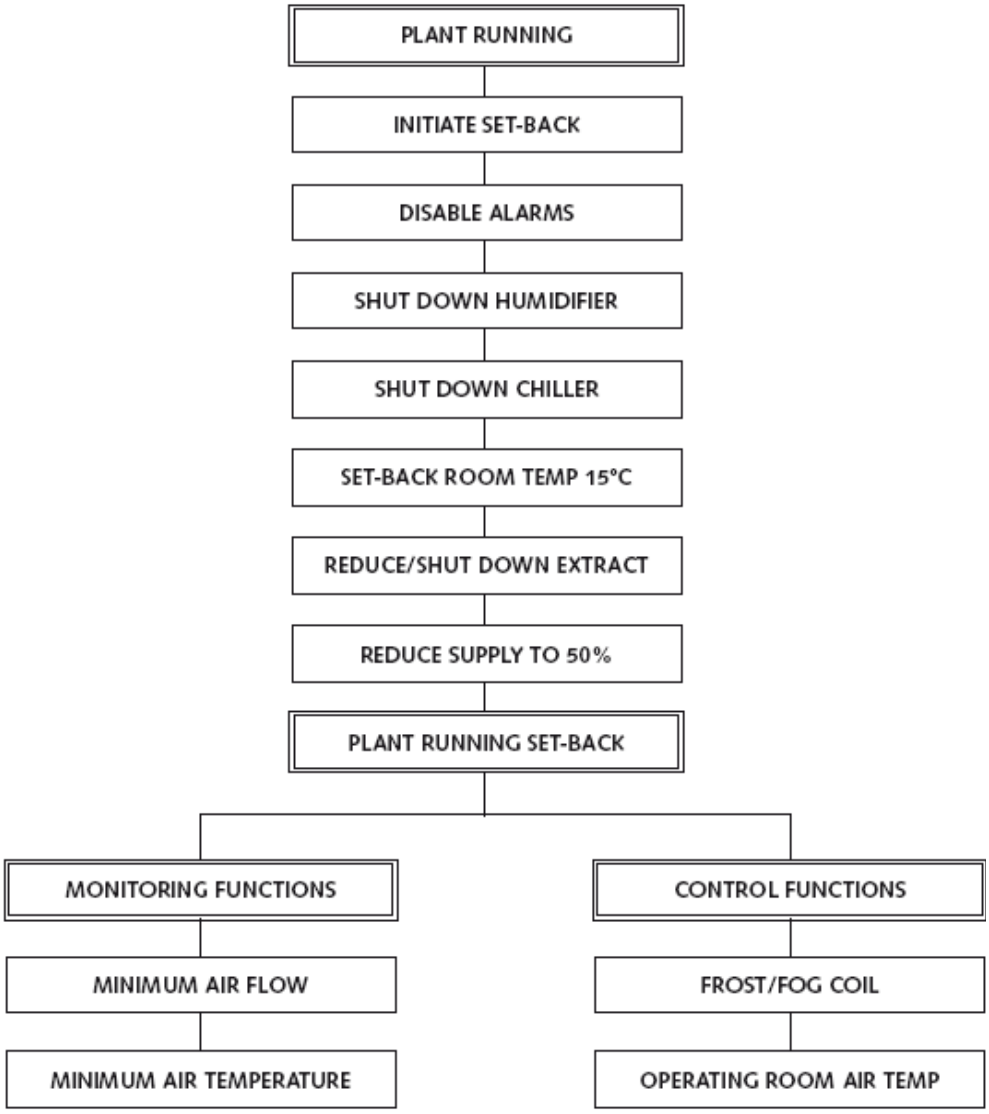


Figure 4: Plant control algorithm – set back sequence

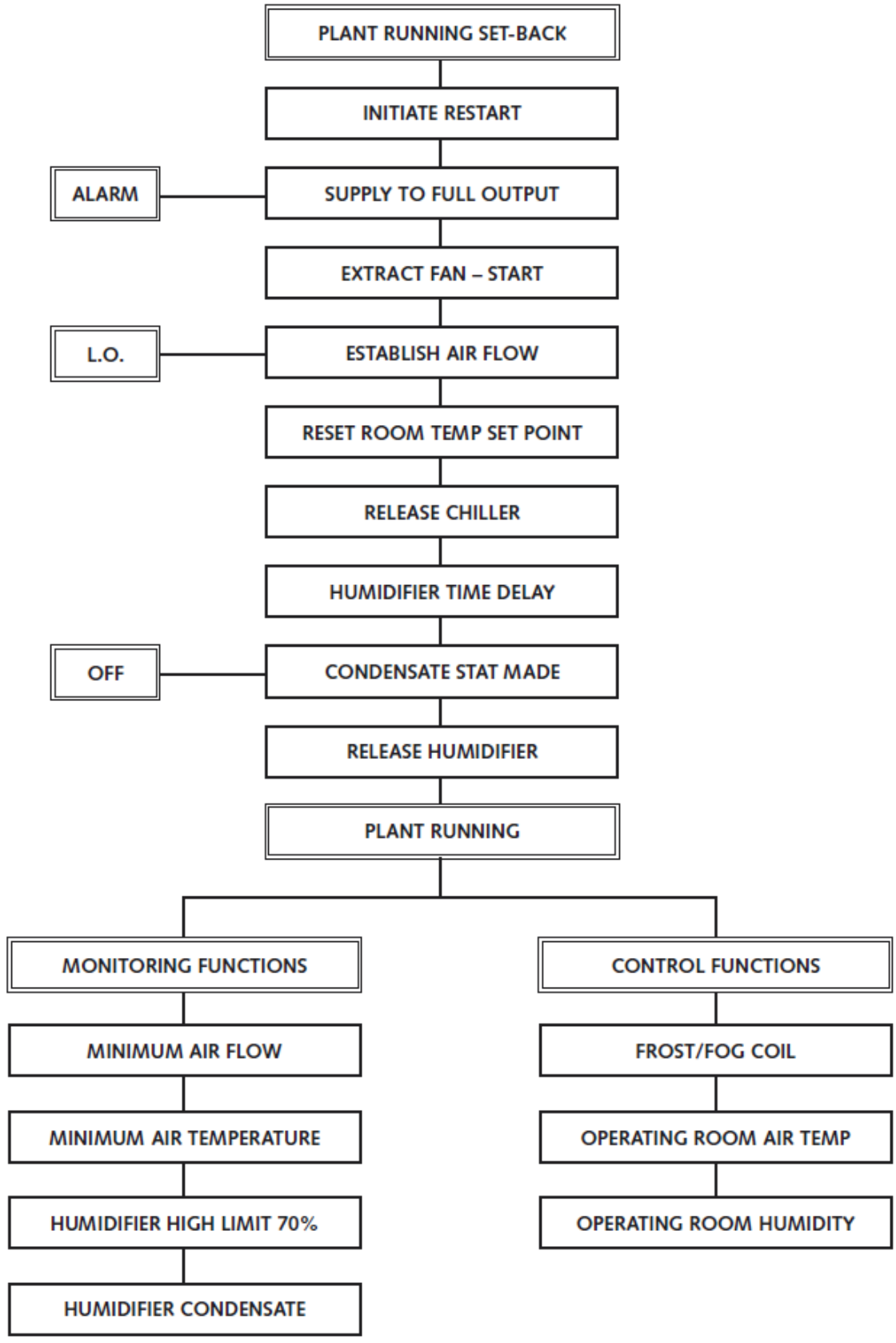


Figure 5: Plant control algorithm – restart from set-back

Set-back control

6.23 Where variable speed controls are installed, the setback facility for each plant should depress the control temperature to around 15°C; exclude any humidification and cooling from the system; and reduce the supply and extract air volumes to around 50%. The extract fan can also be turned off as long as the desired direction of air movement from clean to less clean will be maintained (See also Figures 2 - 5).

Use control

6.24 The installation of movement detectors allows for “use control” of ventilation systems. A simple control logic that reduces the system to a “set-back” condition if there has been no movement detected in the space for, say, 30 minutes and that switches the system “off” if no movement is detected for one hour is recommended for many applications, including operating suites.

6.25 A variation on this can be provided by linking ventilation controls to lighting. For example, in an operating theatre, the system may be off outside of working hours, could run at set-back when the general lighting was switched on and increase to full speed when the operating lamp is switched on. As with movement detection, a 30-minute run-on should be provided at each stage when the lights are turned off.

6.26 Either of the above control strategies may be refined by linking to the BEMS to provide a control logic related to normal working hours and associated ‘real-time’ movement within the zone being controlled. This should result in significant energy savings.

Environmental control

Temperature control methods and application

General

6.27 All control valves must fail safe, that is, close in the event of power or air-flow failure, with the exception of the fog/frost battery control valve, which should open upon power or airflow failure.

6.28 Control valves should be located in an accessible position. Isolation valves should be provided to enable the control valve to be removed for service without the need to drain-down the system.

6.29 Care should be taken to ensure that the installation of control valves and their associated pipework do not obstruct access to the AHU inspection doors and hatches.

Room temperature control

6.30 The limits for room temperature set point are generally between 16°C and 25°C depending on the particular application, and in some specialised instances (for example, operating departments) are adjustable within a predetermined range by the user.

6.31 The selection of temperature set point for each room or zone may be by a control facility in the room / zone, or remotely at the control panel or BEMS. Where the control device is mounted within the room / zone and adjustable by the user, it should be marked either 'raise' and 'lower' or '+' and '-'. It should control within a specified temperature range to suit the user requirement with a control tolerance of ±1K. All other control set-points should be selectable either on the control panel or at the BEMS interface.

6.32 Where local control is provided, an indication of temperature will be required locally, or at a staff base (if appropriate), using an analogue or digital indicator. The indicator should be large enough to be read from the normal working position (for example, at the operating table in a theatre). This may be mounted in a supervisory or, 'surgeon's' control panel, with the signal repeated on the main system control panel or BEMS. It is important that this indicator displays the actual measured temperature and not the selected temperature.

6.33 Where the supply and extraction systems are designed for ventilation only and there is a wet heating system to provide background heating, care must be taken to avoid one system trying to heat the space while the other system is trying to cool the area.

Frost battery control

6.34 Steam-supplied frost batteries must be operated as on/off devices with their sensor mounted upstream of the battery. This will give 'open loop' control. A set point of +1°C is recommended.

6.35 Low pressure hot water (LPHW)-supplied frost batteries should be controlled using the proportional mode. Their sensor should be located downstream of the battery to give 'closed loop' control. A set point of between 2°C and 5°C is recommended.

6.36 If the temperature downstream of the frost battery, as sensed by a serpentine thermostat, falls below the required set point over any part of the coil, the plant must automatically shut down in order to prevent damage to the other batteries. The serpentine thermostat must not be in direct contact with the coil.

Off-plant control

6.37 The control logic must prevent the chiller and pre-heater being on at the same time.

Humidity control methods and application

6.38 In order to prevent excessive condensation when starting up from a total plant shut-down, a time delay should be incorporated into the control system such that the humidifier does not start until 30 minutes after the ventilation plant starts up.

6.39 Irrespective of the method of control, a high-limit humidistat should be installed to ensure that when the humidifier operates, the condition of the air in the duct does not exceed 70% saturated, particularly during plant start-up.

6.40 With certain types of steam humidifiers, it may be necessary to install a thermostat in the condensate line from the humidifier's steam supply, to ensure that the steam at the control valve is as dry as possible before it is injected into the air supply.

6.41 The humidifier and cooling-coil control must be interlocked so that they cannot be on at the same time.

6.42 The humidifier control system should ensure that it is switched off with the fan. It is preferable to design the control system so that the humidifier is isolated for an adequate time before the fan is turned off so as to purge humid air from the system.

6.43 All control valves must fail safe (that is, close in the event of power failure) and the humidifier must be interlocked with the low airflow switch.

Multi-zone control methods and application.

6.44 Close control of all air-conditioning parameters may be difficult to achieve with multi-zone systems, since each zone will in theory require a re-heater and humidifier to give total control of humidity if that is what is required. In reality such close control is rarely required in practice. It is therefore usual with multi-zone systems to provide control of zonal temperature only, with humidity control where fitted being based on average conditions within all zones, or minimum conditions within one zone.

6.45 Where there is a requirement for close control of air-conditioning parameters in a number of zones (e.g. an operating department) separate plants should be provided for each zone in order to avoid the need for expensive over-cooling and reheating of individual zones.

6.46 Most multi-zone systems within healthcare premises are controlled based on off-coil control within the central plant, with trimmer heater batteries on individual zones.

Alarms and indication

6.47 Supply and extract systems should include indicator lamps on the control panels to confirm the operational status of each system. Where the usage is on

a regular daily pattern, time control with a user-operated timed manual over-ride should be provided.

6.48 Where a system is provided for a particular space, the indicator should be in, or immediately adjacent to, that space and local controls should be provided with labels clearly defining their function (eg. isolation suites.)

6.49 The 'plant failure' and 'low air-flow' alarms should be initiated by a paddle switch or other device located in the main air supply duct. This should operate when the air quantity fails to reach or falls to around 80% of the design value and will give indication of fan failure, damper closed, access door left open, or any other eventuality that could cause a reduction of air quantity. Monitoring the current drawn by the fan motor is not a substitute for a sensing device that is directly affected by the air-flow.

6.50 The 'filter fault alarm' should be initiated by a predetermined increase of pressure differential across the filters, thereby indicating a dirty filter.

6.51 Direct-reading gauges or manometers should be installed across filters to give maintenance staff an indication of their condition.

6.52 Visual indication should be provided at a manned staff location (for example, the reception or staff base) and on the main control panel and BEMS to show 'plant failure' and 'low air flow'.

BEMS

6.53 Control of most systems will be via a Building Energy Management System (BEMS). This will enable the operating conditions and control tolerances to be set and monitored. The BEMS may also be set to log the actual energy consumed by the system and recovered by the energy recovery system. This will provide a useful check on the overall operating efficiency and provide evidence that energy targets are being achieved.

7. Specialised ventilation systems

7.1 This section contains design information for a range of healthcare ventilation applications.

7.2 The following departments will require a degree of specialised ventilation.

- the Operating department;
  - treatment rooms;
  - endoscopy, day case and minimum invasive suites;
  - cardiology and operative imaging suites;
  - conventional operating theatres;
  - Ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) operating theatres;
  - barn theatres;
  - recovery and ancillary areas.
- Obstetrics;
  - maternity theatres;
  - birthing rooms;
  - LDRP Rooms;
  - SCBU.
- critical areas and high-dependency units of any type;
- Isolation facilities;
  - infectious diseases units;
  - bone marrow and other transplant units;
  - chemotherapy and oncology units.
- Sterile Supply and Decontamination Units;
  - wash rooms;
  - inspection and packing rooms;
  - sterile pack stores.
- the Pharmacy departments;
  - aseptic suites;
  - extemporaneous preparation areas;
  - radio pharmacies.
- the Pathology department;
  - laboratories;

  - cat 3 and 4 rooms.
- the Mortuary and Post mortem suite;
  - mortuaries;
  - post-mortem rooms;
  - specimen stores.
- Hydrotherapy units;
- Burns units;
  - burns theatres;
  - treatment rooms;
  - isolation rooms;
  - tissue banks.
- Emerging specialties;
  - gene therapy units;
  - stem-cell laboratories.
- Infrastructure;
  - plant rooms housing combustion equipment;
  - welding facilities;
  - wood working workshops;
  - electric vehicle charging areas.

7.3 Design information for many of these applications is given in Appendix 1 Table A1, Appendix 2 and in the following Chapters within this section.

7.4 It is not possible within this existing document to give definitive guidance for every healthcare specific ventilation application. Additional detailed guidance may be issued in due course in the form of supplements.

General information

7.5 The section on operating theatres is the most extensive and contains much information that is common to other applications. Each theatre suite should have its own dedicated air-handling unit and extract fan. Where no specific guidance is given the principles set out below should be followed:

- the foregoing sections of the document contain general information on healthcare-specific aspects of ventilation system design and specification;
- a set of standard solutions for the design of general operating theatre suites to conform to past and new standards is given in new standard layouts Nos 1, 3, 5 and 7 and those for UCV theatres in new standard layouts Nos 2, 4, 6 and 8 within Appendix 3;

- the CIBSE Guides A & B contain basic information on ventilation design that can be applied to most applications;
- where a British or European standard exists that is specific to the application (for example, a clean room) it should be used as the basis of the design requirement;
- air should always move from clean to less-clean areas. A hierarchy of room cleanliness is given in Table A2;
- differential pressure will prevent contamination between areas when doors are closed. Information on air leakage through closed doors and hatches for a range of differential pressures is given in Table A3;
- the flow of air will prevent contamination between areas when doors are open. Information on air leakage through open doors and hatches for a range of differential pressures is given in Table A4;
- if anaesthetic gases are used, 15 air changes per hour will be required;
- a methodology for calculating a design solution for a non-standard suite of operating rooms is given in Appendix 4. This may be adapted as necessary to suit other less complex applications where air is required to cascade from clean to less clean areas.

7.6 The supply of air to a room has four main functions:

- to dilute airborne contamination;
- to control air movement within such that the transfer of airborne contaminants from less clean to cleaner areas is minimized;
- to control the temperature and if necessary the humidity of the space;
- to assist the removal of and dilute waste gases where used.

7.7 Because of the complexities of controlling air-movement patterns, much design effort will be required for this aspect. It is important that the design makes the best possible use of the air available, as excessive supply airflows for the control of air movement should not be used. The amount of air supplied will be determined by the number of doors and desired air-change rate.

7.8 There are four routes whereby airborne contaminants may appear in a room:-

- through the supply air;
- shed directly by the room occupants;
- arising as a result of the work activities;
- transferred from adjacent spaces.

7.9 Particles entering with the supply air can be controlled by the selection of suitable filter grades.

7.10 Particles shed directly by the room occupants can be controlled by:

- restricting access to essential persons only;

- the choice of the occupants' clothing;
- the room's air-change rate.

7.11 Particles arising as a result of the work activity can be controlled by:

- enclosing, semi-enclosing or otherwise controlling the work-based source;
- the room air-change rate.

7.12 The transfer of particles from adjacent spaces can be controlled by:

- differential pressure;
- air-flow paths.

7.13 Air change rates are given in Table A1. These figures have been found to give sufficient dilution of airborne contaminants, provided the mixing of room air is reasonably uniform.

7.14 A downward-displacement turbulent air distribution is generally preferred. The supply and extract diffusers should be positioned to ensure that all parts of the room are actively ventilated and that where necessary the staff will be in a clean air-flow path. (See Section 5 for additional guidance on supply terminals).

7.15 Horizontal-flow room-air distribution with or without a Coanda effect can be a source of draughts and difficult to set up correctly. Its use should be confined to non-critical areas.

Air movement control

7.16 The design of the system should seek to minimise the movement of contaminated air from less clean to cleaner areas. Transfer grilles enable air to pass in either direction between rooms of equal class and pressure. Pressure stabilisers operate in one direction only; they allow excess air to be directed to the area desired and assist in maintaining room pressure differentials. When closed they prevent significant reverse air-flow.

7.17 The relative locations of supply and extract terminals and their design air-volume rates will determine the basic airflow between adjacent spaces. Transfer grilles and pressure stabilisers will permit and control the flow of air between spaces ensuring a flow from the clean to less clean areas. Failure to provide such devices will lead to uncontrolled air flows when personnel move between rooms. They may also result in doors being held partially open by air pressure

Temperature and humidity control

7.18 To achieve the required room conditions, supply flow rates are calculated conventionally, taking account of all heat and moisture gains and losses, and of maximum permissible temperature differences between the room and supply air. In most applications the base heating load will be provided by a heating

system. In critical systems the room or suite being considered will be within the heated building envelope so the ventilation will be sized to suit the casual gains or losses.

7.19 Temperature differences of up to 10K for winter heating and 7K for summer cooling must not be exceeded.

7.20 It is acceptable for the humidity to swing uncontrolled between 35% and 70% saturation.

Removal and dilution of waste anaesthetic gases

7.21 Anaesthetic gases are subject to occupational exposure limits. Waste anaesthetic gas must be contained and removed by a suitable gas-scavenging system. Some leakage from the anaesthetic equipment and the patient's breathing circuit will occur with all systems, particularly during connection and disconnection; and from the interface with the patient. The air movement scheme should ensure that this leakage is diluted and removed from the room. Anaesthetic agents are heavier than air so placing the supply terminal at high level with an extract at low level, adjacent to the anaesthetic gas terminal units will ensure that staff are in a clean air-flow path.

7.22 In LDRP and delivery rooms the use of anaesthetic gas is controlled on demand by the patient. This may result in significant leakage which, in order to reduce staff exposure, will need to be controlled by establishing a clean airflow path. A supply at high level at the foot-end of the bed with extract at low level at the head-end will provide such a path.

Fire aspects

7.23 When considering the overall airflow movement, careful thought needs to be given to the operation of the ventilation system, to limit smoke spread in the event of a fire.

Door protection

7.24 Air should flow from the cleaner to the less clean areas as shown in Table A2. There are several factors that affect the likelihood of a reverse air- flow through doorways:

- when a person passes through a doorway, both the passage of the person and the movement of the door flap cause a transfer of air between the areas separated by the door;
- when a door is left open there is a transfer of air between the two areas separated by the doorway. This is caused by air turbulence, but is greatly increased by any temperature differential between the areas (a 1.4m wide doorway may allow the transfer of 0.19 m^3/s of air in each direction when there is no temperature difference, but when the temperature differential increases to say 2K, the volume transferred may increase to 0.24 m^3/s).

7.25 Two methods of door protection are used in order to reduce the likelihood of contamination of clean area by a reverse air-flow from a less clean area:

- closed door protection – a pressure differential is created across a closed door so that any air leakage is from the clean to the less clean area. Table A3 gives details of closed door leakage rates for a range of differential pressures;
- open door protection – the pressure differential drops (See Table A5) and is effectively replaced by a flow of air through the doorway from the clean to the less clean area. The flow of air needs to be sufficiently large to ensure that significant reverse airflow cannot occur and will be related to the relative cleanliness of the areas being considered. Table A4 gives air-flow rates for open door protection related to door / opening size and classification of the adjoining areas.

7.26 Pressure stabilisers enable the room differential pressure to be set when the doors are shut, thus providing closed-door protection. When a door is opened the stabilisers will close, forcing air to be directed through the doorway thus providing open-door protection.

7.27 The recommended air-flow rates to achieve this are given in Table A3. Provided that the dilution criteria in Table A1 are met, the occasional small back-flows created (when two doors are opened simultaneously; or when there is a high temperature difference across an open door) will have little effect on the overall air cleanliness of the affected room.

7.28 In applications where it is critical to maintain a specific airflow and /or pressure regime (for example isolation rooms) all windows in the zone should be locked shut or sealed. Trickle vents, if fitted, will also need to be sealed.

Systems design

7.29 The design of the ventilation system for an area depends on the overall configuration of the department. Where the department is served by more than one AHU, the control of the units may need to be interlocked so that reverse air-flow patterns do not occur.

7.30 Dual-duct high velocity systems have advantages, but are noisy, costly and may give rise to unacceptable values of humidity. Single-duct, low velocity/pressure systems are preferred.

7.31 Extract grilles should be sited and balanced to promote air movement in the desired direction.

7.0 (a) Operating department ventilation systems

7.32 The information given in this section relates to general operating suites. It will be applicable to other types of theatre suite such as maternity, burns, cardiac, etc. The standard values given may need to be adjusted to reflect non-standard room sizes, pressure regimes and air change rates.

7.33 A method of obtaining a design solution for non-standard theatres is given in Appendix 4.

7.34 Additional information for Ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) theatres is given in Section 7.0 (b).

General

7.35 The supply of air to an operating room has four main functions:

- to dilute airborne contamination;
- to control air movement within the suite such that the transfer of airborne contaminants from less clean to cleaner areas is minimized;
- to control the temperature and if necessary the humidity of the space;
- to assist the removal of, and dilute, waste anaesthetic gases.

7.36 Because of the complexities of controlling air-movement patterns, much design effort will be required for this aspect. It is important that the design makes the best possible use of the air available, as excessive supply airflows for the control of air movement should not be used. The amount of air supplied to the operating room will be determined by the number of doors and desired air-change rate.

7.37 The detailed considerations upon which the supply air-flow rate is based are as follows.

Dilution of airborne bacterial contaminants

7.38 There are four routes that airborne contaminants may appear in an operating room:

- through the supply air;
- shed by operating staff;
- produced by the surgical activities;
- transferred from adjacent spaces.

7.39 Supply flow rates for the main rooms of the operating suite are given in Appendix 3. For the other areas where room sizes and activities vary from site to site, air-change rates are given in Table A1. These figures have been found to give sufficient dilution of airborne bacterial contaminants, provided the mixing of room air is reasonably uniform.

7.40 A downward-displacement air distribution is preferred; it may be either turbulent or laminar flow. For turbulent flow the supply-air diffusers should be positioned either in the centre of each quadrant of the ceiling or along a line between the centres of each quadrant. This should ensure that all parts of the room are actively ventilated and that there will be adequate air movement at the operating table. Laminar flow would be provided by a perforated plenum terminal centred

above the operating table. (See Section 5 for additional guidance on supply terminals).

7.41 Suspended articulated equipment is usually fitted in theatres. These require significant structural steelwork in the ceiling void to cater for the loads imposed by the resulting bending moments. It is important to ensure that the void is deep enough to accommodate both the steelwork and the ventilation ducts. The location of the steelwork must not prevent a suitable layout of the ventilation ductwork and correct positioning of the supply air terminals. It needs to be recognised that the correct ventilation of an operating theatre plays a significant part in controlling healthcare acquired infections and is not subordinate to the desire to make equipment easy to move.

7.42 Horizontal flow distribution with or without a Coanda effect can be difficult to set up correctly and are unlikely to be as effective in Theatre applications. It should not be used in new installations. However space constraints may force its retention or replacement when refurbishing existing installations. Where fitted, the supply grilles will require a means of directional adjustment.

7.43 For general operating theatres, the air supply would be filtered in the AHU. Terminal HEPA filters are not generally required.

Control of air movement within the suite

7.44 The design of the system should seek to minimise the movement of contaminated air from less clean to cleaner areas. Transfer grilles enable air to pass in either direction between rooms of equal class and pressure. In older designs suitably dimensioned door undercuts were often used in lieu of transfer grilles. Pressure stabilisers operate in one direction only; they allow excess air to be directed to the area desired and assist in maintaining room-pressure differentials.

7.45 The relative locations of supply and extract terminals and their design air-volume rates will determine the basic air-flow between adjacent spaces. Transfer grilles and pressure stabilisers will permit and control the flow of air between spaces ensuring a flow from the clean to less-clean areas of the suite. Failure to provide such devices will lead to uncontrolled airflows when personnel move between rooms and doors being held partially open by air pressure.

Temperature and humidity control

7.46 Supply flow rates to achieve the required room conditions, are calculated conventionally, taking account of all heat and moisture gains and losses, and of maximum permissible temperature differences between the room and supply air. In most applications the room being considered will be within the heated building envelope.

7.47 Temperature differences of up to 10K for winter heating and 7K for summer cooling must not be exceeded.

7.48 It is acceptable for the humidity to swing uncontrolled between 35% and 60% saturation.

Removal and dilution of waste anaesthetic gases

7.49 Anaesthetic gases are subject to occupational exposure limits. The air-movement scheme should ensure that staff are in a clean air-flow path. (See Paragraph 7.21).

7.50 Air extracted from operating suites should not be re-circulated, as it may contain malodorous contaminants. However an energy recovery system should be fitted in the extract in order to reduce the plant energy consumption. (See Paragraphs 4.142 - 4.147).

Fire aspects

7.51 When considering the overall air-flow movement, careful thought needs to be given to the operation of the ventilation system, to limit smoke spread in the event of a fire. However, this is a highly staffed department with a low fire risk/load status and these factors need to be recognised when developing the fire strategy. It is considered satisfactory to treat the complete operating department as a single fire compartment providing there are at least two exits from it. Over-compartmentalisation can lead to difficulties in establishing clean air-flow paths and room-air dilution rates. This will lead to an increased risk of healthcare-associated infections. Staff areas within the department should be treated as a sub-compartment. (See Paragraph 6.18).

Door protection

7.52 Air should flow from the cleaner to the less clean areas as shown in Table A2. The factors that affect the likelihood of a reverse airflow through doorways are discussed in Paragraphs 7.24 - 7.26.

7.53 It is not possible to design an air-movement scheme, within the restraints of the amount of air available that will protect the operating room when two doors are simultaneously opened. The design process that has been used considers that each door is opened in turn and ensures that the direction and rate of air-flow through any open doorway is sufficient to prevent any serious back-flow of air to a cleaner area.

7.54 Provided that the air-change rates in Table A1 are met, dilution will be sufficient to ensure that the occasional small back-flows created (when two doors are opened simultaneously; or when there is a high temperature difference across an open door) will have little effect on the overall air cleanliness of the affected room.

7.55 The following general points should be taken into consideration during the design of operating suites:

- Number of exits – the fewer the number of rooms (and therefore doorways) leading from the operating room the better, as traffic is reduced and less complicated air-movement control schemes are required.
- Scrub and hand-wash facilities – these may be a part of the operating room, often in a bay. The bay would count as part of the operating room volume and should have a low-level active or passive extract to remove the moisture-laden air. Should a separate room be required for the scrub area, a door between the scrub-up room and the operating room is an inconvenience to scrubbed staff, and could be replaced by an opening. This opening should be larger than a normal single doorway, but the scrub would not, in these circumstances, be considered part of the operating room volume.
- If an alcohol scrub regime is employed, individual theatre scrubs may not be required and would be replaced by a common departmental pre-/post-operation scrub position in the corridor. This would require local extract to prevent a build-up of moisture.
- Preparation 'Sterile Pack Store' (SPS) – if it is intended to 'lay-up' instruments in the operating room, the preparation room is then used simply as a sterile pack store. The nominal room pressure can therefore be the same as that of the operating room and the airflow between the two rooms in either direction. Air supplied to the preparation room may be directed into the operating room either through a door mounted transfer grille or if no door is fitted, through the opening. Alternatively, stock ready-use sterile items can be located in a bay within the theatre. In this case, a portion of the total theatre supply air should be provided in the bay to ensure it is actively ventilated.
- Preparation room 'lay-up' – when the preparation room is used as an instrument 'lay-up' room, it should be regarded as being of greater cleanliness than the operating room, and the design should minimise the transfer of air from the operating room to the preparation room. Air supplied to the room may be directed to the operating room through a pressure stabiliser taking care not to compromise the airflow pattern in the operating room. The air may also be directed into a corridor;
- Service corridor – if materials to be disposed of are placed in impervious material for transportation, it is not necessary to have a separate corridor for this purpose. However, a service corridor has many operational advantages it terms of the flow of materials through the theatre suite. It also permits routine service and maintenance access without compromising the use of adjacent theatre suites.

Standard air-movement control schemes

7.56 In the previous versions of this guidance standard air movement control schemes were given that provided a range of design solutions to typical operating suite layouts. These were satisfactory design solutions for 'standard' sized rooms within the suite but were never intended to be universal for any sized room or suite. Guidance on operating suites contained in HBN 26 (2004) has increased the recommended size of operating room from approximately

35m^2 to 55m^2. Associated room sizes and air change rates have also increased. This means that the original standard solutions are no longer appropriate for new-build installations.

7.57 Because of the resulting increase in the volume of air supplied to the theatre, provision needs to be made either to actively remove it or allow it to escape passively through pressure stabilisers. The increase in room size has also made the number and position of air-supply terminals critical to the effective ventilation of the room.

7.58 Four new standard solutions have been developed to reflect the current guidance on theatre suite layout and room sizes given in HBN 26 (2004) as well as the general increase in air-change rates.

7.59 The most commonly used original standard solutions have been revised and updated. They have been retained in this guidance, as they will remain applicable to older theatre suites that are being refurbished to their original performance standards. They will also be applicable in existing departments where space constrains do not permit the upgrading of suites to the latest standard of performance or where a pre-built "shell" is being fitted out.

7.60 It is important to recognise that in any situation where a "non-standard" room size or theatre suite layout is being considered, the designer must return to first principles when developing a solution. Examples of non-standard configurations would be:

- cardiac theatres that typically have an operating room half as big again as normal, a perfusion laboratory and no anaesthetic room;
- operating departments served by a central instrument lay-up preparation area rather than individual prep rooms;
- balanced-flow theatres for infectious cases.

Appendix 4 contains a methodology for assisting the designer to arrive at a suitable solution.

7.61 The new and revised standard design solutions are as follows:

No 1 – Typical Conventional theatre – room sizes as HBN 26;

No 2 – Typical UCV theatre – room sizes as HBN 26;

No 3 – HBN 26 illustrated Conventional theatre;

No 4 – HBN 26 illustrated theatre with UCV terminal fitted;

No 5 – Pre-2006 Conventional theatre, single corridor (former SHTM 2025; 1b);

No 6 – Pre-2006 UCV theatre, single corridor (former SHTM 2025; 1a);

No 7 – Pre-2006 Conventional theatre, two corridor (former SHTM 2025; 5b);

No 8 – Pre-2006 UCV theatre, two corridor (former SHTM 2025; 5a).

7.62 Details of these standard solutions are given in Appendix 3. They contain diagrams that show the relationship of rooms and the various doors and transfer devices between them, **but should not be regarded as architectural layouts.** The schemes have been developed using the calculation procedure described in Appendix 4. Important features of the solutions are:

- Zone trimmer heaters – a trimmer heater battery is advocated when calculations indicate that the temperature differential between rooms may be greater than 2K. Generally this will only be the case in the preparation room when designated as a lay-up.
- The preparation room (sterile pack store)/operating room interface – these rooms are deemed to be of equal cleanliness, and thus a transfer grille is required between these rooms or the door can be replaced with an opening wider than a standard door.
- Preparation (lay-up)/disposal room interface – pressure relief dampers are recommended here to provide an air path when doors are closed, while preventing back-flow when a door is opened elsewhere.
- Operating room/anaesthetic room interface – pressure stabilisers, or in some cases, carefully sized transfer grilles are recommended here, and between the anaesthetic room and corridor, and between the operating room and corridor.
- Operating room/scrub room interface – an opening is provided between these rooms. The flow of air through the opening provides protection, and gives bacterial dilution within the scrub room; the air is then exhausted to the corridor via a pressure stabiliser.

7.63 No mechanical supply or extract ventilation is provided in the scrub room, and thus when a door is opened elsewhere in the suite, the stabiliser will close, allowing the air to be re-directed to help protect the doorway. If the scrub is a bay within the theatre then a suitably positioned pressure stabiliser and / or active extract should be provided to ensure air movement and prevent a local build-up of moisture.

7.64 Any other scheme may be used and the standard solutions applied, if the following conditions are met:

- room relationships in air network terms are as shown in the plans;
- door-gap measurements approximate to those given in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 58: ‘Internal doorsets’, (but see also Table A3 and Note 3);
- casual heat gains are accounted for;
- a trimmer battery is installed in the air supply system to the preparation room;
- leakage through the structure is kept to a minimum.

Note 3: It should be noted that many doors are now fitted with cold smoke seals as standard. These will significantly reduce the door leakage rate when new and undamaged. It is therefore recommended that provision for the design door leakage is factored into the sizing of the appropriate transfer grille or pressure stabiliser. Failure to do this will result in air gap whistles and doors being held partially open by air pressure.

7.65 It is recommended that every effort should be made to adopt one of the schemes described above.

Air terminals and air distribution within rooms

7.66 The selection and sighting of air diffusers will be critical in establishing an efficient pattern of mixing. To this end the diffusers selected must be fit for purpose. Ceiling mounted circular 'air master' style, square 'four-way blow' or similar diffuser designs that provide a downward displacement, turbulent airflow are the preferred option. (See Paragraph 5.68).

7.67 Plenum-type 'laminar'-flow-style diffusers with a footprint that encompasses the operating site are acceptable but may be prone to buoyancy effects as a result of temperature difference. Manufacturers' type-test data should be consulted to ensure that the terminal will achieve the required performance envelope. Note that these are not true laminar-flow systems in the strict sense of the word but produce a downward-displacement parallel-flow style of air distribution.

7.68 The diffuser equipment chosen should not cause 'dumping' and it should provide a velocity 1 metre above floor level at the operating position of between 0.2 m/s and 0.3 m/s.

7.69 In the operating room, the supply air terminals must be at high level, and should all be adjustable for rate of flow as well as being easily cleaned and silent in operation.

7.70 In order to ensure that all parts of the operating room are actively ventilated, there should be an air-out path on each face or in each corner of the theatre. This may be provided by a pressure stabiliser, transfer grille, active or passive extract terminal. A minimum of three, but preferably four, air-out paths - approximately equally spaced - should be provided.

Automatic control

7.71 The automatic control of ventilation in operating suites needs to be simple and robust. Over-reliance on complex room pressure and flow relationships linked to automatic fan speed control is unnecessary and in the long term have been shown to be unreliable. Complex software algorithms that can only be accessed and interpreted by off-site specialists should not be used. Whichever control strategy is chosen it is important that on-site staff have the facility to override the control system and keep the ventilation operating at least until the surgical procedure is complete. (See also Paragraph 6.11)

7.72 Theatre air-conditioning control sensors should be actively ventilated. They would typically be located in a sampling extract duct mounted in the surgeon's panel, positioned at normal working height (1.8m above finished floor level) and be accessible for cleaning and the removal of fluff and lint.

7.73 Wall-mounted passive-temperature and humidity sensors are not recommended.

7.74 Controls should be provided to enable operating department ventilation plants to be closed down when the operating suites are unoccupied. (See also Paragraphs 6.24 - 6.26)

7.75 When in the 'off' mode, the control system should ensure that the ventilation plant is automatically reinstated if the space temperature falls below 15°C.

7.76 The theatre control panel should include plant status indication; clearly-readable temperature and humidity indicating gauges; and means of adjusting the set point for temperature. Theatre ventilation plant status indication should be located at the staff control base.

7.77 Where it is considered necessary to fit a humidifier, it should be selected to humidify to 40% saturation at 20°C during the design winter outside conditions. The cooling coil should be able to remove sufficient moisture so that 60% saturation at 20°C is not exceeded during the design summer outside conditions.

7.78 Each operating suite should be served by an independent supply and extract plant.

Ventilation of operating department ancillary areas

General

7.79 There are advantages in providing mechanical ventilation to all areas of the department. Maintaining operating suite airflow patterns is simpler and grilles and diffusers can be sited to eliminate condensation on windows. Where radiators or embedded wall or ceiling panels are installed they should be confined to the corridors and staff-only areas of the department.

Ventilation requirements

7.80 Table A2 gives guidance on the operating department areas in descending order of cleanliness, and this should be considered in the overall design of the department ventilation systems. The specified flow rates of air through doors given in Table A4 for the operating suite are not necessary for other areas of the department. However, the air-flow directions must be maintained from the clean to the less clean areas.

7.81 All windows in the department should be double-glazed and hermetically-sealed in order to ensure that the desired airflow pattern is maintained under all

external environmental conditions and to avoid infestation. Trickle vents if fitted will need to be sealed.

Systems design

7.82 The design of the ventilation system for the ancillary rooms depends on the overall configuration of the department. The plant for the ancillary rooms may need to be interlocked to the theatre suite plants so that reverse air-flow patterns do not occur.

7.83 Extract grilles should be sited and balanced to promote air movement along the clean and access corridors towards the reception/transfer areas. This should not affect the air distribution in the operating suite(s).

Reception

7.84 The aim in these areas is to provide comfortable conditions having regard to the movement control requirements of the department as a whole. The number of air changes will depend on the particular design.

Sterile pack bulk store

7.85 The store needs to be maintained at a positive pressure in order to preserve the cleanliness of the outside of the packs; 6 air changes are recommended.

Recovery

7.86 The air-change rate in the recovery room will be rather higher than that needed merely to provide clean, comfortable conditions, as it is necessary to control the level of anaesthetic gas pollution; 15 air changes are recommended, with a balanced air flow.

7.87 The supply air terminals should be ceiling mounted above the foot-end of the recovery bed positions. Extract should be at low (bed height or below) level behind the bed head positions or in the corners. This will establish a clean airflow path so that staff do not inhale anaesthetic gases exhaled by recovering patients.

7.0 (b) Ultra-clean ventilation systems

General requirements

7.88 The design philosophy of a conventionally ventilated operating suite is based on the need to dilute contaminants and control both the condition and movement of air in an operating suite. Ultra-clean ventilation (UCV) is a means of significantly increasing the dilution effect by providing a large volume of clean filtered air to the zone in which an operation is performed and sterile items are exposed. Air is discharged above the operating zone and while not truly laminar, its downward displacement purges the clean zone of contaminants and

particles generated by the activities within it. The airflow in and around the clean zone also serves to prevent particles originating outside the zone from entering it. The resulting reduction in contaminants has been shown to reduce significantly post-operative sepsis following certain orthopaedic procedures.

7.89 The number of bacteria that are present in the air at the wound site and exposed surgical items is dependent on the operating team, their procedural discipline, choice of clothing and the type of UCV system. Ultra-Clean air is defined as that containing not more than 10 CFU/m^3.

7.90 UCV systems are very successful in reducing contaminants at the wound site so it is often considered that there is no need for complex air movement control schemes in the rest of the suite. However, when designing the ventilation scheme, it should be noted that the users may switch the UCV terminal to "set-back" when non-orthopaedic surgery is taking place. This is because the high airflow rates can cause increased moisture evaporation of exposed tissue that may be detrimental to the surgical outcome. In recognition of this, the ventilation scheme should be capable of providing operating conditions to at least a "conventional" theatre standard throughout the suite with the UCV in set-back mode. It should also be remembered that suitable levels of ventilation will always be required in the peripheral rooms.

7.91 UCV systems can be designed and built from first principles or a range of bespoke modular units of varying shapes and sizes are available with each manufacturer having a slightly different approach to UCV design. Some systems are fitted with partial or full walls to delineate the clean zone and direct a laminar or exponential downflow of air within it. Other designs utilise slotted linear supply terminals to produce an air curtain around the clean zone together with laminar-flow diffusers to provide a downward-displacement supply within it. **Notwithstanding any variation in the design philosophy, all UCV systems will be required to achieve completely the performance standard set out in the "Validation" section of this document**. (Section 8)

7.92 As with conventional theatres, each UCV operating suite should have its own dedicated air handling unit (AHU) to the standard set out in Section 4 of this document. To ensure operational flexibility and permit routine maintenance, air handling units should not be shared between suites.

7.93 In retrofit installations, site conditions may preclude individual AHUs for each suite. In these circumstances an AHU may be shared between not more than two operating suites providing each suite has its own control of temperature. An accessible airflow measurement test point should be provided in the supply branch duct to each theatre so that the primary air volume to each UCV canopy can be determined. In addition the branch supply and extract should be capable of being physically isolated and the main air-flow rate reduced so that either suite can be taken out of use without detriment to operating conditions in the other.

7.94 An inherent feature of a UCV system is its large airflow so it is essential to re-circulate the air supplied to the operating theatre and/or to recover its energy in order to optimise operating costs.

7.95 The primary fresh-air volume supplied to a UCV suite will be the same as in a conventional suite and it should be dispersed to the rooms in the suite in the same manner. This is an important aspect of the design and requests by UCV suppliers for increased primary air-supply volumes should be resisted.

7.96 Laying-up in the clean zone is preferable for infection control reasons. Where a Sterile Pack Store (SPS) Preparation room is provided a transfer grille will be required in the preparation room / theatre door.

7.97 If the Preparation room is intended to be used for laying-up instruments, a pressure stabiliser will be required between the prep room and theatre. It should be fitted with a stand-off baffle to prevent air transfer interfering with the ultra-clean airflow distribution.

7.98 Separate scrub-up or disposal facilities are not necessary for air cleanliness although operational policy may prefer such a provision. A separate anaesthetic room should, however, be provided.

7.99 There is no aerobiological reason why two or more UCV systems should not be installed in a common area as long as adequate spacing is provided. These are known as “barn theatres” and require special design considerations and operational discipline. The relative positions of the UCV units, temperature control range and location of doors and openings to other areas will all significantly affect the airflow at the operating positions.

Types of UCV system

Remote plant systems

7.100 In a remote plant system, all the air-conditioning equipment is located outside of the operating room, except for the unidirectional air-flow terminal, terminal filter, air diffuser and the return-air grilles (see Figure 6).

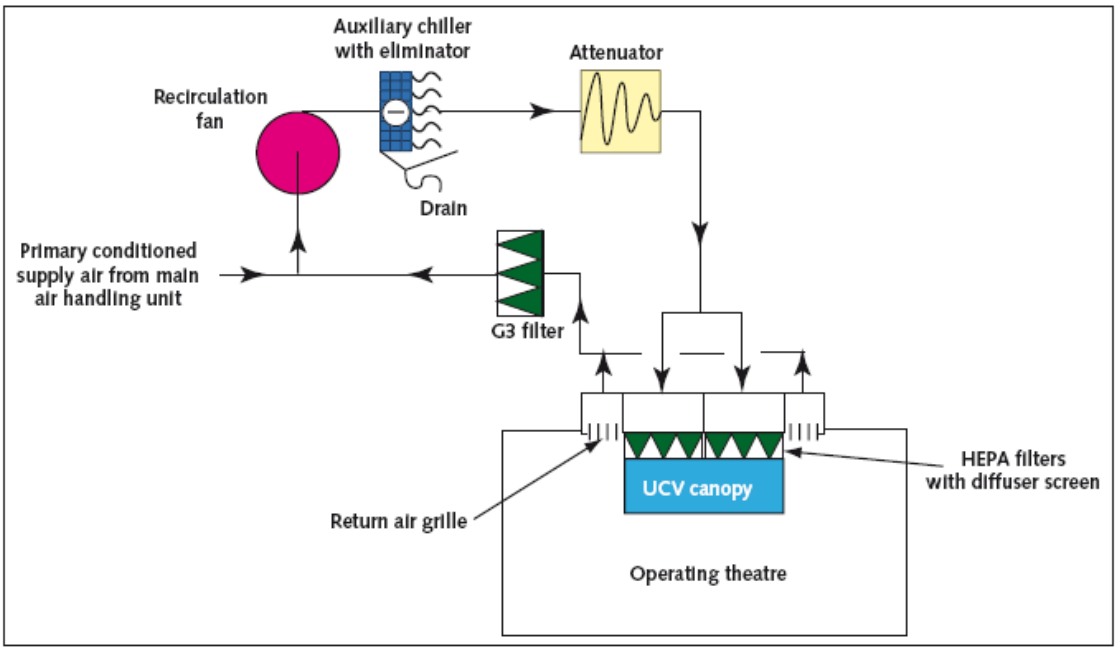


Figure 6: UCV theatre with remote air recirculation

7.101 This arrangement is the preferred option for new installations as it has the following advantages:

- the recirculation fans are out of the theatre thus reducing noise. Multiple recirculation fans can be replaced by a single fan unit with its drive out of the air stream;
- casual heat gains from recirculation fan(s), canopy lights, equipment and people within the theatre can be removed by a chiller battery in the return air stream. This will prevent heat build-up in the theatre;
- the return-air filters can be changed without needing access to the theatre making routine maintenance more feasible;
- the opportunity exists to locate the HEPA filter in the primary supply duct rather than the theatre terminal. This will reduce the number of filters required and allow them to be changed without entering the theatre.

Modular systems

7.102 Modular systems are frequently used in retrofit applications. Vertical or horizontal units are available.

7.103 Vertical-flow modular units comprise a ceiling-mounted air-terminal module containing return-air filters, return-air fans, final filter and air diffuser. Primary air is supplied by a remote air-conditioning unit at the volume and to the standard required for a conventional operating suite. (see Figure 7)

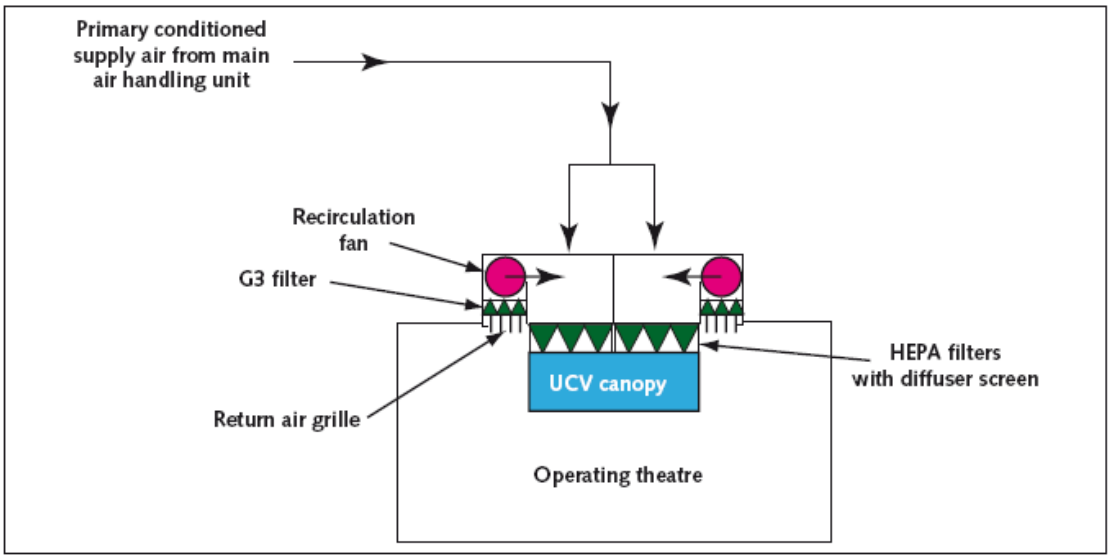


Figure 7: UCV theatre with modular system

7.104 Horizontal or cross-flow modular units comprise a wall-mounted air-terminal module standing vertically to produce a horizontal flow of air and containing final filter/diffuser, return-air filters and fans. The module may incorporate a cooling unit or be supplied with 'fresh air' from a separate primary cooling system.

Vertical flow UCV systems

7.105 Vertical-flow systems have a superior performance and are more effective at reducing infection risks. Air-curtain or partial-wall systems are acceptable, but are known to be more susceptible to problems arising from performance deterioration, poor operating-team discipline and high occupancy rates than is the case with full-wall systems. A full-wall is considered to be any wall terminating not more than one metre above the finished floor level.

7.106 Because of the large volume of air being moved in a relatively small space, the siting of the return-air grilles can cause short-circuiting of the air discharged through the UCV terminal. If the return-air grilles are positioned at high level, partial walls should be provided to control short-circuiting. The partial-walls shall be not less than 1m from the operating room walls and terminate at least 2m above floor level. The clearance should be increased proportionally for larger terminals (that is, 1.15m for 3.2m x 3.2m units and 1.25m for 3.5m x 3.5m units). In all cases, the sidewalls should terminate at 2m above floor level.

7.107 Siting the return-air grilles around the periphery of the theatre at low level will eliminate short-circuiting, remove the need for partial walls and give an improved airflow path. In any event there should be an air-out path on each face or in each corner of the theatre. These may be provided by combination of pressure stabilisers and passive or active low level extract grilles. Failure to provide air-out paths on all faces of the theatre may result in the surplus air causing entrainment into the clean zone.

7.108 Vertical systems should have a clean zone large enough to encompass the operating site and all of the instrument trays likely to be needed for the surgical procedures to be undertaken. Ophthalmic and minor hand surgery would

typically require a 1·4m circular or rectangular terminal. For major orthopaedic procedures a minimum size of 2·8m x 2·8m will be required. This is the area projected on the floor under the supply air terminal within the partial walls, full walls or air curtain. Any air outside this zone cannot be guaranteed to be ultra-clean although given the dilution factor the level of microbiological contamination will be much lower than the general level in a conventional operating room. The use of lines or a coloured area on the floor delineating the extent of the clean zone will assist staff and is therefore essential.

7.109 When upgrading an existing conventional theatre to an ultra-clean standard the only solution may be the installation of a modular system. In these units, the heat gains from the return-air fans and terminal lights may warrant the inclusion of supplementary cooling within the module although modern luminaries contribute substantially less unwanted heat. However issues of cooling coil drainage, condensate removal and maintenance access within the space constraints of the module may make this option impracticable. The additional cooling load should then be catered for by conditioning the primary air to compensate.

7.110 If an existing AHU is to be retained, it may require modification to ensure that it achieves the minimum standards set out in Section 4 of this document. The fan may need re-rating to accommodate the change in system resistance. The cooling coil may also need to be upgraded to cater for the increased load resulting from the return air fans and terminal lights. Failure to make adequate provision for this may make the theatre unusable during prolonged warm spells.

7.111 A factor affecting the air-flow pattern is the supply or room air temperature difference. When the supply-air temperature is significantly above room temperature, buoyancy effects will reduce the volume of air reaching the operating zone. If it is anticipated at design stage that this will be a regular occurrence, then a system incorporating full-walls should be used. Demountable extensions that convert a partial-wall to a full-wall unit are available.

7.112 Convection up-currents from the surgical team and operating lamp tend to counter the movement of clean air towards the operating site, hence the air velocity reaching the operating level is critical. The minimum velocity given below has been selected to take account of these factors and is greater than the theoretical minimum value.

7.113 For all vertical UCV systems the design discharge velocities will be as follows:

Air velocity 2 metres above floor level:

- partial-wall system = 0.38 m/s average;
- full-wall system = 0.30 m/s average.

Air velocity 1 metre above floor level:

- all systems = 0·2 m/s minimum within the operating zone.

The validation Paragraphs 8.75 – 8.86, gives details of the method of measurement.

7.114 Variable-speed recirculation fans with differential pressure control may be the most suitable solution for maintaining consistent performance and energy saving.

Horizontal UCV systems

7.115 Horizontal UCV air-flow systems have been shown to be less effective than vertical systems and are not the preferred solution. There may be occasions, however, where architectural, engineering, economic or workload considerations prevent the installation of a vertical-flow system and only a horizontal-flow system can be installed.

7.116 Horizontal- or cross-flow modular units comprise a wall-mounted air terminal standing vertically to produce a horizontal flow of air across the operating field. The terminal module contains the final filters, air diffuser, return-air grilles, filters and fans. The module may incorporate a full air-conditioning unit or be supplied with 'fresh-air' from a separate primary air-conditioning system. In the latter case the return-air fan power may warrant the inclusion of a supplementary cooling coil within the module.

7.117 The system should have sidewall panels at least 2·4m apart. The panels may fold to facilitate cleaning of the theatre. The minimum height of the terminal should be 2·1m and a deflector at the top of the filter/diffuser will be acceptable as an alternative to a full roof. These dimensions reflect currently available equipment and may impose operational constraints in addition to a lower level of performance common to these systems.

7.118 In the horizontal flow systems, personnel working between the filter and surgical wound will disperse bacteria that are more likely to contaminate exposed surgical instruments and enter the wound. This may be minimised by the use of improved clothing and operating procedure to reduce dispersion of bacteria. The use of lines on the floor delineating the extent of the clean zone and hatching or colour coding the 'no-entry' zone between the air diffuser and patient will serve to prompt staff and are therefore essential.

7.119 The air discharge velocity as measured 1m from the diffuser face should have a mean value of 0·4 m/s. The validation Section 8 gives details of the method of measurement.

Filters

7.120 The main plant primary and secondary filters should be to the standards and in the location set out in Section 4.

7.121 Terminal filters should be provided within the airflow terminal or in the air supply to it. High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters grade H10 as specified in BS EN 1822 will be required as a minimum. There is no aerobiological benefit in

fitting filters of a higher grade than this, although for practical reasons most UCV manufacturer recommend the fitting of H12-grade filters.

7.122 In some modular UCV units, the terminal filter is used as a pressure equaliser to balance airflow and filters of a higher grade with a greater pressure drop may be recommended by their manufacturer. The increased resistance may affect the velocity of air reaching the operating level and there will be penalties in terms of installed fan power and higher noise levels.

7.123 The final filters should be installed in a leak-proof housing in a manner that allows the terminal unit, filters and their seals to be validated. A challenge test will be carried out during commissioning to prove the effectiveness of the complete installation.

7.124 Where UCV units are constructed in sections, a means of measuring the pressure drop across the terminal filters in each section should be provided. The pressure test-points should be located outside of the partial wall, capped to prevent air leakage and accessible within the theatre without the need to open the unit inspection panels. Alternatively direct-reading pressure gauges should be fitted.

7.125 The UCV system will require a return-air filter to capture the relatively coarse particles that would otherwise significantly reduce the life of the final filter. This should be at least a G3 grade to BS EN 779. In remote recirculation systems there may be advantages in fitting a higher grade return air filter, as it will reduce the load on the terminal HEPA filters and extend their life.

Noise level

7.126 If sound-attenuating material is used to line any portion of the inside of the UCV unit it should be non-particle-shedding and fire-resistant. (Further guidance can be found in SHTM Firecode suite of documents).

7.127 The maximum noise level in an operating room fitted with a UCV terminal of any type shall not exceed 50 NR. The validation section gives details of the method of measurement.

Lighting and operating lights

7.128 CIBSE lighting guide LG2 and BS EN 12464-1 give detailed information of lighting requirements. Operating luminaires should comply with the photometric requirements detailed in relevant sections of BS EN 60601.

7.129 The position of the UCV light fittings and style of partial walls, where fitted, should neither adversely disturb the airflow nor result in significant spatial variations in illuminance levels.

7.130 In vertical units, specialised task lighting should be provided by toroidal, cruciform or small multiple dome-shaped luminaires as they have good aerodynamic properties. The ideal luminaire will have a minimal effect on the airflow regardless of where it is positioned. Large-diameter saucer-shaped

luminaires should not be used in vertical-flow systems as they will occlude the airflow in the critical central zone. It is important to consider the suitability of existing luminaires when retrofitting UCV systems.

7.131 In vertical UCV installations a minimum of 2·75m from floor to underside of the diffuser is required to allow for supporting mechanisms and lamp articulation. When upgrading existing systems this dimension may not be achievable. However, when parked, the lowest point of the central light stem, luminaire and articulation arms should never be less than 2m above floor level.

7.132 The traditional means of light support is a central column that passes through the UCV terminal and is rigidly fixed to the building structure. The position of the support therefore prevents air being supplied at the centre of the terminal. Separate supports displaced from the centre of the clean zone would lead to improved airflow. This approach was advocated in the 1994 version of HTM 2025 but at the time of writing no UK manufacturer has chosen to adopt this solution.

7.133 In horizontal units the size or shape of the specialised task luminaire has little effect on the air-flow pattern.

Controls and instrumentation

7.134 The functions of the supply AHU and extract ventilation should be continuously monitored by a BEMS control unit. The controls and instrumentation for the main plant are set out in Section 6.

7.135 UCV systems will additionally require:

- a set-back facility that can reduce the air supplied through the UCV terminal to a volume that equates to not less than 25 air changes per hour of the operating room gross volume whilst still leaving the supply AHU operating at full speed;
- a facility to turn the entire system, supply AHU and UCV terminal, off. (an emergency stop is not required);
- a read-out sufficiently large to be clearly visible from the operating table that shows the temperature of the air being supplied by the UCV terminal;
- a read-out sufficiently large to be clearly visible from the operating table that shows the relative humidity of the air being supplied by the UCV terminal;
- a red indicator light that will illuminate when either the supply AHU or the UCV terminal fails, either or both are switched off or are at set-back;
- an amber indicator light that will illuminate when the UCV terminal is at set-back and the supply AHU is running;
- a green indicator light that will illuminate when both the supply AHU and UCV terminal are operating at full speed;
- a blue indicator light that will illuminate when the UCV terminal air flow, as detected by a differential pressure sensor, falls below 80% of the design flow rate.

AHU	UVC terminal	Indicator light	Comment
Off or Fault	Off or Fault	Red	Ventilation not operating at a suitable level to commence surgical procedures
Off or Fault	On (set-back)		
Off or Fault	On (full speed)		
On (set-back)	Off or Fault		
On (full speed)	Off or Fault		
On (set-back)	On (set-back)		
On (full speed)	On (set-back)	Amber	Ventilation provided to at least conventional theatre standard
On (full speed)	On (full speed)	Green	Full UCV standard conditions
-	-	Blue	HEPA-filter resistance causing low air flow

Table 7: Indicator light logic table

7.136 The switching devices and indicators should be incorporated in the surgeon's panel and their functions clearly labelled. In retrofit installations an auxiliary panel for the UCV may be the most practical option. If fitted it should be mounted adjacent to the surgeon's panel and their control functions interlocked as necessary.

7.137 When a system is designed to have partial walls with full-wall extensions, a volume control facility may be incorporated to allow the system to be run with reduced velocity when the demountable full-walls are in place. It would be the responsibility of the user to ensure correct operation of the system. To assist the user an explanatory notice should be included on the theatre control panel.

7.138 A direct-reading gauge should be fitted in the theatre to show a representative pressure drop across the final filters. If the UCV control box is located out of the theatre and has a means of manually adjusting the return air-fan speed then it should also be fitted with a direct-reading differential pressure gauge. The means of adjusting the return-air fan speed should be lockable to prevent casual adjustment. The direct-reading gauges should be fitted with a means of indicating the correct operating pressure range.

7.139 The UCV-unit manufacturer's control box should be located in an accessible position preferably in the operating department adjacent to the operating theatre that it serves. A service corridor, if provided, is an ideal location. The control box should be clearly labelled with the identity of the operating theatre that it serves.

7.0 (c) Extract systems

7.140 Extracts may be provided for a variety of reasons including:

- simple odour control (for example in a WC or mortuary);
- to receive and remove moisture-laden air (for example, in a kitchen);
- as part of a combined supply/extract balanced system (for example, in an operating suite);

- to capture a hazardous substance at source (for example a safety cabinet).

7.141 Devices that use an inflow of air to control exposure of staff to hazardous substances are classified as Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV) systems under the COSHH Regulations.

7.142 An LEV system may comprise a self-contained unit incorporating its own carbon filter such as a simple bench-top fume cupboard. Alternatively it may be a complete "ventilation system" comprising a make-up air supply, multiple-exhaust-protected work stations, branch and central extract ductwork, duplex extract fans and a high-level discharge terminal. It may also incorporate a special filtration system appropriate to the hazardous substance being controlled. Such systems could be required for workshops containing woodworking machinery or large centralised pathology laboratories housing multiple safety cabinets, dissection benches, fume cupboards and specimen stores.

7.143 It is important to recognise at the design stage whether an extract is being provided for comfort or as an LEV system. Typical systems in healthcare include:

- microbiological safety cabinets and Category 3 containment rooms;
- fume cupboards;
- welding-fume extracts;
- woodworking machinery duct collectors;
- battery-charging bay extracts;
- powered plaster and bone saws;
- pharmaceutical preparation cabinets and tablet machines;
- dissection benches, cut-up tables and some specimen stores;
- medium- and high-risk infectious disease isolation facilities;
- decontamination facilities;
- dental furnaces, grinders and polishers.

7.144 General design information and guidance for LEV systems is produced by the Health and Safety Executive (HSE) as HS(G)37. Information on the design and installation of microbiological safety cabinets is given in BS5726 and that for fume cupboards is given in BS EN 14175. Their recommendations should be closely followed.

7.145 LEV systems are statutory items that will be subject to an independent inspection every 14 months.

Hood extract systems

Special requirements

7.146 Extract canopies will be required over steam-and-heat-emitting appliances, for example sterilisers, catering and washing equipment; and for the extraction of toxic fumes over benches used for mixing, sifting and blending procedures.

7.147 Perimeter-drain gulleys and corrosion-proof grease eliminators should be provided on kitchen hoods.

Typical arrangements

7.148 The air-flow rate must be sufficient to ensure an adequate capture velocity in the vicinity of the process; typical values are as follows:

- evaporation of steam and like vapours 0.25 m/s to 0.5 m/s;
- chemical and solvent releases 1.0 m/s;
- vapour of gases 5 m/s to 6 m/s;
- light dusts 7 m/s to 10.0 m/s.

Excessive velocities will be wasteful of power and generate noise.

7.149 The lowest edge of the canopy should be 2m above finished floor level, with a minimum of 300mm overhang beyond the edge of the equipment on all sides.

7.150 A compact arrangement of equipment (but with access for maintenance) will minimise the canopy area, and hence reduce the air volume necessary to achieve the optimum capture velocity.

7.151 Hoods required for the control of heat gain and vapours may be connected to the general extract system when it is convenient to do so, but where non-corrosive ductwork materials are necessary, a separate discharge is preferred.

7.152 Lighting and internal divider plates are often required to be built into the perimeter of large canopies. However, built-in shelving systems are not recommended, as they interfere with the air-flow, and constitute a maintenance problem.

Control of hood extracts

7.153 Provided that it does not interfere with the operation of the department when not in use, the ventilation system for the hood extract and any associated supply can be shut down. To this end, local control should be provided.

Bench extract systems

Special requirements

7.154 Bench extract ventilation is required in departments such as pathology and mortuary, where activities involve the release of malodorous or toxic fumes that should not be inhaled. Where hazardous substances are being controlled, the system should be designated an LEV.

Typical arrangements

7.155 Each ventilated position will usually be accommodated in a continuous run of benching, which should not be more than 650mm from front to rear and which should be provided with a continuous upstand at the rear. Each position should have a 1200mm x 150mm linear extract grille mounted on a purpose-designed plenum box (incorporating guide vanes as necessary), with its face flush with the upstand. The bottom of the grille should be as close as practicable to the level of the working surface (usually 75mm above, to allow for cleaning). The minimum velocity across any part of the grille should be 1 m/s. The grille should be readily demountable to allow for cleaning.

Control of bench extract systems

7.156 Provided that it does not interfere with the operation of the department when not in use, the ventilation system for the bench extract and any associated make-up supply can be shut down. However, a run-on timer with a minimum setting of 30 minutes must be provided. To this end, local or automatic-use control should be provided.

7.157 Processes that produce hazardous vapours, fumes, dusts or noxious vapours should be enclosed or semi-enclosed in a suitable cabinet or exhaust protected workstation.

Safety cabinet and fume-cupboard extract systems

7.158 Safety cabinets and fume cupboards are devices that use an inflow of air to control exposure of staff to hazardous substances. The units, their exhaust systems, filters, fans and discharge terminals are all classified as Local Exhaust Ventilation (LEV) systems under the COSHH Regulations. The make-up air system to a room that contains an LEV system should also be considered as an essential part of the system and be included in the LEV classification. Information on the design and installation of microbiological safety cabinets is given in BS5726 and that for fume cupboards is given in BS EN 14175. Their recommendations should be closely followed.

7.159 The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) publishes ‘The Management, Design and Operation of Microbiological Containment Laboratories’ covering the general environment in which they are used and operational considerations.

Special requirements

7.160 The supply-air system should not distort the unidirectional and stable air pattern required for fume cupboards and microbiological safety cabinets. In general, supply-air ceiling diffusers should not discharge directly towards fume cupboards or safety cabinets, unless the terminal velocity is such that the air-flow pattern of the cabinet is unaffected. The design should ensure that high air-change rates, and/or the opening and closing of doors do not have any adverse effect on the performance of safety cabinets or fume cupboards. A damped door-closure mechanism may help.

7.161 In order to safeguard the user, all safety cabinets and fume cupboards must be fitted with a clear indication that they are operating correctly. Direct-reading gauges or falling-ball indicators are preferred (in addition to electronic pressure indicators). The system should be set to alarm audibly if the face velocity falls below the minimum safe operating level.

Arrangements for safety cabinet installations

7.162 The manufacture and installation of microbiological safety cabinets must be in accordance with the relevant national standards and guidance issued by the Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP).

7.163 A Class 1 microbiological safety cabinet must be specified for routine work involving Group 3 pathogens. It should be housed in a Category 3 containment room. Specific design information on containment rooms is issued by ACDP in conjunction with the Health and Safety Commission.

7.164 Siting and installation of microbiological safety cabinets are of particular importance because:

- the protection afforded to the operator by the cabinet depends on a specific and stable unidirectional air flow through the open front;
- the protection to the environment by the cabinet depends on the high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters. The exhaust air should never be considered as totally free from microbiological hazard.

7.165 Microbiological safety cabinet is HEPA filtered prior to being discharged to outside. The extract ductwork should as far as practicable be kept under negative pressure while inside the building.

7.166 Current standards permit the installation of microbiological safety cabinets with integral fans, provided that the extract ductwork can be kept short (that is, less than 2m); such an installation however, is likely to be noisy and is not recommended for use in new buildings.

7.167 The discharge from the cabinet should be fitted with a back-draft damper. In multiple installations where several cabinets discharge into a common extract and discharge duct, it must be possible to isolate each cabinet from the system when not in use.

7.168 Roof-level discharge, wherever practicable, is preferred since it removes much of the uncertainty over air re-entering the building through ventilation inlets and/or windows. In such an installation, the extract fan should be situated separately from the cabinet and close to the discharge outlet, to maintain the duct within the building under negative pressure. The discharge point on a flat roof should be through a 3m high terminal. This is required to safeguard staff who may need to access the roof periodically for maintenance. This requirement will also be applicable to fume-cupboard discharges.

7.169 Where this is impracticable, discharge into the room via a double HEPA filter has been accepted. The preferred method, however, is to discharge 3m above the roofline in line with the similar standard for fume cupboard designs.

Arrangements for fume cupboard installations

7.170 The manufacture and installation of fume cupboards must be in accordance with the relevant national standards and associated guidance.

7.171 The primary factors that contribute to the effective performance of fume cupboards include:

- an adequate volume of supply air;
- an effective exhaust system to promote the safe dispersal of waste products to atmosphere.

7.172 The air velocities through sash openings must be sufficient to prevent hazardous materials from entering the laboratory while avoiding excess flow rates that interfere with the investigation process. Average face velocities should be between 0.5 and 1.0 m/s, with a minimum at any point within 20% of the average, the upper end of the range being applicable to the containment of materials of high toxicity. The design velocity must be maintained irrespective of whether the sash opening is varied, or whether doors or windows are open or closed. Variable Air Volume (VAV) cupboards are available which offer a reduction in energy use.

7.173 The possibility of a fire or explosion that may not be contained by a fume cupboard must always be considered. A fume cupboard should not, therefore, be sited in a position where exit to an escape route will necessitate passing directly in front of it.

7.174 Fume-cupboard fans should be installed as near as possible to the termination of the duct, thus maintaining the maximum amount of ductwork at negative pressure.

7.175 Where there are adjacent buildings with opening windows, or where downdraughts occur, it may be necessary to increase the height of discharge ducts in order to achieve adequate dispersal. In complex locations, airflow modelling or wind tunnel tests may be required to determine the optimum height of the stack (see also Paragraph 7.167).

7.176 Fume-cupboards for certain processes must have separate extract systems. However, where appropriate, individual fume-cupboard exhaust systems may discharge via non-returning dampers into a single collection duct rather than having a large number of separate stacks. The collection duct should have a large cross-sectional area to minimise its effect on the individual exhaust systems; be open to atmosphere upstream of the first connection; and be designed to discharge a total air volume at least equal to the combined individual extract systems.

7.177 Individual fume-cupboard extract systems, discharging either directly to atmosphere or into a collection duct, do not require duplex fans. However, a collection duct designed to provide dispersal of effluent from a number of individual extracts, should have duplex fans with automatic changeover.

7.178 Some fumes are particularly corrosive, so the choice of material for the ductwork, and type of extract fan fitted should reflect the nature of the fume being conveyed.

Control of extract systems

7.179 It is desirable to provide local control of safety cabinets in order to maximise the life of the HEPA filter, and to permit the sealing of the cabinet and room for fumigation if spillage occurs.

7.180 To cope with the risk of an accident or spillage outside safety cabinets, a ‘panic button’ should be provided to switch off the supply to that area; and discharge all extracted air to atmosphere.

7.181 In pathology departments, it will be necessary to have one or more microbiological safety cabinets and one or more fume cupboards available for use at all times, including weekends, therefore, local overriding controls for all these items and any associated ventilation plant will be necessary.

7.0(d) Plantroom ventilation

General requirements

7.182 Plant rooms are required to be ventilated in order to maintain acceptable temperatures for satisfactory operation of the plant and controls, and for maintenance activities. In the case of plant rooms housing combustion equipment, a secondary function of the ventilation is to provide make-up air for the combustion process.

7.183 The air required for these purposes should be introduced into the space through inlets positioned to minimise the discomfort to occupants; they should be unlikely to be blocked, closed deliberately (except in the case of fire shutters if required), or rendered inoperative by prevailing winds.

7.184 Plantroom ventilation air should not be used for any other purposes, such as make-up air for extract; and where the plantroom contains combustion equipment, the appliance pressure must not fall below the outside air pressure.

7.185 Specialised healthcare air handling equipment must not be located in a fire compartment that houses combustion equipment.

7.186 Statutory regulations for plantroom ventilation are contained in the Scottish Building Regulations, and further guidance is given in CIBSE Guides A & B.

Assessment of ventilation levels

7.187 Ventilation requirements must take into account all heat sources within a plantroom, and where there are large glazing areas, solar gains. The ventilation rate should limit the maximum temperature within the plantroom to 32°C.

7.188 As the level of equipment operating during mid-season and summer is often lower than the winter condition, and the cooling effect of the outside air is reduced, it is necessary to calculate the minimum volume for each season of operation, and the inlet and outlet grilles or fan sizes should be chosen to cater for the largest seasonal air volume.

7.189 Replacement air should not be drawn through pipe trenches or fuel service ducts. Where metal ducts penetrate walls and floors, effective sealing should be provided to confine the ventilation to the boiler room and to meet fire protection requirements. Penetration of fire barrier walls by ventilation ducts should be avoided if possible.

7.190 Fire dampers in plant room ventilation ducts should be electrically interlocked with the boiler plant.

7.191 Care must be taken to prevent any noise generated in the boiler room emerging from natural or mechanical ventilation openings to the detriment of the surrounding environment. Particular care is necessary with mechanical flue draughts and fan-diluted flue systems.

7.192 Information on required air volumes in contained in the CIBSE Guide A & B.

7.193 Where combustion plant is installed, the high-level (outlet) openings should be sized to cater for the total ventilating air quantity; and the low-level (supply) openings sized to cater for the total combined ventilating and combustion air quantity.

Choice of ventilation system

7.194 Ventilation air may be introduced and exhausted by either natural or mechanical means or a combination of both. However, natural systems are preferred where possible.

7.195 Generally, small installations at or above ground level should have their combustion and ventilation air provided by natural means, employing both high- and low-level openings.

7.196 Basement, internal and large installations at or above ground level will usually require a combination of natural and mechanical ventilation. If the airflow rate is difficult, both supply and extract may require mechanical means.

7.197 Whether natural or mechanical, the system should be designed to avoid both horizontal and vertical temperature gradients. Both inlet and outlet openings should be placed on opposite or adjacent sites of the building to reduce the effect of wind forces.

7.198 Where mechanical air supply is employed, electrical interlocks with the boiler plant should be provided to prevent damage in the event of failure of the supply fan(s) once the air volume is established.

7.199 The necessary free opening areas for a naturally ventilated plantroom may be calculated using either the method in A4 of the CIBSE Guide A or the table in section B13 of CIBSE Guide B.

7.200 A combined natural and mechanical ventilation system should allow for natural extract at high level, to take advantage of convective forces in the room, with mechanical supply at low level. The high level natural ventilators should be sized to cope with the total quantity of ventilation air, as above.

7.201 To prevent leakage of flue gases and to ensure that the flue draught is not impeded at any time, the air pressure in the boiler room must not exceed the prevailing outside pressure. Therefore, the fan duty should exceed the calculated total combined combustion and ventilation air quantity by at least 25%. Fan-powered inlets should be arranged to flow outside air into the space at a point where cross-ventilation will ensure pick-up of heat without causing discomfort to occupiers.

7.202 Where it is impractical to provide sufficient natural ventilation to remove the heat emitted by the plant, both mechanical supply and extract will be required.

7.203 The high-level extract should be sized to cater for the total ventilating air quantity and the low-level supply should exceed the total combined combustion and ventilating air quantity by at least 25%, as above.

7.0(e) Ventilation of hydrotherapy suites

General requirements

7.204 In a hydrotherapy suite heat recovery should be via heat pump.

7.205 The quantity of supply air should be calculated as 25 litres/sec/m^2 wetted surface, with the wetted surface taken as 110% of the pool water surface area.

7.206 A re-circulation plant is recommended, with a minimum of 20% fresh air.

7.207 As far as practicable, re-circulated pool air should be provided to the ancillary changing and recover accommodation, with the only extract from the toilets, laundry/utility room and pool hall.

7.208 Supply air to the pool hall should be introduced at high level and directed towards the perimeter to mitigate condensation, with extract air taken from directly over the pool. Dampers should not be located over the pool water.

Control of hydrotherapy pool installations

7.209 The supply and extract fans should be interlocked so that the supply fan does not operate until flow is established within the extract system.

7.210 Time-clock control should be provided, with a local override switch to extend the normal operating period as required.

7.211 Night setback temperature (in the range of 21°C -25°C) and high humidity control (in the range of 60-75% sat) should be provided to override the time clock in order to prevent condensation. The exact set points should be ascertained post-installation.

7.212 A remote indication panel should be provided in the pool hall, giving a visual display of the pool water and pool air temperature.

8. Validation of specialised ventilation systems

Definitions

Commissioning - Commissioning is the process of advancing a system from physical completion to an operating condition. It will normally be carried out by specialist commissioning contractors working in conjunction with equipment suppliers. Commissioning will normally be the responsibility of the main or mechanical services contractor.

Validation - A process of proving that the system is fit for purpose and achieves the operating performance originally specified. It will normally be a condition of contract that "*The system will be acceptable to the client if at the time of validation it is considered fit for purpose and will only require routine maintenance in order to remain so for its projected life.*"

Note: Commissioning is often sub divided into sections e.g. air handling unit, automatic controls, airside balance, building fabric and fittings. Each section may be commissioned by its specialist installer and they are often accepted in isolation. Validation differs from commissioning in that its purpose is to look at the complete installation from air intake to extract discharge and assess its fitness for purpose as a whole. This involves examining the fabric of the building being served by the system and inspecting the ventilation equipment fitted as well as measuring the actual ventilation performance.

It is unlikely that 'in house' staff will possess the knowledge or equipment necessary to validate critical ventilation systems such as those serving operating suites, pharmacy clean rooms and local exhaust ventilation systems. Validation of these systems should therefore be carried out by a suitably qualified independent Authorised Person appointed by the NHS Board.

It is anticipated that training in the validation of specialised healthcare ventilation systems for independent Authorised Persons will become available during the life of this SHTM.

Commissioning general

8.1 Commissioning is an essential process for ventilation systems. It is therefore important that adequate provision for the process be made at the design stage of the project. Procedures for commissioning air-handling systems are given in CIBSE Commissioning Codes and BSRIA Application Guide Set COMPAK 1.

8.2 The duct-sizing procedure should take into account the requirements of system balancing, and the position and number of regulating dampers included in the design should be sufficient for this purpose.

Location of dampers and test holes

8.3 Balancing/commissioning dampers will be required in each branch of the distribution ductwork.

8.4 Test holes for the measurement of air-flow will be required at carefully selected points in main and all branch ducts. The number and spacing of holes are given in the BSRIA Application Guide Set COMPAK 1. Their positions must be identified at the design stage.

8.5 The test positions need to be accessible for commissioning to take place. They may also be required for subsequent annual verification of the system performance, so they should not be covered by permanent lagging.

8.6 The measurement point should be in a straight length of duct as far away as possible from any upstream bends, dampers or other elements that could cause disturbance to the airflow. The actual location should be:

- at least 1.5 duct diameters upstream of sources of turbulence such as dampers and bends;
- if this is not possible, 10 diameters downstream of dampers, bends or tees, and 5 diameters downstream of eccentric reducers;
- where there is enough space round the duct to insert the pitot tube and take readings;
- where the duct has a constant cross-sectional area.

8.7 Test holes for measuring total airflow from a fan should be located either 4 diameters upstream or 10 diameters downstream of the fan. Provision should also be made for measuring the speed of rotation.

Information to be provided

8.8 It is essential that the designer should pass on his intentions fully to the commissioning engineer by indicating which parts of the system are high, medium and low pressure, and by providing:

- relevant parts of the specification;
- schematic drawings indicating performance data as indicated in Table 8;
- equipment schedules;
- controller and regulator schedule;
- fan performance curves;
- wiring diagrams for electrical equipment, including interlock details.

Items in system	Information to be provided
Fans	Fan total pressure Volume flow rate at high and low speed Maximum motor current
Plant items	Type and identification numbers from equipment schedules Fluid and air volume flow rates Fluid and air side pressure losses Dry bulb temperatures Wet bulb temperatures Humidity
Dampers, including motorised and fire dampers	Identification numbers from equipment schedules Location Identification number Volume flow rate
Main and branch ducts	Dimensions Volume flow rates and velocities Identification numbers from equipment schedules
Terminal	Location Identification number Grille or diffuser factor Volume flow rate and neck velocity Operating static pressure
Test holes and access panels	Location Identification number
Controllers	Set points

Table 8: Information to be provided on schematic drawings

Notes: For Table 8

1. Fan total pressure is the difference between the total pressure (static pressure + velocity pressure) at the fan outlet and the total pressure at the fan inlet.

2. Where volume flow rates are variable, maximum and minimum values should be provided.

Commissioning personnel

8.9 As one individual is unlikely to possess all of the required commissioning skills, a commissioning team is therefore usually needed. The objective of commissioning is to ensure that the necessary performance and safety requirements are met.

8.10 During the commissioning process a great deal of information will be generated which will form an invaluable future source of reference about the plant. It is essential to ensure that it is collected together in the form of a commissioning manual and handed over to the client on completion of the contract together with the 'as fitted' drawings. This information should be both in hard copy and electronic format.

8.11 In order to be successful the commissioning process must start before achieving practical completion as many parts of the system will become progressively less accessible. The correct installation of those parts will need to be witnessed and leak-rate tests carried out as construction proceeds. Failure to establish responsibility for commissioning early enough will delay the completion of the project or lead to unsatisfactory plant performance.

Commissioning brief

8.12 The commissioning team will require a detailed brief from the system designer. This should include:

- a 'user' brief comprising a description of the installation and its intended mode of operation;
- the precise design requirements with regard to the scheme of air movement, room static pressures, supply and extract air-flow rates and acceptable tolerances;
- full details of the design conditions both inside and out, for winter and summer together with the control strategy;
- equipment manufacturer's type test data, commissioning, operation and maintenance recommendations;
- drawings showing the layout of the system, positions of air-flow measurement test points, dampers, regulating devices and filters within the duct runs, together with sizes of ducts and terminal fittings. It will save time if these drawings are annotated with the design volumes and static pressures required at each branch and outlet point;
- wiring diagrams for all electrical equipment associated with the air handling systems including motor control circuit details and any interlocking and safety devices such as emergency-stop buttons adjacent to the item of plant.

8.13 The CIBSE Commissioning Code, Series 'A' – "Air Distribution", provides full guidance on the information that will be required by the commissioning team.

8.14 The designer should include in the contract document instructions on verifying the accuracy of test instruments that should be supported by reference to relevant calibration certificates.

8.15 The system, on completion, should be operated by the contractor as a whole and subject to performance tests in accordance with the contract requirements.

For critical systems, these may include independent validation of the system performance on behalf of the client.

8.16 Prior to dynamic commissioning, it is essential that builders' work in the area served by the system is complete, all rubbish and dust is removed, concealed plumbing (IPS-type) panels are in position and ceiling tiles are in place and clipped. Floors should be mopped and visible dust removed from all other surfaces.

8.17 Once the system is shown to meet the design intent the handover documentation should be completed. In the event of performance not being acceptable, the matter should be dealt with in accordance with the contract arrangements.

Pre-commissioning checks

8.18 The pre-commissioning checks consist of visual inspection, manual operation of equipment, static measurements and functional tests of individual components. They should be carried out prior to setting the system to work and undertaking the dynamic commissioning process set out in Paragraph 8.29 onwards of this guidance.

Standard of installation

8.19 During the installation of the system the following must be witnessed:

- that the plant and installations have been provided and installed in accordance with the design specification and drawings;
- that only approved sealants have been used in the installation;
- that all components function correctly;
- that the satisfactory sealing of access doors and viewing ports have been carried out;
- that air pressure tests and air-leakage tests on ventilation ducting have been carried out in accordance with the methods set out in the HVCA's DW/143: Ductwork Leakage Testing. It is usual to carry out these tests, a section at a time, as the ductwork is installed and before its insulation is applied. The results must be recorded in the commissioning manual;
- that gaps around doors and hatches are as specified in the design;
- that the correct operation of pressure stabilisers, control dampers, isolating and non-return dampers have been checked and installed in the correct orientation for air-flow;
- that test holes have been provided in their specified locations and are sealed with suitable grommets;
- that control dampers are secured and their quadrants fitted correctly;
- that any interlocks are operative and in accordance with specification;

- that the electric circuits are completed, tested and energised;
- that electric motors have been checked for correct direction of rotation both at full speed and set-back;
- that cooling and heating media are available at correct temperatures and pressures and in specified quantities;
- that the air-conditioning plant components and controls function correctly;
- that the air-conditioning plant interlocks and safety controls function correctly;
- that the plant is physically complete, insulation is applied and all ducts and pipework are identified as specified;
- that the building housing the ventilation plant is generally in a fit condition for commissioning and performance tests to commence, that is, windows, doors, partitions etc are completed, surfaces sealed and their final finish applied;
- that the areas containing the ventilation plant and those being served by it are clean;
- that access to all parts of the system is safe and satisfactory.

Cleanliness of installation

8.20 During installation it must be established that ductwork is being installed to the 'advanced level' as defined in the HVCA (2005) 'TR/19 – Guide to good practice: internal cleanliness of ventilation systems'. This specifically includes ensuring that ductwork sections arrive on site and are stored with their open ends sealed and that open ends remain sealed during installation to prevent the ingress of builders' dust.

8.21 Should any doubt exist whether the guidance has been observed, the ducts must be cleaned internally to restore them to this standard before being taken into use.

8.22 "Builders work" ducts of brick or concrete must be surface sealed to prevent the release of dust before being taken into use.

8.23 The area around the supply air intake must be free of vegetation, waste, rubbish, builders' debris or any other possible source of contamination.

Certification of equipment

8.24 The following test certificates should be assembled by the commissioning team and be available for inspection at any time during the contract period. They will form part of the handover information and should be placed in the commissioning manual:

- type-test performance certificates for fans;
- pressure-test certificates for:

  - heater-batteries;
  - cooling coils;
  - humidifiers (if appropriate);
- type-test certificates for attenuators;
- type-test certificates for primary and secondary filters;
- individual test certificates for high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters.

Equipment tests

8.25 Prior to setting the system to work, the checks in Paragraphs 8.26 - 8.28 should be witnessed, and proving tests should be carried out as detailed.

Filters

8.26 The quality of filter housing and in particular, the seals is a critical factor in maintaining the efficacy of the filtration system by ensuring that air does not bypass the filter panels. Therefore, the following checks should be made:

- filter seals should be fitted and in good condition;
- filters should be installed correctly with respect to air flow;
- bag filters should be installed so that the bags are vertical and their pockets free;
- HEPA filters should be installed in a sealed housing and their seals tested to DIN 1946 if specified;
- all filters should be checked to ensure they are free of visible damage;
- the differential pressure indicators should be checked for accuracy and that they are marked with the initial and final filter resistance.

Drainage arrangements

8.27 The drain should conform in all respects to the “Design considerations” of this SHTM. In addition the following must be proved:

- that the drain tray is easily removable;
- that a clear trap is fitted and is easily removable;
- that the drain has a clear air gap of at least 15mm;
- that the pipework is supported so that the air break cannot be reduced;
- that the drain system from each drain tray is independent up to the air break;
- that the operation of the drainage system is proved by introducing water into the duct at the drain tray and observing that it completely drains out. This check is to be repeated both at normal speed and set back once the fans

have been commissioned. At this time the clear trap can be marked to indicate the normal water level with the fan running.

Fire dampers

8.28 The following must be witnessed and proving tests should be carried out as detailed:

- the operation of all fire dampers;
- the access provided to enable the dampers' to be visually inspected and / or re-set should be sufficient for the purpose;
- indication should be provided of the dampers' position (open/tripped);
- indication of the fire dampers' location should be provided both on the ductwork and at a visible point on the building fabric if the ductwork is concealed.

Dynamic commissioning

Air-handling and distribution system

8.29 The fan drive, direction of rotation, speed and current drawn should be set in accordance with their manufacturer's instructions.

8.30 After the installation has been checked to ensure that it is in a satisfactory and safe condition for start-up, it should be set to work and regulated to enable the plant to meet its design specification. The proportional balancing method described in the CIBSE Commissioning Code "A" must be followed. The air-flow rates must be set within the tolerances laid down in the design brief. This will normally be the design airflow rate +10% -0%.

8.31 When combined supply and extract systems are to be balanced and the area that they serve is to be at or above atmospheric pressure then the supply should be balanced first with the extract fan switched off, and then the extract balanced with the supply fan(s) on.

8.32 For combined systems where the area that they serve is to be below atmospheric pressure then the extract should be balanced first with the supply fan switched off and then the supply balanced with the extract fan on.

8.33 On completion of the balance all volume air-flows in supply and extract ducts and from grilles and diffusers must be measured and recorded. The true air change rate can them be calculated from the data obtained.

8.34 The main supply and extract duct volume control dampers must be locked and their position marked.

8.35 All grille and diffuser volume control registers must be locked to prevent alteration and their final position marked.

Room air distribution

8.36 The pressure-relief dampers and pressure stabilisers must be set to achieve the specified room static pressures and locked. The grille direction control vanes and diffuser cones must be set to give the specified air-movement pattern. Visualisation techniques may need to be employed in order to prove that the required air-flow pattern is being achieved. This may be a potential requirement when commissioning LEV systems or rooms that contain them.

Air-conditioning plant

8.37 The specified flow rate and/or pressure drops must be set for all heater batteries, cooling coils and humidifiers. The methods described in the CIBSE Commissioning Codes “W” and “R” should be followed. On completion their regulating devices must be locked to prevent alteration.

Control system

8.38 The control system should not be commissioned until both the air distribution system and air-conditioning equipment have been commissioned.

8.39 Because of the specialised nature of control systems and the fact that each manufacturer’s system will contain its own specialist components and settings, the commissioning should be completed by the supplier and witnessed by a representative of the user.

8.40 The location of all control and monitoring sensors should be checked and their accuracy proved.

8.41 The control system’s ability to carry out its specified functions must be proved.

8.42 If the plant is provided with a “user’s” control panel in addition to the one located in the plantroom then the operation of both must be proved. This will typically apply to operating departments and laboratory systems.

Specific performance standards

Air movement

8.43 The performance of the system should be measured and compared with information provided by the designer.

Plant capacity and control

8.44 When setting to work and proving the design, both the manufacturer of the air-handling plant and the control specialist should attend site together and jointly commission the system.

8.45 If any doubt exists as to the capacity of the installed system, then its ability to achieve the specified inside design conditions with the plant operating at winter

and summer outside design conditions must be proved. Artificial loads will be required in order to simulate the internal gains/losses and the outside design conditions.

8.46 On completion of the plant performance test, recording thermo-hygrographs should be placed in each room/area served by the plant and also the supply air duct upstream of the frost battery. The plant should be run for 24 hours with all doors closed. During this period the inside conditions must stay within the tolerances specified. The BEMS should be used to obtain the information required wherever possible. Periodic tests will be required during the defects liability period.

Noise levels - general

8.47 The commissioning noise level is the level measured with a sound-level meter in the unoccupied room and taking account of the external noise together with the noise generated by the ventilation system. When occupied and in use this commissioning level will constitute a continuous background noise that will allow the overall noise level to be achieved. The ventilation plant design noise level is that generated by the plant alone with no other noise source being considered. The levels suggested make recognised allowance for the ingress of environmental noise.

8.48 The noise levels apply at the maximum velocity for which the system is designed to operate. Acoustic commissioning tests should be carried out with all plant and machinery running normally and achieving the design conditions of airflow, temperature and humidity.

8.49 An industrial-grade sound-level meter to BS3489 or IEC 651 Type 2 will normally be sufficient to check the noise level.

8.50 The noise level readings are to be taken at typical normal listening position 1.5m above floor level and at least 1m from any surface and not on any line of symmetry. In critical rooms the noise should be measured at the centre of the room and at the centre of each quarter. The mean of the 5 readings should then be calculated.

8.51 In the event of a contractual deficiency, a Type 1 precision-grade sound-level meter should be used and the noise level determined by the procedure given in Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01 (2011).

Filter challenge

General ventilation filters

8.52 In-situ performance tests will not normally be required for primary and secondary filters and their housings. However the filters should be visually inspected for grade, tears, orientation and fit within their housing. Filters should be clean and a replacement set available. Bag filters should be installed so that

their bags are vertical and spaced so that air can move through them freely. Any filter found to be wet should be replaced and the cause investigated.

HEPA filters (for exhaust protective enclosures and laboratories)

8.53 Pathogenic material may be discharged through damaged or badly installed HEPA terminal filters. The complete installation must be tested using the method set out in BS EN: 14644 'Method of Testing for the Determination of Filter Installation Leaks'.

8.54 The challenge tests may be carried out using either of the following techniques:

- use Dispersed Oil Generator (DOP) to provide the challenge and a photometer to detect leaks;
- use a Discrete Particle Counter (DPC) to detect leaks. (In order to obtain a sufficient challenge it may be necessary to remove temporarily the supply AHU secondary filters).

8.55 In both cases the upstream challenge should be measured. A measurement of particle penetration through a representative section of the HEPA filter media is then taken and used as the reference background level. These two readings enable the range of the detecting instrument to be set.

8.56 A challenge aerosol of inert particles of the type produced by a DOP generator should be introduced into the air, upstream of the HEPA filter. The downstream face of the filter, its mounting seal and housing would then be scanned for leakage using a photometer. A leak should be deemed to have occurred if a steady and repeatable reading on the photometer at any point exceeds 0.01% of the upstream reading.

8.57 Alternatively a Discrete Particle Counter (DPC) may be used. For the Discrete Particle Counter method the filter face is sampled at several points to establish the smallest non-penetrating particle size. If particles at or above this size are detected when subsequent scans of the filter face, its seal and housing are made, then there is deemed to be a significant leak at, or near, the test position.

8.58 Should the HEPA filter fail this test it must be replaced. Should the filter mounting seal or housing fail this test it may be repaired and the test repeated.

Bacteriological sampling

General ventilation systems

8.59 Bacteriological sampling will not normally be required for either general or local exhaust ventilation (LEV) systems unless otherwise specified.

Conventional operating rooms

8.60 The level of airborne bacteria introduced by the supply air can be checked by closing all doors and leaving the operating room empty with the ventilation system running for 15 minutes. An active air sampler set to 1 cubic metre and mounted on the operating table should then be activated remotely. Aerobic cultures on non-selective media should not exceed 10 bacterial and/or fungal colony forming units per cubic metre (CFU/m^3).

8.61 The results should be examined to establish the broad category of organisms present. A high preponderance of fungal organisms may be an indication of inadequate filtration for the particular installation. Precise guidance is inappropriate and will depend on local circumstances.

8.62 It may be appropriate to carry out a check of airborne bacteria during a surgical operation. If required this should be carried out as soon as possible after handover. Unless there are unusually high numbers of personnel or extensive activity in the room, the number of airborne bacterial and/or fungal CFU averaged over any five-minute period, would be unlikely to exceed 180 per cubic metre.

8.63 Information on the additional validation testing of UCV Operating suites is given in Section 8.0(a).

Ventilation system commissioning/validation report

8.64 Following commissioning and/or validation a full report detailing the findings should be produced. The system will only be acceptable to the client if at the time of validation it is considered fit for purpose and will only require routine maintenance in order to remain so for its projected life.

8.65 The report shall conclude with a clear statement as to whether the ventilation system achieved or did not achieve the required standard. A copy of the report should be lodged with the following groups:

- the user department;
- infection control (where required);
- estates and facilities.

8.0(a) Validation of UCV operating suites

General

8.66 Commissioning of a UCV terminal will normally be carried out by its supplier. Commissioning of the air-handling unit, fire dampers, distribution ductwork and control systems may be undertaken by different teams. It is therefore important to recognise that the UCV terminal is only one element of the specialised ventilation system serving the operating suite and it cannot be accepted in isolation.

8.67 In order to ensure that the complete system operates correctly it will be necessary to validate the system as a whole from the air intake through to the extract discharge. It is unlikely that "in house" staff will possess the knowledge or equipment necessary to undertake this process. Validation of Ultra-Clean operating theatre ventilation systems should therefore be carried out by a suitably qualified independent Authorised Person appointed by the client.

8.68 It is anticipated that training in the validation of specialised healthcare ventilation systems for independent Authorised Persons will become available during the life of this SHTM.

8.69 The following regime of inspection and testing should be applied to the validation of new installations designed to provide Ultra-Clean conditions in an Operating suite. The test regime has been devised to ensure that the system as installed fully achieves the design requirement for these systems as set out in Section 7.0(b) of this document.

Basic requirement

8.70 The operating suite to be validated should be physically complete with final finishes applied. All ventilation systems serving it should be operating correctly and delivering the design air-flow rates.

8.71 In order to avoid pre-loading the UCV terminal's recirculation ducts and HEPA filters, the Operating suite should be free of any obvious dust and at least "builders clean" before the recirculation fans are set to work.

8.72 The validation procedure for a conventional theatre suite should have been satisfactorily completed to the standard set out in Section 8 prior to attempting to validate the UCV unit. In particular:

- the supply AHU will have achieved the minimum standard;
- the operation of all fire dampers will have been proved;
- the supply and extract air-flow rates as measured in ducts and at room terminals will achieve their design values +10%; -0%;
- room differential pressures will be correct.

Evidence of the satisfactory achievement of the foregoing standard should be available for inspection and independently measured as necessary *prior to validating the UCV unit.*

UCV unit validation procedure

8.73 Tests to validate the suitability and performance of an ultra-clean operating suite should be undertaken in the order that they appear below. Should an item fail to meet the required standard it should be rectified and successfully retested before passing on to the next test.

Summary of test regime

- Challenge tests to ensure that:
  - the UCV terminal unit is correctly assembled and sealed so that no air will bypass the filters;
  - the terminal filters are correctly sealed in their housings;
  - the terminal filters are of the same grade, of uniform quality and undamaged.
- Air velocity measurements to ensure that
  - a sufficient quantity of air is being delivered by the terminal;
  - the terminal quadrants are in balance;
  - the air flow has sufficient velocity to reach the working plane.
- An entrainment test to ensure that contaminants arising outside of the UCV terminal footprint are not drawn into it.
- Visualisation techniques to gain an understanding of the overall system performance.
- Noise measurement to ensure that working conditions are satisfactory.
- Control system checks to ensure that the system operates as specified.
- Biological monitoring to determine how effective the system is in use.

Test and measuring conditions

8.74 While validating the UCV terminal, the conditions in the Operating room shall be stable and within the given ranges.

temperature: – 19°C - 23°C dry bulb.

humidity: – 30 – 65% relative humidity.

Test and measuring equipment

8.75 Any test or measuring equipment used should have a certificate to prove that it has been validated within the previous 12 months at a calibration facility using traceable national standards.

8.76 In the case of a noise meter, its “matched sound source” should have a certificate to prove that it has been validated within the previous 12 months at a calibration facility using traceable national standards. The noise meter should be calibrated to the sound source on each occasion that it is used.

Test grid – vertical units

8.77 A test grid should be constructed on the floor within the ultra-clean terminal footprint as projected by the inside dimensions of the sidewalls or boundary air

curtain. A suitably marked test sheet will provide a consistent standard of test grid.

8.78 The test grid should comprise test squares of 280mm each side.

8.79 The test grid should be aligned along the centre lines of the terminal footprint with its centre under the centre point of the terminal.

8.80 Any test square with 80% of its area within the UCV footprint should be used as a test position.

8.81 An inner zone should be designated that is not less than 36% of the total footprint. It should be made up of a number of test squares distributed symmetrically about the terminal footprint centre line. Regardless of the shape of the terminal footprint, the inner zone should comprise a minimum grid of 6 x 6 test squares.

8.82 Unless specified otherwise, a test position should be in the geometric centre of a test square.

8.83 Test position 1 should be the leftmost test square in the row nearest to the operating room wall that houses the surgeon's panel.

(For an example of a grid for a 2.8 x 2.8 metre terminal see Figure 8)

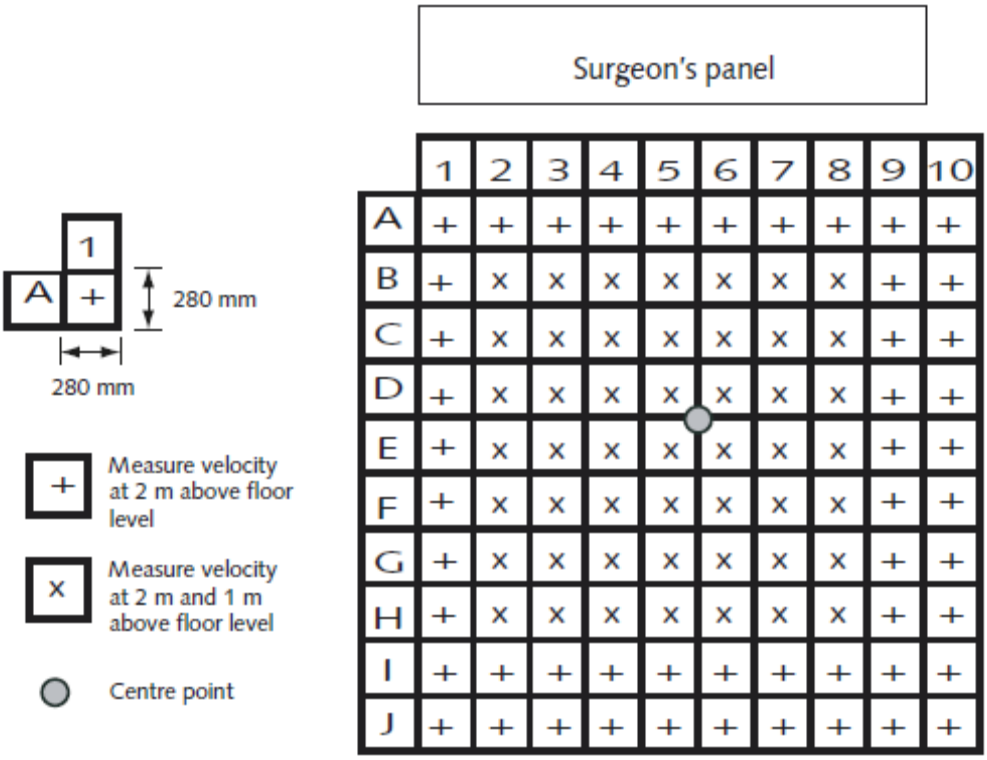


Figure 8: Example of a Test Grid for a 2.8m x 2.8m UCV Terminal

Test grid – horizontal units

8.84 A line of test positions should be marked on the floor 1m in front of the face of the UCV terminal.

8.85 A test position should be marked in the centre of the line. Additional test positions should be marked at 280mm spacing along the line either side of the centre position, up to the full-face width of the unit.

UCV terminal challenge tests (Vertical and horizontal systems)

8.86 The diffuser screen fitted below the face of the terminal HEPA filters should be lowered or removed while the challenge tests are being carried out.

8.87 The installed HEPA filters should be checked to ensure that their grade accords with the design specification and that their performance has been certified by the manufacturer.

8.88 The challenge tests may be carried out using either of the following techniques:

- use DOP to provide the challenge and a photometer to detect leaks;
- use a DPC to detect leaks. In order to obtain a sufficient challenge it may be necessary to remove temporarily the supply AHU secondary filters.

8.89 In both cases the upstream challenge should be measured. A measurement of particle penetration through a representative section of the HEPA filter media is then taken and used as the reference background level. These two readings enable the range of the detecting instrument to be set.

8.90 For the DOP test this should be set as the reference level and a leak will be declared significant if penetration greater than 0.01% of the range is detected. (See Paragraph 8.56 for details).

8.91 For the DPC method the filter face is scanned to establish the smallest non-penetrating particle size. If significant particles at or above this size are detected when subsequent scans are made then there is deemed to be a significant leak at, or near, the test position. (See Paragraph 8.57 for details)

UCV terminal unit clean zone leak test

8.92 This test will confirm that there is no unfiltered air bypassing the HEPA filter.

8.93 The joints and service penetration points under the UCV terminal within its side walls or boundary air curtain should be scanned to prove that there are no leaks.

8.94 A leak is defined as a significant rise above the background level.

Terminal HEPA filter seal leak test

8.95 The test will confirm that there is no unfiltered air bypassing the HEPA filter's seal.

8.96 Each HEPA filter's seal should be scanned to prove that there are no leaks.

8.97 A leak is defined as a significant rise above the background level.

Terminal HEPA filter media leak test

8.98 The test will confirm that the HEPA filters have not sustained damage while being installed.

8.99 The face of each HEPA filter should be scanned to prove that there are no leaks.

8.100 A leak is defined as a significant rise above the background level.

Vertical UCV terminal air velocity tests

Test set up

8.101 The terminal face diffuser screen should be in place for these tests.

8.102 Take spot readings to establish that the room is within the specified temperature and humidity test conditions.

8.103 Set out the test grid as described previously.

8.104 Swing the operating lamp arms and any other stem arms so that they align to present the least resistance to air flow, are perpendicular to the front edge of the test sheet and face the back edge. Any lamp and equipment heads should as far as practicable be outside of the UCV terminal footprint.

Test instrument

8.105 The measuring instrument should be a hot-wire anemometer with a digital read-out. The instrument resolution should be at least 0·01m/s, have a tolerance of ±0·015 m/s or 3% of that reading and be calibrated down to 0·15 m/s or lower. An alternative instrument may be used providing it is of no lesser specification.

Test method

8.106 The instrument should be mounted on a test stand and set to take a mean reading over a ten-second sample interval.

8.107 It is recommended that a printer be linked to the test instrument so that readings are recorded automatically. Alternatively they could be downloaded to a computer or data logger at the end of the test.

8.108 The test stand to be positioned on each test point in turn and the reading taken when the instrument has stabilised.

8.109 When taking a reading the test person should not stand within the same quadrant as the test instrument.

8.110 Readings are to be taken at the test positions with the instrument probe facing the wall housing the surgeon's panel, commencing at the first test position.

Readings are taken working along the row from left to right and back, or for all text positions in one quadrant at a time.

8.111 When all test positions under one half of the terminal have been covered, readings of temperature and humidity are then taken at the specified height in the centre of the terminal. The read-outs on the surgeon's panel should be recorded at the same time.

8.112 Having completed one half of the test grid, the operating lamp arms and any other stem arms should be swung round through 180º and the test stand reversed so that the wall housing the surgeon's panel is behind the test person. Readings are recommenced starting at the right of the test row and working from right to left a quadrant at a time, as above.

UCV high-level discharge velocity test

8.113 Measurements of air velocity are to be taken at every test position 2m above floor level and the results averaged.

8.114 The average of the total readings taken is to be not less than:

0.38 m/s for a partial-wall system;

0.30 m/s for a full-wall system.

The average air velocity for each quadrant should not exceed ±6% of the measured average velocity for the terminal

UCV low-level air velocity test

8.115 Measurements of air velocity are to be taken at each of the inner zone test position 1m above floor level.

8.116 The measured velocity at every test position in the inner (operating) zone shall be not less than 0·2 m/s.

Horizontal UCV terminal air velocity test

Test set up

8.117 Set out the line of test positions as described previously.

8.118 Swing the operating lamp arms and any other stem arms so that they align to present the least resistance to air flow and are perpendicular to the line of test positions.

Test instrument

8.119 See that specified for vertical systems (Paragraph 8.105 refers).

Test method

8.120 The instrument should be mounted on a test stand and set to take a mean reading over a ten-second sample interval.

8.121 It is recommended that a printer be linked to the test instrument so that readings are recorded automatically. Alternatively, they could be downloaded to a computer or data-logger at the end of the test.

8.122 The test stand should be positioned on each test point in turn and the reading taken when the instrument has stabilised.

8.123 When taking readings the test person should stand well downstream of the instrument.

8.124 Readings are to be taken at the test positions with the instrument probe facing the UCV terminal, commencing at the first test position on the left and working along the row from left to right at the specified height.

8.125 The instrument should be reset to the next specified height and the test repeated and so on.

8.126 Readings of temperature and humidity should be taken at the specified height in the centre of the terminal. The read-outs on the surgeon's panel should be recorded at the same time.

UCV discharge velocity test

8.127 Measurements of air velocity are to be taken at all test positions at 1m, 1·5m and 2m above floor level.

8.128 The average of the total readings taken should be no less than 0·4 m/s.

UCV entrainment test (Vertical systems only)

Rationale for the entrainment test

8.129 The performance of UCV systems may be compromised by room air being drawn into the ultra-clean airflow, a phenomenon known as "entrainment." Significant levels of entrainment could lead to microbial contamination of items left exposed on instrument trolleys laid out beneath the canopy.

8.130 UCV systems having permanently fitted full sidewalls do not need to be tested, as the sidewalls physically prevent entrainment.

Principle of the test

8.131 A source of particles is produced outside of the UCV terminal and is used to challenge the system. A detector is placed within the ultra-clean airflow and used to determine the percentage penetration of the test particles at predefined

locations under the UCV terminal footprint. The source and detector are moved in tandem around the UCV canopy and pairs of readings taken, from which the percentage penetration at specified locations is calculated. The degree of penetration should be below specified maximum limits if entrainment is to be declared not significant.

8.132 The entrainment test may be carried out using either of the following techniques:

- use DOPs to provide the challenge source at the specified release position and a photometer to measure the entrainment; or
- duct non-HEPA-filtered air to the specified release position and use a DPC to measure the entrainment.

Test set-up

8.133 The terminal face diffuser screen should be in place for these tests.

8.134 The test should be performed without any equipment in place beneath or closely adjacent to the UCV terminal.

8.135 The theatre lights should be moved to a central position beneath the terminal and raised to 2m above floor level, so as not to interfere with the peripheral airflows.

8.136 Take spot readings at the centre of the canopy, one metre from floor level, to establish that the room is within the specified temperature and humidity test conditions.

8.137 Set out the test grid as described previously.

8.138 For either of the following entrainment tests, a measurement of particle penetration through a representative section of the HEPA filter media is to be taken and used as the reference background level.

Test equipment, challenge source, measuring instrument and detector head

8.139 The challenge and detector equipment should be chosen so that:

- the tracer particles are mainly within the size range 0.3 to 5 microns and thus capable of remaining airborne for a substantial time;
- the particles used should not be able to penetrate the terminal filters in sufficient numbers to cause a background count that is more than 0.1% of the challenge count;
- the choice of particle and detector will enable a minimum of a three-logarithm (1,000-fold) range of counts to be recorded between the highest (that is, source) and lowest (that is, background) readings expected. (A concentration of approximately 10^5 particles per cubic metre of source air has been shown to be adequate.)

Source – Dispersed Oil Particles (D.O.P.)

8.140 The DOP generator should be able to produce a cloud of test particles in the form of a visible smoke. The test smoke should be delivered via an aperture so that it flows vertically downward from the lowermost edge of the partial wall, on the outside of the UCV canopy.

8.141 The test smoke is to be delivered via an aperture.

Note 4: To prevent undue contamination of the theatre and filters with deposits of oil, DOP should only be released for the minimum amount of time necessary to complete the test.

Challenge source – natural particles

8.142 The source unit should be a fan/blower or other method that takes non-HEPA-filtered air and expels it via a delivery head at the specified release position to provide the particle challenge. The challenge air should be delivered vertically downwards from the lowermost edge of the partial wall, on the outside of the UCV canopy, parallel to the airflow coming from the diffusers. The challenge air velocity should be the same as the measured average velocity at 2m from the terminal under test.

Note 5: The use of DOP for testing is gradually being phased out and replaced by a natural challenge measured with a DPC. At the time of writing research is under way to define more precisely a challenge source unit for natural particles. It is anticipated that such a unit, together with a matching test methodology, will become available during the life of this Scottish Health Technical Memorandum.

The detector (defined in terms of range and resolution)

8.143 This may be a photometer or a DPC. It is recommended that a printer be linked to the test instrument so that readings are recorded automatically. The instrument should be capable of sampling a minimum a 28.3 litres of air per minute and in the case of the DPC, provide readings for particle size ranges from 0.3 microns to 5.0 microns and greater. The instrument should be compliant with the requirements of BS EN ISO 14644-1. An alternative instrument may be used providing it is of no lesser specification.

Test positions and orientation of source and detector

8.144 The test positions should be at the centre of each test square, as defined for the velocity test.

8.145 For rectangular UCV terminals, measurements of penetration are to be taken at the four corner test squares of the test grid and at intermediate positions along the line of test squares between the corners. The number of intermediate test positions will be as equally spaced as possible around the periphery with no fewer than 3 and no more than 5 complete test squares between test positions.

8.146 A further series of measurements are to be obtained around the periphery of the inner zone. Measurements of penetration are to be taken at the four corner test squares of the inner zone of the test grid and if necessary at intermediate positions along the line of test squares between the corners as equally spaced as possible, with no fewer than 3 and no more than 5 complete test squares between test positions.

8.147 A single measurement should be taken at the geometrical centre of the UCV terminal footprint. The centre measurement will be taken with the detector head mounted vertically upwards 1 metre above floor level.

8.148 The centre of the challenge particle source should be aligned with the centre of the designated test square, with its longer edge against the outer edge of the partial wall and delivering the challenge from the lower edge of the partial wall. The air containing challenge particles is directed vertically downwards from the lower edge of the partial wall, in a plane parallel to the adjacent partial wall. Where there is physical interference due to obstructions such as gas pendants, the source will be moved to the next available non-obstructed test-square location nearest to the stipulated sampling position. The detector should then also be moved to remain opposite the source.

8.149 In the case of non-rectangular terminals, an interpretation of the above strategy should be adopted that will yield a no less searching examination of the unit's ability to control entrainment.

Test method

8.150 The sampling head of the detector instrument is mounted on a test stand with its sampling orifice facing outwards horizontally from the centre of the UCV canopy, 1m above floor level. The sampling head should be orientated at right angles to the partial wall when sampling along the sides of the test grid but will be set to bisect the angle when measuring at the corner test positions (Figure 88 illustrates the challenge and detector orientations when evaluating a 2.8m x 2.8m UCV terminal).

8.151 The test will commence at the first test position, this being designated the leftmost corner of the test grid when facing the wall housing the surgeon's panel. The penetration will also be measured at the corresponding test point on the inner zone commencing at the corner nearest to the first test position. When these tests have been completed, the source and detector equipment should be moved to the next test positions, working around the test grid in a clockwise direction.

8.152 The test stand should be positioned on each test point in turn and a pair of readings (challenge, then penetration) taken when the instrument has stabilised. The detector should be set to take a reading over a 15 second sample interval.

8.153 When taking a reading the test person should stand within the UCV terminal footprint but not in the same quadrant as the detector head.

Analysis and interpretation

8.154 The following standard is to be achieved:

- penetration to be not greater than 10% of the challenge at each test position in the outer zone;
- penetration to be no greater than 1% of the challenge at each test position in the inner zone;
- penetration to be no greater than 0·1% of the challenge at the centre of the test grid.

If a result is close to, or above the given limits, then a further reading must be obtained using a longer time base (1 minute) and the penetration must not exceed the given limit.

Basis of the test

8.155 Whyte W, Shaw BH, Freeman MAR. An evaluation of a partial-walled laminar-flow operating room. *J Hyg Camb* 1974; 73: 61 – 75.

Whyte W, Lidwell OM, Lowbury EJL, Blowers R. Suggested bacteriological standards for air in ultraclean operating rooms. *J Hosp Infect* 1983; 4: 133 – 139.

UCV visualisation

8.156 The use of smoke to gain an understanding of the overall performance of the system may prove useful at this stage in the validation process but cannot be relied on to produce a contractually definitive measure of performance.

UCV noise level

8.157 An industrial-grade sound-level meter to BS EN 61672 Type 2 fitted with a muff should be used to check the noise level. The instrument should be calibrated using a matched sound source prior to each set of readings.

Vertical systems

8.158 The noise level readings should be taken at typical normal listening positions 1·5m above floor level and at least 1m from any surface and not on any line of symmetry. Measurements should be taken under the centre of each quadrant of the UCV terminal and the four readings averaged.

Horizontal systems

8.159 The noise level readings are to be taken at typical normal listening positions 1·5m above floor level on the test line. The width of the unit should be divided

in two and a measurement taken in the centre of each half but avoiding any line of symmetry. The two readings should be averaged.

8.160 Measurements should also be taken in each room of the suite.

8.161 In the event of a contractual deficiency a Type 1 precision-grade sound-level meter complying with BS EN 61672 should be used. Readings should be taken at the positions specified above and in each case the logarithmic mean of the results should be calculated in order to determine the noise level. Further information can be found in SHTM 08-01 (2011).

8.162 For vertical or horizontal systems, the noise level shall not exceed:

- 50NR [55dB(A)] – for UCV operating rooms and spaces without doors that open directly on to it (for example the scrub);
- 40NR [45dB(A)] – for all other peripheral rooms of the suite.

UCV control system checks

Temperature

8.163 The readings of temperature taken under or in front of the UCV unit should be within ±1 K of each other and the read-out on the surgeon's panel.

Humidity

8.164 The readings of humidity taken under or in front of the UCV unit should be within ±5% of each other and the read-out on the surgeon's panel.

Direct-reading differential pressure gauges

8.165 The differential pressure across the terminal filter(s) should be measured to confirm the accuracy of the indicated reading of any gauge.

Control functions

8.166 The operation of all control functions provided on the surgeon's panel should be proved for conformity with the design specification.

8.167 If an auxiliary panel has been fitted then its interlocking with the main surgeon's panel control functions must be proved to conform to the design specification.

Panel indicator lights

8.168 The panel indicator lights should illuminate as appropriate when the control functions are selected or warning levels are reached

BEMS interface

8.169 The operation, monitoring and alarm functions must be proved to conform to those set out in the design specification.

UCV theatre microbiological tests

8.170 There is little value in performing microbiological sampling in a new theatre supplied with ultra-clean ventilation. The foregoing filter challenge tests, air velocity measurements and entrainment test should have proved that the system operates satisfactorily and achieves the contracted level of performance. The HEPA filters will remove bacteria-sized particles from the air supplied through the UCV terminal. Therefore there will be an insignificant number of bacterial and/or fungal CFUs present until the Theatre is actually used.

8.171 Once the theatre has been taken into use, microbial sampling during a surgical procedure should help to confirm the satisfactory performance of the system and discipline of the users. Before commencing bacteriological testing, the room and its ventilation system should have achieved a steady state condition: (see also Paragraph 8.74)

8.172 The installation should be tested during surgical procedure at intervals between the time of the first incision and final closure of the wound. On average, the air sampled within 300mm of the wound should not contain more than 10 CFU/m^3.

UCV validation report

8.173 Following validation a full report detailing the findings should be produced. The report shall conclude with a clear statement as to whether the UCV theatre suite achieved or did not achieve the standard set out above.

8.174 A copy of the report should be lodged with the following groups:

- operating department;
- infection control;
- estates and facilities.

Appendix 1: Table A1: Recommended air-change rates

Application	Ventilation	ac/Hour	Pressure (Pascals)	Supply Filter	Noise (NR)	Temp (°C)	Comments For further information see Section 6
General ward	S / N	6	-	G4	30	18-28	
Communal ward toilet	E	10	-ve	-	40	-	
Single room	S / E / N	6	0 or –ve	G4	30	18-28	
Single room WC	E	3	-ve	-	40	-	
Clean utility	S	6	+ve	G4	40	18-28	
Dirty utility	E	6	-ve	-	40	-	
Ward Isolation room	-	-	-	-	-	-	See SHPN 4; Supplement 1
Infectious disease Iso room	E	10	-5	G4	30	18-28	Extract filtration may be required
Neutropenic patient ward	S	10	+10	H12	30	18-28	
Critical Care Areas	S	10	+10	F7	30	*18-25*	Isolation room may be –ve press
Birthing Room	S & E	15	-ve	G4	40	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path
SCBU	S	6	+ve	F7	30	*18-25*	Isolation room may be –ve press
Preparation room (Lay-up)	S	>25	35	F7*	40	*18-25*	*H12 if a lay-up for a UCV Theatre
Preparation room / bay sterile pack store	S	10	25	F7	40	*18-25*	*50NR if a bay in a UCV Theatre
Operating theatre	S	25	25	F7	40	*18-25*	
UCV Operating theatre	S	25*	25	H12	40	*18-25*	Fresh air rate; excludes re-circulation
Anaesthetic room	S & E	15	>10	F7	40	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path
Theatre Sluice/dirty utility	E	>20	-5	-	40	-	
Recovery room	S & E	15	0	F7	35	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path

Table A1

Application	Ventilation	ac/Hour	Pressure (Pascals)	Supply Filter	Noise (NR)	Temp (°C)	Comments For further information see Section 6
Recovery room	S & E	15	0	F7	35	*18-25*	Provide clean air-flow path
Cardiac catheterisation lab	S	15	+ve	F7	40	*18-22*	
Endoscopy room	S	15	+ve	F7	40	*18-25*	
Endoscopy cleaning	E	>10	-ve	-	40	-	
Day case theatre	S	15	+ve	F7	40	*18-25*	
Treatment room	S	10	+ve	F7	35	*18-25*	
Pharmacy aseptic suite	S	20	#	H14	-	*18-22*	# See EGGMP (Orange guide) a
Cat 3 or 4 containment room	#	>20	#	H14*	-	*18-22*	# See ACDP guide; *Filter in extract
Post mortem room	S & E	S = 10 E = 12	-ve	G4	35	*18–22*	Provide clean air-flow path
Specimen store	E	-	-ve	-	-	-	Fan accessible from outside of store

Table A1 continued

Notes: 18°C-22°C indicates the range over which the temperature may float

18°C-22°C indicates the range over which the temperature should be capable of being controlled

S = supply N = natural ventilation

E = extract [a] – European guidelines on good manufacturing practice published by the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Authority (MHRA)

Appendix 2: Hierarchy of cleanliness

			Air-flow rate for bacterial contaminant dilution	
Class	**Room**	**Nominal pressure (Pa) a**	**Flow in or supply m^3/s**	**Flow out or extract m^3/s**
Sterile	Preparation room (a) lay-up (b) sterile pack store Operating room Scrub bay b	 35 25 25 25	See standard schemes in Appendix 3 for recommended design values	
Clean	Sterile pack bulk store Anaesthetic room c Scrub room	 +ve 14 c 14	6 ac/h The greater of 15 ac/hr or 0.15 -	- The greater of 15 ac/hr or 0.15 0.10
Transitional	Recovery room Clean corridor General access corridor Changing rooms Plaster room	3 0 0 3 3	15 ac/hr d e e 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr	15 ac/hr d 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr 7 ac/hr
Dirty	Service corridor Disposal room	0 -5 or 0	- -	f 0.41 or 0.10

Table A2

Notes (applicable to Table A2):

a. Nominal room pressures are given to facilitate setting up of pressure relief dampers, the calculation process, and the sizing of transfer devices. In practice, the resultant pressures are not critical, provided the desired airflow rates and movement are achieved.

b. An open or semi-open bay is considered to be part of the operating room; provided air movement is satisfactory, no specific extract is required. However if the layout means that air movement is poor, a local extract may be required to control local condensation on the building surfaces, which can result in mould growth.

c. For design purposes, anaesthetic should be assumed to be at 14Pa. When commissioning 10Pa is considered suitable.

d. 15 ac/hr are considered necessary for the control of anaesthetic gas pollution.

e. Supply airflow rate necessary to make up 7 ac/hr after taking into account secondary air from cleaner areas.

f. No dilution requirement. Temperature control requirements only.

Type	Pressure difference - Pa						
	5	10	15	20	25	30	40
Single door (CDB Size 2.4.3.2.6.)	.03	.05	.06	.06	.07	.07	.08
Double door (CDB)	.04	.08	.10	.11	.12	.13	.14
High permanent length of 3mm gap	.004	.008	.010	.011	.012	.012	.013

Table A3: Leakage flows in m^3/s through closed door gaps

Note: CDB = Component Data Base

It should be noted that many doors are now fitted with cold smoke seals as standard. These will significantly reduce the door leakage rate when new and undamaged. It is therefore recommended that provision for the design leakage is factored into the sizing of the appropriate transfer grille or pressure stabiliser. Failure to do this will result in air gap whistles and doors being held partially open by air pressure.

Factory-assembled door-sets with a steel frame and pre-hung leaves have become common. There is effectively no leakage across these doors when closed. Therefore, when this type of door assembly is fitted, the door leakage can be ignored and the design airflow into the room reduced accordingly. The design airflow would then become that required either (i) for open door

protection, or (ii) to achieve the specified air-change rate - whichever is the greater.

Room class		Dirty	Transitional	Clean	Sterile
Sterile	Hatch	0.3	0.24	0.18	
	Single door	0.47	0.39	0.28	0 or 0.28 a
	Double door	0.95	0.75	0.57	0 or 0.57 a
Clean	Single door	0.39	0.28	0 or 0.28 a	
	Double door	0.75	0.57	0 or 0.57 a	
Transitional	Single door	0.28	0 or 0.28 a		
	Double door	0.57	0 or 0.57 a		
Dirty	Single door	0	Open single door = 0.80m x 2.01m high		
	Double door	0	Open double door = 1.80m x 2.01m high		

Table A4: Recommended air flow rates in m^3/s through a doorway between rooms of different cleanliness to control cross-contamination

Designer's Notes:

a. The degree of protection required at an open doorway between rooms is dependent upon the degree of difference in cleanliness between them.

b. Flow rate required between rooms within the same class tends to zero as class reduces.

c. If two rooms are of equal cleanliness, no flow is required (in practice there will be an interchange in either direction) and the design of the air movement will assume zero air-flow. In certain cases, however, interchange is not permitted and protection airflow of 0.28 is assumed in the design, for example, in the case of a preparation room used as a "lay up".

		Effect on other rooms	
Door open between	Resultant pressure in these rooms (Pa)	Room	Pressure (Pa)
Operating room and corridor or Scrub bay and corridor	0	Anaesthetic Preparation – lay up Disposal Preparation – sterile pack store	0 12 -6 5
Operating room and anaesthetic room (or other series room with double doors)	17	Preparation – lay up Disposal Preparation – sterile pack store	26 -9 22
Operating room and disposal room or Operating room and preparation room	25	No change	
Anaesthetic room and corridor (or other series room with double doors)	0	Preparation – lay-up Disposal Operating room Preparation – sterile pack store	30 -6 20 25
Preparation room – corridor Disposal room & corridor	0	No change	
Disposal room & outer corridor	0	No change	

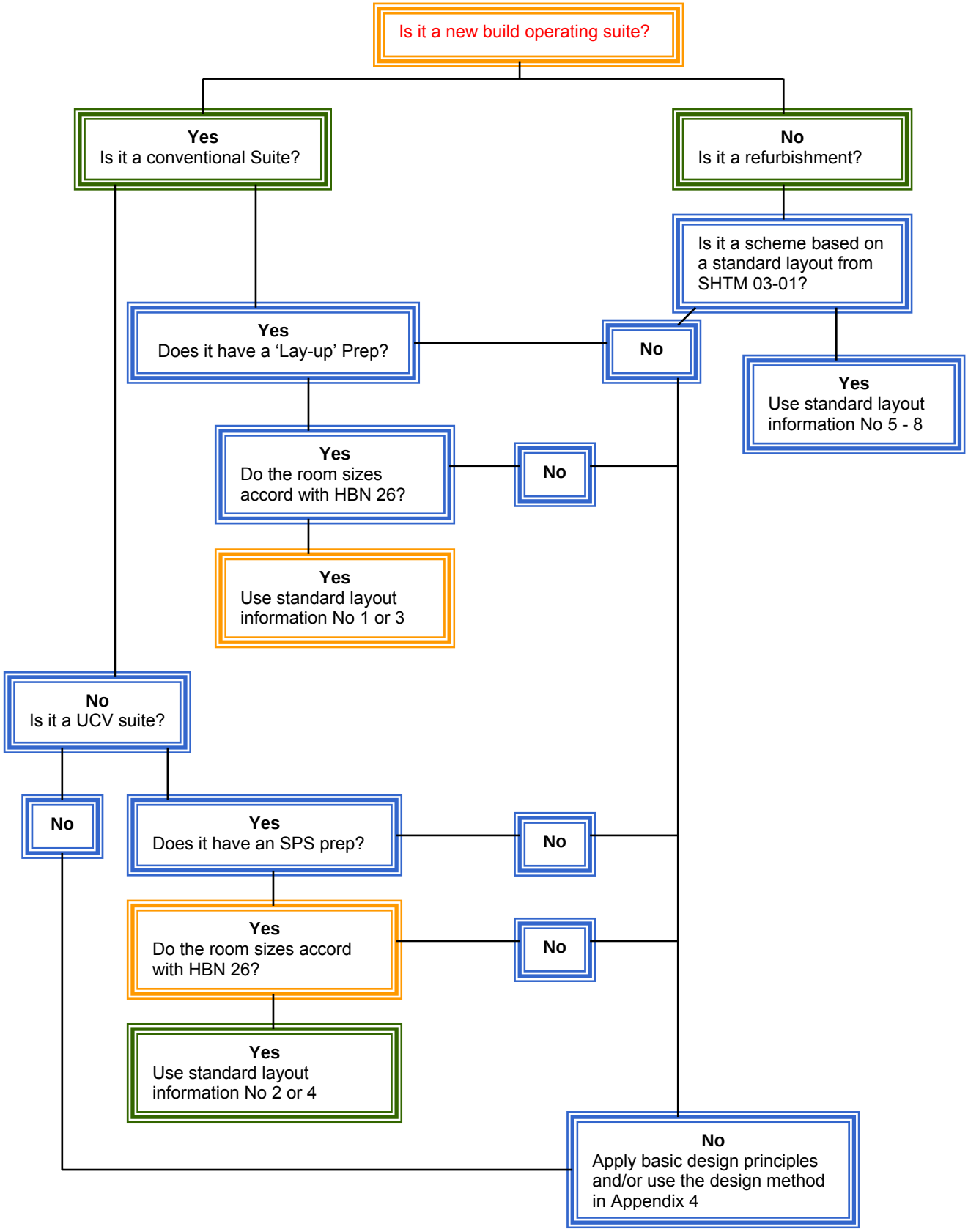
Table A5: Typical pressures in an operating suite when a given door is open

Notes: 1. The room differential pressure protects against reverse flows when the door is closed.

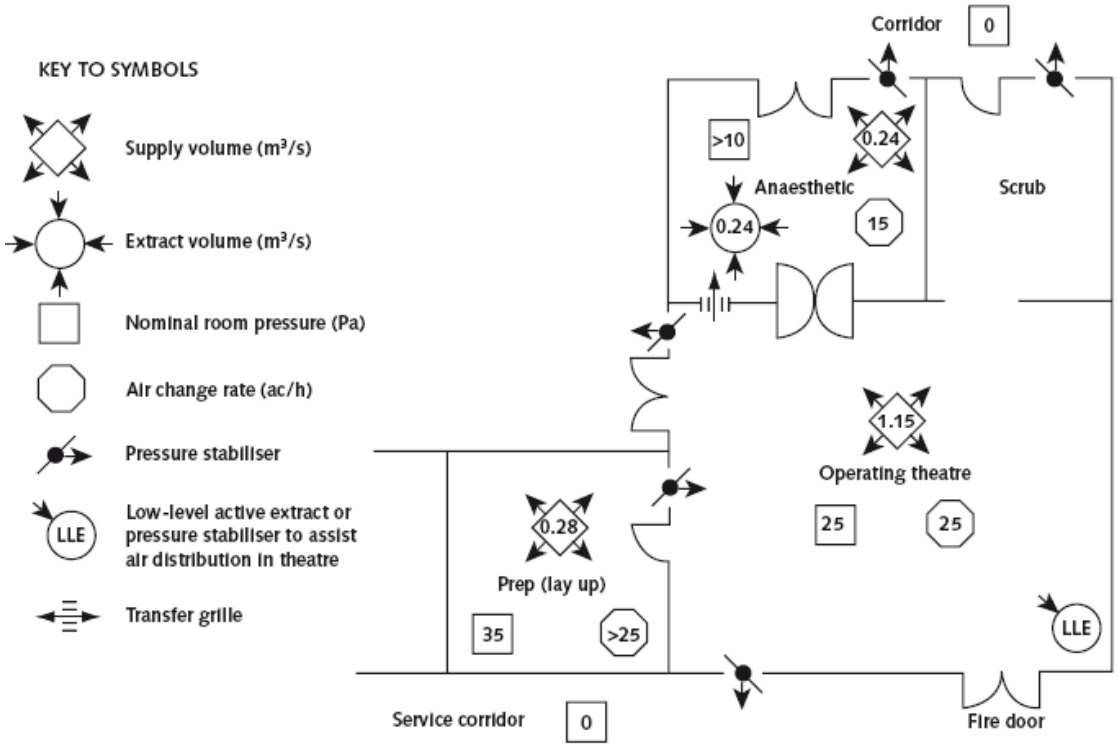
2. The flow of air through a doorway protects against reverse airflow when the door is open.

3. Pressure stabilisers control flow and ensure a known air-flow path between rooms when doors are closed and reduce back-flow between rooms when doors to other rooms are open.

Appendix 3: Operating suite design logic



New Standard Layout N^{o} 1 - Suitable for a typical conventional theatre suite (Room sizes as specified in HBN 26)



Room	Size m^3 Derived from HBN26	Air-Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15
Anaesthetic	57	15	>10	0.24
Lay-Up-Prep	36	>25	35	0.28**
Scrub	*	-	25	-

*This is a separate scrub and is not considered as being part of the theatre volume.

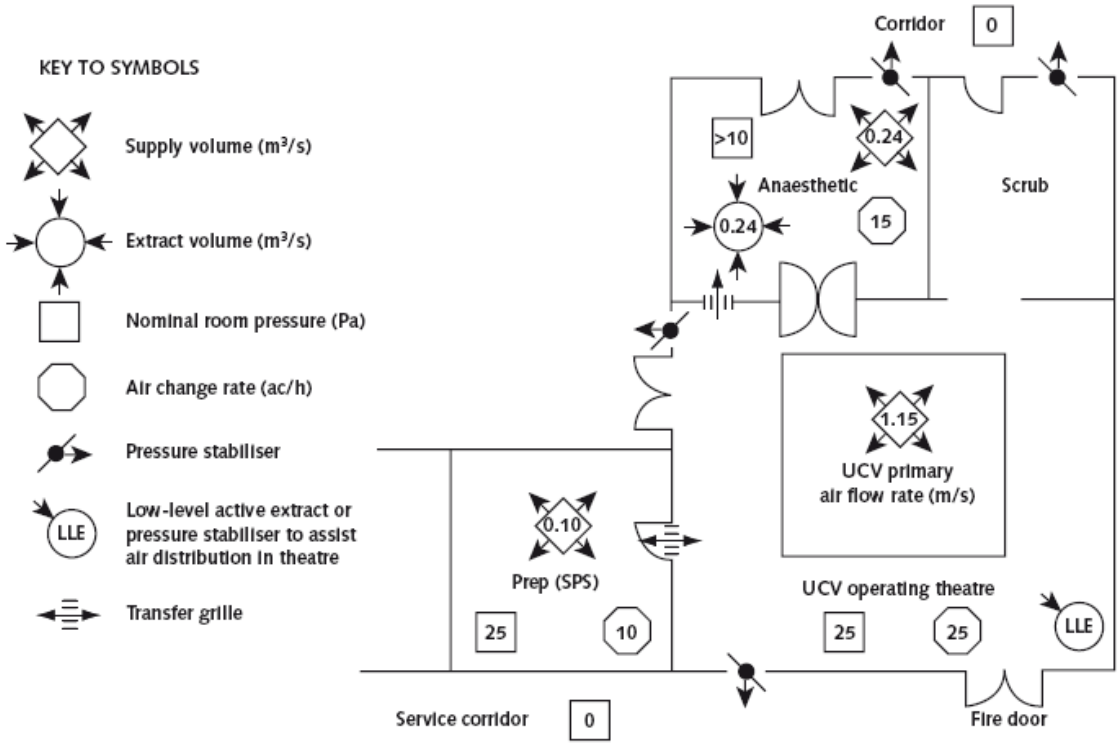
**Interchange is not permitted between the theatre and lay-up prep; therefore an airflow protection of 0.28 + 0.06 closed-door airflow is required as a minimum.

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilisers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be

located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N° 2 - Suitable for a typical UCV theatre suite (Room sizes as specified in HBN 26)



Room	Size m³ Derived from HBN26	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m³/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15**
Anaesthetic	57	15	>10	0.24
Sterile Prep	36	25	25	0.10
Scrub	*	-	25	-

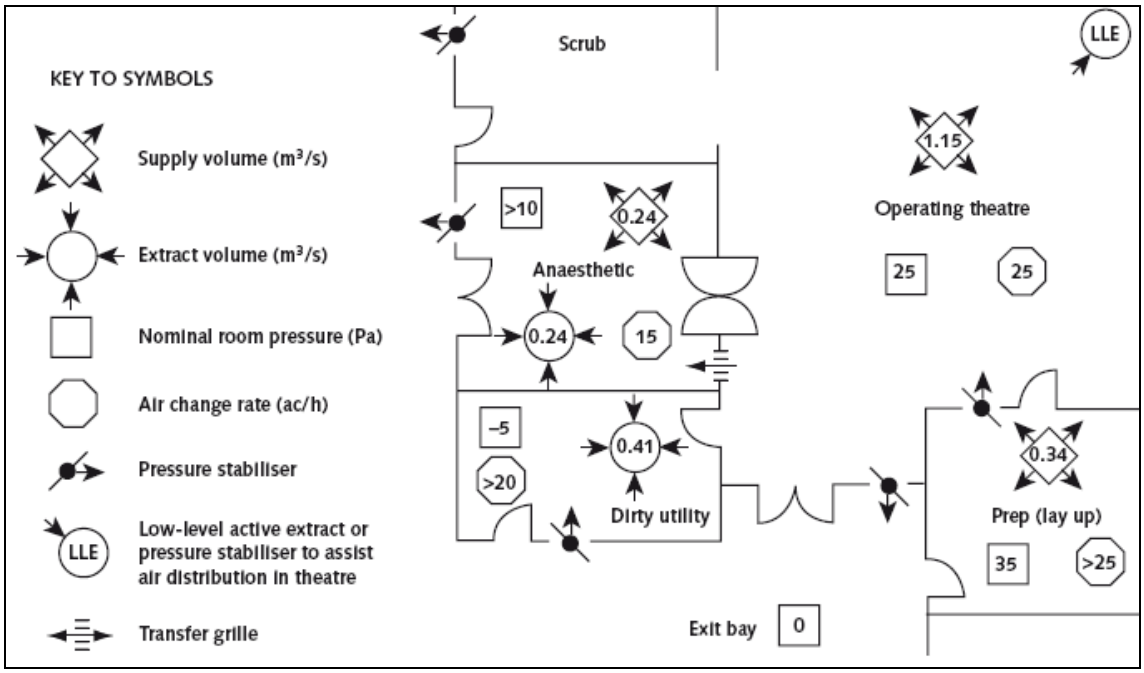
*Separate scrub and not considered as part of theatre volume

**Primary Fresh air Volume Only

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilizers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N^{o} 3 - Suitable for a typical Conventional theatre suite (Layout and room sizes are as illustrated in HBN 26)



Room	Size m^3 Derived from HBN26	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15
Anaesthetic	57	15	14	0.24
Lay-Up Prep	36	>25	35	0.34**
Scrub	*	-	25	-
Dirty Utility	36	-	-5	0.41

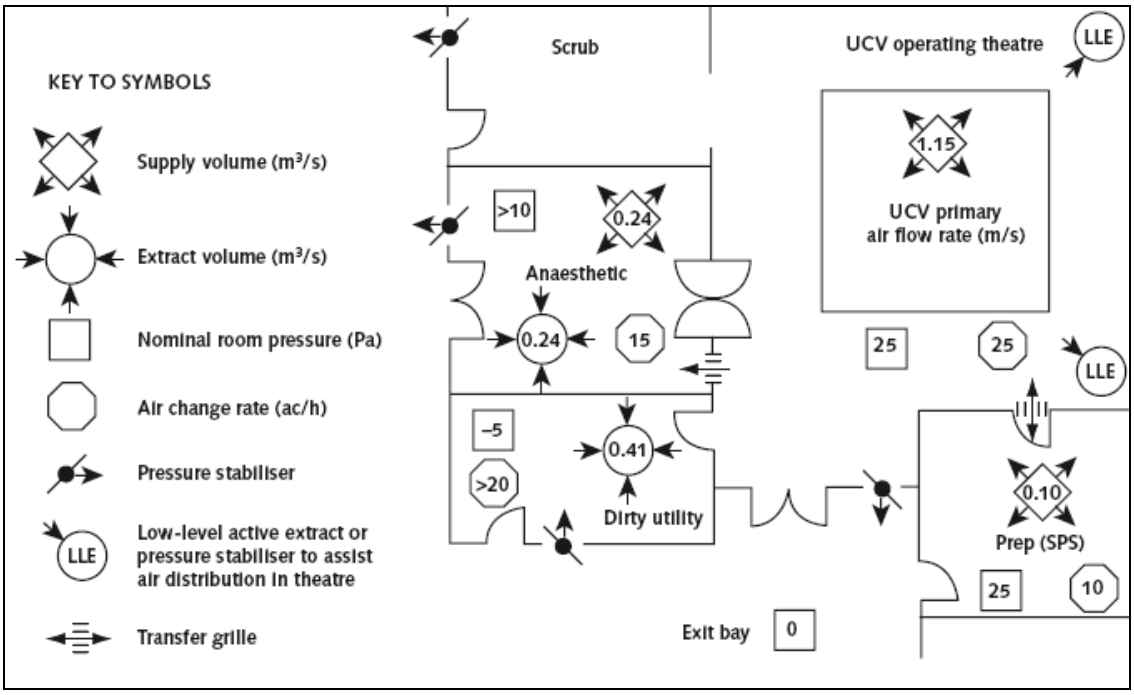
*Separate scrub not considered part of theatre volume.

**Interchange is not permitted between the theatre and lay up prep therefore as Table 4 an airflow protection of 0.28 + 0.06 closed door air flow is required as a minimum.

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilizers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N^{o} 4 - Suitable for a typical UCV theatre suite (Layout and room sizes are as illustrated in HBN 26)



Room	Size m^3 Derived from HBN26	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	165	25	25	1.15**
Anaesthetic	57	15	>10	0.24
Sterile Pack Prep	36	10	25	0.10
Scrub	*	-	25	-
Dirty Utility	36	-	-5	0.41

* Separate scrub not considered part of theatre volume

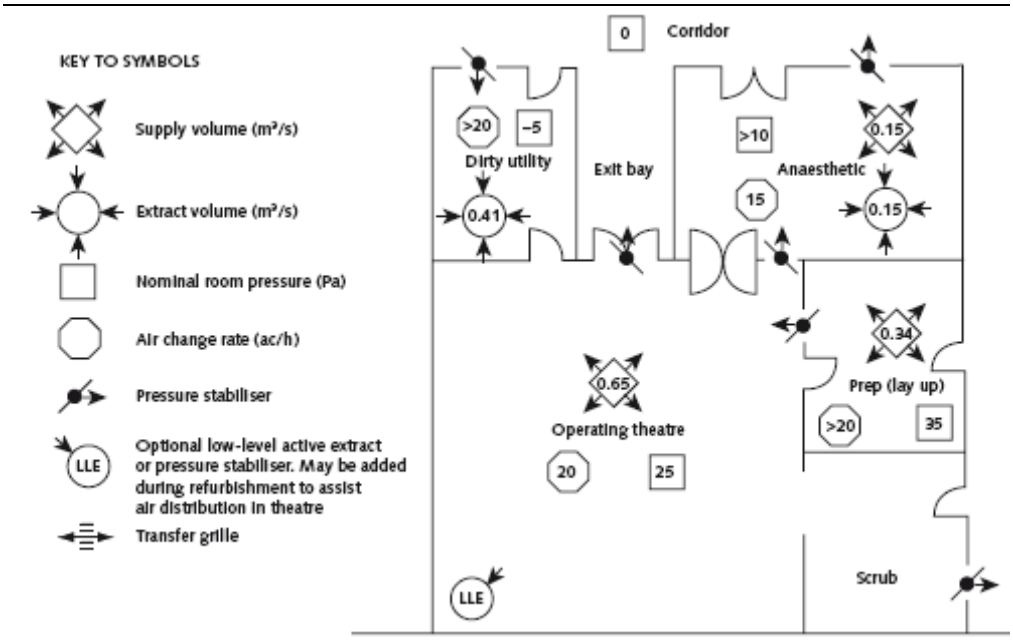
**Primary Fresh air Volume Only

The volume of air to be extracted from the theatre should be determined by subtracting the airflow required for door protection at the exits from the total air entering the theatre space. The balance should be equally divided between the passive or active extract locations.

The extracts within the theatre may be either passive and fitted with pressure stabilizers or active and connected to the extract system. They should be located at low level and positioned to promote the ventilation of all areas of the space.

New standard layout N^{o} 5 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard plan '1b' typical layout for a conventional theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.

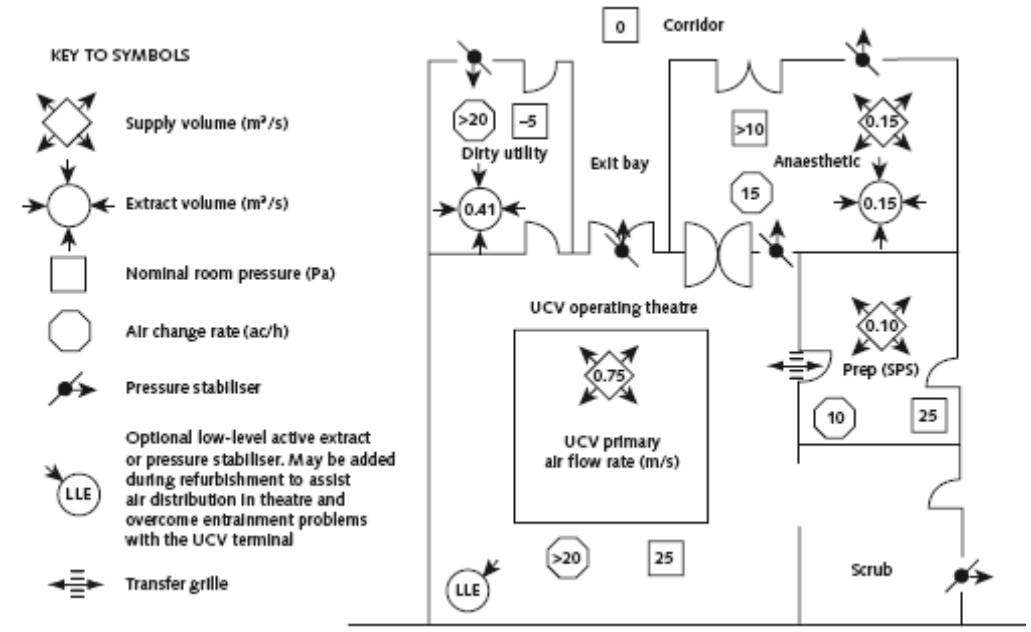


Room	Size m^3	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to Be measured on site	20	25	0.65
Anaesthetic		15	14	0.15
Lay-Up Prep		-	35	0.34
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	-5	0.41

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor.

Standard layout No 6 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard Plan '1a' Typical layout for a UCV theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.



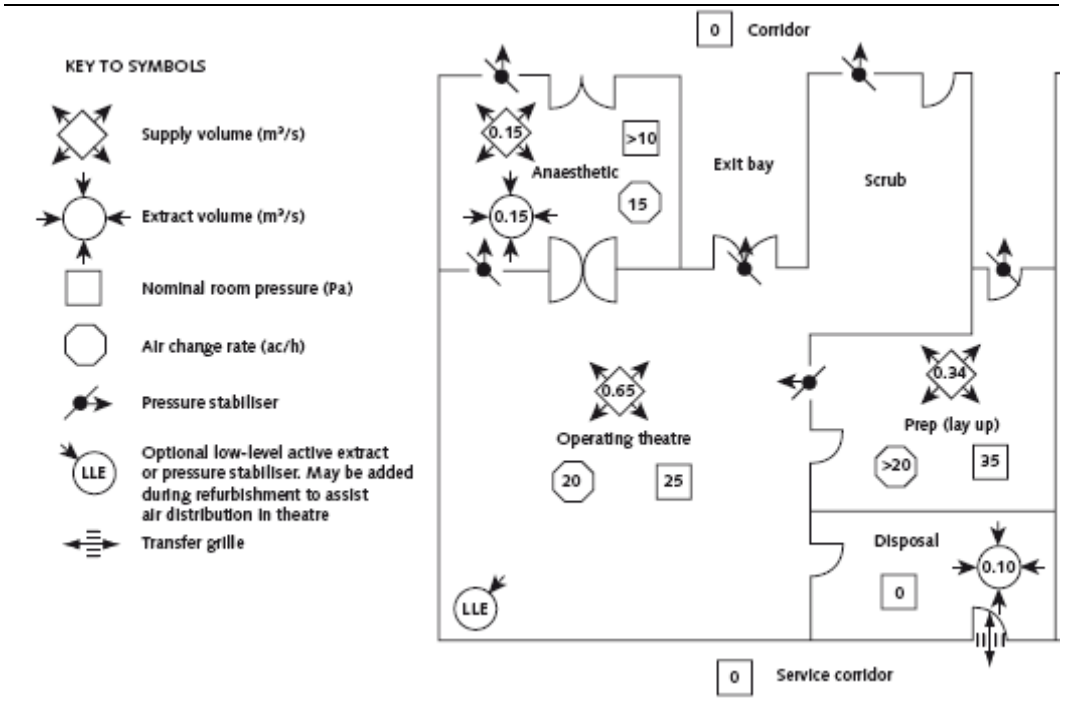
Room	Size m^3	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to be measured on site	20	25	0.75*
Anaesthetic		15	>10	0.15
Sterile Pack Prep		10	25	0.1
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	-5	0.41

*Primary fresh airflow volume

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor.

Standard layout N^{o} 7 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard Plan '5b' Typical layout for a conventional theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.

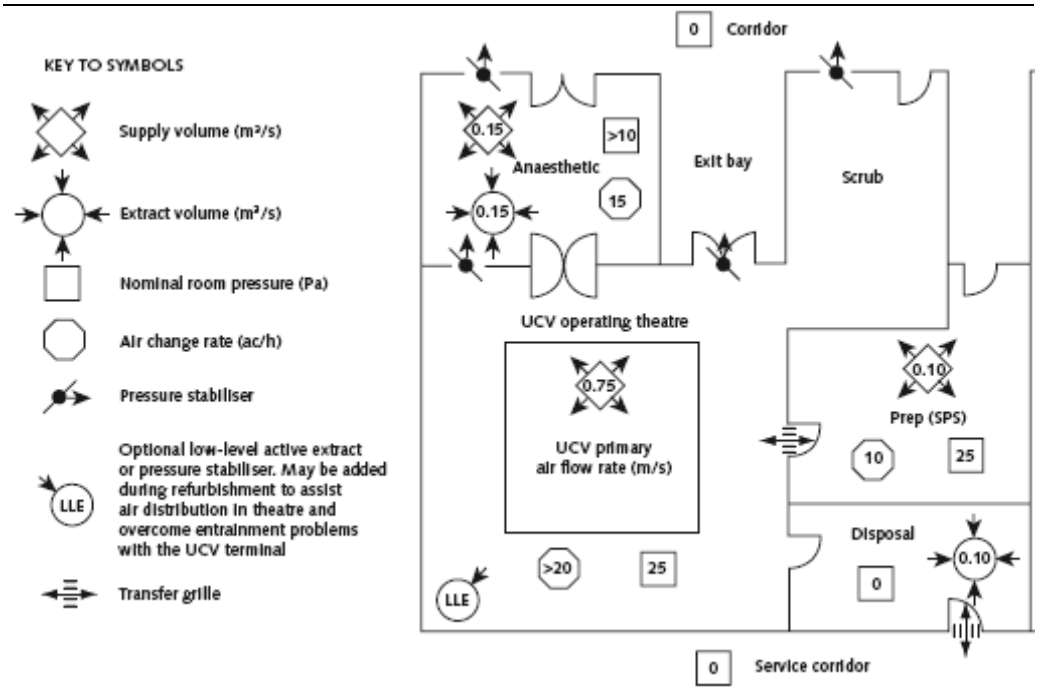


Room	Size m^3	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to be measured on site	20	25	0.65
Anaesthetic		15	>10	0.15
Lay-Up Prep		>20	35	0.34
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	0	0.1

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor. Alternatively the disposal room could be omitted and replaced with a disposal hatch between the theatre and corridor.

Standard layout N^{o} 8 - SHTM 2025 Existing standard Plan '5a' Typical layout for a UCV theatre suite

This layout and data is for historical purposes only. The information is to be used for the evaluating of existing systems or rebalancing following ventilation system cleaning.



Room	Size m^3	Air Change Rate per hour	Nominal Pressure Pa	Flowrate m^3/s
Theatre	Existing Theatre Suite to be measured on site	20	25	0.75*
Anaesthetic		15	>10	0.15
Sterile Prep		10	25	0.1
Scrub		-	25	Included within theatre
Disposal		-	0	0.1

*Primary fresh air-flow volume only

The disposal layout detailed will remain the same should a hatch be utilised instead of a door onto the outer corridor. Alternatively the disposal room could be omitted and replaced with a disposal hatch between the theatre and corridor.

Appendix 4: Design of air-movement control schemes for operating theatres.

General

A4.1 Standard operating suite design solutions are given in Appendix 3. If these standard solutions cannot be used, the following procedure should be adopted, which will result in an acceptable design. Note that the method employed can equally be used to provide a design solution to a ventilated suite of rooms for any application.

A4.2 The method is concerned with the calculation of airflow rates to ensure that correct air movement occurs between rooms when any one door is open. Under most circumstances, the air quantities required for air-movement control will approximate to those for either temperature control or bacterial contaminant dilution. This flow rate is sufficient to control the effects of any slight reverse flows occurring when a door is opened.

A4.3 The progression through the design procedure is shown in the airflow design procedure chart (Figure A4/3) and is supported by worksheets WS1 to WS7 described in Paragraph A4.4. It is recommended that a plan of the suite and an airflow network be made (Figure A4/2) to collate all information. Flow rates, air-transfer devices etc should be entered as required. The remainder of this Appendix may be treated as reference data to assist in the various steps. The following symbols are used:

S_S – supply airflow rate for summer temperature control;

S_W – supply airflow rate for winter temperature control;

S_D – supply airflow rate for dilution of bacterial contaminants;

S_L – supply airflow rate for heat loss;

S_G – supply airflow rate for heat gain;

E_D – extract airflow rate for dilution of bacterial contaminants;

S_F – final supply airflow rates;

E_F – final extract flow rates;

S_{AMC} – air-supply flow rate for air-movement control;

E_{AMC} – air-extract flow for air-movement control;

L_{OUT} – leakage airflow rate outward;

L_{IN} – leakage airflow rate inward;

$\sum_{OUT}$ – total airflow rate outward;

$\sum_{IN}$ – total airflow rate inward.

A4.4 To simplify the procedure, standard worksheets (WS1 to WS7) have been devised. For each operating suite, a set is required comprising one each of WS1, WS3, WS5, WS6a, WS6b and WS7, one WS4 for each corridor and one WS2 to cover each peripheral room. WS2 has five versions:

- WS2a single flow;
- WS2b parallel/series multi-flow;
- WS2c parallel multi-flow or series multi-flow (unbalanced);
- WS2d series multi-flow (balanced); and
- WS2e bay (semi-open).

Peripheral room type

A4.5 The rooms in the operating suite other than the operating room and corridor are referred to as peripheral rooms. Peripheral rooms have been classified according to the flows in and out. These room classifications are defined below in Paragraphs A4.6 – A4.11.

Single flow

A4.6 This is a room with only one door and a net surplus of supply or extract air.

Parallel multi-flow

A4.7 This is a room with two or more doors through each of which the air-flows either outwards (high-pressure) or inwards (low-pressure) (for example the Prep (lay-up) in standard layout 5).

Parallel/series multi-flow

A4.8 This is a room having a net surplus of supply or extract and with two or more doors. One or more doors will be to an area of equal cleanliness and need not be protected; hence, the flow may vary between inwards and outwards, the remaining door being to an area of greater or lesser cleanliness (for example the Prep (SPS) in standard layout 6).

Series multi-flow (unbalanced)

A4.9 This is a room having a net surplus of supply or extract and with two or more doors. Air flows inwards through one or more doors and outwards through one or more doors.

Series multi-flow (balanced)

A4.10 This is a room as in Paragraph A4.9 above, but having either no mechanical ventilation or no net surplus of supply or extract. (for example an anaesthetic room).

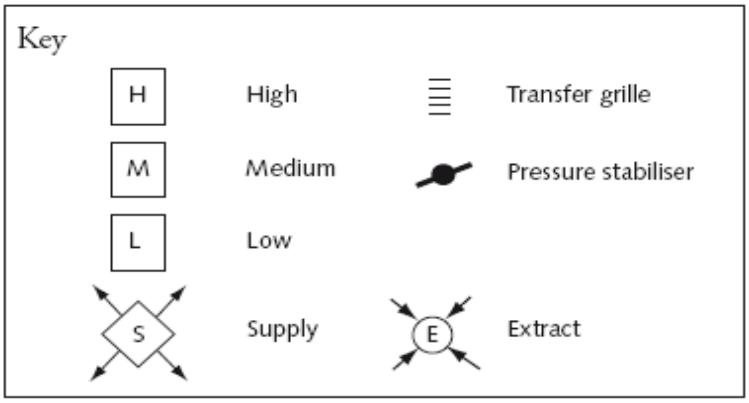
Bay

A4.11 A room that has a permanent opening to the operating room may be considered as a bay off the latter (for example a scrub). Two categories exist:

- open bay – the opening is larger than a normal single door opening. The bay may be considered as part of the main room;
- semi-open bay – the opening is no larger than a normal single door opening. In this case it is possible to protect the bay from the main room by provision of air supply or extract in the bay, or by passing air to or from another area.

Air-movement control in peripheral rooms

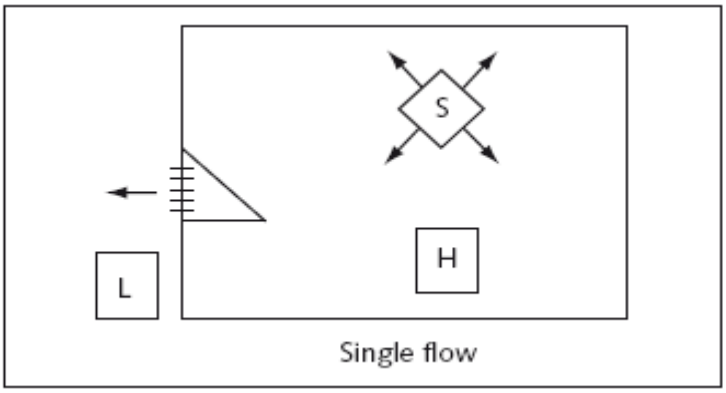
A4.12 For the design of air-movement control, two types of air-transfer device are considered. These are transfer grilles and pressure stabilisers. Each has a particular field of application within the design, as described in Paragraphs A4.34 – A4.43. Air movement is controlled in each of the different room types described in Paragraphs A4.13 – A4.31.



Note: This key applies to each diagram in A4.13 - A4.27.

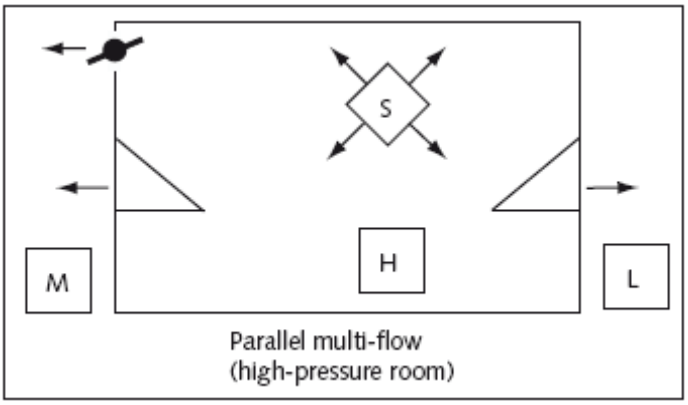
Single flow rooms

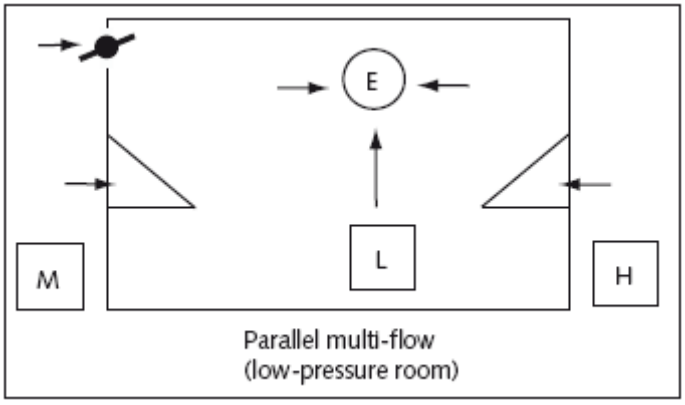
A4.13 An appropriately sized transfer grille should be located in or adjacent to the door of each single flow room to relieve the pressure differences across the door when closed.



Parallel multi-flow rooms

A4.14 The pressure difference across the closed doors must be relieved, but transfer grilles are not appropriate where two doors lead to areas of different pressures, because reverse flow could occur when the other door is open. For this reason, pressure stabilisers are used.





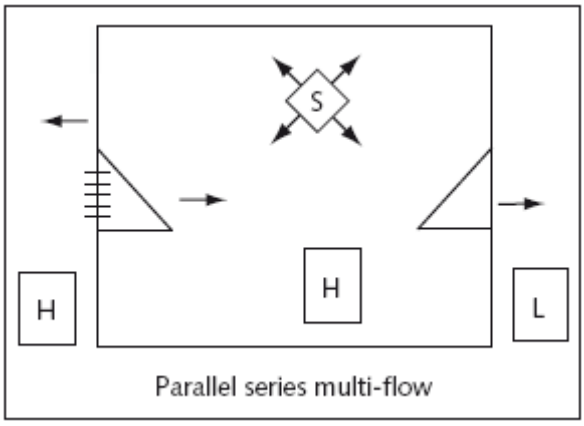
A4.15 These rooms will be either high-pressure or low-pressure with respect to the adjacent areas (see preparation lay-up room and disposal room, respectively, in standard layout 5). The pressure-relief damper is always situated between the room and area, which results in the smaller differential pressure to ensure best use of air.

A4.16 Just as reverse flow can occur if transfer grilles are used, it can similarly occur via door gaps when the other door is opened. It is not possible to avoid this,

except by using air locks, but due to the low flow rates and short durations involved, this is not considered to be of importance.

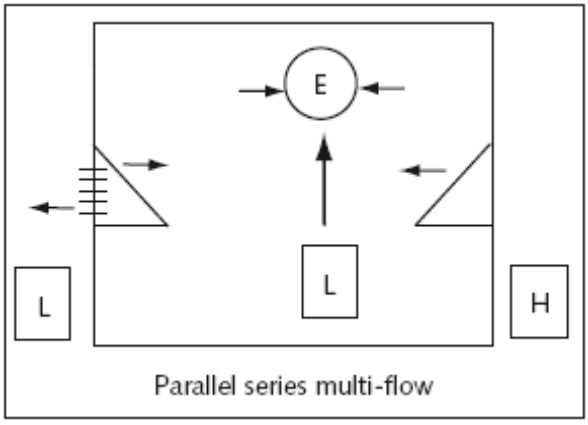
Parallel-series multi-flow rooms

A4.17 These rooms are similar to those in Paragraph A4.14 above, but because the room is of equal cleanliness to one of the adjacent rooms the nominal pressures will be equal and air may flow through the adjoining doorway in either direction. (for example the Prep (SPS) in standard layout 6).



Parallel series multi-flow

A4.18 Where the nominal room pressure equals that of the higher-pressure adjacent room, the best use of air is by supplying air required for bacterial dilution only and allowing this to exhaust via a transfer grille to the area of equal cleanliness. The doorway to the lower pressure area is protected by the combination of the supply air and the air that will flow inwards through the transfer grille from the area of equal cleanliness.

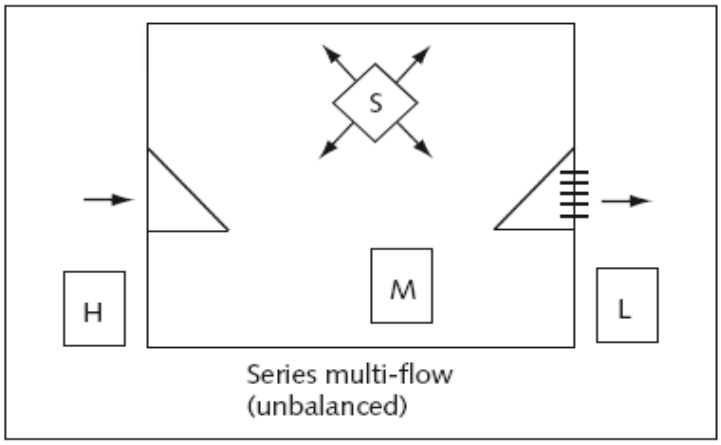


Parallel series multi-flow

A4.19 Conversely, where the nominal pressure equals that of the lower-pressure adjacent room, extract ventilation and a transfer grille to the lower pressure adjacent room should be provided. (for example, the disposal room in standard layout 8).

Series multi-flow (unbalanced)

A4.20 These rooms are somewhat similar to those in Paragraph A4.15 above, but because the pressure lies between that of the rooms on either side, the back-flow problem does not exist.



Series multi-flow (unbalanced)

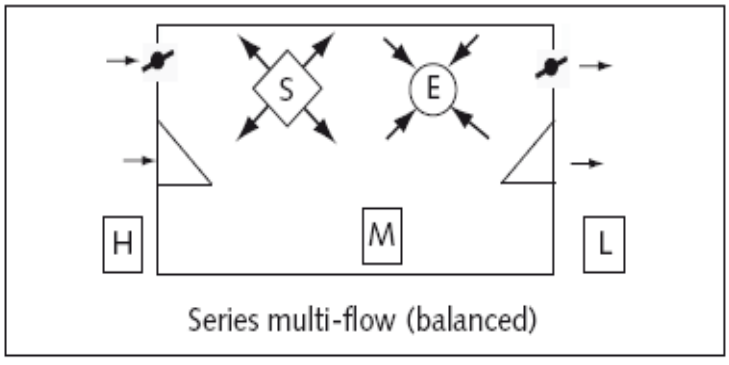
A4.21 Where the room has a net surplus of mechanical supply air, a transfer grille should be located in or adjacent to the door through which air flows outwards, and the mechanical supply flow rate to the room should be chosen to give protection when this door is open.

A4.22 Where the room has a net surplus of mechanical extract air, a transfer grille should be located adjacent to the door through which the air flows inwards, and the mechanical extract flow rate to the room should be chosen to give protection when this door is open.

A4.23 The grille must be sized for the protection requirement of the opposing door when open. When the room on the high-pressure side depressurises, there is a possibility of back-flow through gaps around the door, but this problem may be ignored.

Series multi-flow (balanced)

A4.24 In these rooms, a transfer device adjacent to each doorway is required in order to provide a flow path for the air required to protect the opposing door when opened.



Series multi-flow (balanced)

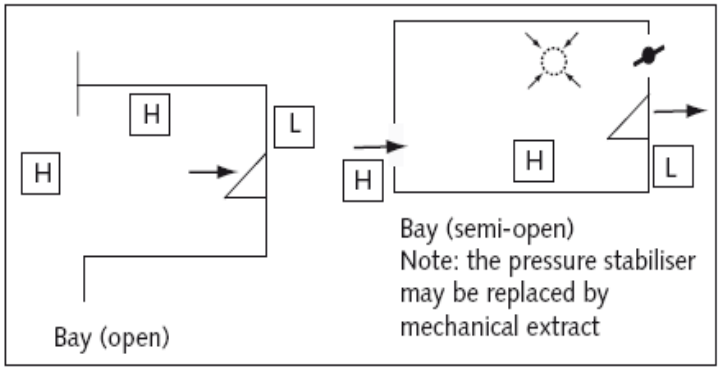
A4.25 These transfer devices will normally be pressure stabilisers, although transfer grilles may be used where a large amount of excess air is to be exhausted from the operating room when all doors are closed. (for example, anaesthetic rooms).

A4.26 The calculation procedure is to assume that pressure stabilisers are being used; then (if there is sufficient excess air) change to transfer grilles as described in Paragraph A4.50.

Bay

Open bay

A4.27 A bay of the open type (for example scrub-up) is considered to be part of the operating room. Provided air movement is satisfactory, no specific extract is required.



Semi-open bay

A4.28 In a bay of the semi-open type, protection of one area from the other is possible. (For example scrub-up).

A4.29 As stated previously, the need for protection between operating room and scrub-room is not very great. Better use of air can therefore be achieved in this case by installing a pressure stabiliser between the scrub-room and clean corridor. This will allow a flow of air through the scrub-room at all times, except when a door is opened elsewhere in the suite. The pressure stabiliser will then close and the air will be diverted to the other door. When it is considered necessary to protect the scrub-room at all times, either a transfer grille to the corridor or mechanical extract in the scrub-room should be provided.

Operating room

A4.30 Once the peripheral rooms have been considered, the operating room requirements may then be decided and the supply flow rate required for air-movement control calculated. This flow rate should be such that, with any one door open, the correct air movement directions are maintained. There will be one door in the suite that will require the largest supply flow rate to the

operating room for protection when open. This is called the “key door” and is discussed separately in Paragraph A4.33. Use of this concept avoids repetitive calculations for each door in turn. Having established the required supply flow rate, a relief route must be provided to the clean corridor for any excess air when the doors are closed. This would be via transfer grilles or pressure stabilisers through a series-flow room or via pressure stabilisers to the clean corridor directly.

Corridors

A4.31 All surplus air from the suite, except that lost through structure leakage and any passing to the outer corridor, will arrive in the patient/staff corridor. Should this air be insufficient to achieve the required air-change rate (see Appendices 1 and 2), some additional air supply should be provided. (The air balance should take account of structural leakage.)

Door opening

A4.32 Whereas the resulting pressures are dependent on ductwork layout, room relationships and characteristics of the fan, the generalisations shown in Appendix 2 can be used to estimate the change in room pressure when a door is opened.

A4.33 The “key door” will be the open double door which leaves the operating room at the highest pressure, and/or requires the largest air flow. This should be determined using the procedure in worksheet WS3.

Transfer grilles

A4.34 These may be used to limit the pressure differences across the closed door of a single-flow room or, in some instances, for protection of a series-flow or parallel-series-flow room. They allow airflow in both directions and may not be suitable for all applications.

A4.35 The free area of a grille is calculated from the following equation:

$$A = \frac{Q}{0.84\sqrt{\Delta P}}$$

where:

A is free area (m^2)

Q is flow rate (m^3/s)

P is pressure difference (Pa).

A4.36 The flow through a grille at a different pressure may be found from the following equation:

$$Q_2 = Q_1\sqrt{\frac{\Delta P_1}{\Delta P_2}}$$

where:

Q_1 and P_1 are original flow and differential pressure

Q_2 and P_2 are new flow and differential pressure.

A4.37 The transfer grille may be replaced by carefully proportioned door undercuts of the equivalent free area.

A4.38 The function of the transfer grille is to provide a means of airflow control by which the volume and pressure loss can be established. If a grille is used, it should have an easily removable core to facilitate cleaning.

Pressure-relief dampers

A4.39 The functions of a pressure-relief damper are now carried out by pressure stabilisers. Accordingly, all further mention of them has been removed from this document.

Pressure stabilisers

A4.40 Pressure stabilisers can be adjusted to hold the pressure constant over a wide range of flow rates. They are used where requirements exist for accurate room-pressure control or rapid shut-off on pressure fall.

A4.41 The installation of a grille or baffle in association with a stabiliser will alter the operating characteristics. It is recommended that a location be chosen to avoid the need for visual screening, for example, at high level. The location should be chosen to minimise the likelihood of damage.

A4.42 The stabilisers used should be virtually silent in operation, adjustable on site, maintenance-free and of a type that cannot be wrongly inserted. They should not be used in external walls or where the pressure difference is less than 5 Pa. The required size of a pressure stabiliser is dependent on the design pressure difference across it and flow rate through it. The manufacturer should provide data relating pressure difference to mean velocity (or flow rate per unit area). From this, the required area can be calculated and then rounded-up to the nearest size manufactured or nearest combination of smaller sizes.

A4.43 It is sometimes possible to arrange for a pressure stabiliser to perform two tasks. In an anaesthetic room, for example, the two pressure stabilisers may be made to pass the open door protection air, and also control the operating and anaesthetic room pressures with the door closed. To achieve this, the

stabilisers are sized for the flow rate required with one of the doors open, but the pressure setting is adjusted to be the value required with the doors closed. This is shown in Figure A4/1.

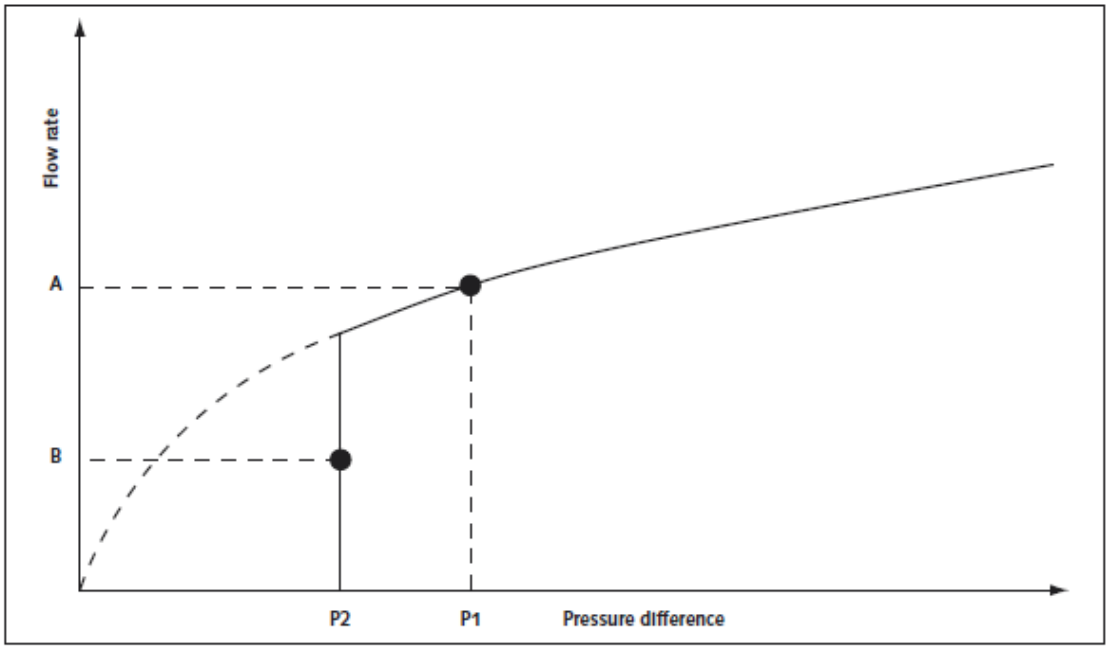


Figure A4/1

Door leakage flows

A4.44 For an air-movement control scheme to work satisfactorily, it is essential that the estimates of door-gap leakage made at the design stage are closely related to those which are achieved in practice. The calculation of gap-flows is complicated by the fact that such flows generally fall into the transition region between laminar and turbulent flow and hence do not follow the normal flow equations. The gaps assumed are 4mm along the bottom, 3mm at the top and sides, and 2mm between double leaves. Doors should not have wider gaps than these. Tighter gaps would result in lower flow-rate requirements and hence lower fan power, but care should be taken to ensure that all doors in the suite have similar gap dimensions. It may be possible to ignore the door leakage and so reduce the airflow requirement (see the notes in Appendix 3).

Room temperature estimation

A4.45 The air-flow rate required to prevent back-flow through an open door is dependent on the temperature difference across the door. The design figures shown in Appendix 3 are based on the temperature differences that will normally occur in practice, assuming heat gains and losses in accordance with Appendix 2.

A4.46 In accordance with the airflow design process, the temperature differences across the doors of all rooms classed as “sterile” is calculated. Worksheet WS6 is recommended for the calculations, using the following criteria:

- assume that the operating room is being controlled at 20°C and calculate the incoming air-supply temperature as shown on worksheet WS6;
- the calculation should be repeated for both summer and winter conditions, with an operation in progress;
- assume all doors are closed;
- use the room supply flow rates from WS1;
- use the inward air flows through air-transfer devices and closed door leakages from WS2a to WS2e;
- the formula used in worksheet WS6 is as follows:

$$T = \frac{(t_1Q_1 + t_2Q_2 + \cdots + t_nQ_n) + 0.828H}{(Q_1 + Q_2 + \cdots Q_n)}$$

where:

Q = flow rate from source (m^3/s)

t = the temperature of source (°C)

H = the room heat gain (kW).

A4.47 If the evaluated temperature differences between rooms do not exceed 2°C, the solution is satisfactory; otherwise proceed as follows:

- check the assumption on which the heat gains are based;
- take steps to reduce the heat gains;
- if the door is to a corridor, the flow through the open door will be larger than the value given in Appendix 2. Calculate on WS3, assuming it is the "key door" with door-flow unknown, and the supply as known;
- if the door leads to a room with mechanical supply, install a trimmer heater in the supply to the room controlled by either a differential thermostat or a thermostat slaved to the operating room thermostat to ensure that T is minimized.
- If the door leads to a room with no mechanical supply, increase the door protection flow as follows:

$$Q_{new} = Q_{old}\left[\frac{\Delta T + 1}{2}\right]$$

A4.48 These options should be considered in the above order, and the first three should be investigated thoroughly before proceeding to the latter two. The mechanical supply may need to be increased in order to achieve the desired air-change rates.

Relief of excess air from operating room when all doors are closed

A4.49 As the mechanical supply to the operating room is sized to provide an appropriate flow outward through any door that is opened, it follows that when all doors are closed, there will be more air supplied to the operating room than can exit from it via leaks etc. This "excess" air can be relieved by either of the two methods described in Paragraphs A4.50 - 4.54.

By transfer devices via the anaesthetic room

A4.50 For door protection, the transfer devices in the anaesthetic room are typically designed to pass 0.47 m^3/s at a differential pressure of 14 Pa. When the doors are closed, the differential pressure will change to 11 Pa between theatre and anaesthetic room, and 14 Pa between anaesthetic room and corridor; the volume of air passed by the transfer devices will be modified as shown in the following formula:

$$Q = Q_1\left(\frac{\Delta P_1}{\Delta P_2}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= 0.47\left(\frac{11}{14}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= 0.42\ m^3/s$$

where:

Q = "excess" air to be vented with doors closed;

Q_1 = air-flow required for door protection through transfer device;

ΔP_1 = nominal differential pressure with door to operating room closed and door to corridor closed;

ΔP_2 = nominal differential pressure between either the anaesthetic room and corridor when the operating room door is open, or the anaesthetic room and operating room when the corridor is open. This differential pressure is used when selecting size of both devices.

A4.51 If the "excess" air is less than 0.42 m^3/s, a pressure stabiliser is required to ensure that the correct protection airflow is available to pass through the door.

A4.52 If the "excess" air is greater than 0.42 m^3/s, a transfer grille is acceptable because at all times the airflow will exceed the flow required for door protection.

By pressure stabilisers to the corridor

A4.53 If it is undesirable to pass operating room air through the anaesthetic room, it may be passed directly to a corridor via a separate pressure stabiliser.

A4.54 If there is sufficient “excess” air, the transfer grille solution at Paragraph A4.52 should be adopted, as it provides the simplest solution and, once set up, will require no further maintenance. With less excess air, it is recommended that the air be passed through the anaesthetic room via the pressure stabilisers as at Paragraph A4.51, thus keeping the number of pressure stabilisers to a minimum. Both these solutions increase the air-change rate in the anaesthetic room, but care should be taken to avoid passing excessive amounts through that would cause discomfort to the occupants.

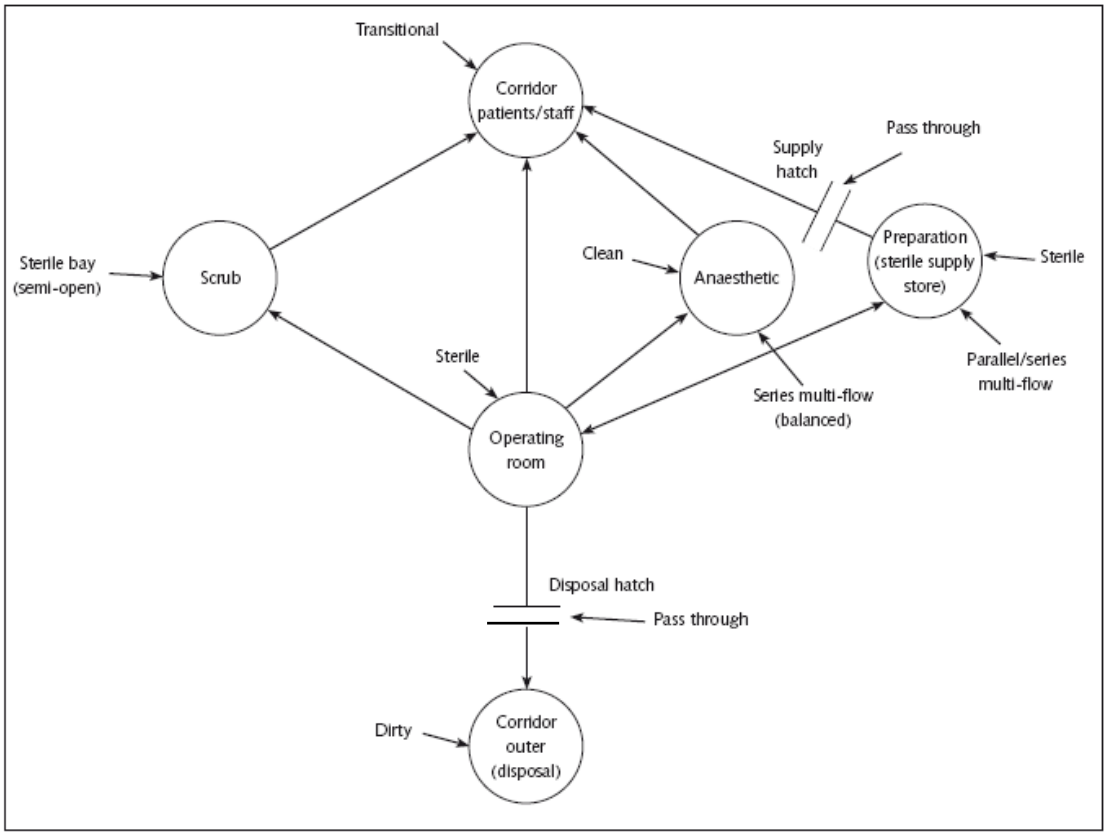
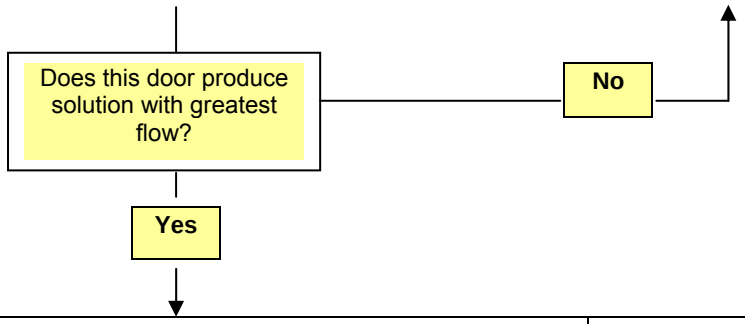
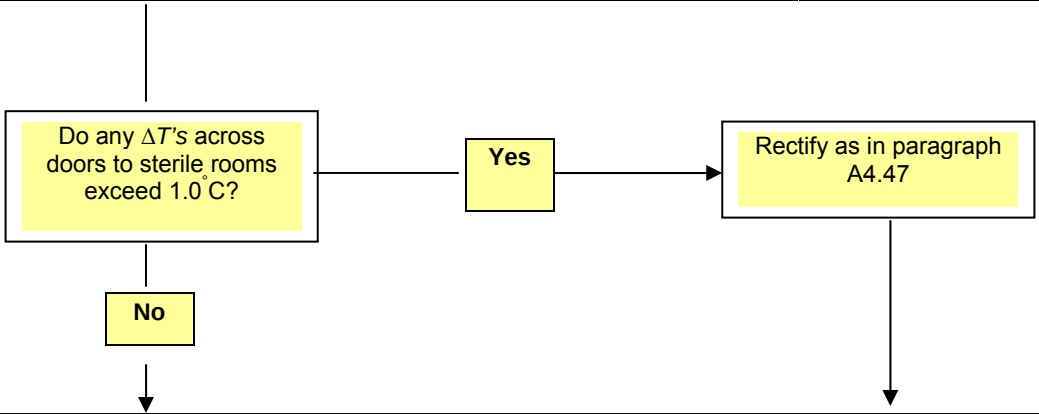


Figure A4/2: An example of an airflow network

Step	Description	Worksheet
1	Show nominal room pressures and air flow directions on the plan of the theatre suite and WS1	WS1
2	Enter heat/loss/gain data and calculate supply airflow rates for temperature control only. Categorise room types e.g. sterile, clean etc.	WS1
3	Enter airflows required for bacterial contamination control or air change rate whichever is the greater, add supply and extract volumes (S_D, E_D) on the plan.	WS1
4	Define peripheral room types, see paragraphs A4.5 - A4.11, and select appropriate worksheets.	Select from WS2a - WS2e
5	Locate air transfer devices, enter details on worksheets and locate on the plan and Figure A4/2	Selected worksheets from WS2a - WS2e
6	For each peripheral room, determine air flows through doors when open and calculate mechanical supply or extract and transfer device flows	As above
7	Select "Key Door" and calculate air supply for operating room	WS3



8	Transfer to WS1 and select final rate S_F and E_F	WS1. WS3
9	Make provision for relief of excess air with doors closed	Selected Worksheets and WS3
10	Calculate supply and extract flow rates for corridor(s)	WS4, WS5
11	Calculate room temperatures (all doors closed) and ΔT's	WS4, WS5



12	Make summary of flows	WS6a and WS6b
13	Size transfer devices, size ductwork, central plant etc	WS7
14	Design ductwork layout, control plant etc	

Figure A4/3: Airflow design procedures

Calculation sheet for					**Worksheet WS1** **Reference:**	
Room Name:						
1. Summer Temperature Control Heat Gain	kW					
2. Acceptable Δt	°C					
3. Air flow rate (S_G) $= \frac{\text{Gain}}{\Delta t \times 1.2}$	m^3/s					
4. Winter Temperature Control Heat Loss	kW					
5. Acceptable Δt	°C					
6. Air flow rate (S_L) $= \frac{\text{Loss}}{\Delta t \times 1.2}$	m^3/s					
7. Dilution of bacterial contaminations Air flow rate	m^3/s					
S_D or E_D						
8. Desired air change rate	ac/hr					
$\frac{\text{AC/hr x room volume } (m^3)}{3600}$	m^3/s					
9. Maximum of S_G, S_L, S_D or E_D or air change rate from Step 8	m^3/s					
10. Air movement control	S m^3/s					
Air flow for air movement control S_{AMC} or E_{AMC} (from WS2, WS3, or WS4)	E m^3/s					
11. Final Supply Flow Rate (S_F)	m^3/s					
12. Final Extract	m^3/s					
13. Total Supply	m^3/s					
14. Total Extract	m^3/s					

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

Air Movement Control **Peripheral Room ..... type, single flow**	**Worksheet WS2a** **Reference:** **Nominal Pressure: ..... Pa**

Consider door to ..... open

Flow required through doorway to give protection	Pa	Δt	Air flow, m^3/s Out	In	Remarks
Total					

S_{AMC} $(\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN})$ _____ m^3/s

or

E_{AMC} $(\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN})$ _____ m^3/s

Transfer S_{AMC} or E_{AMC} to WS1

Consider door to .....closed

Closed door leakage	Pa	Δt	Out	In	Remarks
Total					

Return S_F and E_F to WS1 _____ _____

Flow through transfer grille outward ($S_F – E_F - L_{OUT}$ _____

or

Flow through transfer grille inward ($E_F – S_F - L_{IN}$) _____

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

Air movement control **Peripheral Room ..... type, parallel/series multi-flow**	**Worksheet WS2b** **References:** **Nominal Pressure: Pa**

Door from this room to ..... (room of equal cleanliness) is not to be protected.
A transfer grille is located in, or adjacent to, this door.

Consider door to ..... open

Room pressure now becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa (see Appendix 6)

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
Mechanical supply or extract (S_F/E_F)					
		Total			

X ($\sum$ OUT - $\sum$IN) [ ] Or Y ($\sum$ IN - $\sum$OUT) [ ]

Transfer grille required:

or from high-pressure zone Flow = *X* [ ] at [ ] ΔPa

to low-pressure zone Flow = *Y*

Size of transfer grille (free area) A1 [ ]

Consider doors and hatch closed – room pressure becomes [ ] Pa (nominal)

Closed door leakage from Appendix 4 (assuming no transfer grille)	Pa	ΔP	Out	In	Remarks
Mechanical supply or extract					
		Total			

Air flow required through transfer grille = IN – OUT = Z' [ ]

or OUT – IN = Z'' [ ]

Transfer grille required flow *Z' or Z''* [ ] @ [ ] ΔP

Size of transfer grille (free area) A2 = [ ]

Select larger of A1 or A2 [ ]

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

A42659819

Air movement control **Peripheral Room ..... type, parallel multi-flow high/low or series multi-flow (unbalanced)**	**Worksheet WS2c** **References:** **Nominal Pressure: Pa**

Consider door from this room to ..... open.

Room pressure now becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa (see Appendix 6)

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

S_1 ($\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN}$) [ ] Or E_1 ($\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT}$) [ ]

Consider door from this room to ..... open

Room pressure then becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa

			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through open doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors are:	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

S_2 ($\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN}$) [ ] Or E_2 ($\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT}$) [ ]

Consider doors closed. Closed doors leakage from Appendix 4

Door to:	Pa	ΔP	Out	In	Remarks
Total					

Return S_F and E_F to WS1 [ ] [ ]

Flow through transfer grille outward ($S_F - L_{OUT}$) [ ] to .....

or

Flow through transfer grille inward ($E_F - L_{IN}$) [ ] from.....

Transfer grille [ ] Pressure relief damper [ ]

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... Date.....

Air movement control **Peripheral Room .....** **type, parallel/series multi-flow**	**Worksheet WS2d** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**

Note: In this type of room the supply and extract air flow rates are equal and take no part in the air movement control (AMC)

First, open door to higher pressure area.

Room pressure then becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa (see Appendix 2)

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

Q_1 ($\sum_{IN}$ - $\sum_{OUT}$) [ ] (+ve inwards)

Next, open door to lower pressure area.

Room pressure then becomes [ ] or [ ] or [ ] Pa

			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through open doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors are:	Pa	ΔP			
Total					

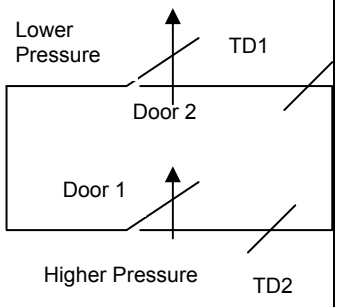
Q_1 ($\sum_{IN}$ - $\sum_{OUT}$) [ ] (+ve inwards)

Flow through transfer device (TD1) to protect Door 1 = Q1 [ ] at resultant

ΔP .....

Flow through transfer device (TD2) to protect Door 2 = Q2 [ ] at resultant

ΔP .....



Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))..... Date.....

A42659819

Air movement control **Peripheral Room …….. type bay (semi-open)**	**Worksheet WS2e** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**

Note: If the room is of the open bay type (i.e. opening is larger than normal single doorway), then room should be considered part of the main room. No air movement control considerations need then be made, and this sheet can be discarded. Supply and/or extract flow ill be based on air distribution considerations.

Consider permanent opening

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
At above pressures leaks through closed doors	Pa	ΔP			
		Total			

E_{AMC} _____ or flow outward through transfer ($\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT}$) _____

Transfer S_{AMC} or E_{AMC} to WS1

Transfer device – transfer grille _____

– pressure stabiliser _____

Size select transfer device for flow rate _____ @ ΔP _____

Note: A door from the bay is considered with the peripheral room to which it leads or, if it leads to the corridor, it is considered with the main room.

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…….. Date……..

Air movement control **Operating Room**	**Worksheet WS3** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**

Note: To avoid considering each door open in turn, the "key door" concept is introduced. This is the door which requires the greatest mechanical flow when open. See paragraph A4.33

Select "key door" (see above).

Consider this door open – room pressure now becomes _____ Pa (See Appendix 2)

See Appendix 3 for room pressures

			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
Air flow "out" or "in" via doors, transfer devices etc.	Pa	ΔP			
Mechanical extract					
Total					

S_{AMC} $(\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN})$ _____ Transfer S_{AMC} to WS1

Consider all doors closed.

Return S_F and E_F to WS1 _____ Room pressure now _____ Pa (nominal)

Air flow "out" or "in" via door leakage, transfer devices etc	Pa	Δt	Out	In	Remarks
Mechanical extract					
Total					

Flow $(\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT})$ through transfer device _____ @ ΔP _____ to……

For final selection of transfer device see paragraphs A4.50 – A4.54

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

Air movement control **Corridor**			**Worksheet WS4** **References:** **Nominal Pressure:** **Pa**		
Consider all doors closed					
			Air flow, m^3/s		
			Out	In	Remarks
Flow required through doorway to give protection					
Leaks through closed doors, transfer devices, permanent openings etc.	Pa	ΔP			
Total flow inwards (S_1)					
Add mechanical input (S_2) if necessary to increase S_1 to give 7 AC/hr					
Total Flow Outwards and Inwards					
$S_{AMC} = (\sum_{OUT} - \sum_{IN} + S_2)$		Transfer to WS5			
or $E_{AMC} = (\sum_{IN} - \sum_{OUT} + S_2)$		Transfer to WS5			

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

A42659819

Air movement control **Corridor**	**Worksheet WS5** **References:**

Summary of Air Supply and extract for an Operating Suite

Consider all doors closed

Air Flow to Corridor	All Doors Closed	Anaesthetic (key door open)
	m^3/s	m^3/s
From Preparation		
From Operating Room		
From Scrub		
From Anaesthetic		
Total (a)		
Air Flow to Corridor from Disposal		
From other source		
Total (b)		
Other Room Supplies.....Total (c)		
Total Air Supply (a) + (b) + (c)		

Consider corridor ventilation (see Appendix 2) and calculate air volume required, based on 7 ac/hr (see Note 1)

	m^3/s
Additional Air to Ventilate Corridor	
Additional Air to Ventilate Service Corridor (see Note 2)	
Air Extract The size of the extract plant should be of the order of 10% below the supply to assist in maintaining the department under positive pressure relative to the outside departments.	
	m^3/s
Extract Plant = Supply less Leakage	
Less 10% of Supply	
Total Extract (see Note 3)	

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

Room Temperature - Summer | **Worksheet WS6a**

References:

Find summer supply temperature T_{SS} = 20 – 0.828 H/(O/R) _____ = T_{SS} _____ °C

Q(O/R) _____

Note: The temperature of a space may be calculated from

$$T = \frac{t_1 Q_1 + t_2 Q_2 + \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots + t_n Q_n + (0.828H)}{Q_1 + Q_2 + \ldots Q_n}$$

Where t_1 is temperature of source (1°C)
Q_1 is flow from source 1 when all doors are closed (m^3/s)
H is heat gain in space (kW)

Summary of Air Supply and extract for an Operating Suite

Consider all doors closed

Room	Heat Gain kWh	Supply		Flows Inwards										Temperature °C T
		Q	T_{SS}	From		From		From		From		From		
				Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	

Check Doors to Sterile Areas

Door Between	Calculated Room ΔT (°C)	Maximum ΔT *Permitted*	Remarks

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… **Date**……

A42659819

Room Temperature - Winter | **Worksheet WS6b**

References:

Find winter supply temperature T_{SW} = 20 – 0.828 H/(O/R) _____ = T_{SW} _____ °C

Q(O/R) _____

Note: The temperature of a space may be calculated from

$$T = \frac{t_1 Q_1 + t_2 Q_2 + \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots + t_n Q_n + (0.828H)}{Q_1 + Q_2 + \ldots Q_n}$$

Where t_1 is temperature of source (1°C)
Q_1 is flow from source 1 when all doors are closed (m^3/s)
H is heat gain in space (kW)

Summary of Air Supply and extract for an Operating Suite

Consider all doors closed

Room	Heat Gain kWh	Supply		Flows Inwards										Temperature °C T
		Q	T_{SW}	From		From		From		From		From		
				Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	Q	t	

Check Doors to Sterile Areas

Door Between	Calculated Room ΔT (°C)	Maximum ΔT *Permitted*	Remarks

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

A42659819

Transfer Grilles, Pressure Relief Dampers and Pressure Stabilisers	**Worksheet WS7** **Reference:**

Transfer Grilles – see paragraphs A4.34 – A4.38

Check Doors to Sterile Areas

No	Location	Pressure Difference Pa	Flow Rate m^3/s	Free Area m^2	Model	Resultant Δp Pa	Remarks

Pressure Relief Dampers – see paragraph A4.39

No	Location	Pressure Difference Pa	Flow Rate m^3/s	Free Area m^2	Pressure Setting Pa	Remarks

Pressure Stabilisers –see paragraphs A4.40 – A4.43

Note: where a stabiliser is acting both as series room door protection and operating pressure control, "pressure difference" and "flow rate" are from WS2d; "pressure setting" is from WS3

No	Location	Pressure Difference Pa	Flow Rate m^3/s	Free Area m^2	Pressure Setting Pa	Remarks

Surveyor (AP(V)/CP(V))…… Date……

A42659819

References

Acts and regulations

NB: Access to information related to the following Acts and Regulations can be gained via **www.legislation.gov.uk.**

Scottish Technical Handbooks Non Domestic. Scottish Building Standards Agency, 2007. http://sbsa.gov.uk

Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non Domestic, Section 2: Fire. Scottish Building Standards Agency. 2007 http://sbsa.gov.uk

Scottish Technical Handbooks, Non Domestic Section 6: Energy. Scottish Building Standards Agency 2007. http://sbsa.gov.uk

Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations (COSHH) 2002. SI 2002 No 2677. TSO, 2002.

(The) Health & Social Care Act 2008: Code of practice for the prevention and control of healthcare associated infections. 2008. www.dh.gov.uk

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974. HMSO, 1974.

Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999. SI 1999 No 3242. TSO, 1999.

Medicines Act 1968. TSO, 1968.

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998. SI 1998 No 2306. HMSO, 1998.

Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1992. SI 1992 No 3004. HMSO, 1992.

British Standards

BS5588-9: 1999. Fire precautions in the design, construction and use of buildings. Code of practice for ventilation and air conditioning ductwork. British Standards Institution, 1999.

BS5726: 2005. Microbiological safety cabinets. Information to be supplied by the purchaser to the vendor and to the installer, and siting and use of cabinets. Recommendations and guidance, British Standards Institution, 2005.

BS5925: 1991. Code of practice for ventilation principles and designing for natural ventilation. British Standards Institution, 1991.

BS EN 779: 2002. Particulate air filters for general ventilation. Determination of the filtration performance. British Standards Institution, 2002.

BS EN 1822-1:1998. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Classification, performance testing, marking. British Standards Institution, 1998.

BS EN 1822-2:1998. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Aerosol production, measuring equipment, particle counting statistics. British Standards Institution, 1998.

BS EN 1822-3:1998. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Testing flat sheet filter media.

BS EN 1822-4:2000. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Determining leakage of filter element (scan method).

BS EN 1822-5:2000. High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Determining the efficiency of filter element.

BS EN 12469:2000. Biotechnology. Performance criteria for microbiological safety cabinets.

BS EN 13030:2001. Ventilation for buildings. Terminals. Performance testing of louvres subjected to simulated rain.

BS EN 14175-2:2003. Fume cupboards. Safety and performance requirements.

BS EN ISO 14644-1:1999. Clean rooms and associated controlled environments. Classification of air cleanliness.

BS EN ISO 14644-4:2001. Clean rooms and associated controlled environments. Design, construction and start-up.

Department of Health Publications

Health Building Note 26 – Facilities for surgical procedures. The Stationery Office, 2004.

Model Engineering Specification C04 – Mechanical ventilation and air conditioning systems. The Stationery Office, 1997.

NHSScotland Publications

Scottish Health Planning Note 13: Sterile services department. Health Facilities Scotland forthcoming.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 04-01: The control of *Legionella*, hygiene, 'safe' hot water, cold water and drinking water systems. Health facilities Scotland 2010.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 55: Windows. Health Facilities Scotland 2006

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 58: Internal doorsets. Health Facilities Scotland 2006

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 81: Fire Preventions in New Hospitals. Health Facilities Scotland 2003.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 07-02: Environment and Sustainability. Health Facilities Scotland 2006

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 08-01: Acoustics**.** Health Facilities Scotland 2011

Scottish Health Facilities Note 30: Infection Control in The Built Environment: Design and planning. Health Facilities Scotland 2007.

Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers publications

Applications Manual AM10: Natural ventilation in non-domestic buildings. CIBSE, 2005.

Applications Manual AM13: Mixed mode ventilation. CIBSE, 2000.

Commissioning Code A: Air distribution systems. CIBSE 1996.

Commissioning Code R: Refrigerating systems. CIBSE 2002.

Commissioning Code W: Water distribution systems. CIBSE 2003.

Guide A: Environmental design. CIBSE, 2006.

Guide B: Heating, ventilating, air conditioning and refrigeration**.** CIBSE, 2005.

Lighting guide LG2: Hospitals and health care buildings. CIBSE, 2008.

Heating & Ventilating Contractors' Association (HVCA) publications

DW/143: A practical guide to ductwork leakage testing. HVCA Publications, 1998.

DW/144: Specification for sheet metal ductwork, low, medium & high pressure/velocity air systems. HVCA Publications, 1998.

DW/154: Specification for plastics ductwork. HVCA Publications, 2000.

TR/19: Guide to good practice: internal cleanliness of ventilation systems. HVCA Publications, 2005.

Other publications

Advisory committee on Dangerous Pathogens (2001). **The management, design and operation of microbiological containment laboratories.** HSE Books, 2001.

Building Services Research & Information Association (BSRIA). **Application Guide AG 3/89.3: Commissioning of air systems in buildings.** BSRIA, 2001.

Building Services Research & Information Association (BSRIA). **COMPAK 1: Commissioning guides set.**

DIN 1946-4. Ventilation and air conditioning – ventilation in hospitals. Deutsches Institut Fur Normung, 1999.

Health & Safety Commission (2000). **Approved Code of Practice, Legionnaires' disease: the control of legionella bacteria in water systems (L8).** Health and Safety Executive, 2000.

Health & Safety Executive (1993). **HS(G)37: an introduction to local exhaust ventilation.** HSE Books, 1993.

Health & Safety Executive (2005). **Workplace exposure limits: containing the list of workplace exposure limits for use with the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Regulations 2002 (as amended).** HSE Books, 2005.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2003). **Safe working and the prevention of infection in clinical laboratories and similar facilities.** HSE Books, 2003.

Health & Safety Commission's Health Services Advisory Committee (2003). **Safe working and the prevention of infection in the mortuary and post-mortem room.** HSE Books, 2003.

Hospital Infection Society (2005). **Microbiological commissioning and monitoring of operating theatre suites.** HIS, 2005. www.his.org.uk/_db/_documents/OTIC-final.pdf

Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (2007). **Rules and guidance for pharmaceutical manufacturers and distributors** (The Orange Guide). Pharmaceutical Press, 2007. www.mhra.gov.uk

Water Regulations Advisory Scheme (WRAS) (2005). **Water Fittings and Materials Directory.** WRAS, 2005. www.wras.co.uk

Whyte W, Lidwell OM, Lowbury EJL and Blowers R (1983), **Suggested bacteriological standards for air in ultraclean operating rooms**. *J Hosp Infect,* Vol 4, pp 133-139.

Whyte W, Shaw BH and Freeman MAR (1974), **An evaluation of a partial-walled laminar flow operating room**. *J Hyg Camb*, Vol 73, pp 61-75.

NHS National Services Scotland

Scottish Health Planning Note 04

In-patient Accommodation: Options for Choice
Supplement 1: Isolation Facilities in Acute Settings

Health Facilities Scotland
Engineering and Environment

September 2008

Contents

A42659819

1. Introduction

Context

1.1 Healthcare Associated Infection (HAI) is a burden on the NHS. It affects an estimated one in ten NHS hospital patients each year (DH, 2003) at an annual cost of £1bn (National Audit Office, 2000).

1.2 Many patients with an infection require physical isolation. However, often patients cannot be isolated because of a shortage of single rooms and isolation suites.

1.3 The key to effective isolation on acute wards is the provision of single rooms with en-suite sanitary facilities. Single rooms reduce the risk of cross-infection for non-airborne diseases and help to lower the incidence of HAI. Most patients on acute wards can be isolated in single rooms with en-suite facilities. All single rooms in new-build hospitals should have en-suite facilities so that they can be used to isolate patients for a variety of reasons and not just for infection control purposes.

Purpose of the guidance

1.4 This Supplement to SHPN 04: 'In-patient accommodation: options for choice', provides guidance on the facilities required for isolating patients on acute general wards.

1.5 For infection control purposes, a single room without en-suite is better than no single room at all. However, the guidance in this Supplement is based on best practice, and describes how a single room can be enhanced to provide an effective isolation facility for patients on acute general wards. The Supplement has two aims:

- to set a standard for new-build facilities;
- to provide Health Boards wishing to convert existing accommodation with simple design options that can be implemented relatively quickly and cost-effectively.

1.6 This guidance:

- explains how a single room with en-suite sanitary facilities can be enhanced to provide effective isolation for patients with infections that could be transmitted within healthcare;
- describes how an enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and a ventilated lobby can provide an isolation suite for patients who have airborne infections or who need to be protected from them;

- can be used for both new-build schemes and the upgrading of existing accommodation.

1.7 The guidance also contains examples of room layouts.

1.8 The guidance on isolation suites in this Supplement is based on a validated design model. The aim of this Supplement is to provide practical guidance on how to provide isolation facilities that are simple to use and meet the needs of the majority of patients on acute general wards.

1.9 Information about how good design can prevent cross-infection in healthcare premises generally is provided in SHFN 30 Version 3: 'Infection control in the built environment: design and planning' and Healthcare Associated Infection-System for Controlling Risk in the Built Environment (HAI-SCRIBE). SHPN 04 Supplement 1 should be read in conjunction with SHFN 30 and HAI-SCRIBE.

Exclusions

1.10 This Supplement does not describe the specialist facilities required in infectious disease units or on wards where severely immuno-compromised patients are nursed. Guidance for these facilities will follow in a further Supplement to SHPN 04.

2. Operational policies and planning principles

The need to isolate patients

2.1 Historically, isolation in general wards has been provided in single rooms, sometimes without en-suite facilities. Rooms without en-suite facilities often cannot be used to isolate patients effectively.

2.2 Ventilated isolation suites with en-suite facilities have also been provided. They may have a ventilation system that provides a positive pressure in the room to protect the patient from infection, or a negative pressure to prevent a patient from infecting others, or the ventilation may be switchable from positive to negative. These rooms rely on staff being able to assess the type of ventilation required when a patient arrives on the ward and, for switchable systems, knowing how to select the correct ventilation mode. Patients can be put at risk by user error if the ventilation mode is not set correctly.

2.3 The provision of isolation rooms which are switchable from positive to negative air pressure is no longer recommended because of the risk of cross contamination in the event of the setting being incorrect.

2.4 There are four main reasons for caring for patients in single rooms:

- patient susceptibility to infection from other sources;
- where a patient presents an infection risk to others;
- non-medical, for example patient preference;
- clinical but not infection-related.

In terms of infection control, only patients in the first two categories require isolation. Patients in the latter two categories can be cared for in standard single en-suite rooms.

Isolation facilities

2.5 In order to simplify the use of isolation facilities, this Supplement proposes two room designs for isolating patients in acute general settings:

- enhanced single room with en-suite facilities;
- enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and ventilated bed access lobby (isolation suite).

Enhanced single room with en-suite facilities

2.6 An enhanced single room with en-suite sanitary facilities having extract ventilation is a simple, cost-effective way to provide isolation, and will meet the needs of most patients on general wards.

2.7 The room does not require any specialist knowledge or action by the nursing staff to operate it. When not being used for isolation the room can be used for general nursing.

2.8 See Section 3 for detailed design guidance.

Enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and ventilated lobby (isolation suite)

2.9 An enhanced single room with a positive pressure ventilated bed access lobby and en-suite facilities with extract ventilation provides both source and protective isolation.

2.10 The positive pressure lobby ensures that air from the corridor does not enter the isolation room, and that air from the room does not escape into the corridor. This simple design enables the suite to be used for both source and protective isolation without the need for switchable ventilation or special training for staff. It also provides safe isolation for patients whose exact condition is unknown.

2.11 See Section 3 for detailed design guidance.

Advantages

2.12 Both rooms are suitable for caring for patients not in isolation but who require a single room for other reasons. In addition, both room designs are simple in concept, by default safe in operation, and do not require the nursing staff to have any specialist ventilation knowledge.

Creating pleasant environments

2.13 Some patients with infections need to stay in isolation in hospital for long periods of time. The number of visitors they receive and the length of time they can spend with them may be restricted. This means that patients who are already vulnerable, but not necessarily physically severely incapacitated, will be confined to the room for sometimes several weeks and can experience long periods of boredom.

2.14 Accommodation for these patients should be stimulating and as comfortable as possible. Designers should try to achieve a balance between the need for a clean environment and the comfort of patients. There are a number of publications that describe in detail, evidence that supports the concept that a therapeutic environment has a positive effect on a patient's general feeling of well-being, reduces the length of stay for many patients, reduces depression,

confusion and aggressive episodes and significantly increases a patient's level of satisfaction with the overall quality of their care.

2.15 If patients are to stay in an isolation suite, it is important that they are able to see staff from their beds. Staff should also be able to see the patient in case of emergency. This reduces the psychological problems of isolation. Observation windows should have integral privacy blinds which can be controlled by both staff and patients. The sense of containment can also be reduced by providing outside views using windows with low sills.

Record keeping

2.16 Where staff are required to record lobby air pressures as part of the local COSHH assessment, facilities for completing and storing log books should be provided in the lobby.

Maintenance and cleaning

2.17 Guidance on the maintenance and cleaning of materials and finishes is contained in SHFN 30: Infection Control in the Built Environment: design and planning, planning teams should also refer to the 'Monitoring Framework for NHSScotland National Cleaning Services Specification-Guide for NHS Managers'. All surface finishes must be washable and moisture-resistant. This does not include emulsion paint.

Single Room

En-Suite Bathroom

3. Design guidance

New build isolation facilities

Enhanced single room with en-suite facilities

3.1 The design for a new-build enhanced single room with en-suite facilities is shown in Appendix 1 Sheet No 1: Example room layouts.

3.2 The general specification for single rooms is provided in SHPN 04 (2000). The enhancements and modifications recommended for isolating patients are:

- a clinical hand-wash basin, with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap (see paragraph 3.20) adjacent to the exit door;
- wall-mounted hand hygiene dispensers including alcohol hand rub dispensers, and disposable towel holders;
- a foot operated lidded bin for disposing of paper towels and other non-clinical items;
- suitable extract to the en-suite bathroom;
- transfer grille in en-suite door;
- en-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control (see paragraph 3.20);
- external windows should be openable, but with a fixed maximum opening width for safety. They should also be lockable. Internal windows should be fixed;
- observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds that can be controlled by both patients and staff;
- all windows, including observation windows, should be low enough to provide a view for patients lying in bed.

Enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and ventilated bed-access lobby (isolation suite)

3.3 The design for a new-build enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and ventilated lobby, with bed access through the lobby, is shown in Appendix 1 Sheet No 2 Example Room layouts.

3.4 The ventilated bed access lobby ensures that:

- air entering the bedroom is the clean ventilation supply from the lobby. Air from the corridor is blocked by the ventilation supply in the lobby, that is, the patient in the bedroom is protected from air from the corridor;

- potentially contaminated air from the bedroom is prevented from escaping into the corridor by the ventilated lobby, so the patient will not present a risk of infection to others.

As the lobby simultaneously prevents unfiltered air entering the room and potentially contaminated air escaping from it, the room can be used by both infectious patients and those at risk of infecting others.

3.5 The use of personal protective equipment (PPE) will be determined by local infection control policy. Facilities for putting on and removing PPE, and washing hands, are provided in the lobby. The risk of contaminants being dislodged from used PPE by the ventilation system and blown out into the corridor is considered negligible. However, a hand-wash basin and pedal operated lidded bin are also provided in the bedroom close to the exit door so that PPE can be removed in the bedroom should local policy require.

3.6 The benefits of the isolation suite are that it is simple in concept, requires no specialist knowledge by healthcare staff to operate it, and can also be used for general nursing. In addition, if the ventilation system fails the layout of the suite still ensures a degree of protection.

3.7 The general specification for single rooms is provided in SHPN 4. The enhancements and modifications recommended for isolating patients are:

In the bed access lobby:

- a clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap (see paragraph 3.20);
- wall-mounted soap dispensers, disinfectant hand rub dispensers, and disposable towel holders;
- wall-mounted plastic apron and glove dispensers and storage for other clean PPE items;
- a clinical waste bin for disposal of used PPE;
- a bin for disposing of paper towels and other non-clinical items;
- storage for room cleaning equipment;
- a suitable air supply;
- In the isolation room;
- a clinical hand-wash basin, with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap (see paragraph 3.20) adjacent to the exit door;
- wall-mounted hand hygiene dispensers, including alcohol hand rub dispensers, and disposable towel holders;
- a clinical waste bin for disposal of used PPE;
- observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds;
- a pressure stabiliser above bedroom door.

In the en-suite bathroom:

- suitable extract system to the en-suite bathroom;
- transfer grille in the en-suite door;
- en-suite WC to be non-touch flush and wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control (see paragraph 3.20).

For the suite as a whole:

- sealed, solid ceiling;
- windows to the exterior and interior to be locked shut and sealed;
- recessed luminaire rated IP44;
- where the configuration of the building permits (e.g. roof space above) consideration should be given to accessing luminaires from above for lamp changing. This will avoid the need for maintenance staff to access isolation facilities to undertake this activity.

3.8 Heating and cooling of the isolation suite will normally be provided via the ventilation system.

3.9 The provision of a two-way intercommunication system between the patient's bedroom and the nurses' base should be provided (see SHTM 2015: 'Bedhead Services').

Converting existing facilities

3.10 The majority of patients requiring isolation can be cared for in enhanced single rooms with en - suite facilities that have an extract system. Only a small number of patients will need an isolation suite.

3.11 Acute general hospitals can create enhanced single en-suite rooms and isolation suites by converting bays and adapting existing single room accommodation. The layout of existing facilities may impose constraints on design, however, and planning teams will sometimes have to resolve the conflict between what is desirable and what is achievable.

3.12 For Health Boards wanting to convert existing accommodation into isolation facilities, the easiest and least expensive option is to adapt existing single rooms with en-suite sanitary facilities. However, where existing single rooms do not have en-suite facilities, Health Boards will need to reconfigure the accommodation (see paragraph 3.16).

Converting a single room with en-suite facilities

3.13 The standard furnishing and fitment requirements for a single room are described in SHPN 04: 'In-patient accommodation: options for choice'.

3.14 The additional requirements for isolation of a single en-suite room are:

- a clinical hand-wash basin, with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap (see paragraph 3.20) adjacent to the exit door;
- wall-mounted hand hygiene dispensers including alcohol hand rub dispensers, and disposable towel holders;
- a foot operated lidded bin for disposing of paper towels and other non-clinical items;
- suitable extract to the en-suite bathroom;
- transfer grille in en-suite door;
- en-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control;
- external windows should be openable, but with a fixed maximum opening width for safety. They should also be lockable;
- observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds that can be controlled by both patients and staff;
- all windows, including observation windows, should be low enough to provide a view for patients lying in bed.

3.15 A typical layout for converting an existing single room with en-suite facilities is shown in Appendix 1 Sheet No 3: Example room layouts.

Converting a single room without en-suite facilities

3.16 In an existing building it may be possible to modify three adjacent single bedrooms into two enhanced single bedrooms each with en-suite facilities - see Appendix 1 Sheet 4: Example room layouts.

3.17 The requirements for disabled access, as set out in sections 4.2 and 4.7 of The Building (Scotland) Regulations, should be met.

Creating an enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and ventilated bed access lobby (isolation suite)

3.18 When converting a single room into an enhanced single room with en-suite and ventilated lobby, any suspended ceiling must be replaced with a sealed solid ceiling. If a single room has a suspended ceiling to permit access to overhead services, a Health Board should install a sealed ceiling with sealable access hatches or move the services.

3.19 The additional requirements for upgrade to an isolation suite are as follows:

In the bed access lobby:

- a clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap (see paragraph 3.20);

- wall-mounted soap dispensers, disinfectant hand rub dispensers, and disposable towel holders;
- wall-mounted plastic apron and glove dispensers and storage for other clean PPE items;
- a clinical waste bin for disposal of used PPE;
- a bin for disposing of paper towels and other non-clinical items;
- storage for room cleaning equipment;
- a suitable air supply.

In the bedroom:

- a clinical hand-wash basin, with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap (see paragraph 3.20) adjacent to the exit door;
- a clinical waste bin for disposal of used PPE;
- non-opening observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds;
- a pressure stabiliser above the bedroom door into the lobby;
- In the en-suite bathroom;
- suitable extract system to the en-suite bathroom;
- transfer grille in the en-suite door;
- en-suite WC to be non-touch flush and wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control (see paragraph 3.20).

For the suite as a whole:

- sealed, solid ceiling;
- windows to the exterior and interior to be locked shut and sealed;
- recessed luminaire rated IP44;
- where the configuration of the building permits (e.g. roof space above) consideration should be given to accessing luminaires from above for lamp changing, This will avoid the need for estates staff to access isolation facilities to undertake this activity.

3.20 Point of use oversink, non-touch, fixed temperature water heaters may be used as an alternative to ‘fixed temperature mixer taps’.

3.21 The provision of a two-way intercommunication system between the patient’s bedroom and the nurses’ base should be provided (see SHTM 2015: ‘Bedhead services’).

3.22 An option for reconfiguring two existing single rooms to provide one enhanced single room with en-suite facilities and ventilated lobby, with bed access through the lobby, is shown in Appendix 1 Sheet 5: Example room layouts. Where space restrictions mean bed access through the lobby is not possible, an

alternative layout gives bed access directly to the bedroom from the corridor shown in Appendix 1 Sheet 6: Example room layouts. In this case the lobby would be sized for personnel access only.

Converting a multi-bed bay

3.23 An existing four-bed bay may be converted to provide two enhanced single rooms with en-suite facilities in Appendix 1 Sheet 7: Example room layouts.

3.24 In this configuration it is not possible to provide a normal observation window. As observation is critical, however, one option would be to provide fully-glazed lobby and bedroom doors, with integral privacy blinds, to enable observation from the corridor and to provide a view out for the patient.

Hand rub dispenser

4. Engineering requirements

Engineering design philosophy

4.1 This Section describes the ventilation system philosophy for an isolation suite with a patient's bedroom, en-suite sanitary facilities and ventilated lobby. A methodology for validation of the performance standard is given in Appendix 2.

4.2 The isolation suite and its ventilation system are based on a validated design. The engineering guidance given in this Section aims to provide a practical, 'fail-safe' design solution for isolating patients on acute general wards.

4.3 The ventilation system is designed on the basis that all its constituent parts, as described in Table 1, work together to form an integrated system. For example, air to the suite is supplied at high level in the lobby, with extract in the en-suite bathroom. This ensures good airflow through the entire isolation suite. Similarly, the volumetric airflow rate in the lobby is determined by the number of air changes required in the patient's bedroom. Modifying or failing to provide one element of the system will jeopardise the performance of the system as a whole.

Basic design parameters

4.4 The patient's bedroom is to have 10 air changes per hour. The entry lobby is to be at +10 Pascals with respect to the corridor. The en-suite room is to have at least 10 air changes per hour and be at a negative pressure with respect to the patient's bedroom. Table 1 gives nominal design values calculated for rooms of the size stated. The air change rates and pressure differentials below should be maintained when filters are dirty. Variable-speed control of fan motors would be an acceptable method of flow control, within the normal operating range of the fan's speed.

Room	Parameter	Nominal Design Values
Lobby	Room volumes Bed access lobby (5m2 x 2·7m) Personnel access lobby (4m2 x 2·7m)	 13·5 m^3 10·8 m^3
	Pressure differential to corridor	Nominally 10 Pascals
	Supply air flow (for a room of this size)	Bed access lobby - 238 l/s Personnel access lobby - 208 l/s
	Air change rate	Bed access lobby – 63 per hour Personnel access lobby – 69 per hour
Isolation Room	Room volume (19m2 x 2.7m)	51.3m^3
	Pressure differential to corridor	Nominally zero
	Room air flow (for a room of this size)	158 l/s
	Air changes rate	10 per hour
En-suite	Room volume (6m2 x 2·7m)	16·2m^3
	Pressure differential to isolation room	Negative
	Extract air flow (for a room of this size)	158 l/s (If extract is fitted in the isolation room this reduces to 45 l/s in the en-suite with 113 l/s extract in the isolation room)
	Air change rate	At least 10 per hour

Table 1: Isolation Suite – Ventilation Parameters

Note: In this example the design parameters are based on SHPN 04: 'In-patient accommodation: options for choice'. The en-suite is sized to comply with BS 8300 accessibility requirements.

The airflow rates quoted do not include any allowance for construction leakage. This has been set at 1 l/s of air per 1m^3 of suite envelope volume (see Appendix 2).

Where immuno-compromised patients are to be accommodated, such as in transplant units or specialist cancer units, there could be a need for positive pressure isolation rooms.

Isolation Suite

Ventilation – general

4.5 Ideally each suite should have its own dedicated supply and extract system. If two or more suites share a ventilation system there will be an inevitable increase in the complexity of the system and a corresponding reduction in reliability and serviceability. Further complications will occur when individual suites have to be isolated for deep cleaning following occupation. Routine maintenance of the ventilation system will result in complete closure of all suites

that it serves. For these reasons it is strongly recommended that each suite should have its own ventilation system. However, refer also to paragraph 4.8.

4.6 The object should be to keep the ventilation systems as simple as possible. Standby fans or motors are not required for either supply or extract. This is because the system as designed is robust enough to withstand fan failure without significantly compromising the level of protection. A flow sensor should be fitted to each system that will alarm on fan failure at a designated nurse station and the estates department.

4.7 Ductwork should be kept as direct and simple as possible. In order to facilitate duct cleaning, volume control devices and other obstructions in the distribution ducts should be avoided. Supply and extract flow rates should, where possible, be set by terminal and duct size design. In the unlikely event that volume control devices are required, iris dampers are the preferred type.

4.8 In a high-rise building a common supply and extract system may be the only feasible solution. In this case, run and standby fans would be required for the extract and a duplicate supply unit may be considered necessary. The supply and extract branches to each isolation suite should be fitted with spring-close gas-tight dampers. This will permit individual suites to be shut down for cleaning and maintenance. The common supply and extract systems will need to be controlled to ensure a constant volume in each isolation suite branch regardless of the number in use. The overall design should ensure that short-circuiting couldn't occur between isolation suites.

Fire strategy

4.9 The isolation suite is intended to be built as a single fire compartment. The positive pressure in the lobby will deter smoke originating in the corridor from entering the room. Smoke from a fire in the room will be contained within the suite and extracted via the en-suite extract. Due to this. the ventilation system serving the isolation facility should be kept running in the event of a fire.

4.10 Fire rated ductwork should be provided such that ducts can be considered an extension of the isolation suite. Fire dampers, where the ducts penetrate walls and floors, will not then be required.

4.11 A motorised smoke/fire damper should be fitted at the discharge of the supply air handling unit (AHU). The damper should close in the event of an AHU or intake fire under the control of a smoke detector mounted in the AHU.

Extract ventilation

4.12 An extract terminal should be fitted at high level in the en-suite room. An additional terminal may be fitted in certain circumstances at low level adjacent to the bedhead in the bedroom. The clinical requirement for this should be verified and such requirements would probably relate to highly infectious patients.

4.13 A transfer grille should be fitted at low level in the door between the bedroom and en-suite room.

4.14 The extract duct should be fitted with a spectacle plate or gas-tight damper so that the system can be sealed to allow the isolation suite to be disinfected. The plate or damper should be fitted at the inlet of the extract fan. This will also permit isolation of the extract fan for service and maintenance.

4.15 The extract fan unit should be located outside the building so that all ductwork within the building is under negative pressure. Access and cleaning hatches should only be fitted where absolutely necessary. If fitted they should be of the sealed type and marked with a bio-hazard symbol. If the fan has to be located inside the building it should be as close as practicable to the outside. The extract fan motor should be mounted out of the air stream and should be capable of being changed without withdrawing the impeller or opening up the ductwork. The extract fan should draw its power from the essential electrical system.

4.16 Extract filters will not be required provided that the fan can discharge in a safe location 3 m above the building height. If extract filters are fitted they should be in a 'safe change housing' outside the building on the suction side of the fan. Extract filters, where fitted, should be of H14 grade. Even if filtered, extract air must not be re-circulated.

4.17 Extract ductwork, the fan and discharge stack must be clearly marked to identify the isolation suite that they serve. Service, maintenance, cleaning and filter change of the system will be subject to a 'Permit to Work'.

Supply ventilation

4.18 The supply AHU should comply in all respects with the minimum standards set out in SHTM 2025:'Ventilation in Healthcare Premises'. (*This SHTM is under review and is listed for replacement by SHTM 03*). Heating and cooling should be provided, but not humidification. The fire/smoke damper fitted in the discharge from the AHU should close on plant shutdown and/or airflow failure, sealing the AHU from the distribution ductwork. This will prevent any reverse airflow and permit routine maintenance or system disinfection. The supply fan should draw its power from the essential electrical system.

4.19 The supply AHU and distribution ductwork must be clearly marked to identify the isolation suite that they serve. Access and cleaning hatches should only be fitted where absolutely necessary. They should be of the sealed type and marked with a bio-hazard symbol. Service, maintenance, cleaning and filter change of the system will be subject to a permit to work.

4.20 A G3 pre-filter and final filter should be fitted in the AHU. The lobby air supply terminal should be of a type into which a HEPA filter can be fitted. While it is not envisaged that a HEPA filter will be routinely required, this arrangement will allow for subsequent fitting when appropriate with the least disturbance. A

sealable upstream DOP injection test point will be required in the supply duct so that, if a HEPA filter is fitted, it can be challenge tested on installation.

4.21 A pressure stabiliser of the balanced blade type, set to operate at 10 Pascals, should be fitted above the door between the lobby and the bedroom. The stabiliser should be visible so that its correct operation can be seen. It should be of a style that will operate silently, and be correctly sized and positioned so that it does not cause a draught that would be uncomfortable for patients.

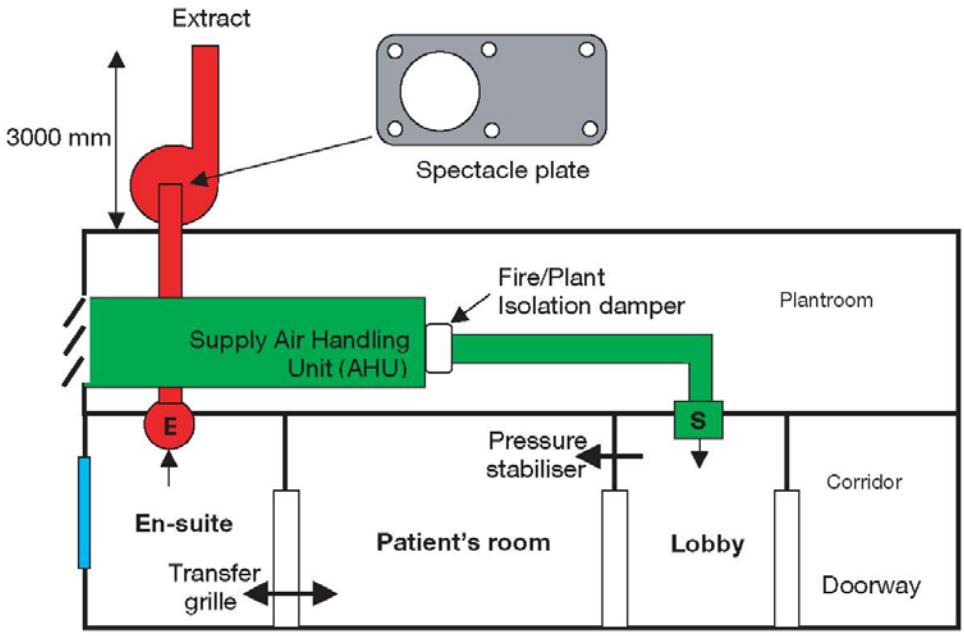
4.22 A direct reading gauge showing the pressure in the lobby with respect to the corridor should be mounted at eye level on the corridor wall adjacent to the lobby entry door. The gauge and lobby entry door must be clearly marked to identify the isolation suite to which they refer. In common systems serving more than one isolation room, automatic closing backdraught dampers will be required. Where HEPA filters are installed, these should be located so that staff can access them without recourse to entering isolation suites. Audio and visual alarms must be located at the entrance to the lobby and bedroom to warn nursing and maintenance staff of potential unsafe conditions. Continuous monitoring should be provided with remote indication at nurses stations, interlinked to the Building Management System with time delay (adjustable by Estates personnel) to take account of running-up of standby motors or damper operations or other plant items that may take time to open or close. Alarms based on sensing airflow failure should be provided rather than electrical failures. Alarm sound levels should be sufficient to attract attention without distress or annoyance and, if muted, should re-activate at 5-10 minute intervals.

Record keeping

4.23 A logbook will be required for each isolation suite. It should contain the following information:

- a schematic layout of the isolation suite and ventilation system serving it;
- information on the ventilation design parameters;
- a record of the actual ventilation performance at initial validation. (All of the tests set out in Appendix 2 ‘Acceptance testing of isolation suite’ should be carried out);
- records of the annual validations. (The parameters set out in Appendix 2 should be measured);
- records of the lobby pressure, taken by ward staff from gauges and monitoring devices provided;
- records of any routine service and maintenance activities;
- records of any repairs or modifications;
- a method statement for disinfecting the system.

Estates management should ensure that nursing staff are familiar with pressure gauges and able to record readings in the appropriate log book.



Isolation suite ventilation system – example layout

When the suite is taken out of use, the logbook should be preserved for at least five years.

Other considerations

4.24 As far as practicable, access to domestic hot and cold water services and their associated thermostatic mixing valves should be via access panels in the lobby or corridor. Every effort should be made to avoid service and maintenance staff having to enter or pass through the bedroom when carrying out routine service and maintenance tasks.

Service and maintenance

4.25 Spectacle plates or gas-tight dampers should be used to seal the system, should the suite and/or its ventilation system require disinfection. A method statement should be prepared detailing the procedure. For further guidance on disinfection refer to 'Biological agents: Managing the risks in Laboratories and healthcare premises' by the Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens, available from HSE. All works of service and maintenance should be subject to a permit to work.

Appendices

Appendix 1: Example room layouts – Use of single rooms for Isolation: Key Design Principles

Appendix 2: Acceptance testing of isolation suite

Appendix 1 : Example room layouts

Use of single rooms for Isolation: Key design principles

The room layouts in this Appendix are examples and are intended as a guide. Other room configurations are possible.

Current guidance (Scottish Health Planning Note 04: In-patient accommodation: Options for choice, May 2000) recommends that *"where not in a single-bed room each bedspace should not be less than 3.0m x 2.7m".* However interim guidance, issued on the 21st February 2007 by the Scottish Executive states that having regard to ergonomic criteria, primarily the space required for patient handling and other activities which take place in the immediate vicinity of the bed it is recognised that the minimum bedspace should not be less than 3.6m x 3.7m. It also states that when planning any new in-patient accommodation or any major refurbishments of existing accommodation it is recommended that the increased bedspace is adopted.

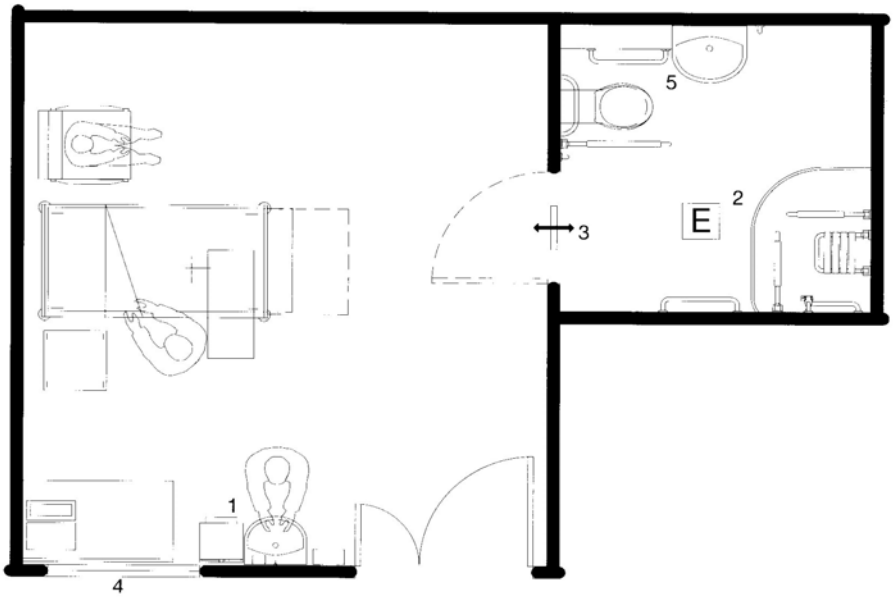
In planning for the construction or major refurbishment of healthcare facilities it is appropriate to provide an overall single occupancy room level of between 50% and 100%.

The appropriate level within that range is a matter for each individual NHSScotland Board to consider based on the following broad criteria:

- science-based decisions relating to the clinical and nursing care of patients and overall hygiene standards;
- value-based judgements about the nature of personal services and responsiveness to the local community and generational cultures;
- operational needs, for example managing volatility in demand or changing clinical needs and priorities; and
- the need to balance these against economic considerations.

Each Board may also want to give consideration to the patient group being treated.

Sheet 1: New build single room with en-suite facilities.

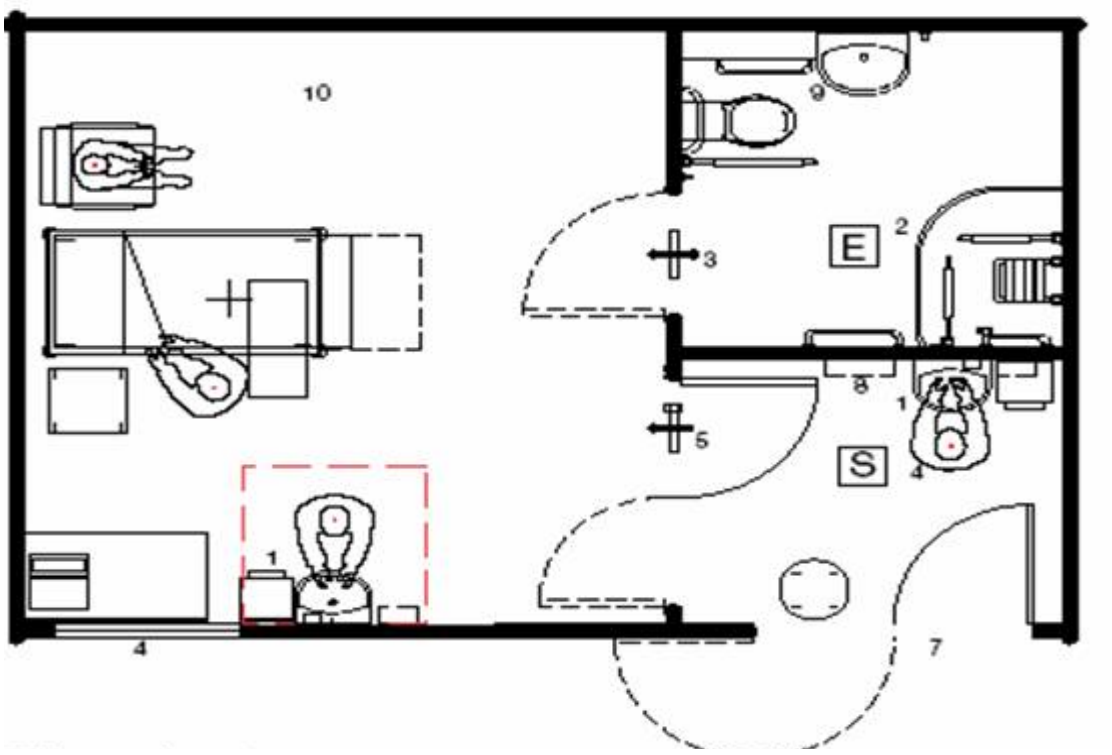


Minimum requirements:

1. Clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Provide suitable extract fan.
3. Transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. Observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds to allow for staff observation and patient views out.
5. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.

A42659819

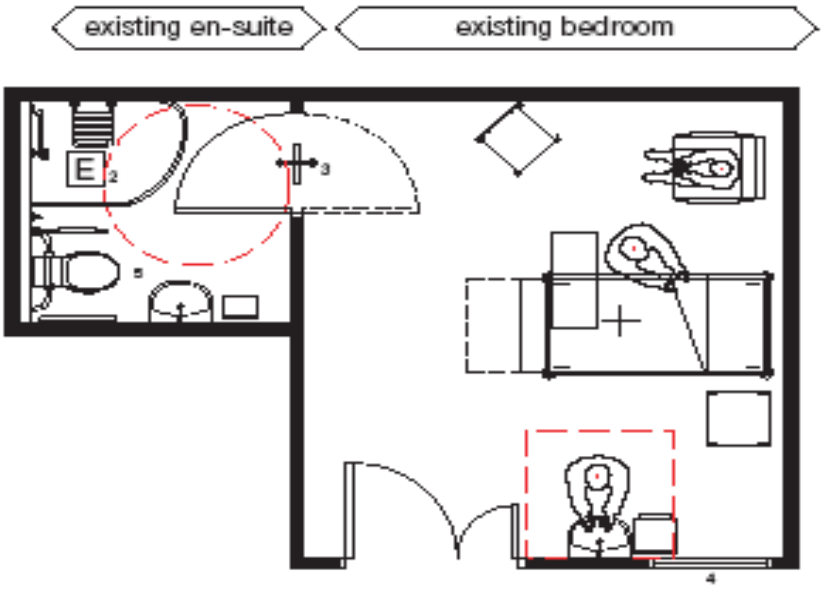
Sheet 2: New build single room with en-suite facilities and bed-access lobby (isolation suite)



Minimum requirements:

1. Clinical hand-wash-basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Provide suitable extract fan.
3. Install transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. Supply air.
5. Pressure stabiliser.
6. Observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds to allow for staff observation and patient views out.
7. Double door for personnel and bed access.
8 Disposable apron dispenser.
9. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.
10. Ceiling to be sealed solid construction, external window to be sealed.

Sheet 3: Existing single room with en-suite facilities

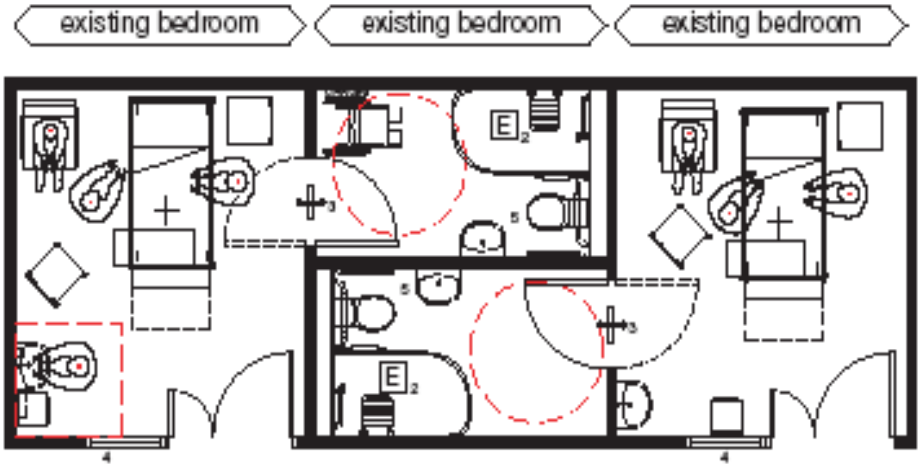


Minimum requirements to upgrade existing facilities

1. Add clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Upgrade existing extract fan.
3. Install transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. Observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds to allow for staff observation and patient views out.
5. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.

A42659819

Sheet: 4 Single rooms without en-suite facility. Upgrading three existing single rooms to provide two single rooms with en-suite facilities

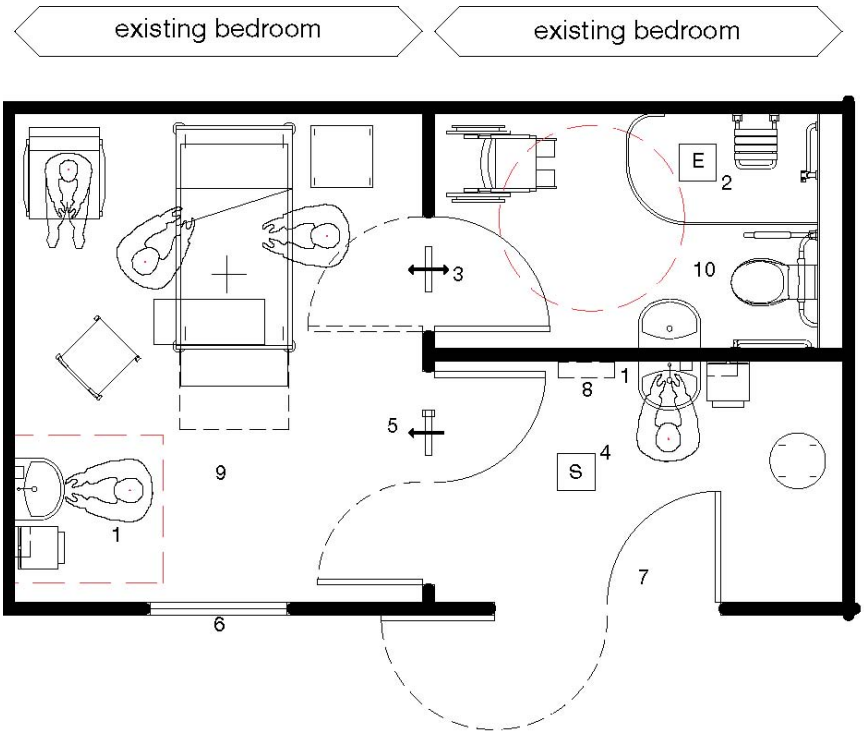


Minimum requirements to upgrade existing facilities:

1. Add clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Provide suitable extract fan.
3. Install transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. Observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds to allow for staff observation and patient views out.
5. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.

A42659819

Sheet 5: Single rooms without en-suite facility. Upgrading two existing single rooms to provide one single room with en-suite facilities and bed access lobby



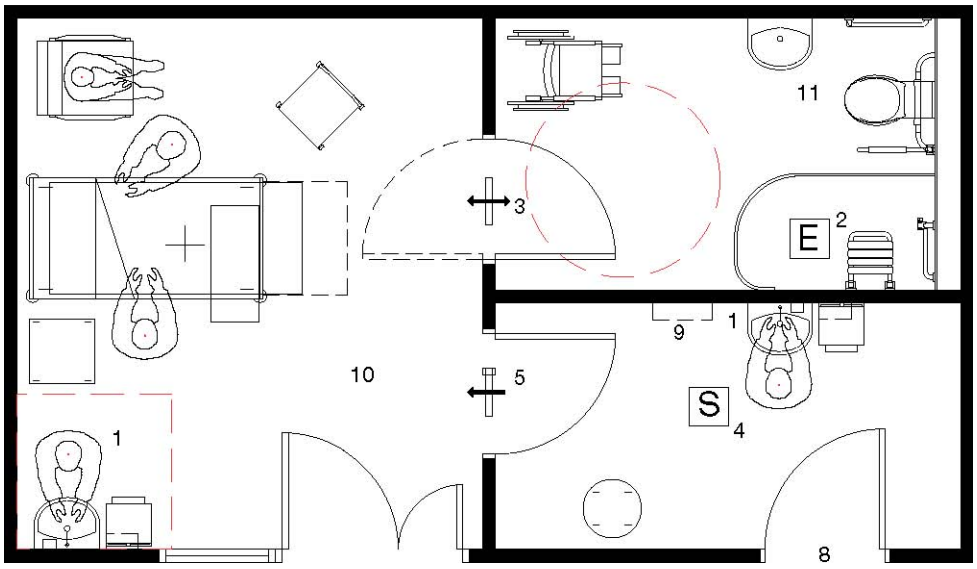
Minimum requirements to upgrade existing facilities

1. Add clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Provide suitable extract fan.
3. Install transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. Supply air.
5. Pressure stabiliser.
6. Observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds to allow staff observation and patients views out.
7. Double door for personnel and bed access.
8. Disposable apron dispenser.
9. Upgrade ceiling to sealed solid construction, external windows to be sealed.
10. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.

A42659819

Sheet 6: Single rooms without en-suite facility. Upgrading two existing single rooms to provide one single room with en-suite facilities and personnel access lobby

existing bedroom existing bedroom

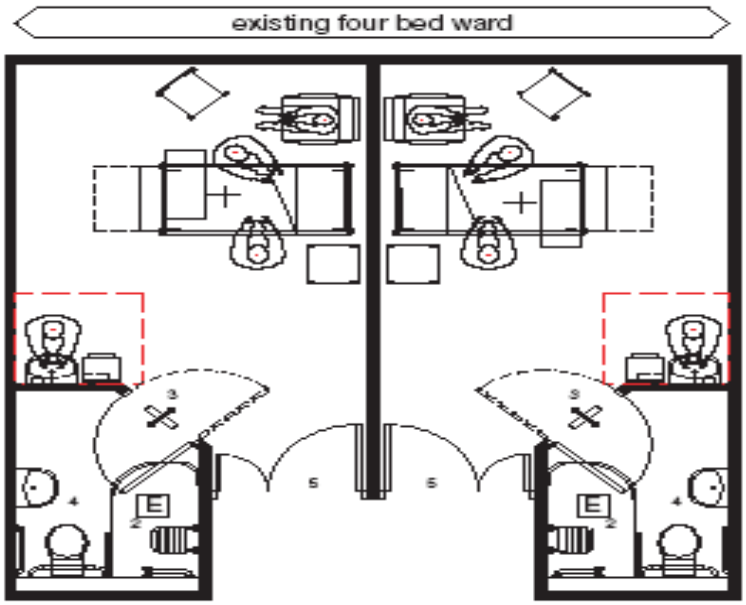


Minimum requirements to upgrade existing facilities

1. Add clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Provide suitable extract fan.
3. Install transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. Supply air.
5. Pressure stabiliser.
6. Observation window in corridor wall with integral privacy blinds to allow for staff observation and patient views out.
7. Existing door and a half for bed access only must be kept locked and have seals to minimise air transfer.
8. Single door access via lobby.
9. Disposable apron dispenser.
10. Upgrade ceiling to sealed solid construction, external windows to be sealed.
11. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.

A42659819

Sheet 7: Upgrading existing four bedded room to provide two single rooms with en-suite facilities.



Minimum requirements

1. Clinical hand-wash basin with non-touch, fixed temperature mixer tap.
2. Provide suitable extract fan.
3. Transfer grille to en-suite door.
4. En-suite WC to be non-touch flush and hand-wash basin to have single tap with flow and temperature control.
5. Doors to be fully glazed, with integral privacy blinds, to allow staff observation and patients views out.

Appendix 2: Acceptance testing of isolation suite

Definitions

Isolation suite

Includes the entry lobby, patient's room, en-suite facility and any storage or other area directly accessible from the patient's or en-suite room.

Isolation suite envelope

The isolation room suite bounded by a solid floor, solid ceiling and full-height walls that separate it from any other adjoining space or the outside.

Validation – Isolation suite air permeability (leakage rate)

The suite will be considered fit for purpose if at a test pressure of +20 and –20 Pascals it has an average leakage rate of not more than 1 l/s of air per 1m^3 of envelope volume. The method of testing is set out below.

Rationale*:* To ensure effective isolation, it is important that air leakage to or from adjacent areas is kept to a minimum. Construction gaps should be minimised and service penetrations sealed before the suite is tested. The test pressures are significantly more than would be achieved under a ventilation fault condition within the isolation suite. When in operation, the patient's room and en-suite are designed to be at a neutral or slightly negative pressure so the actual leakage between adjoining spaces should be insignificant.

Validation

Filtration test standards

General and fine filter grades to BS EN 779:2002 should be visually inspected to ensure that they are free from tears or other damage at the time of installation. They should be a good fit in their housing, with no obvious gaps that could allow air bypass.

High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filters, where fitted, should be certified by their manufacturer for conformity to BS EN 1822:2000. When installed, their performance should be checked with a particle counter using the method set out in BS EN 1822:2000 for in situ aerosol testing.

Air permeability – Tests method

1. Establish the volume of the isolation suite envelope as defined above.
2. Turn off the suite supply and extract ventilation systems and those serving adjoining spaces. (Rationale: All adjoining spaces need to be at atmospheric pressure in order to establish the true leakage rate.)
3. Seal all supply and extract terminals.
4. Wedge all internal doors open.
5. Fit a temporary board seal and test fan in the lobby to corridor doorway.
6. Run the fan to maintain a positive test pressure of 20 Pascal for at least two minutes.
7. Measure the airflow rate of the fan.
8. Reverse the fan and run it to maintain a negative test pressure of 20 Pascal for at least two minutes.
9. Measure the airflow rate of the fan.
10. Average the two airflow readings obtained.
11. Calculate the leakage rate in l/s of air per m^3 of envelope volume. If the isolation suite envelope is correctly sealed the readings should be within 5% of each other.

Further details of the test method are contained in 'Testing buildings for air leakage', CIBSE, TM23, 2000.

Close all internal doors and, using the test fan, check that the pressure stabiliser opens at 10 Pascal and that it will carry the design airflow without flutter.

These tests should be carried out at initial commissioning and as necessary thereafter following works of refurbishment or when there is any doubt as to the actual performance standard of the suite.

System operating standard

The suite will be considered fit for purpose if, with the ventilation system operating and all doors closed, the following parameters are achieved:

- a positive pressure of between 10 and 12 Pascals between the entry lobby and the corridor;
- the patient's room has an air change rate of at least 10 per hour;
- the en-suite room is at a negative pressure with respect to the patient's room;
- a failure of either the supply or extract fan will be indicated at a designated nurse station and the estates department.

The suite should be tested following initial commissioning and thereafter re-tested at least annually for conformity with this operating standard.

A42659819

References

Acts and Regulations

Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) Regulations 2002 and subsequent amendments, SI 2002 No 2677. The Stationery Office. http://www.opsi.gov.uk/si/si2002/20022677.htm

The Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004 and Amendment Regulations 2006, 2007, SI 2000 No 2531. The Stationery Office. http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation/scotland/ssi2004/20040406

British Standards etc

BS 8300: 2001 Design of buildings and their approaches to meet the needs of disabled people – Code of practice. British Standards Institute, London.

BS EN 779:2002 Particulate air filters for general ventilation. Determination of the filtration performance.

BS EN 1822-4:2000 High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Determining leakage of filter element (scan method).

BS EN 1822-5:2000 High efficiency air filters (HEPA and ULPA). Determining the efficiency of filter element.

NHSScotland Publications

Scottish Health Facilities Note (SHFN) 30: 'Infection control in the built environment: design and planning'. Health Facilities Scotland, 2007.

Scottish Health Planning Note (SHPN) 04: 'In-patient accommodation: options for choice'. Health Facilities Scotland 2001.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2015: 'Bedhead Services' Health Facilities Scotland 2001.

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2025: 'Ventilation in healthcare premises'.
Health Facilities Scotland, August 2001. (new edition forthcoming 2008, 'SHTM 03')

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2027: 'Hot and cold water supply, storage and mains services'. Health Facilities Scotland, December 2001. (Revised version SHTM 04 in preparation for publication in 2008).

Scottish Health Technical Memorandum 2040: 'The control of legionellae in healthcare premises: a code of practice'. Health Facilities Scotland December 2001. (Revised version in preparation for publication in 2008 within SHTM 04).

Other publications

The management and control of hospital acquired infection in acute NHS Trusts in England. National Audit Office, 2000.

Biological agents: Managing the risks in Laboratories and healthcare premises. Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens, The Stationary Office.

http://www.hse.gov.uk/biosafety/biologagents.pdf

Testing buildings for air leakage. CIBSE, TM23, 2000.

Useful websites

Hospital Infection Society	http://www.his.org.uk
Infection Control Nurses' Association	http://www.icna.co.uk
Health Protection Agency	http://www.hpa.org.uk
Royal College of Nursing	http://www.rcn.org.uk
Health Facilities Scotland	http://www.hfs.scot.nhs.uk
Health Protection Scotland	http://www.hps.scot.nhs.uk

Health Finance Directorate
Capital Planning and Asset Management Division

The Scottish Government

CEL 19 (2010)

2 June 2010

Dear Colleague

A POLICY ON DESIGN QUALITY FOR NHSSCOTLAND: 2010 REVISION

Summary

1. This letter provides colleagues of a revised statement of the Scottish Government's Policy on Design Quality for NHSScotland (Annex A). This policy articulates the Scottish Government Health Directorates ambition for NHSScotland's asset base and to embed the need for well-designed, sustainable healthcare environments as an integral part of high quality service delivery.

2. The Policy also sets out the principles which a NHSScotland Body's strategic Design Action Plan and the supporting project-specific Design Statement should address (Annex B). Two further annexes provide reference to relevant Scottish Government Health Directorates asset-related policies and supporting guidance (Annex C) and, useful references and web links (Annex D).

3. This CEL and the attached policy statement supersedes NHS HDL(2006)58. This CEL also provides information on Design Assessment within the SGHD CIG Business Case process.

Action

4. **Addressees should ensure that a copy of this CEL with Annexes is cascaded to all appropriate staff within their area of responsibility.**

5. **The revised Policy on Design Quality for NHSScotland and associated Mandatory Requirements take immediate effect.**

Background

6. HDL(2006)58, issued in 2006, announced the first publication of a Policy on Design Quality for NHSScotland which provided a policy framework to implement the aims of the then Scottish Executive Health Department, supported by a 3-year Framework Agreement with Architecture and Design Scotland. This Framework Agreement has now ended and therefore a revised policy statement is required to ensure that

Addresses

For action
Chief Executives, NHS Boards.
Chief Executives, Special Health Boards.

For information
Director, Health Facilities Scotland.
Chief Executive, Architecture and Design Scotland.
Chief Architect, SG Architecture and Place.
Head of Building Standards.
DG Health.
NHSScotland Strategic Facilities Group.
NHSScotland Property Advisory Group.

Enquiries to:
Ian Grieve
St Andrew's House
Regent Road
Edinburgh EH1 3DG

Tel: 0131-244 2777
Point of contact
details@scotland.gsi.gov.uk
ian.grieve@scotland.gsi.gov.uk
http://www.scotland.gov.uk
http://www.pcpd.scot.nhs.uk

the outcomes of development projects meet the Scottish Government's objectives and expectations for public investment. Support for the implementation of the design agenda will be provided by means of a coordinated, tripartite working arrangement between Scottish Government Health Directorates (SGHD), Health Facilities Scotland (HFS) and Architecture and Design Scotland (A+DS) to facilitate the procurement of well-designed, sustainable, healing environments which support the policies and objectives of NHS Boards and the Scottish Government Health Directorates.

7. The attached policy statement reflects consultation with stakeholders in the Scottish Government, Architecture and Design Scotland and Health Facilities Scotland. It provides a concise definition of policy along with details of Mandatory Requirements which must be complied with by NHSScotland Bodies. For those Special Health Boards (and Operating Divisions within) which are not actively engaged in the procurement of new healthcare premises and refurbishment of existing health care premises for the purpose of service provision, the general principles of the attached policy should be applied, such as when considering premises for lease or occupation.

8. The principle upon which this policy is founded builds upon the core principle of the 2006 policy statement - to ensure that all NHSScotland bodies fully integrate design quality and sustainable development principles throughout all stages of the healthcare building procurement process as an integral part of the commitment to deliver a high quality, safe, sustainable environment for patient care.

Implementation

9. SGHD, A+DS and HFS have developed a range of initiatives to assist NHSScotland in addressing design quality issues in the procurement of healthcare building projects, the summary objectives of which are to:

   - raise the level of design quality achieved through infrastructure investment;
   - increase the capacity of health boards and central agencies in respect of the above; and
   - assist in sharing good practices.

10. In order to meet the above objectives, A+DS will deliver 3 main activities on behalf of SGHD.

    Activity 1
    Engaging with partner organisations and central procurement agencies in order to assist them in their work and in raising design awareness of 'external' parties involved in delivery.

    Activity 2
    Providing, in partnership with HFS, a co-ordinated assessment of the potential quality of proposed projects to support those responsible for decision making within the business case process.

    This will involve contributing particular expertise on the aspects of design relating to Government policy on design and place making to a process administered and led by HFS who will, in addition to the administrative elements, provide particular expertise

on the aspects of design relating to functionality, particularly technical and sustainability standards developed by HFS and the Department of Health in England.

Activity 3
Assisting in building a body of knowledge and evidence of good practice in both process and product across NHSScotland.

A strand of this activity is the development and management of a website, '**Healthier Places**', which has been designed to house information on good healthcare design to assist NHS Boards in the development of the project brief and to raise awareness of the good practice being developed and delivered across NHSScotland and elsewhere. In addition to providing guidance on the development of 'Design Statements' and, articles on healthcare design topics, the website holds a project resource - '**Pulse**' - a database of projects and examples of good practice.
http://www.healthierplaces.org/

Design Assessment and the Business Case process

11. An assessment of design quality is now part of the SGHD Business Case process. All projects submitted to the SGHD Capital Investment Group for approval are now subject to an assessment of design quality and functionality, including technical and sustainability standards. This Design Assessment will take place at the Initial Agreement, Outline Business Case and Full Business Case stages of approval.

12. The Scottish Government Health Directorates' purpose in developing and implementing this process is to ensure that the outcomes of development projects meet the Government's objectives and expectations for public investment. The aim of mapping design into the Business Case process is to support the implementation of this Policy by improving the level of design quality achieved across NHSScotland and, ultimately, the outcomes achieved by doing so.

13. To assist NHS Boards in utilising good design to achieve the best outcomes from their development projects, Boards are required to develop and produce a Design Statement prior to the submission of their Initial Agreement. The Design Statement is the first control document produced for a project and should be consistent with the Board's overall vision contained within the strategic Design Action Plan.

14. Additional guidance on Design Assessment and the Business Case process has been added to the Scottish Capital Investment Manual. The guidance also includes advice on the preparation of the Design Statement.

Yours sincerely,

Mike Baxter
Deputy Director, Capital Planning and Asset Management

The Scottish Government

A Policy on Design Quality for NHSScotland

Scottish Government
Health Finance Directorate
Capital Planning and Asset Management

2010

A POLICY ON DESIGN QUALITY FOR NHSSCOTLAND

Purpose

The purpose of this document is to provide NHSScotland Bodies[1] with a clear statement of policy on design quality. It also provides guidance on how NHSScotland Bodies can ensure that design quality is embedded within the healthcare building procurement process.

Context

In recent years the value of good design has been increasingly recognised and a wealth of evidence based findings has demonstrated that good design adds value, not only from an economic perspective but also in terms of a range of social and environmental benefits. This capacity to add value is particularly important for healthcare environments, where the physical and psychological well-being of patients, staff and visitors is of paramount consideration.

In October 2000, the Prime Minister established a UK-wide 'Better Public Buildings' initiative to achieve a step change in the design quality of publicly procured buildings. Over the last decade, Scottish Ministers have in parallel, through their policies, sought to achieve a culture of quality in the procurement of publicly-funded buildings that embraces good design as a means of achieving value for money and sustainable development.

The Scottish Government has five strategic objectives; it is committed to creating a Scotland that is:

- wealthier and fairer;
- stronger and safer;
- healthier;
- greener; and
- smarter.

It is clear that the design quality of our built environment must, by necessity, play a vital part in our ability to meet all of these strategic objectives. Government, thus, continues to promote and to encourage investment in well-designed buildings and places in both the public and private sectors.

This document responds to Government's quality objectives within guidance and initiatives particular to NHSScotland.

Design quality is especially important in the context of healthcare building, where well-designed health buildings can help patients recover their spirits and their health and have a positive effect on staff performance and retention, as well as improving the efficiency of operational relationships and providing better value for money in the context of whole-life costs. The Scottish Government therefore recognises the importance of good building design as the physical means of delivery for a range of wider policy objectives.

The Scottish Government's Architecture and Place Division which was established to implement policy commitments, can offer advice on design and acts as the sponsor body for Architecture and Design Scotland, an Executive Non Departmental Public Body established as the national champion for good architecture, design and planning in the built environment.

Health buildings can often be the places in which we may feel at our most vulnerable, whether as a patient, relative or friend. The quality of the building environment that we experience can provide us with calming reassurance or, conversely, it can accentuate our feeling of stress and unease.

Many factors can contribute to engendering a sense of ease, for instance: the first impression of the facility from the public realm, the entrance experience, the degree of natural light, brightness and airiness, colour and texture, an easily understood layout with clearly defined focal points, uncluttered signage and a clear distinction between the realms of public and private space, maintaining patient dignity.

In most health buildings, external public spaces are vitally important in that they can also provide the opportunity for positive respite for patients, visitors and staff in periods of stress. Sensitive landscaping and well-defined public space in a healthcare environment can provide far more than simply an attractive setting. Through careful design social or intimate, tranquil spaces can be created, providing an environment where people might want to sit or meet, even spaces for physical therapy and play and which further contribute to the healing process.

Scottish Ministers believe that a concern for the quality of Scotland's architecture must go far beyond the design of individual buildings. Distinctive, high quality places as well as high quality buildings are vitally important to the social, environmental and economic success of our cities, towns and rural communities.

The Scottish Government's National Outcomes set out what Scottish Ministers aim to achieve in the next ten years, and a key objective for the built environment is that “we live in well-designed, sustainable places where we are able to access the amenities and services we need”.

A sustainable community is one which not only makes a positive contribution to mitigating the effects of climate change; a sustainable community is a place which is successful in the way that it continues to flourish socially and economically over time. The quality of healthcare facilities along with other public buildings and places can be a significant factor in making communities successful, because they can offer a great deal to the creation of a wider, attractive environment which people would wish to inhabit.

The overarching Purpose of the Scottish Government is to increase sustainable economic growth, and good place-making supports this Purpose in the following ways:

Good place-making can influence the economy of an area by making it an appealing place to live, to work, and to visit - It can provide environments and infrastructure which function well; link well with surrounding settlements; which attract business; and in which business can flourish;

- Good place-making can provide communities with an important cultural context, a sense of pride and belonging and, a sense of local and national identity;
- Through good design, safe, welcoming places can be created to which people would wish to return frequently, and which would have a greater chance of longevity;

- Good place-making can promote active, healthy, inclusive lifestyles by providing attractive and accessible green spaces, and through layouts which discourage car usage and which provide the right facilities within reasonable walking and cycling distance;

- Good place-making can embed community facilities into our communities in ways which are accessible and which provide a richness of opportunity for social interaction; and

- Good place-making can have a profound effect on the sustainability of our lifestyles, in respect of the impact that we have on the land and other scarce resources; how much energy we use; and, again, through reductions in car usage.

The Planning etc. (Scotland) Act 2006 requires Local Authorities to develop dynamic plans which describe a vision for the local community; establishing 'what goes where and why' in order to develop a community structure that supports strategic objectives. Health Boards are encouraged to be active participants in the development of these local development plans in order to:

- embed the principles of healthy urban development into the plan – those aspects needed to support local health promotion and help people make healthier lifestyle choices;

- embed the principle needs for the physical infrastructure needed to deliver on 'shifting the balance of care' such as the potential location of new healthcare facilities;

- establish major infrastructure strategies needed to support the delivery of the Single Outcome Agreement; and

- link the board's strategic asset management plan into the local development plan to consider both the beneficial use of public land assets and the transport implications of major changes in estate strategy.

The creation of a new or refurbished facility can bring with it the opportunity to show a positive civic presence, and the development of a high quality public building can do much to help the creation or regeneration of communities. It is thus also a matter of considerable importance that health buildings respond to the urban or rural contexts in which they sit. This includes considerations such as how they fit within historic contexts, how the approach and entrance act to welcome concerned families and friends, and how they contribute to the quality of their neighbourhoods, both in terms of the buildings themselves and the places they create around them. In considering the provision of healthcare facilities, it is important to also give careful thought to the opportunities for good 'place-making'.

Healthcare buildings play a significant part in the environment and, increasingly, patients are becoming "empowered" to demand better environments in which they receive healthcare. It is appropriate that we embrace such matters and introduce appropriate policies and initiatives in Scotland.

At the heart of this policy is the recognition that strong client commitment is required to deliver facilities that provide the high quality and sustainable caring environments we desire. We now expect NHSScotland bodies to develop their individual visions for the kind of places in which patients, staff and visitors would wish care to be provided:

- for patients - a welcoming, healing and reassuring place that supports life;

- for staff – a place that supports staff in their work and that will not constrain future work;

- for visitors – a place to meet and discuss, a place that I can leave loved ones.

These environments must be able to support the high quality healthcare services which are to be delivered within.

This aligns with the aims of the **Scottish Healthcare Quality Strategy**. The Strategy reflects the shared ambitions of everyone in Scotland whether a patient, a carer, or whether working for NHSScotland in a community, primary or acute care setting, to create high quality person-centred, clinically effective and safe healthcare services and to be recognised as being world-leading in our approach.

The aim is for everyone in Scotland to work together to ensure better health and higher quality healthcare services which are flexible and reactive to each individual circumstance. These principles are consistent with the aims of this policy, to embed the need for well designed, sustainable and safe healthcare environments as an integral part of service delivery.

The term 'good design' is not merely a question of style or taste but describes what arises from the intelligent and creative synthesis of many interrelated factors such as: strategic planning of healthcare provision; social and physical regeneration; the local urban (or rural) context and forms; links to infrastructure and transport; sustainability agendas; the building's sense of welcome; intelligibility of layout; security; unobtrusive supervision; ease of use and maintenance; efficiency; and, promotion of human dignity. It covers the way in which buildings sit within and, contribute to, their community as well as how they work and look. Successful healthcare design resolves a wide range of functional requirements efficiently whilst, at the same time, exploring the opportunities to provide an uplifting environment for patients, visitors and staff.

Design, therefore, is just as much about process of change management as it is about what the final product looks like. Design is present in all projects - first you imagine what you are looking to achieve and test that this is possible. You then move on to sketching a limited number of possible worlds that, to varying degrees, will house and support your needs. By analysing these and making choices you narrow the options down to the world that you will build. You get the best result by using skill and a spark of creativity to make every element work hard to deliver more than one part of your vision. Therefore good design need not cost more and the difference between achieving good or poor quality outcomes is more often the result of having the right knowledge or advice, understanding, care and commitment.
Good Design is the intelligent application of a scarce resource

Good design can therefore be seen as largely objective. A design proposal can be evaluated through the use of appropriate tools such a Design Quality Indicators (DQIs) to assess whether the proposed building will function efficiently and effectively; whether there is clear evidence of thoughtful, imaginative and even inspirational proposals that will not only work, but will help the people within them to work and feel better; whether the proposed building will integrate with its surroundings in an appropriate manner and create a sense of place and; whether the materials, construction methods and the proposed layout will enhance long-term value for money. Indeed, Scotland's Infrastructure Investment Plan 2008 establishes that good design is key to achieving best value from all public sector investment.

> ***"In developing Scotland's infrastructure, the Scottish Government recognises that good building design should be responsive to its social, environmental and physical context. It should add value and reduce whole life costs. Good building design should be flexible, durable, easy to maintain, sustainable, attractive and***

healthy for users and the public; and it should provide functional efficient adaptable spaces ... Equally important to the design of individual buildings is the design of sustainable places. Well-designed buildings and places can revitalise neighbourhoods and cities; reduce crime, illness and truancy; and help public services perform better".

Design evaluation, in particular Post Project Evaluation and Post Occupancy Evaluation, can contribute to the emerging field of "evidence-based design" which is proving a valuable tool in the design process towards both reducing costs and improving outcomes. Research has shown that evidence-based design methods, introduced early in the process of facility programming and design can improve the experience of patients who will be treated within the healthcare facility and assist in health recovery which results in improving medical outcomes, shorter bed stays, greater throughput and a reduction in patient and staff stress.

The Way Forward

The Scottish Government has set out an ambitious agenda to modernise NHSScotland and its infrastructure. This agenda challenges NHSScotland Bodies to modernise the way in which healthcare is delivered to patients and challenges them to ensure that the infrastructure developed, deployed and maintained is capable of supporting high quality, modern patient care.

The NHS in Scotland has a vision for:

'an estate designed with "a level of care and thought that conveys respect"; buildings that grow from the local history and landscape, that are developed in partnership with the local community. A work of joint learning and jopint responsibility that is particular to that community and that place; "not off-the-shelf show boxes".' [A]

The **Better Health, Better Care Action Plan**, published in 2007, affirms the Scottish Government's commitment to improving the physical and mental wellbeing of the people of Scotland through supporting the provision of well designed, sustainable places. The Action Plan also articulates the Scottish Government's vision of a mutual National Health Service, a shift to a new ethos for health in Scotland that sees the Scottish people and the staff of the NHS as partners, or co-owners, in the NHS.

These policy changes place health and wellbeing and the over-arching issue of sustainability at the centre of the lives of the people of Scotland as the NHS strives to become more accountable and patient-focused. If the commitment to create a healthier, wealthier, fairer, safer and stronger Scotland is to be realised, NHS Boards must ensure that in the context of designing new facilities, they deliver not only high quality solutions but also realise benefits for community development and the wider environment.

(Ref [A]: From an interview with Dr Harry Burns, Chief Medical Officer - *A Vision of Health: NHSScotland's agenda for realising value in the developing healthcare estate*, Architecture and Design Scotland 2009)

Frameworks Scotland

Evidence exists that the traditional approach to construction procurement fails to satisfy clients and does not generate the efficiency improvements delivered in most other industries. With regard to NHSScotland, this means available capital and revenue resources must be used more effectively, to deliver better outcomes and make the best use of 'client-side' skills and capacity.

Health Facilities Scotland has, on behalf of the Scottish Government and NHSScotland, led the development of a collaborative construction procurement initiative. **Frameworks Scotland – Excellence in Healthcare Construction** is a strategic and flexible partnering approach to the procurement of publicly funded construction work and complements other procurement initiatives for the delivery of health facilities in Scotland.

This partnering approach reduces the adversarial attitudes which can make it more difficult to deliver successful project outcomes. Partnering arrangements reduce waste in both the process and product streams, promote quality and also facilitate the sharing of best practice and lessons learned from one project to another.

It should be recognised by anyone involved in planning, designing and delivering NHSScotland's healthcare estate that there is currently an unprecedented opportunity and a need both to ensure and to demand well-designed, sustainable healthcare buildings. Framework Scotland therefore is and, should be, one of the primary vehicles for delivering sustainability in the construction, management and maintenance of the healthcare estate. Delivering design quality and sustainability through the Framework will require a consistent approach with the Scottish Capital Investment Manual guidance, alongside the application of and, proper attention to, AEDET and BREEAM Healthcare requirements at the appropriate stages of a project.

Further information on the Frameworks Scotland initiative can be found on the Health Facilities Scotland website.

The 'hub' Programme

The **'hub' Initiative** is a major programme of the Scottish Futures Trust.

'hub' is a procurement vehicle supporting a long term programme of investment in community infrastructure for local authorities, NHS Boards and other public sector bodies across Scotland. It will provide a mechanism for delivering assets more effectively through a single partner, with continuous improvement leading to better value for money. The opportunity for a private sector delivery partner is to be part of a systemic approach to infrastructure planning and delivery in a territory over an extended time period.

'hub' will deliver projects from a core identified scope and, in future, from wider service development business cases, in particular those projects that promote joint working amongst community planning partners. Projects will focus on new build but could also include the refurbishment and asset management services of existing infrastructure.

The overarching objective of 'hub' is to improve the efficiency of community infrastructure delivery – with a particular emphasis on supporting the provision of more joint services across local authorities, health boards and other community partners. In Scotland there are good examples of joint premises development, but these tend to be one-offs and do not offer a model for the long term strategic planning of joint premises development and joint services delivery. 'hub' should provide a systematic approach to service delivery, from a model predicated on continuous improvement in both cost and quality. This can be achieved by the public sector by working in close partnership with a private sector partner, where both the public and private sector stakeholders have a financial interest in a successful outcome.

The first two Pathfinder Territories are the South East and North. More details can be found at http://www.hubscotland.org.uk/

It is critical that design issues are addressed regardless of the procurement method used to deliver healthcare buildings and, that the outcomes specified for these buildings in terms of the care environment are reflected in their design. However, the implementation of design quality and the procurement route used have a particular relationship and therefore the procurement method used can have a significant bearing on the development of design quality during the process. Although it can be argued that good design is independent of cost, its relationship with design management and procurement in practice needs careful examination. The National Audit Office report "Improving Public Services Through Better Construction" (March 2005) supports this view and advocates that all key stakeholders should be involved and all proposals subjected to independent challenge before key design decisions are made and that design and decision-making be based on "whole-life value".

The concept of 'evidence-based design' has already been mentioned in the context of Post Project Evaluations. There has been a historical assumption that each healthcare building has to be unique in order to fulfil the vision and aspirations of the brief which can, unfortunately, result in the repetition of mistakes, albeit perhaps unintentionally. The starting point for any new healthcare building should, logically, be the successes of one or a number of existing buildings based on a careful analysis of what constitutes the 'good' and what constitutes the 'bad'.

Also of importance is the emerging field of 'supportive healthcare design'[B]. Traditionally, there has been an assumption that the main requirement placed upon a healthcare facility should be the mitigation of infection or the risk of exposure to disease. Additionally, through decades of advances in medical science and technology, many healthcare designers and technicians have been conditioned to create buildings that are successful delivery platforms for new technology. By concentrating on the need for functional efficiency and the pathogenic concept of disease and health, healthcare facilities have been procured which contain environments which can be considered stark, institutional, stressful to their occupants and thus detrimental to the quality of care they are intended to provide. In spite of evidence of the major stress caused by illness and the subsequent traumatic experience of hospitalisation, there has, historically, been comparatively little emphasis on the creation of surroundings which can calm patients, reinforce their ability to cope in such environments and generally address their social and psychological needs.

The process of 'supportive design' begins by eliminating the environmental characteristics which are known to contribute to stress or can have negative impacts on outcomes and, importantly, continues by emphasising the inclusion of characteristics in the healthcare environment which research has indicated have the ability to calm patients, reduce stress and strengthen their ability to cope and promote healthy, healing processes.

(Ref [B]: Ulrich R S, 2000 - 'Effects of Healthcare Environmental Design on Medical Outcomes'
Ulrich R S, 2000 - 'Evidence based environmental design for improving medical outcomes. Proceedings of the conference: *Healing By Design: Building for Healthcare in the 21st Century*', McGill University Health Centre, Montreal)

Due to the length of time that healthcare buildings may be in use, there is potential to constrain changes in delivery practices. It is therefore vitally important that design processes are an integral part of a robust procurement mechanism in order to ensure that buildings are not only functional when constructed but are flexible and adaptable over their entire lifetime.

SGHD will continue to play its part in supporting and implementing wider Scottish Government procurement strategies and policies by setting these within a healthcare-specific context.

Policy Aims

- The purpose of this policy is to articulate the Scottish Government Health Directorates ambition for NHSScotland's asset base and to embed the need for well-designed, sustainable healthcare environments as an integral part of high quality service delivery. It also provides guiding principles which a NHSScotland Body's strategic Design Action Plan and the supporting project-specific Design Statement should address (Annex B) and two further annexes providing reference to relevant Scottish Government Health Directorates asset-related policies and supporting guidance (Annex C) and, useful references and web links (Annex D).

- The Scottish Government is committed through its stated Purpose to encouraging sustainability by the development of infrastructure and place: "providing sustainable, integrated and cost-effective public transport alternatives to the car as well as a planning and development regime which is joined up and geared towards achieving sustainable places and sustainable economic growth". The Government recognises that the Scottish planning and building standards mechanisms have a role in the delivery of a high quality, sustainable physical infrastructure. However, the Government also recognises that everyone connected with the delivery of this infrastructure has a role to play in driving up standards for the planning, design and maintenance of the built and natural environment. The Scottish Government Health Directorates believe that improving the quality of our caring environments is crucial to delivering this commitment and to achieving the Government's National Outcome of ensuring that 'we live in well-designed sustainable places where we are able to access the amenities and services we need'. Improved caring environments also act in support of the 'Healthier' Strategic Objective to help people to sustain and improve their health, especially in disadvantaged communities, ensuring better, local and faster access to health care.

- **Therefore this policy statement requires that all NHSScotland Bodies, as an integral part of the commitment to deliver the highest quality of environment for patient care, ensure that design quality is fully integrated into the healthcare building procurement process and is apportioned appropriate emphasis throughout all stages of this process.**

Scope

This policy must be considered alongside other Scottish Government Health Directorates policies and supporting guidance bearing upon NHSScotland assets including those for capital procurement, asset management, sustainable development, environmental management, fire safety, and, property transactions. Such central policy statements and supporting guidance are intended to inform the formulation and updating of an NHSScotland Body's operational policies and of supporting guidance. Such operational policies and asset strategies are important corporate expressions of a NHSScotland Body's intensions and as such should be a manifestation of integrated service planning and the appropriate involvement of all relevant interests.

This policy must also be considered alongside other relevant Health Directorates, Scottish Government and UK Government policies and commitments.

Policy Statements

Statement 1 All NHSScotland Bodies[1], as clients, must commit to the integration of design quality in the procurement of healthcare building throughout all stages of the process, regardless of procurement route used.

Statement 2 All NHSScotland Bodies must have a strategy for design quality – a Design Action Plan - consistent with and supportive of the Health Directorates and wider Scottish Government asset-related policy and supporting guidance (listed at Annex C) and, with the policy guidance contained within Annex B of this document.

Statement 3 The SGHD must provide guidance on compliance with those aspects of statutory and mandatory requirements which are particular to the procurement, design and delivery of healthcare buildings and guidance on best practice. This will be effected through the support to be provided by Health Facilities Scotland and Architecture and Design Scotland under the tripartite working partnership with SGHD.

Mandatory Requirements

1. Each NHSScotland Board must have a clear, articulated vision for its estate and strategy for using good design to deliver that vision – a Design Action Plan – consistent with Health Directorates and wider Scottish Government policy. The Design Action Plan must be appended to a Board's Property and Asset Management Strategy (PAMS) and reviewed annually as part of the PAMS review process.

2. Each NHSScotland Board must appoint a member of the NHS Board to act as Design Champion at a strategic level to assist in articulating and promoting the Board's design vision and, where not impractical, also a Senior Officer to act as supporting Design Champion at a technical level with knowledge and experience in capital investment procedures and expertise in technical matters.

3. All NHSScotland Bodies engaged in the procurement of both new build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings must do so in compliance with EU, UK and Scottish Government procurement policy and guidance.

4. All NHSScotland Bodies engaged in the procurement of both new-build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings must, prior to the submission to SGHD of the Initial Agreement, develop a Design Statement for each project as a means of establishing the design standards for which the project and how these will be assessed by the Board within the Business Case approvals process. The Design Statement must be consistent with the strategic Design Action Plan.

5. All NHSScotland Bodies, as clients, must ensure the development of a clear project brief which should not only describe the physical requirements of the building but should also articulate the Board's vision and aspiration consistent with the strategic Design Action Plan. The 'Design Statement' may be used or developed for to this purpose, and should be included in briefing and in the HLIP issued to prospective PSCPs

6. All NHSScotland Bodies engaged in the procurement of both new-build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings must carry out independent environmental accreditation for projects. The Scottish Capital Invesment Manual requires that all new builds above £2m obtain a BREEAM Healthcare (or equivalent) 'Excellent' rating and all

refurbishments above £2m obtain a 'Very Good' rating. If the capital costs are less than £2m, projects should undertake a BREEAM pre-assessment to establish whether BREEAM Healthcare is a viable option.

7. All NHSScotland Bodies engaged in the procurement of both new-build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings must use and properly utilise the English Department of Health's Activity DataBase (ADB) as an appropriate tool for briefing, design and commissioning.
[If deemed inappropriate for a particular project and an alternative tool or approach is used, the responsibility is placed upon the NHSScotland Body to demonstrate that the alternative is of equal quality and value in its application.]

8. All NHSScotland Bodies must use Design Quality Indicator (DQI) tools as appropriate to manage their design requirements through the life of a project. The English Department of Health's Achieving Excellence in Design Evaluation Toolkit (AEDET Evolution) and associated supplementary tools such as ASPECT are recognised as the exemplars towards achieving the appropriate level of project design management.

Monitoring

9. SGHD will monitor the integration of design quality into healthcare building procurement through the Business Case approvals process which will be facilitated through a coordinated assessment of the potential quality of proposed projects to support those responsible for decision making within the Business Case process.

This assessment will involve the contribution of particular expertise on the aspects of design relating to government policy on design and place-making from Architecture and Design Scotland and, of particular expertise on the aspects of design relating to functionality, particularly technical and sustainability standards, from Health Facilities Scotland.

10. All NHSScotland Bodies engaged in the procurement of both new-build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings must conduct thorough and, independent, Post Project Evaluations (PPEs) and Post-Occupancy Evaluations (POEs) and make available to SGHD any resulting evaluation data which will be used in the formulation of generic reports to inform future policy and disseminate nationally the lessons learned.

The planning of Post Project Evaluations and Post Occupancy Evaluations is a mandatory requirement of the Scottish Capital Investment Manual for all projects in excess of £1.5 million and should be considered best practice for all projects.

For projects between £1.5m and £5m, the NHSScotland body's internal governance arrangements should ensure the production and reporting of PPEs and POEs. An annual summary report in respect of such projects should be submitted to the Scottish Government Capital Planning and Asset Management Division.

For projects in excess of £5m, PPE and POE Reports must be submitted to the Scottish Government Capital Planning and Asset Management Division. Timescales for the production and delivery of such reports will be monitored by SGHD in common with other key milestones in the project lifecycle.

Full Business Cases for capital projects will not be approved unless Post Project Evaluation and Post Occupancy Evaluation has been properly planned in advance and suitably incorporated into the Full Business Case.

Support

11. Support for the implementation of the design agenda will be provided by means of a coordinated, tripartite working arrangement between SGHD, Health Facilities Scotland and Architecture and Design Scotland to facilitate the procurement of well-designed, sustainable, healing environments which support the policies and objectives of NHS Boards and the Scottish Government Health Directorates.

[1] NHSScotland Bodies in the context of this document means all Health Boards, Special Health Boards and the Common Services Agency performing functions on behalf of Scottish Ministers

Policy Guidance

A NHSScotland Body's **Design Action Plan** and supporting project-specific **Design Statement** should be consistent with and supportive of the guidance contained within this Annex and the policy and guidance documents listed at Annex C.

[The following guidance aligns in part with the Scottish Government "*Construction Procurement Manual: Section 6 – Design quality in building procurement*" but with appropriate additions and amendments in order to apply to the healthcare context.]

Contents:

Design Quality

Establishing and evaluating design quality

General

Boards are required to establish design quality criteria (non-negotiable project aims and benchmarks) for all development projects in the form of a project 'design statement'. As we use buildings, for the most part, to house and support human activity, these criteria are to be built around the needs of the people who the facility will directly impact upon and further expanded to include the elements needed to deliver on the broader responsibilities of using public money – that of addressing local and national needs. The Design Statement then includes the board's proposals for self assessment of the project as it progresses, describing the key stages at which the decisions will be checked against the established design quality criteria, how this will be done and what skills and information will be needed.

Assessing design quality is not a wholey subjective activity. Many other design issues can be assessed objectively - whether a building will function efficiently and effectively; whether there is clear evidence of thoughtful, imaginative and even inspirational proposals that will not only work, but support people to feel and work better; whether it responds positively to its surroundings; whether it provides well-defined and meaningful public spaces for patients and the community; and whether the materials, construction methods and the proposed layout will enhance long-term value for money. The Scottish Government Construction Procurement Manual: Section 6 – Design quality in building procurement lists a number of key issues to be considered in evaluating a design.

General guidance on achieving value for money (VFM) in works procurement, based on seeking to achieve an optimum combination of whole life cost and quality, is set out in Section 2 of the Scottish Executive Construction Procurement Manual. Evaluating and achieving consensus on quality can be facilitated through the use of formal techniques and there are a number of tools which can help. The Construction Industry Council (CIC), for example, has developed its Design Quality Indicator (DQI) to evaluate the design quality of buildings throughout the development and life cycle of a project.

Healthier Places Website

This website has been designed to house information on good healthcare design to assist boards in brief development and to raise awareness of the good practice being developed and delivered across NHSScotland and elsewhere. In addition to providing guidance on the development of 'design statements' and, articles on healthcare design topics, the website holds a project resource - '**Pulse'** - a database of projects and examples of good practice that can be used in two main ways:

- **Search by project type** : to find out about recent and current developments in NHSScotland, and elsewhere, that are of a similar type to the one being considered by the client team. This will provide basic details on the project, the key team members involved and images where available. Key design documents, such as the 'Design Statement' and Post Occupancy Evaluations will be included once they are in the public realm to allow greater learning from what has gone before. It is envisaged client teams will use this search primariliy at the outset of a project to

    - Establish similar works by colleagues in other boards
    - Facilitiate contact to allow shared learning

- Establish possible visit lists for the client team and key stakeholders to raise awareness and understanding.

- **Search by area** : to find photographs of different areas of the healthcare estate (such as entrance areas and consulting rooms) to raise awareness of what has been achieved elsewhere. It is envisaged client teams will use this search primariliy to assist benchmarking within the 'design statement' being developed for projects.

The '**Pulse**' resource will be maintained by A+DS using project information submitted to the NHSScotland Design Assessment Process (once the Business Case is in the public realm), case studies of completed developments, and suplimented by images submitted by users of the site. NHS Boards are encouraged to upload photographs taken during visits to inspirational developments (especially those outwith Scotland) to assist knowledge transfer between project teams.

Achieving Excellence Design Evaluation Toolkit (AEDET Evolution)

However, healthcare building design frequently involves complex concepts which are more difficult to measure and evaluate. In order to address these specifics in a DQI context the Department of Health (England) Estates and Facilities Directorate has developed the **Achieving Excellence Design Evaluation Toolkit (AEDET Evolution)**, the latest version of which is AEDET Evolution and is a tool specifically directed towards achieving excellence in design rather than ensuring compliance with legislation, regulation and guidance. High scores in AEDET do not therefore necessarily guarantee compliance with statute.

The AEDET Evolution toolkit assists NHS Bodies in managing their design requirements from initial proposals through to post-project evaluation. It is a benchmarking tool and forms part of the guidance for PPP, joint ventures including ''hub'' and, conventionally funded schemes. AEDET Evolution contains evaluation criteria which ensure that design takes place within a common, industry wide framework. The toolkit enables the user to evaluate a healthcare building design in a non-technical way that covers the three key areas of **impact**, **build quality** and **functionality**. AEDET Evolution tool is complemented by A Staff and Patient Environment Calibration Tool (ASPECT).

Unpublished research into the use of AEDET Evolution and ASPECT suggests these tools are reliable, presenting high correlations between different judges using them to evaluate healthcare design. More recent independent, unpublished research into the experience of collaboration between designers and clinicians using AEDET Evolution indicates that the tool facilitates improved design quality. It achieves this by further facilitating a recursive discovery and a mutual utilisation of the considerable skills and factual knowledge of the designers and clinicians thus serving to improve their skilled performance.

AEDET Evolution uses ten key criteria that have evolved from sources including the Commission for Architecture and the Built Environment (CABE) and the Construction Industry Council (CIC) to establish an industry-wide framework for assessing design. The ten key criteria are:

Uses
Service philosophy, functional requirements and relationships, workflow, logistics, layout, human dignity, flexibility, adaptability and security.

Access
Vehicles, parking, pedestrians, disabled people, wayfinding, fire and security.

Spaces
Space standards, guidance and efficient floor layouts.

Character and innovation
Excellence, vision, stimulation, innovation, quality and value.

Citizen satisfaction
External materials, colour, texture, composition, scale, proportion, harmony and, aesthetic qualities.

Internal environment
Patient environment, light, views, social spaces, internal layout and wayfinding.

Urban and social integration
Sense of place, siting, neighbourliness, town planning, community integration and landscaping.

Performance
Daylight, heating, ventilation, air conditioning, acoustics, passive thermal comfort.

Engineering
Emergency systems, fire safety, engineering standardisation and prefabrication.

Construction
Maintenance, robustness, integration, standardisation, prefabrication, health and safety.

Using AEDET Evolution

AEDET Evolution is a tool for evaluating the quality of design in healthcare buildings. It delivers a profile that indicates the strengths and weaknesses of a design or an existing building. It is not meant to produce a simplistic single overall score. Because of the nature of design, which inevitably involves trade-offs, it may not be possible to produce a building which would have the maximum score for all the sections. Indeed it may quite often be the case that a high score for one statement reflects a design which inevitably may be scored low on another statement. A single overall score would thus be misleading and uninformative.

AEDET Evolution can either be used by individuals or in workshops by groups. In the latter case it is probably desirable that an independent experienced user of AEDET Evolution should facilitate the group to avoid excessively lengthy debate. AEDET Evolution can be a helpful tool in enabling a group to come to a common understanding with the help of a facilitator who can moderate group discussions.

AEDET Evolution can be used at different ‘scales’ in evaluating the design of a healthcare building, e.g. at a building scale, a department scale or a complete site scale. The level of detailed information available may dictate the scale of the evaluation.

AEDET Evolution is designed to be used by those involved in the commissioning, production and use of healthcare buildings. In particular public and private sector commissioning clients, developers, design teams, project managers, estates/facilities managers and design champions may find AEDET Evolution a helpful and useful tool. User clients such as patient representatives and members of the general public should also be able to use AEDET albeit within a workshop environment alongside other more experienced professionals.

When to use AEDET Evolution

AEDET Evolution can be used to evaluate existing buildings in order to compare them or understand their strengths and weaknesses.

AEDET Evolution can be used on the plans for new buildings in order to evaluate and compare designs.

AEDET Evolution can be used on "imaginary" buildings in order to set standards for preparation of a brief.

AEDET can be used at various stages during the design of healthcare buildings – as the level of detail of the information available increases it should be possible to respond to more of the statements in the tool.

A Staff and Patient Environment Calibration Tool (ASPECT)

To complement AEDET Evolution, the Department of Health (England) Estates and Facilities Directorate has developed the ASPECT toolkit. ASPECT stands for A Staff and Patient Environment Calibration Tool and is based on a database of over 600 pieces of research. That research deals with the way the healthcare environment can impact on the levels of satisfaction shown by staff and patients and on the health outcomes of patients and the performance of staff.

This research and the ASPECT toolkit itself are set out under 8 headings. ASPECT can be used as a stand alone tool, or it can be used to support AEDET Evolution to provide a more comprehensive evaluation of the design of healthcare environments.

When used to support AEDET Evolution it enables the user to score the Staff and Patient Environment Heading of AEDET Evolution in a more detailed, accurate way.

The toolkit has 3 layers which allow users to create a design evaluation profile:

- the SCORING layer on which you score;
- the GUIDANCE layer that gives more detailed help;
- the EVIDENCE layer that points to available research evidence.

Inspiring Design Excellence and Achievements

Inspiring Design Excellence and Achievements (IDEAs) is another useful design tool published by Department of Health (England) Estates and Facilities Directorate to assist in the generation of design briefs, proposals and schemes

IDEAs was conceived and developed by the University of Sheffield as a way of utilising the latest research evidence. IDEAs starts the design of healthcare places with people – patients, staff and visitors – and responds to the emotional and functional requirements of healthcare delivery.

IDEAs deals with activities rather than individual spaces or rooms. Examples of activities that occur in healthcare places include:

- arrival
- bathing

- bed / rest
- circulating
- consulting
- shopping
- sanctuary
- socialising
- waiting

IDEAs can be used either as a standalone tool within a workshop context or as a web-enabled integrated tool by individuals.

Role of Health Facilities Scotland

Health Facilities Scotland (HFS) is a division of National Services Scotland and provides operational guidance to NHSScotland Bodies on non-clinical topics such as:

- estates engineering;
- building and architecture;
- procurement;
- fire safety;
- environment;
- energy;
- property management;
- clinical waste management;
- decontamination
- legionella and other estates related pathogenics;
- hazards and safety action notices.

This assists NHSScotland in meeting the Government's policy and strategic aims and the establishment of professional/technical standards and best practices, including the promotion of new initiatives in the field of healthcare practice and management. Clearly HFS can have a pivotal role to play in generally supporting the implementation of this Policy, through the provision of supporting guidance and through their Continuous Professional Development (CPD) programme which provides essential training to NHSScotland personnel on operational issues as impacted by national policies and objectives.

With particular regard to the objectives of this Policy, HFS will lead the agenda through the central operation of Frameworks Scotland and through the administration of the Design Assessment process now mapped into the Business Case process. HFS will provide technical expertise including those aspects of design which relate to functionality and, particularly, technical and sustainability standards. This will underpin the strands of work identified to support the design agenda in NHSScotland through the coordinated tripartite working relationship between HFS, SGHD and A+DS and with NHSScotland stakeholders.

Role of Architecture and Design Scotland (A+DS)

Architecture and Design Scotland has been established by Scottish Ministers as the National Champion for Good Architecture, Design and Planning in the built environment. Its aim is to operate within the Scottish Government's policy framework on architecture and design, as well as in partnership with a range of bodies in the private and public sector to help turn the aspirations of policy into reality.

The aim is to raise the quality of new development, so that high standards of layout and design are the rule, not the exception. Overall, the development of well designed and

attractive cities, towns and villages will support the Scottish Government's National Outcomes for the built environment.

These Outcomes are designed to ensure that Scotland has the infrastructure, the physical services, the economic ability, the healthy environment, the cultural references and the social networks that allow our current and future generations to achieve their potential in a balanced manner.

SGHD and A+DS have developed a range of initiatives to assist NHSScotland in addressing design quality issues in the procurement of healthcare building projects, the summary objectives of which are to:

- raise the level of design quality achieved through infrastructure investment;
- increase the capacity of health boards and central agencies in respect of the above; and
- assist in sharing good practices.

In order to meet the above objectives, Architecture and Design Scotland will deliver 3 main activities on behalf of the Scottish Government Health Directorates.

Activity 1
Engaging with partner organisations and central procurement agencies in order to assist them in their work and in raising design awareness of 'external' parties involved in delivery. This will be done through actions such as:

- assisting in the development of policy and guidance relating to the procurement of, and design quality in, the built estate;
- participation in steering groups such as those developed for Frameworks Scotland and in the development of strategies and processes (such as team selection and KPIs) for central procurement agencies. Also assisting, as requested by such central teams, in providing advice to client teams on matters effecting design quality, particularly pertaining to preparation for the assessment described in 2 below; and
- assisting Health Facilities Scotland (HFS) and others in the development of training and awareness sessions.

Activity 2
Providing, in partnership with HFS, a co-ordinated assessment of the potential quality of proposed projects to support those responsible for decision making within the Business Case process.

This will involve contributing particular expertise on the aspects of design relating to government policy on design and place making to a process administered and led by Health Facilities Scotland who will, in addition to the administrative elements, provide particular expertise on the aspects of design relating to functionality, particularly technical and sustainability standards developed by HFS and the Department of Health in England.

Activity 3
Assisting in building a body of knowledge and evidence of good practice in both process and product across NHSScotland, through:

- the development and management of the web-based project resource, '**Pulse**';

- the development of case studies of projects on the ground;
- providing dedicated support to 'demonstration projects' where ambitious parties are taking on particular aspects of work, particularly around cross-sectoral working; and
- identifying and commissioning targeted pieces of work by relevant specialists to inform, test, and develop concepts and tools to support Health Boards and their stakeholders in their delivery of good design.

Role of the Scottish Futures Trust

The Scottish Futures Trust is an independent company, established by the Scottish Government with a responsibility to deliver value for money across all public sector investment. SFT operates at arms length from the Government but works closely with the public sector to seek and deliver improved value for tax payers.

Currently the Scottish Government and other public sector bodies in Scotland invest some £5billion annually on infrastructure. By any measure this is a substantial amount of money and spend on investment is recognised to be a strong contributor to economic growth. In today's tight financial environment, improving the value for money of this spend, and finding innovative ways to finance infrastructure investment to enhance economic growth are imperative and are SFT's primary functions.

Recommendations from Audit Scotland, the National Audit Office and others have included the requirement for many of the services that SFT is now providing. The company brings focused commercial and financial skills in infrastructure financing, procurement and delivery into the public sector. SFT retains and grows this knowledge within infrastructure-investing organisations across the public sector.

SFT is leading the £1.25 Schools Investment Programme and has developed a National Housing Trust to deliver an initial £130million of housing. SFT is also involved in a wide range of major transport and accommodation infrastructure projects and by the end of 2010/11 SFT's portfolio of projects are expected to be valued at more than £7billion.

In relation to this policy SFT is responsible for managing the 'hub' programme. Their remit includes:

- Enabling the establishment and development of hub groups
- Help motivate change
- Help promote the strategy and disseminate best practice
- Steer the implementation of the procurements
- Develop processes, procedures, supporting documentation and guidance
- Support the drive for continuous improvement
- Manage the administration of the enabling fund
- Develop and implement methodology for benefits evaluation

SFT may also get involved in an advisory or validation role on other projects, and therefore has an interest across all healthcare work.

NHSScotland Design Champions

The Scottish Government Health Directorates requires that NHS Board Chairs are responsible for nominating a member of the NHS Board and a Senior Officer to take on the roles of Design Champions for the Board. The Senior Officer should have knowledge and experience in capital investment procedures and expertise in technical matters. Both must be in a position to influence the overarching policies, procedures and ethos of the organisation, albeit in their own manner.

A Design Champion should be:

- well respected and an excellent communicator who is able to promote the need for good design to a wide variety of audiences, both within the Health Board and externally. Both appointees should be able to persuade colleagues and the wider community of the benefits of well designed healthcare buildings;
- a consensus builder, able to bring together the various stakeholders both within the local authority and the wider community; and
- able to see the 'bigger picture' and help develop a 'vision'.

The Design Champions, ideally, are in a position to influence the work undertaken by the Health Board but it is important that the roles are not created for status but, for action.

- The role of the Design Champion is not project specific but is to advocate design quality and to ensure that mechanisms are in place within the NHS Board to deliver the design agenda. NHS Design Champions will be supported, where possible, by Architecture and Design Scotland through ad hoc requests for assistance.

Design Champions will be expected to work with all the necessary disciplines. The role of the Design Champion is expected to include a responsibility to ensure that:

- the building promotes civic pride;
- patients and staff are consulted and their views addressed;
- the building fits into the local surroundings and settings;
- the building is fit for purpose;
- the building takes on board modern technology;
- the design considers sustainability issues;
- quality is questioned throughout the process; and
- there is support for resisting change which reduces quality and VFM.

The Design Champion should ensure that:

- aspirations for design quality underpin all projects undertaken across the NHS Board;
- a Board Design Action Plan is produced and delivered;

- a Design Statement is produced for all development projects establishing the design quality criteria for that project, the key points which these criteria must be given value and profile and, the process by which the board shall assess the developing project against those criteria. **The Design Champions must ensure that appropriate skills are utilised in the self assessment. Depending on their own background and role, this may be either by their own personal actions and involvement or through the appointment of others with appropriate skills**;

- an assessment is made of the current environment for patients, staff and visitors;

- the Achieving Design Excellence Evaluation Toolkit (AEDET) is used throughout a project where appropriate;

- the evaluation of tenders is based on VFM and not lowest cost;

- budgets and timetables are realistic;

- the Board has the correct skill mix to deliver the design agenda; and

- the scheme includes the full involvement of the local community and the support of clinical and other staff.

The Design Champion will raise the profile of design excellence by:

- encouraging the selection of designers with a proven track record of good design or design awards;

- promoting awareness of national and international best practice in healthcare design;

- encouraging schemes, either refurbishments or new build, to be put forward for local and national competitions and awards;

- maintaining a forum for regular review and feedback to the Board; and

- recognising the support, guidance and initiatives available.

It is important that NHS Boards acknowledge the fact that the role of Design Champion is one that requires a considerable amount of time. Design Champions are required to understand what constitutes good design across a range of different and, sometimes very technical, disciplines and the amount of time required to do so can easily be underestimated.

Maintaining design quality on site

There is a risk that, once a project moves on to site, the client may underestimate the effort which will continue to be required to maintain design quality. Any shortcuts taken at this stage can put the overall design quality of the project at risk. The client's design advisers must be retained throughout the construction process in order to monitor the quality of design and finishes.

These advisers should also ensure that design aims are not sacrificed in the management of change during the running of the project. If design standards and quality thresholds are clearly defined, then the review process throughout the delivery stage should provide sufficient safeguards against quality dilution. A structured process of quality checks during construction is important to ensure that what has been agreed is actually being provided. All partners should be involved in these checks as the risks of unsupervised changes on site

can affect a wide range of matters, such as the provision of resource areas necessary for facilities management and the quality of finishes, which in turn may affect both cleaning and maintenance.

Public Space

It is important that public space is not considered as an afterthought. New public buildings need to be responsive to their contexts, both in terms of their scale and form, and in the materials they use. It is not enough to simply respond to the appearance of surrounding buildings; it is important to also think in terms of the integrity of surrounding public spaces. In the creation of new public buildings, it is important that the design team is perceptive of the buildings' relationships to the maintenance or improvement of existing public spaces or the potential for new public spaces.

The creation of public buildings can also give something positive to the public realm rather than simply create residual areas around them, and clients may wish to consider whether the location of a building is sufficiently sensitive to merit the inclusion of an urban design specialist on the team. An approach is required which gives due consideration to the way in which the spaces created by buildings will be used, and to the needs of users in terms of accessibility, safety, lighting, shading, shelter, orientation, views, surfaces, seating, planting, and maintenance.

Transport and car-parking

NHSScotland Bodies are required by Scottish Government policy to co-operate with local authorities, regional transport partnerships and other stakeholders in the planning and implementation of local and regional transport strategies towards ensuring that through integrated transport policies NHSScotland facilities, in particular new developments, are accessible to all by public transport, walking and cycling. NHSScotland Bodies operational policies should take into account the strategy for internal NHSScotland systems and car parking. The organisation's Travel Plan is the integral document to addressing these goals.

Detailed guidance can be obtained from Health Facilities Scotland.

It is important to realise the need to adopt a robust design strategy for on-site car parking and people movement which is consistent with the NHS Body's Travel Plan. The design strategy should address:

- space utilisation;
- traffic and pedestrian flow;
- access for short-stay visitors, mobility-impaired persons and late night/shift workers;
- wayfinding and markings;
- landscaping;
- security, technology and lighting.

The availability of parking for both cars and cycles can influence transport choices for those using a facility. All new and re-development proposals should be designed for safety and the

convenience of all users. Good design and layout of a development can significantly improve the ease of access by non-car modes, for example:

- entrances to be as close as possible to pedestrian routes and bus stops; and
- links to cycle networks, with secure parking near the main entrance.

Proposals should be specifically tailored to local circumstances, aspirations and priorities, for example speed management strategies, attractive green space and landscaping, in order to bring a wide range of social and community benefits and improve quality of life. Design of public transport facilities should be user friendly and attractive as well as functional to encourage and retain modal shift.

Use of the arts in healthcare

There may be scope for the involvement of artists or craftsmen in a project. When successfully implemented, artworks can help to create more distinctive and attractive buildings and urban spaces and enhance the public's experience of an architectural space. In a healthcare perspective, artwork can have an even more positive effect. NHSScotland can benefit in many ways from the adoption of the arts in healthcare programmes including better patient environments and an improvement in staff morale. It is recognised that art in healthcare can benefit the NHS through the promotion of user and staff involvement in the design of the healthcare environment and can subsequently have an impact on health outcomes. There is growing evidence that patient recovery rates and stress levels are improved by the adoption of appropriately selected art in healthcare programmes. The integration of art can also assist in improving the communication of health information and the redesign of services. The involvement of staff, patients, artists and local communities at the earliest stages of the design process for new buildings and refurbishments can result in innovative, creative solutions.

It is important to also realise that a person’s perception of environmental stimuli is influenced by their feelings or emotional state. Although scientific research has produced evidence that emotionally appropriate art can improve certain patient outcomes, there is also evidence that inappropriate styles and subject matter can have an opposite effect. This is especially pertinent to psychiatric patients, who, by nature of their illness can be vulnerable to disturbing interpretations of visual arts, thus exacerbating their condition.

The use of art in a healthcare setting need not be restricted to the visual arts. Other arts activities which involve music, performing arts, storytelling and patient workshops can have therapeutic benefits and can have great value in certain healthcare environments. Art-related therapy, e.g. dance, music, drama or art creation, is recognised as an integral psychological and creative tool for the improvement of physical and mental well-being.

Some NHS Boards retain the services of “artists in residence”. However, Boards may also wish to seek specialist advice from public art agencies with regard to including artwork within a project.

Boards may wish to consider allocating a specific budget for the inclusion of artwork as an integral element of a project. However, care should be taken to ensure that any resulting expenditure is proportionate to the benefits and is appropriate to the building's status and function, in order to avoiding subsequent criticism of the project for inappropriate use of public funds.

Traditional building procurement allows for a detailed design to be developed prior to building contracts being issued. However, under Public Private Partnerships (PPP) projects contractual commitments are made with the private sector partner before the detailed design is complete and thus once contractual agreements are in place any additions or changes to them will incur significant additional costs. The requirements of the design are defined in advance by identifying the outputs required which in turn set the framework for the design, within which more detailed specifications for the services to be provided can be accommodated. **To ensure that the arts are incorporated into both the building and maintenance contracts they must be part of the output specifications.**

Design quality in building procurement

Key issues

- Good design is not an alternative to value for money (VFM), but is integral to its achievement. A good building project must also contribute to the environment in which it is located, deliver a wider range of social and economic benefits and be adaptable to accommodate the needs of future users. An enhanced built environment which incorporates principles of good design can improve the quality of life of those who use and work in public buildings. Throughout the life of a building, design excellence can improve the standard of public service delivery, make it more efficient and contribute to staff recruitment and retention. Good design can ensure that capital costs are competitive and that savings can be achieved on running costs through reduced maintenance, energy and operating costs without compromising the attractiveness and quality of the building. **Therefore investing in good design can make the most beneficial and effective use of resources, can add value and represents a sound investment in the future. High quality building design is therefore a key mechanism in providing VFM in the provision of healthcare services.**

- As the aim of any procurement exercise should be to achieve Value for Money, it is recommended that the "most economically advantageous" evaluation be employed. Value for Money is defined as the optimum combination of whole life costs and quality (or fitness for purpose) to meet the customer's requirements and can be taken to be largely analogous with "most economically advantageous".

- Using an evaluation based on the "most economically advantageous" offer gives the procuring organisation the opportunity to take factors other than price into account when awarding contracts.

- **Good design is not merely a question of visual style or personal perception but arises from the careful synthesis of many interrelated factors including architectural vision, functionality and efficiency, structural integrity and build quality, accessibility, security, sustainability, lifetime costing, flexibility in use and a sense of space in the community.**

- Clients must be clear about the level of funds available for a project from the outset and ensure that their aspirations for quality are underpinned by realistic and affordable assumptions.

- Clients must carefully assess and define their priorities before appointing design consultants.

- The process must allow for effective consultation with all stakeholders to establish a clear, well-defined brief.

- Sufficient time and resources should be allocated towards establishing the client's design quality aspirations.

- Post Project and Post Occupancy Evaluations of building programmes are mandatory for major projects and any lessons learned must be shared with the Scottish Government and other NHSScotland bodies.

- Quality Based Selection (QBS) is a structured procedure for selecting a design team and professional advisers. Design competitions are a means to primarily select specific design ideas or outline design ideas for a project, rather than the design team personnel.

- All public sector appointments, irrespective of the client's preferred nature of competition or reference to any other guidance on design competitions, must be consistent with EU procurement rules in terms of process and outcome. Generally, public sector clients must ensure that design team appointments follow the procedures described in *Section 3* of the works procurement guidance part of the Scottish Government Construction Procurement Manual. **However, in the NHSScotland context, detailed guidance on the appointment of consultants, conditions of contract and contract guidance in should be sought from Health Facilities Scotland.**

- The role of an informed client is vital in ensuring the successful delivery of the project within the agreed timescale and budget and to the required standards and requirements of all users.

Achieving good design

From the outset, clients must be clear about the level of funds available for a project and ensure that their aspirations for quality are underpinned by realistic and affordable assumptions through establishing the right budget. These quality matters and functional requirements must then be set out in a clear and thorough project brief. In order to monitor and control the procurement, design and construction processes, procedures and responsibilities should be clearly defined (and assigned). Ideally, designers should engage in challenging and constructive dialogue with the client, building users and those involved in supplying and manufacturing materials, goods and services. All concerned should work to a realistic and robust timetable, which gives the design team enough time to develop and achieve a good solution.

An informed, demanding and committed client is vital in ensuring that aspirations for quality are maintained throughout the procurement, design and construction processes.

By nature of their complexity, healthcare buildings can be expensive to manage and maintain due the imposition of build cost constraints during the procurement process in order to adhere to a short-term financial hurdle. The influence of design is fundamental to the successful outcome of a project not only in terms of how the building will deliver its intended functions but also its long-term operational efficiency. An appropriate level of investment in the design stage early in the process incurs a comparatively small capital outlay but ultimately influences the revenue streams associated with the operation of the facility and also influences the successful provision of the services to be delivered. **It is therefore imperative that the process recognises the need to address the whole-life cycle of the building and the integral part that good design can play in mitigating potential future financial and operational penalties imposed by the adoption of short-term vision. Whole-life costing must be the standard for investment decisions. Those involved in the making of such decisions will be ultimately judged on the lifetime VFM of their decisions rather than whether they managed to get a project past the initial financial hurdle.**

Healthcare facilities and the associated equipment used therein must be designed to support all the people who are likely to use them in order to operate effectively. It is therefore vital that all potential users of a proposed facility – staff, public and patients – are involved early in the design process and throughout its progress. Additionally, stakeholders such as regulators, professional bodies, community bodies, etc, should also be engaged throughout the process as this has the potential to provide a valuable source regarding the projected use of the facility, the processes which will be undertaken therein and how the facility's users will work or interact with it. Early user involvement in the design process can help ensure that a planned facility will support the people who are to use it.

The standardisation of systems and processes to be carried out within a proposed facility, layouts, room orientation, human interfaces, wayfinding and even storage can provide many benefits for patients, staff and visitors. Standardisation can help reduce mental workload and thus reduce errors, can make errors and departures from normal working easier to detect and can allow the transfer of skills and staff between departments with reduced training needs. Thus standardisation in conjunction with a wider engagement with users and stakeholders can also enhance safety.

The Scottish Government Health Directorates requires that NHS Boards appoint Design Champions at Board and Senior Officer level to consolidate a commitment to the championing of good design.

Evaluating good design

Design evaluation can be structured around a number of key design issues. To support the continual improvement of the construction and procurement process, Post Project Evaluations (PPEs) and Post Occupancy Evaluations (POEs) of building programmes are mandatory for major projects with a cost in excess of the delegated limits and are an integral requirement of the Scottish Capital Investment Manual. However, it is recognised that all projects would benefit from such evaluation and any lessons learned should be shared with the Scottish Government and other NHSScotland bodies in order to inform best practice and future policies. Independent PPEs should be carried out before the break up of the design team to review the success of the project against its original objectives, its performance in terms of time, cost and quality outcomes and whether it has delivered value for money.

Guidance on Post Project Evaluations and Post Occupancy Evaluations can be found within the Scottish Capital Investment Manual.

Post-Occupancy Evaluations have a significant role. The key advantage of POEs is the opportunity to achieve improvements in the ways future buildings will support operational objectives. Participants often identify areas where design improvements could be made and ways in which buildings and equipment could be used more cost effectively. These may only be minor, but they could produce significant benefits to future designs. The process of evaluation can provide important feedback on whether resources are being targeted at the most important areas. This can also enable poorly functioning or seldom used features to be eliminated from future designs and the repetition of mistakes to be avoided.

The nature of PPE and POE reports must be set out and agreed at the start, and project sponsors must ensure that provision is made for the independent preparation of both when setting budgets and timetables.

PPEs and POEs can be valuable in the formulation of “evidence based design” methodology. As has been stated in the preambles to this policy document, the field of “evidence-based design” is proving a valuable tool in the design process towards both reducing costs and improving outcomes. Research has shown that evidence-based supportive design methods, introduced early in the process of facility programming and design can have significant impact on the design of physical environments which can affect patient medical outcomes and care quality. An important impetus for the growing international awareness of healthcare facility design has been mounting scientific evidence that certain environmental design strategies can promote improved outcomes whereas other approaches can worsen patient health.

The Business Case

The Business Case process must include statements of expectation for design quality. Discussions with professional advisers at the earliest stage will assist in determining and defining design priorities and setting project objectives. Consideration of the design issues must continue throughout the entire process.

Detailed mandated guidance on the preparation of the business case is contained within the Scottish Capital Investment Manual.

Design Assessment

An assessment of design quality is now part of the SGHD Business Case process. All projects submitted to the SGHD Capital Investment Group for approval are now subject to an assessment of design quality and functionality, including technical and sustainability standards. This **Design Assessment** will take place at the **Initial Agreement**, **Outline Business Case** and **Full Business Case** stages of approval.

There are two complimentary areas of consideration in the design of healthcare buildings. These can broadly be described as healthcare specific design aspects – the areas generally covered by guidance issued by Health Facilities Scotland - and general good practice in design considering the human experience of being in and around buildings. These are brought together in this process and in the collaboration between Health Facilities Scotland and Architecture and Design Scotland in the NHSScotland Design Assessment Group which reports to the SGHD Capital Investment Group. This process forms part of the coordinated tripartite working relationship with SGHD and A+DS.

The Scottish Government Health Directorates' purpose in developing and implementing this process is to ensure that the outcomes of development projects meet the Government's objectives and expectations for public investment. The aim of mapping design into the Business Case process is to improve the level of design quality achieved across NHSScotland and, ultimately, the outcomes achieved by doing so.

CEL 19 (2010) which announces this Policy also announces commencement of this requirement and its incorporation into the Scottish Capital Investment Manual. The SCIM also addresses the Scottish Government's sustainability objectives in the context of the Business Case Guide.

The Design Statement

To assist NHS Boards in utilising good design to achieve the best outcomes from their development projects, Boards are required to develop and produce a Design Statement prior to the submission of their Initial Agreement. The Design Statement is the first control document produced for a project and should be consistent with the Board's overall vision contained within the strategic Design Action Plan.

The design statement is a means of setting out a Board's objectives in a series of agreed statements of intent and subsequently then describing a benchmark for how the physical result of the project will help deliver those investment objectives but not by giving a pre-determined design outcome, rather a view of what "success" might look like.

NHS Boards should also use the completed Design Statement as:

- a **briefing tool** to describe the design intention, or design vision, supplemented by more detailed briefing materials such as schedules of accommodation, key adjacencies and room data sheets as and when prepared;

- a **communication tool** to communicate the direction of the project to stakeholders and allow some early view of the benefits to assist both in building momentum/obtaining buy-in and in allaying the concerns that often accompany the commissioning of a new facility;

- an **advertising tool** to build confidence in the market in the direction and, by showing preparedness, viability of the project; and to motivate the market to bring its best and most appropriate skills to the table (in terms of the vision described).

Further guidance on the development and use of Design Statements can be found within the **Scottish Capital Investment Manual** and on the **Healthier Places website**.

Fire safety

Fire safety legislation and standards generally state that all people should be evacuated from a building in the event of fire. In terms of healthcare premises, this is not the case due to certain circumstances. Fire in a hospital or other healthcare building can be especially serious because of the difficulties and dangers associated with the emergency evacuation of patients, many of whom will be highly dependent. Therefore in such buildings the concept of progressive horizontal evacuation is the norm and is cited as so within the Technical Handbooks to the Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004. However, because of other special requirements particular to fire safety in healthcare buildings, guidance and recommendations contained in NHSScotland Fire Safety Management guidance, including NHSScotland Firecode, which is additional to the mandatory requirements set out in the Technical Handbooks to the Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004, must be adhered to. This additional guidance is ratified by the Scottish Government Health Directorates' Fire Safety Policy. The requirements of NHSScotland Firecode must be considered throughout the design process in addition to the requirements of the Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004. NHSScotland Firecode is published by Health Facilities Scotland.

Clients must ensure that there is close collaboration between all those who have an interest in the fire safety provisions of the proposed premises at the earliest stage in the design and, be satisfied that all such premises comply with all statutes bearing upon fire safety.

Designing for equality

NHSScotland, as a provider of services, is subject to equality legislation which requires the provision of services which are accessible to everyone. In a healthcare environment, it is important to recognise the complexity and the number of difficulties with which patients, staff and visitors may have to cope on a day-to-day basis. Sensory impairments, perceptual problems, reduced mobility, chronic pain, communication barriers, are but a few. Informed planning and design plays an important role in enabling people of all abilities access to services and facilities. It is therefore essential that the concept of "access and egress for all" is incorporated early in the design process and throughout its progress and that best practice guidelines are followed. By considering equality issues early in the design process, costs associated with addressing equality issues can be minimised which would inevitably prove more onerous if addressed retrospectively.

Egress for all in the case of an emergency must also be considered during the design process. Everyone rightly expects that if they are in a public building when an emergency occurs they should be subject to evacuation procedures which come into force to ensure their safety. However, in healthcare buildings there may be many persons who, by nature of their presence there or otherwise, may be particularly vulnerable. In particular, in larger healthcare buildings such as hospitals it will not be possible to ascertain the number of people who may have an impairment, let alone the type of impairment, or the number of people who may have cognitive or communication or language difficulties. Addressing the needs of all in the context of emergency egress early and throughout the design process will have significant benefit towards the procurement of a facility which ensures the safety of patients, staff and the general public.

To assist NHSScotland bodies in complying with the current equality and diversity legislative framework, the Scottish Government has produced an Equality and Diversity Impact Assessment Toolkit which was issued under cover of NHS HDL (2005)9.

Designing for dementia

There are over 65,000 people living in Scotland who have dementia and they, in common with other people with cognitive impairment, are users of healthcare facilities on a day to day basis across the country. Most people with dementia (60-80%) live in the community, and many of them have multiple health centre and hospital appointments and admissions in any year. As with designing for equality, designing for people with dementia embraces the concept of 'inclusive' design which tries to ensure that the built environment does not present insurmountable barriers to those who use it. Users will include people with physical, sensory and cognitive impairments, which may be progressive, intermittent or permanent and may also include people who may have temporary disabilities

Considering equality issues and the needs of those with dementia throughout the design process will benefit everyone, including people who use wheelchairs and walking aids, have other types of impairment, older people and families.

The University of Stirling Dementia Services Development Centre published guidance on designing for dementia in 2007. '**Best Practice in Healthcare Design for People with Dementia'** is a resource pack on dementia-friendly design which reflects a growing awareness of the need to create caring environments that meet the needs of people with dementia. Many of the features identified are the result of researched case studies and/or international best practice. The Dementia Services Development Centre at the University of Stirling has a specialist online library and information service and holds a large collection of documents relating to care of people with dementia: **www.dementia.stir.ac.uk** .

A component of the dementia resource pack is a **Dementia Design Checklist** prepared by Health Facilities Scotland and intended for use across all healthcare properties. It covers areas of healthcare premises, including primary care premises and those operated by independent contractors, where people with dementia are likely to attend as patients or visitors. Although the Checklist has been developed primarily for use in existing buildings it can provide a useful reference throughout the project design development process. The Dementia Design Checklist is available from the Health Facilities Scotland website: **www.hfs.scot.nhs.uk** .

Role of the Client

The key role of the client is to develop a clear, well-defined brief. At the beginning of the project, the client will need to establish the nature and scale of what is required. Clients should establish the views and aspirations of all stakeholders, and their aims will become the

reference point throughout the design and construction stages and can be used to test the overall success of the project over the long term. As with any building project, the initial stages are vital and a period when the most value can be added. Providing sufficient time and resources for strategic thinking will produce dividends in the long run. An informed and motivated client is critical to the success of a project.

As part of their responsibilities, the client must:

- fully develop a client strategy which has identified the need for the building whilst setting and securing a budget for the project. Understand that the budget cannot be finally established until the brief is settled;
- set a realistic and achievable timetable allowing sufficient time for consultation, brief development and for design;
- involve their Design Champion throughout the briefing and project delivery and listen to their comments;
- allocate sufficient time and resources to establish the client's design quality aspirations and set out clear benchmarks which the client must reinforce through all stages of the process;
- consider the skills and experience required of individual client team members, assess in-house skills and, where necessary, engage external consultants;
- where appropriate, appoint a Client Design Adviser to aid in the preparation of the brief and the assessment of the schemes that come forward through any competitive design process;
- consult with stakeholders to establish a clear, well-defined brief;
- be informed and demanding about operational requirements and quality objectives to get the best possible outcome from the procurement process;
- articulate the Board's requirements not only through the use of DQIs but in a clearly expressed brief that establishes and communicates their vision for the development;
- show commitment to achieving a well-designed and constructed project by giving design quality a high percentage in the assessment of bids and publishing that ratio. Make sure that bidders understand that poor or mediocre developments are not acceptable;
- establish clear and effective routes for communication between the Client Team and the bidding Design Teams during the bidding process so that the Board's needs and aspirations can be more fully discussed and incorporated into the designs that are brought forward;
- choose a Delivery/Design Team which is committed to achieving the best quality possible within the agreed budget and timetable; allow sufficient fee budgets for the work that the designers must do;
- not allow design time to be squeezed in order to recover time lost in the programme for other reasons – good design takes time; and

- carry out Post project Evaluations (PPEs) and Post Occupancy Evaluations (POEs) and ensure that the reports from these are available to SGHD for formulation of generic reports which can properly feed back into future procurement processes.

Project Brief

A vital factor in achieving high quality design is that clients have a firm and well-developed view of what they want, before appointing design consultants, and that this is clearly stated in project briefs. A well-developed brief, with common consensus on operational and quality priorities, is essential for the provision of better design. A rigorous approach to this stage of work will significantly improve the client's capacity to deliver a quality project.

On the other hand, proceeding with sketchy and under-investigated assumptions can be detrimental to the outcome of the project. Statements that set out the client's aspirations on design in terms of matters such as character and durability should be incorporated into briefs.

Detailed guidance can be obtained from Health Facilities Scotland.

Healthcare Associated Infection (HAI)

Of particular importance in the context of healthcare buildings is the need for the Project Brief to incorporate policy, guidance and best practice in relation to reducing Healthcare Associated Infections (HAI). It is vitally important to have a clear understanding of how the briefing, planning, design, procurement, construction, commissioning and ongoing maintenance of our healthcare property can contribute to the prevention and control of HAI. Guidance to ensure that prevention and control of infection issues are identified, analysed and planned for at the earliest stage of the provision of new or refurbished healthcare facilities Is contained within Scottish Health Facilities Note 30 (SHFN 30): 'Infection Control in the Built Environment: Design and Planning', published by Health Facilities Scotland. Additionally, Health Facilities Scotland has developed a system which aims to assess and manage the risk of infection in the built healthcare environment called HAI-SCRIBE, an acronym for Healthcare Associated Infection System for Controlling Risk in the Built Environment. HAI-SCRIBE has been designed as an effective tool for the identification and assessment of potential hazards in the built environment and the management of these risks. The tool should be applied from the design and planning stages of a project through to the occupation and operation of the facility.

Sustainability

The project brief should also contain statements on the client's desired approach to sustainability. Integral to the design and procurement process, a commitment to sustainable design can bring real benefits in terms of reduced running costs and quality of environment for users. Further general guidance on achieving sustainability in construction procurement is set out in Section 7 of the Scottish Executive Construction Procurement Manual.

Construction of new NHSScotland premises also provides an ideal opportunity to significantly reduce an organisation's environmental footprint. Designing the building and the processes that will be carried out within it with the aim of minimising the whole life costs and environmental impact of the facility can cut costs, improve client satisfaction, improve the healthcare body's public image and help deliver the nation's environmental objectives.

A NHSScotland Body, when setting specifications and letting contracts, should emphasise and promote environmentally preferable features in both the construction and the operation/running of buildings and, in the organisation of the services delivered within them,

to ensure sustainability over the projected property lifespan. The decision making criterion for selection of components and equipment should take into consideration the whole life costs and the environmental impact by setting out all the operational and physical components and risk aspects that contribute to these. Environmentally preferable solutions should be preferred unless there is clear evidence that their adoption would have outweighing disadvantages elsewhere.

To assist NHSScotland Bodies in delivering sustainable solutions and embedding energy efficiency into healthcare building projects, Health Facilities Scotland has developed a **Sustainable Development Strategy for NHSScotland** which provides a framework for sustainability issues in NHSScotland, including new builds and refurbishments. The use of this guidance in the preparation of Business Cases is a requirement of the Scottish Capital Investment Manual. Further useful guidance is also available within the Scottish Ecological Design Association Design Guides on design and detailing for more sustainable construction: **Design and Detailing for Deconstruction; Design and Detailing for Airtightness** and; **Design and Detailing for Toxic Chemical Reduction in Buildings**. http://www.seda.uk.net/guides/

The Project Brief should also cite the use of the exemplar Environmental Management System, GREENCODE, through which NHSScotland Bodies can continually aim to improve the environmental performance of their property and, the exemplar energy efficiency guidance, EnCO_2de, which aims to ensure that everyone involved in procuring, managing and using healthcare buildings and equipment thinks about the implications of energy use.

Activity DataBase (ADB)

Activity DataBase (ADB) is the briefing, design & commissioning tool for both new-build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings. It is a briefing and design package with an integrated textual and graphical database, an interface with AutoCAD and an extensive graphical library - the complete tool for briefing and design of the healthcare environment.

ADB is produced by the Department of Health in England and is mandated for use in Scotland by the Scottish Government Health Directorates as the preferred briefing and design system for NHSScotland (see Mandatory Requirement 7 of this Policy). It has been developed to assist in the construction, briefing development, design and alteration of healthcare facilities.

Spaces designed using ADB data automatically comply with English planning guidance (such as Health Building Notes (HBNs) and Health Technical memoranda (HTMs) as ADB forms an integral part of the English guidance publication process. Whilst Scottish users can create their own project-specific briefs and designs using ADB's extensive library of integrated graphics and text which includes room data sheets, room layouts and departmental room schedules, extreme care should be taken to ensure that such data generated by the package are consistent and compliant with Scottish-specific guidance* such as Scottish Health Planning Notes, Scottish Health Facilities Notes (SHFNs) and Scottish Health Technical Memoranda (SHTMs) as published by Health Facilities Scotland.

* In the near future, all technical guidance will be available from the 'Space for health web resource. The Space for Health website will provide a single portal to the knowledge and expertise of the four UK health organisations. It will draw together the technical guidance published by HFS, the DoH and their equivalents in Northern Ireland and Wales. Further information is available from Health Facilities Scotland.

The Design Team

Design Team selection

There are several methods of selecting the appropriate design team for a project, including Quality Based Designer Selection (QBS) which is a structured procedure for selecting a design team and, design competitions, which primarily select specific design ideas or outline designs for a project, rather than the design team personnel.

Where **Frameworks Scotland** is the chosen project procurement method, the design team will form part of the Principal Supply Chain Partner's (PSCP) delivery team and the members of the design team will have been assessed during the process of selecting the PSCP from the Framework. Although the design team will be managed by the PSCP they will work closely with the NHS Client in a collaborative fashion in delivering the design. (Further detail of the PSCP Appointment Process is available in the **Frameworks Scotland** section of the Health Facilities Scotland website).

The Scottish Government Construction Works Procurement Guidance: Section 3 – Procurement Strategies and the Appointment of Consultants and Contractors provides general information on some of the different procurement strategies available and the consultancy roles and professional advice that may be required at the various projects stages. Further general advice can be found on the Office of Government Commerce website.

In the NHSScotland context, detailed guidance should be sought from Health Facilities Scotland, and, for 'hub' projects, Scottish Futures Trust.

Regardless of the procurement strategy adopted, the appointment of a design team, consultants, professional advisers, etc, should be based upon the principles adhered to in Quality Based Selection methodology, outlined below. The Royal Institute of British Architects (RIBA), together with the Construction Industry Council, has published a booklet of Guidance for Clients to Quality Based Selection.

Quality Based Designer Selection (QBS)

QBS looks for an appropriate balance of design skills, experience, innovation, and an ability to perform on schedule to the required standards and within budget. A client, or client committee, selects a team based upon a weighted scoring of a list of relevant factors, including technical capacity, resources, previous experience of similar projects, deliverability of the design and partnering arrangements, aimed at determining which design team is most able to handle the project successfully and deliver a high quality result.

Throughout a building project, designs will be developed through constant dialogue with the design team, so it's essential that a key selection consideration is inter-personal skills; the client must feel that it has the ability to work with the designers.

It is essential to know that a design team's claimed expertise is actually currently available. The question of whether a design team has completed major quality projects within the past five years may give a more fair comparison between long established and new design teams. It is important to ensure that the principal designer responsible for successful past projects is present for the interview, and such individuals should be named in the contract if that design team is successful.

Design competitions

A competition to select an outline design, rather than the design team members, requires the client to have a well-developed brief for the project. Design competitions may be appropriate where there is either a unique problem that will benefit from a wide range of design approaches being explored (along with likely considerable public interest - which may be the case on a major new public building) or where the competition promoter wishes to encourage the development of new talent.

Procedure for appointing the Design Team

All public sector appointments, irrespective of the client's preferred nature of competition or reference to any other guidance on design competitions, must be consistent with EU procurement rules in terms of process and outcome.

The appointment or competition must therefore:

- strike the correct balance between quality and price to achieve whole-life VFM;
- evaluate the quality and price aspects against clear, unambiguous and pre-determined criteria;
- assess the technical and financial capacity of the design team (including design partnership arrangements) to deliver the project to the required standards of quality as well as the project on time and within budget; and
- maintain a full and transparent record of all aspects of the competitive process from start to conclusion, including the evaluation of the pre-qualification questionnaires as well as the selection and award stages.

Generally, as Public Sector clients, NHS Bodies are required to ensure that design team appointments follow the procedures described in *Section 3* of the works procurement guidance part of the Scottish Government Construction Procurement Manual. **However, in the NHSScotland context, detailed guidance should be sought from Health Facilities Scotland.**

Design Team selection criteria

Selection criteria should include design ability, aspiration, financial status, insurance provisions and technical capacity; the last of these enables consideration to be given to resources, technical suitability and past performance. This stage also aids production of an objective and transparent short list of the most suitable organisations, from all those that expressed interest in providing design services.

Selection criteria at the bidding stage

The award criteria enables a further qualitative assessment to be made of the specific proposals for the project - not just technical merit of the design proposals but also other aspects of successful delivery such as proposed team-working, management arrangements, and project team organisation.

Where design partnerships are proposed - perhaps to combine the innovative skills of a new or small design practice with the experience and resources of a longer-established designer - the award criteria enables the client to assess the ability of both parties to fulfil their responsibilities and to evaluate the compatibility of working cultures and practices. Visits to

the design offices of all candidates, including those forming partnerships, should follow a consistent approach and involve the same personnel.

NHSScotland Bodies, as clients, should consider the benefits to be accrued from requesting an Interim Bid Submission from bidders, particularly in a PPP or joint venture (such as 'hub') initiative context. This should be based upon clearly specified requirements within the Invitation To Negotiate (ITN) documentation and should be undertaken at an approximate mid-point stage through the period from release of OJEU to the return of ITN documentation with clear expectations on outputs from bidders that are measured but, not too cumbersome, perhaps structured by means of the use of the AEDET Evolution design evaluation tool.

Client organisations should consider the merits of visiting completed buildings by the shortlisted teams to investigate both their past work and allow the opportunitiy to meet previous clients and hear their experience of working with the team. Although this does take some time, the investment is small in comparison to the necessary investment of time and resources in the new project, and the potential learning in terms of the bidding teams ability and working relationships is invaluable.

Relation of selection criteria to budget considerations

The qualitative criteria adopted at the selection and award stages should be appropriate for the individual project and weighted to suit the circumstances. It is important that these aspects aren't considered in isolation but should be assessed as part of the VFM evaluation which takes account of fee proposals. Section 3 of the Scottish Government Construction Procurement Manual describes other aspects of appointing consultants, including the various ways of paying for professional services. In circumstances where *ad valorem* (usually percentage) fee structures are appropriate, consideration must always be given to the application of an abatement or capping mechanism in order to contain fee costs at a fair and appropriate level.

Criteria used during selection and award stages must be applied consistently by all of those involved in that stage of the procurement procedure. In other words, once selection and award criteria are established, individual members of a sift or tender evaluation panel must not apply different criteria. Furthermore, once selection criteria are established, they should be made available to candidates. Award criteria must be set out in either the OJEU contract notice or the contract documents; however it is recommended that criteria be advertised in the OJUE notice to demonstrate the client's commitment to valuing quality in the selection and hence assist in attracting similarly ambitious teams.

Scottish Government Health Directorates asset-related policies

Scottish Capital Investment Manual for NHSScotland [NHS CEL 19 (2009)]
Scottish Government Health Directorates
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/mels/CEL2009_19.pdf

Provision of Single Room Accommodation and Bed Spacing [NHS CEL 48 (2008)]
Scottish Government Health Directorates
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/mels/CEL2008_48.pdf

Fire Safety Policy [NHS CEL 25 (2008)]
Scottish Government Health Directorates
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/mels/CEL2008_25.pdf

Environmental Management Policy for NHSScotland [NHS HDL(2006)21]
(Currently under review)
Scottish Government Health Directorates
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/mels/hdl2006_21.pdf

Sustainable Development Strategy for NHSScotland [NHS CEL 15 (2009]
(Currently under review)
Scottish Goverment Health Directorates
http://www.pcpd.scot.nhs.uk/PDFs/CEL2009_15.pdf

NHSScotland Property Transactions [NHS HDL(2001)15]
(Currently under review)
Scottish Government Health Directorates
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/mels/HDL2001_15.htm

Property Management Policy and Other Related Matters [NHS HDL(1999)44]
Scottish Government Health Directorates
http://www.sehd.scot.nhs.uk/mels/1999_44.pdf

Supporting guidance

Scottish Capital Investment Manual website
Scottish Government Health Directorates

Capital Planning and Investment website
Scottish Government Health Directorates

Healthier Places website
A project resource to assist clients in the development of design statements, the briefing of projects and in learning from what is being acheived across NHSScotland and elsewhere.
www.healthierplaces.com

IDEAS
A design tool to aid NHS clients and their architects and design consultants to develop their briefs and design ideas.
http://ideas.dh.gov.uk/

Achieving Excellence in Design Evaluation Toolkit (AEDET)
The AEDET Evolution toolkit evaluates a design by posing a series of clear, non-technical statements, encompassing the three key area of Impact, Build Quality and Functionality.
http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_082089

A Staff and Patient Environment Calibration Tool (ASPECT)
ASPECT is a tool for evaluating the quality of staff and patient environments in healthcare buildings and can be used as a stand-alone tool or in conjunction with AEDET to provide a more comprehensive design evaluation of healthcare environments.
http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_082087

Activity Database
The briefing, design & commissioning tool for both new-build and refurbishment of healthcare buildings.
http://adb.dh.gov.uk/

Brief Introduction to the Planning System
http://www.scotland.gov.uk/Topics/Built-Environment/planning/National-Planning-Policy/

NHSScotland Fire Safety Management / NHSScotland Firecode
Health Facilities Scotland

NHSScotland Asset Management System
Health Facilities Scotland

GREENCODE
Health Facilities Scotland

EnCO$_2$de
Health Facilities Scotland

Scottish Health Facilities Note 30: Infection Control in the Built Environment: Design and Planning
Health Facilities Scotland

HAI-SCRIBE: HAI System for the Control of Risk of Infection in the Built Environment
Health Facilities Scotland

NHSScotland Property Transactions Handbook
(Currently under review)
Scottish Government Health Directorates

Useful references and web links

General

Health Facilities Scotland
Provides operational guidance to NHSScotland healthcare bodies on non-clinical topics including: building and architecture, procurement, property management, estates engineering, energy & environment.
http://www.hfs.scot.nhs.uk/

Architecture and Design Scotland
The Scottish national champion for good architecture, design and planning in the built environment. This site incorporates sections relating to specific programmes of activity including; Scottisharchitecture.com a network of digital resources relating to architecture and the built environment and SUST - Sustainable Design in Architecture and the Built Environment – which aims to raise awareness of the importance of a sustainable approach to design in the built environment by providing increased access to guidance, tools and techniques for clients, design teams and community-based groups.
http://www.ads.org.uk/

Space for Health
Space for Health provides a single 'front door' portal to the knowledge and expertise of the four UK health organisations. It draws together the technical guidance published by HFS, the DoH and their equivalents in Northern Ireland and Wales.
Note: As of publication of this Policy, Space for Health is under development – further information should be sought from Health Facilities Scotland*.*
http://www.spaceforhealth.nhs.uk/

University of Stirling Dementia Services Development Centre
The Dementia Services Development Centre promotes good practice for those working in the field of dementia care including guidance on designing for dementia.
http://www.dementia.stir.ac.uk/

Centre for Architecture and the Built Environment
The UK government's advisor on architecture, urban design and public space.
http://www.cabe.org.uk/

Construction Industry Council
The representative forum for the professional bodies, research organisations and specialist business associations in the construction industry.
http://www.cic.org.uk/

Art in Healthcare
A forward-looking arts-in-health organisation formed from Paintings in Hospitals Scotland and the Friends of Paintings in Hospitals Scotland.
http://www.artinhealthcare.org.uk/

Scottish Government links

Scottish Government Built Environment
The provision of planning guidance and advice, construction procurement guidance and technical advice for Scottish Government Directorates and other bodies.
http://www.scotland.gov.uk/Topics/Built-Environment

Scottish Government Architecture and Place Division
Promoting and encouraging better architecture.
http://www.scotland.gov.uk/Topics/Arts-Culture/arch/intro

Scottish Government Construction Procurement Manual
Provides the Scottish Government Directorates, Executive Agencies and most sponsored bodies (as well as the Scottish Parliament Corporate Body and the Forestry Commission in Scotland) with mandatory policy and procedures for understanding construction works projects.
http://www.scotland.gov.uk/Publications/2005/11/28100404/04066

Scottish Government Sustainable Development
Sustainable development is integral to the Scottish Government's overall purpose - to focus government and public services on creating a more successful country, with opportunities for all of Scotland to flourish, through increasing sustainable economic growth.
http://www.scotland.gov.uk/Topics/Environment/SustainableDevelopment

Scottish Government Capital Planning and Asset Management website
Responsibility for the Health Directorates capital planning policy and strategy for NHSScotland and advice on all asset management matters impacting upon the Scottish Government Health Directorates responsibilities for NHSScotland.
http://www.pcpd.scot.nhs.uk/

Scottish Government Capital Planning and Investment website
Policy and guidance on planning NHS capital developments including those developed through public private partnerships.
http://www.pfcu.scot.nhs.uk/

Department of Health (England) links and publications

The architectural healthcare environment and its effect on patient health outcomes
A research project funded by the Department of Health and led by Professor Bryan Lawson and Dr Michael Phiri of the University of Sheffield School of Architecture, in collaboration with John Wells-Thorpe. The document is available for purchase from The Stationery Office, ISBN 011322480X.
http://www.tsoshop.co.uk/bookstore.asp?Action=Book&ProductId=011322480X

The Healing Environment
English Department of Health report which looks at the components of a healing environment and the effect on patients and staff.
http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Managingyourorganisation/Leadershipandmanagement/Healthcareenvironment/Browsable/DH_4116478

Other references

OGC Procurement Guide 09: Design Quality
Office of Government Commerce 2004
Part of the OGC Achieving Excellence Procurement Guides
http://www.ogc.gov.uk/assets/images/cp0069.pdf

A guide to quality based selection of consultants: a key to design quality
Published 1998, £15.00 ISBN 1 898671 14 1
Construction Industry Council recommends this Guide as an inclusive guide and method for delivering construction clients with the consultants services they require and to realise the real economies and benefits to be had from good design.
http://www.cic.org.uk/services/publicationsCIC.shtml

Scottish Hospitals Inquiry

Hearing commencing 24 April 2023

Bundle 1 - Published Guidance

A42659819